EIGHT BOOKS

OF

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BY

WILLIAM RAINEY HARPER, PH.D.
PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO;

AND

HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN, PH.D.
PROFESSOR IN VANDERBILT UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK .:. CINCINNATI .:. CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Printed by
William Ivison
New York, U. S. A.

PREFACE.

THE Latin language is exhibited by Caesar in a richness and purity which no Roman writer has excelled. In this volume the student is permitted to compare the Latinity of the eighth book, which was written by Hirtius, with that of the seven which precede. No Latin author repays the careful study of advanced Latin scholarship more satisfactorily than Caesar, and for this reason it is a misfortune, perhaps, that the Commentaries are relegated to the preparatory school. On the other hand, in no writer are the great principles of the language so constantly reviewed, thus forming a sure foundation for classical scholarship.

This new edition of the text is the result of an endeavor to present the facts of the language and explain and illustrate the subject-matter in a manner different from the traditional method, which has been, we think, too closely adhered to in the past. The justification for a new text-book of Caesar will be found, it is hoped, in the features of this work which distinguish it from previous editions. These are the following: —

1. The indication in the text of every new word by full-faced type, thus furnishing the student a clear idea of the vocabulary which he is expected to have made his own.

2. The insertion of "Topics for Study," based upon the portion read, which are added after every chapter of the first four

books. By means of these topics the grammatical principles will be constantly reviewed.

3. Examples of inductive studies and lists of topics for investigation, which the teacher is expected to assign from time to time to the pupils to be worked out in a measure independently.

4. Word-lists containing in convenient order those words of which a knowledge is necessary for any satisfactory reading of the text.

5. An indication in the vocabulary of the number of times each word occurs, in order that the student may estimate for himself the vocabulary-value of each word.

6. A special vocabulary to Book VIII., added in order that the occurrence of words in "Caesar" may not be confused with their occurrence in "Hirtius."

7. Notes, intended not only to furnish information in reference to what is obscure, but also to compare idioms, phrases, and petrified expressions as they occur in "Caesar." Occasional references are given to other Latin authors, in order that the student may extend his horizon and obtain a broader conception of the genius of the language.

8. Grammatical references placed beneath the text, rather than in the notes; for it is believed that in practical work such a position will render them more helpful. In the first book these references have been made very full, and are designed to reflect the phenomena of the language as they are met with in the text.

9. Prose composition based on special chapters of "Caesar." This has been added as the surest method of enabling the student to apply the principles which he has learned. The requirements in Latin composition adopted by most colleges for

admission — the translation into Latin of connected passages of English prose — demand such preparatory training.

10. An introduction, including the life of Caesar, history of Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a sketch of the method of Roman warfare, so arranged that the facts present themselves in a continuous narrative and can be referred to by references from the text. The student is thus enabled to see the relation of any one fact to those which precede and follow it.

11. Indicated quantities in the text of the first five books.

12. Numerous illustrations inserted in the body of the text.

The Latin text is based upon Kraner's edition, with various modifications. The corrected spelling of Latin words has been introduced, consistent with their etymology: thus, *contio* (con and ventio) for *concio; condicio* (con and dico) for *conditio.* The authors, however, recognize a Latin word *conditio* (con and do = Skt. $\sqrt{\overline{\text{DHĀ}}}$, *put*), but believe that this differs from the above both in meaning and etymology. Nothing is more common in the manuscripts than the confusion of *tio* and *cio*, and in all cases we have followed the true orthography as shown in the best Latin inscriptions. It must be remembered that one good Latin inscription is more valuable in determining the correct spelling of a word than a host of manuscripts.

The entire eight books of the Gallic war have been given. The last four are intended for exercises in sight translation; here also the indication of every new word will be found very helpful.

The bases of grammatical reference are the grammars of Allen and Greenough, Gildersleeve, and Harkness.

In the preparation of this book much help has been derived from the German editions of Kraner and Holder, from Duruy's

"History of Rome," from Rüstow's "Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars," from which the "Roman Art of War" has been chiefly taken, and from various sources, which it would be vain to attempt to acknowledge. Credit is due to Profs. F. J. Miller and Lewis Stuart, Dr. George Scott, Dr. Hanns Oertel, and Mr. F. L. Palmer, for many favors. The authors would express thanks to Prof. Isaac B. Burgess, who has read the advance sheets and given many valuable suggestions.

That our work has many faults we are as fully aware as the severest critic can be, and we will receive gratefully all suggestions and corrections which may make it more efficient in imparting interest and help in the study of Caesar.

WILLIAM RAINEY HARPER.
HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN.

NEW HAVEN, Feb. 1, 1891.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LIST OF MAPS.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

The foremost man of all this world.
SHAKSPEARE.[1]
Great Julius, whom now all the world admires.
MILTON.[2]

1. Introduction. — In the study of history, events naturally group themselves around some centre, — an important war or a decisive battle, a great empire or a powerful city, a distinguished family or an illustrious man. Caius Julius Caesar was such a centre, —

"velut inter ignes
Luna minores."[3]

Marius, Sylla, Pompey, and Cicero were great in particular parts; Caesar was full orbed. He was orator and general, Rome's peerless master of prose and her greatest statesman. From the study of his character and achievements is to be obtained the clew to guide the student through the labyrinth of Rome's civil war (B. C. 133–131), and the best preparation for the study of the regal, republican, and imperial history of the "greatest of the nations."

2. Events preceding Caesar's Birth. The Gracchi. Marius. — The first part of the second century before Christ was conspicuous for the wars of conquest. Hispania (Spain), Macedonia, Achaia, Asia, and Africa were conquered between B. C. 200 and B. C. 133. While the State had been greatly enriched, the plebeians were kept poor. The pat-

[1] Jul. Caesar, iv. 3. [2] Par. Reg. iii. 39.
[3] Hor. Od. I. xii. "As the moon among lesser stars."

ricians had all the property as well as all the power. The plebeians did the hard work and the greater part of the fighting; the patricians held the offices and enjoyed the fruits of victory. Then came the civil wars. The Gracchi brought forward wise laws intended to alleviate the gross injustice of the times, but a violent death was the "guerdon of their toil." For Rome, corrupt and misgoverned, the crisis came in the war with Jugurtha. The success of Caius Marius in this war (B. C. 106) was a triumph for the party of the people. The same general's success in driving back the Cimbri and Teutones (B. C. 102, 101) added to his influence and to that of the party which he represented. Marius, however, was more successful as soldier than as statesman. Caesar's boyhood and youth were passed while the great struggle was going on between the popular and patrician parties, headed respectively by Marius and Sylla.

3. **Ancestry.** — The Caesars were an ancient and aristocratic family, which for eight generations had been prominent in the commonwealth. They were a branch of the Julian Gens (*Gens Iulia*), claiming descent from *Iulus*, son of Aeneas.[1]

4. **Birth.** — Caius Julius Caesar (GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR) was born July 12, B. C. 100,[2] six years after his illustrious contemporaries Pompey and Cicero.

5. **Education.** — Caesar received the usual education of the patrician youth and was especially apt in Greek and grammar.

6. **Home Life.** — The early home life was quiet and pleasant. His mother Aurelia was a fine example of the Roman matron and exerted a strong influence over her son. His love and reverence for her are honorable to both.

7. **Personal Appearance.** — Caesar's personal appearance in youth is thus described by Suetonius: "A tall, slight, handsome youth, with

[1] Vergil elaborated this tradition in the Aeneid.
[2] Mommsen argues for B. C. 102.

dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. . . . He was particular about his appearance, used the bath frequently, and attended carefully to his hair. His dress was arranged with studied negligence." [1]

8. **Caesar's First Office.** (B. C. 87.) — At the age of thirteen, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*flamen dialis*) through the influence of Marius.

9. **Marriage with Cornelia.** (B. C. 83). — In B. C. 84 Caesar's father died. In the following year Caesar married Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, at that time the leader of the Marian party. This alliance bound him more closely to the party of the people. On the other hand it aroused against him the hatred of Sylla, who, returning victorious from the war with Mithridates, made himself master of Rome. Sylla ordered him to divorce Cornelia, which Caesar refused to do. This necessitated an exile among the Sabines until friends secured his pardon. Suetonius tells us that Sylla exclaimed to the patricians interceding for him, "The youth for whom you plead will one day overthrow the aristocracy, . . . for in this young Caesar there are many Mariuses." [2]



FROM BUST IN VATICAN.
AGE, 35 YEARS.

10. **Caesar, a Soldier.** — Though free to appear in Rome, Caesar considered it advisable to go to Asia. Here he laid the foundation of his military knowledge, serving with distinction under Marcus Minucius Thermus. In the siege of Mytilene he was honored with a "civic crown" [3] for saving the life of a fellow soldier.

[1] Quoted by Froude, Caesar, Chap. 8.

[2] Sulla proclamavit: "eum, quem incolumem tanto opere cuperent, quandoque optimatium partibus, quas secum defendissent, exitis futurum; nam Caesari multos Marios inesse." — Suetonius, Div. Julius, i. 1.

[3] The civic crown (*corona civica*) was a chaplet of oak leaves. To obtain one was

11. Caesar, an Orator. — Caesar returned to Rome on hearing of Sylla's death (B. C. 78). The next year he conducted the prosecution against Dolabella under charges of extortion while Proconsul of Macedonia. So skilfully was the evidence massed and so eloquent the plea of the young orator that Dolabella, though defended by Hortensius, the greatest advocate of the day, would have failed of acquittal but for the influence of the senatorial party and the partisanship of senatorial judges. This case gained for Caesar a wide reputation for eloquence and forensic power, which led soon after to an invitation from the Archaeans to conduct a similar case against Caius Antonius. Discerning his abilities in this direction, Caesar went to Rhodes and studied under Apollonius Molon, the skilful orator and still more skilful teacher of oratory.

12. The Pirate Episode. — When Caesar was on his way to Rhodes (B. C. 76), he was captured by pirates, who demanded twenty talents for his release. At this Caesar laughed, and saying he would give fifty (*i. e.* about fifty thousand dollars), added that when at liberty he would return and crucify every man of them. He kept his word.

13. Caesar, Military Tribune (B. C. 74). — After a short stay at Rhodes, Caesar went to Asia, where, having raised a small body of troops, he displayed ability as commander in some successful encounters in Caria with the troops of Mithridates. Being elected Pontiff the same year (B. C. 74) he returned to Rome, where, shortly after, the people elected him Military Tribune. This was his first election to office by the votes of the people.

14. Caesar, Quaestor (B. C. 68). — The six years following (B. C. 74–68) were important. Pompey, hitherto a strong supporter of the senatorial party, had been estranged, and was now engaged in strengthening the party of the people. The power of the tribunes was restored, judges were no longer selected only from the senate, and the Syllan constitution was repealed (B. C. 70). To the success of all these measures Caesar con-

a very great and a very rare honor. See Article *Corona Civica* in Smith's Dict. Class. Antiq.

tributed largely by his eloquence. He served as Quaestor during the year B. C. 68, in which year, his aunt Julia, the widow of Marius, and his wife Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, died. He pronounced funeral orations for both, and took occasion to extol the former chiefs of the popular party.; busts of Marius were carried in the funeral procession of Julia, and the people loudly applauded alike the eulogies and the courage of Caesar. These religious duties performed, he went to Further Spain on his official duty as Quaestor.

15. **Caesar's Marriage with Pompeia.** — The year following (B. C. 67), Caesar married Pompeia, and was thus brought into more intimate relations with Pompey, her cousin. During the next two years he cordially supported Pompey's measures and the Gabinian and Manilian laws, by which almost absolute power was given to that great leader.

16. **Caesar, Curule Aedile.** — In B. C. 65, Caesar was Curule Aedile. To amuse the people with public shows, to adorn the city with new public buildings, monuments, and the like, were the chief duties and opportunities of this office. The lavish magnificence of Caesar dazzled the people, and his consequent popularity was unbounded.

17. **Caesar, Pontifex Maximus.** — Two years later (B. C. 63) he was elected Pontifex Maximus, which office placed him at the head of the State religion. Doubtless his election was due in great measure to his popularity; still he did not hesitate to use large sums of money in bribery. On the morning of this election, he told his mother Aurelia, as she affectionately wished him success, that he would come back Pontifex Maximus or be brought back a corpse.

18. **Conspiracy of Catiline.** — In December of this year, Caesar opposed as unconstitutional the execution of those convicted of participation in the conspiracy of Catiline, advocating however their perpetual imprisonment. This has been taken to imply Caesar's complicity in the conspiracy; but inherent probability, the public testimony of Cicero, and the utter failure of efforts to convict are all in his favor, and the prin-

ciple that a man is innocent until he is proved guilty should hold in history as in law.

19. **Caesar, Praetor.** — During the year of his Praetorship (B. C. 62), Caesar had many opportunities of exhibiting the qualities of coolness, courage, and self-reliance. It was in this year that a serious charge brought against the reputation of his wife Pompeia led to the now famous saying, "Caesar's wife must be above suspicion."

20. **Caesar, Propraetor** (B. C. 61). — On the expiration of his term as Praetor, Caesar was in debt to the extent of two hundred and fifty million sesterces (about ten million dollars). Before he was allowed to leave Rome for Further Spain, he was compelled to pay a considerable part of this debt. This he did with money obtained from Crassus, who had confidence in the political promise of his creditor. In Spain, Caesar found himself for the first time in command of a Roman army, and soon gave evidence of his ability to handle troops and manage provincials. His successes were voted a triumph by the senate, and his soldiers proclaimed him Imperator. If he sent large sums of money to Rome, he did not forget to keep a considerable amount for his own use.

21. **Caesar, Consul** (B. C. 59.) — A poet interprets the spirit of Caesar's ambition thus, —

> "Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village
> Than be second in Rome;"[1]

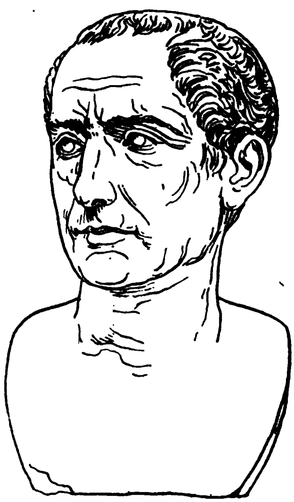
but manifestly he thought it best to be first in Rome. After an absence of about a year in Spain, Caesar returned and offered himself as candidate for the consulship. He was elected, and entered upon the duties of his office in B. C. 59. His colleague was Marcus Bibulus, who had been associated with him in the Aedileship and Praetorship.

22. **The First Triumvirate.** — After his election Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey entered into an alliance for personal, political, and in their

[1] Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standish.

thought patriotic purposes, which is commonly known as the "First Triumvirate." Crassus and Pompey were friends to Caesar but not to each other; Caesar brought them together. Pompey married Caesar's daughter Julia, which served to strengthen the bond of their common interest. Caesar married Calpurnia, daughter of Calpurnius Piso, his successor in the consulship. During Caesar's consulship all classes of the people were benefited, abuses at home and abroad were corrected, and his administration was both successful and popular. Caesar was practically sole consul, for Bibulus' service consisted chiefly in lending his colleague the "helpful aid of his opposition."

23. Caesar, Proconsul (B. C. 58). — The senate, in order to limit Caesar's already too great influence, had assigned the forests and public lands in Italy for proconsular provinces. The people, however, passed the Vatinian law, which gave to Caesar the government of Gallia Cisalpina and Illyricum for five years, with three legions. The senate, in hope of thus getting rid of him, of its own accord added Gallia Transalpina and another legion.



FROM BUST IN NATIONAL MUSEUM AT NAPLES. AGE, ABOUT 40.

24. Campaigns in Gaul (B. C. 58–51). — Early in the spring of B. C. 58, Caesar set out from Rome and entered upon that career of conquest vividly described in his "Commentaries on the Gallic war," the study of which we are about to take up. The task before him was not an easy one. Rome had good cause to remember the men of Gaul. Many times since the battle of Allia and the sack of Rome had they struck terror to Roman hearts. Caesar's arrival in Gaul happened at a critical time in the history of the Gallic tribes, much disturbed among themselves and threatened by the Germans. Caesar by his clearsighted-

ness, unfaltering confidence in himself, decision of character, and marvellous readiness for every emergency, together with the discipline of his armies, made of apparently insuperable difficulties aids to the most brilliant success. In his first campaign the Helvetians and the Germans under Ariovistus were conquered, and central Gaul brought into subjection. The military and executive ability seen in the governor of Spain were more conspicuous in the governor of Gaul. One of his most remarkable traits — that which most amazed the Gauls and in later times most excited the admiration of his distinguished admirer and imitator, Napoleon — was the rapidity with which he resolved and the almost greater rapidity with which he executed his resolves. A good illustration of the character of Caesar in which all the qualities just mentioned are exhibited is thus related by the good Captain in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

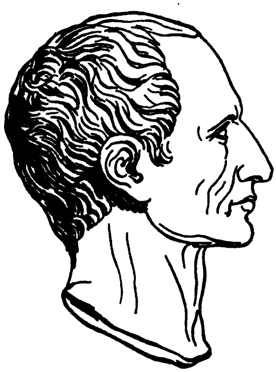
"Now do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something — or other.
That 's what I always say; if you wish a thing to be well done,
You must do it yourself, you must not leave it to others." [1]

25. At Lucca (B. C. 56.) — In B. C. 56, Caesar invited Pompey and Crassus to meet him in Lucca. The leading men of Rome were present. Among these were two hundred senators and so large a crowd of distinguished officials that one hundred and fifty lictors are said to have been seen in the streets of the town. The programme here arranged included the following: Pompey and Crassus to be consuls the following year; Pompey to be governor of Spain for five years; Crassus to have Syria for his proconsular province; Caesar to have his term of office in Gaul extended to ten years, and thereafter to be consul.

[1] For incident here recorded, see De Bel. Gal. ii. 25.

26. Organizing Gaul (B. C. 50). For eight years Caesar was busy in Gaul. He found it easier to conquer the Gallic tribes than to keep them in subjection. Finally he succeeded in convincing them that further resistance would be useless, and represented to the chiefs the great advantages of becoming a part of the Roman republic. Admiration of Caesar, together with the strength of his personality influenced the chiefs to determine upon peace and friendly terms with Rome. Caesar now busied himself in organizing the new territory, fully expecting on his return to Rome at the expiration of his command to enter upon a second consulship according to the terms of the Lucca agreement.

27. Caesar and Pompey. — Crassus perished in a battle against the Parthians (B. C. 53), leaving Caesar and Pompey joint administrators of the Lucca programme. Caesar's success in Gaul, however, excited the jealousy of Pompey. The senatorial party, too, had gratified Pompey's vanity by their attitude toward his appointment as sole consul in B. C. 52. In B. C. 50 matters had gone so far that the consul Marcellus, doubtless at Pompey's instigation, proposed in the senate that Caesar give up his command in November of that year. This the tribune Curio vetoed. Caesar, hearing of the movement against him, was not dismayed. January 1, B. C. 49, a letter written by him was read in the senate, in which he expressed readiness to lay aside his military power if Pompey would do the same. After a stormy session, a resolution was passed to the effect that unless Caesar disbanded his army he would be declared an enemy of the republic. The tribunes vetoed this resolution, but their veto was disregarded.



FROM BUST IN BRITISH MUSEUM. AGE, ABOUT 45.

On January 7 the senate resolved that the consuls provide for the safety of the republic. This was a proclamation of martial law. The crisis had come. Marcus Antonius and Quintus Cassius, the tribunes

who advocated Caesar's interests, were driven from the senate and fled in disguise. Pompey proceeded to hold levies for raising an army, thinking that Caesar's soldiers were disaffected and that Caesar would not dare to offer resistance. Caesar, however, on learning the decree of the senate, addressed his soldiers frankly, protesting that he and his armies had served the State loyally for nine years, and had done much for the safety of the State and nothing to imperil it. The soldiers showed their unbounded affection and enthusiasm for their leader by volunteering to serve without pay.

28. Beginning of the Civil War. — Caesar forthwith crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, to claim by force of arms the rights of which the senate sought to deprive him. At Rimini he met the expelled tribunes, and also envoys from Pompey who desired to gain time by a proposed conference. Caesar promptly dismissed these latter, throwing the blame of the civil war now begun on Pompey and the senate. As Caesar advanced, city after city yielded, and in three months he was master of Italy.

29. The Feeling at Rome (B. C. 48). — The events of the following year cannot be declared here. A letter from Cicero to Atticus (viii. 13), however, shows the popular feeling of the time: —

"Observe the man into whose hands we have fallen. How keen he is, how alert, how well prepared! By Jove, if he does not kill any one and spares the property of those who are so terrified, he will be in high favor. I talk with the tradesmen and farmers. They care for nothing but their lands and houses and money. They have gone right round. They fear the man they trusted and love the man they feared; and all this through our own blunders. I am sick to think of it."

30. Battle of Pharsalus. — After various contests, not always in Caesar's favor, a decisive battle was fought at Pharsalus in Thessaly, August 9, B. C. 48. Pompey's forces far outnumbered Caesar's; but effeminate nobles, the flower of Pompey's army, were no match for Caesar's veterans. By this victory Caesar became practically master of Rome.

31. Death of Pompey. — Pompey was soon after murdered in Egypt, whither he had fled after the battle. In the death of his great rival Caesar had no part and took no pleasure. When the head of the murdered man was brought to him by those who hoped thus to win his favor, he turned away in horror. Not unlikely he then recalled Pompey only as Rome's idol and Caesar's friend. It may be said here that Caesar seems to have accepted civil war not because he delighted in it, but because it was inevitable. Humanity and self-defence compelled him to the issue. He became master of Rome not by invading the capital and slaughtering his personal enemies, but by meeting hostile forces on the field of battle at a distance from the city.



FROM BUST IN CAMPO SANTO AT PISA. AGE, ABOUT 45.

32. Caesar in Egypt and Pontus. — Caesar, following Pompey to Egypt, was detained by certain disputes concerning the succession to the throne of that country. He then proceeded into Pontus against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates. August 2, B. C. 47, a battle was fought near Zela, where Caesar gained an easy victory. His dispatch to the senate after this battle was the famous "Veni, Vidi, Vici."[1]

33. Return to Rome. — Returning to Rome, Caesar found great tasks awaiting him. Dictator now and absolute, he did not use office or power for unworthy purposes or for personal ends. His aim was to restore public confidence and credit.

34. Battle of Thapsus. — While Caesar was thus engaged, his enemies Cato and Scipio collected a large army in Africa, which was defeated in the decisive battle of Thapsus. This battle was fought April 6, B. C. 46, and at once ended the war and the hopes of the senatorial party.

[1] I came, I saw, I conquered.

35. **Caesar's Triumphs.** — Returning from Africa, Caesar celebrated with characteristic lavishness and splendor four triumphs, — one for his victories in Gaul, another for those in Egypt, the third for Zela, and the fourth for the Juba victories in Africa. No triumph of course was given for victories in civil war. To celebrate these triumphs there were splendid banquets, still more splendid entertainments in the circus and amphitheatre, and a generous distribution of corn and money. Caesar furnished "bread and circuses" (*panem et circenses*) without stint. The forty days of thanksgiving decreed by the senate were made such to the holiday-loving Romans by the seemingly careless but really purposed extravagance of the man who had just been made dictator for ten years.

36. **Caesar's Reforms.** — Caesar now gave himself to the work of reform with zeal, energy, and wisdom. The laws which had been passed in his first consulship (*Leges Iuliae*) were now enforced. The calendar, heretofore in the hands of the pontifices and now three months in advance of the real time, was corrected.[1] This reform was a benefit not only to his country but to the whole civilized world, and the Julian calendar was in use for nearly sixteen hundred years. He improved the personnel of the senate by removing all persons convicted of bribery or fraud, and by supplying their places with men of merit. The membership of this body was also greatly increased. This increase may have been partly due to a desire on Caesar's part to reward those who had proved themselves faithful to his interests, but probably more to a wise and really conservative view of "the needs of the times." All questions of importance were to be submitted to the senate. This careful consideration bestowed upon the calendar and senate he gave to every thing affecting the public welfare.

37. **Battle of Munda** (March 17, B. C. 45). — While engaged in these plans and measures, Caesar was called to Spain to quell a formidable insurrection instigated by the two sons of Pompey, Cneius and Sex-

[1] For example August 9, the date of the battle of Pharsalus in the corrected calendar is June 6.

tus. It was the end of the year B. C. 46 when Caesar set out, but not until March 17 of the following year was the decisive battle at Munda fought. Caesar's troops in this battle were at first driven back; defeat seemed inevitable, but the day was retrieved when the great Dictator in person rallied the broken lines and led them back to victory.

The Pompeian party was now utterly and forever crushed, and Caesar's military career ended. After settling affairs in Spain, Caesar returned to Italy in October. Many honors were now conferred upon him. He was made Imperator for life, and nominated Pater Patriae; the month Quinctilis received the new name Iulius (July); his head appeared on the new coinage; he was proclaimed a god.

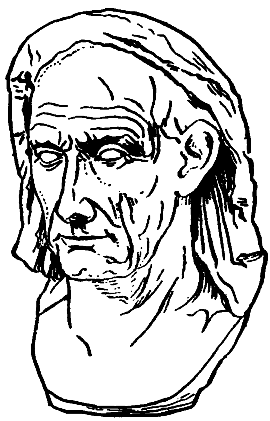
38. Caesar's Ambitions. — Caesar was ambitious, but nobly so. Thus far he had used his position for the advantage of his country. His great offices were used for large service to the State. His plans for promoting the welfare of the citizens, correcting abuses in legislation and administration at home and in the provinces, for beautifying the city and extending the Empire were not to be completed in the life-time of any single man, and it did not require the prophet's vision to see that Caesar's new order of things would be followed by anarchy if no provision were made for its continuance and completion during his life-time. It was the hereditary element in kingship which was attractive to the statesman of large and enlightened views and purposes. The anarchy following his death and the power seized by a rude and rapacious soldiery under the elective system are proofs alike of the great Dictator's patriotism and foresight in seeking the kingly office. On the feast of the Lupercalia (Feb. 15, B. C. 44), his colleague Antony publicly offered him a royal diadem. The disposition of the people, however, was such that Caesar declined it, and saying that the Romans had no King but Jove, ordered it to be placed on the head of the statue of Jupiter Capitolinus.

39. Conspiracy. — Many great and important changes were wrought by Caesar and in a marvellously short space of time. While busy with these a conspiracy was formed against his life. The leading spirits in this plot were Cassius and Brutus; their associates probably did not number

a hundred in all. "The conspiracy began in spite," says Mr. Browning, "and continued in folly."

40. Caesar's Death (March 15, B. C. 44). — The story of his murder is graphically told by Shakspeare, and is familiar. Caesar fell in the senate-house at the feet of the statue of Pompey on the Ides (15th) of March, B. C. 44. His murderers were men on whom he had conferred many and great favors. Men who could receive offices and gifts from the great and generous Caesar and treacherously conspire to murder their benefactor might pretend to, but could never have been animated by, a noble patriotism. So perished the greatest of Romans, — one of the greatest men, if not the very greatest man, of all antiquity. Caesar was great in planning and accomplishment; great as statesman, orator, soldier, historian; great by natural power and acquisition; great in thought and action; princeliest among his fellows, the admiration of all succeeding times.

"Truly a wonderful man was Caius Julius Caesar."



FROM BUST IN VATICAN. CAESAR REPRESENTED AS PONTIFEX MAXIMUS. AGE, ABOUT 55.

41. Principal Events in the Life of Caesar.

B. C.

100. Caesar's birth (July 12).[1]
87. Flamen Dialis.
84. Death of Caesar's father.
83. Marries Cornelia.
80–78. Serves with the army in Asia.
77. Prosecutes Dolabella unsuccessfully.
76–75. Studies oratory at Rhodes.
74. Military tribune.
68. Quaestor.
67. Marries Pompeia.
65. Curule Aedile.
63. Pontifex Maximus (Catiline's Conspiracy).
62. Praetor.
61. Propraetor in Spain.
60. First Triumvirate formed.
59. Consul. Marries Calpurnia.
58. Proconsul in Gaul: *First Campaign:* He conquers the Helvetii and Ariovistus.
57. *Second Campaign:* He conquers the Belgae, including the Nervii.
56. The Triumvirate meet at Lucca. *Third Campaign:* He conquers the Veneti and Aquitani.
55. *Fourth Campaign:* He conquers the Usipetes, Germans, etc., and crosses into Britain.
54. *Fifth Campaign:* Second Invasion of Britain.
53. *Sixth Campaign:* He subdues the rebellious states of Gaul.
52. *Seventh Campaign:* He checks a second insurrection of the Gauls under Vercingetorix.
51. *Eighth Campaign:* The whole region is subdued and made subject to Rome.
50. Ninth year of command. He organizes the newly acquired territory. Breaks openly with Pompey.
49. Crosses the Rubicon. Civil war begun.
48. Conquers Pompey at Pharsalus.
47. Puts down rebellion in Egypt. Subdues Pharnaces.
46. Defeats the senatorial party at Thapsus. Appointed Dictator for ten years. Reforms the calendar.
45. Defeats the sons of Pompey at Munda. Imperator for life.
44. The conspiracy. Assassinated in the senate-house (March 15).

"Julius Caesar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever."

SHAKSPEARE, *Cymbeline,* Act iii. Sc. i. lines 2–4.

[1] Mommsen, 102.

CAESAR AS A WRITER.

42. **The style** of Caesar is compared by Cicero to the unadorned simplicity of an ancient Greek statue. This opinion of one who was not in sympathy with Caesar may be regarded as exceeding praise. Cicero also remarks that this exquisite purity was obtained by constant study and a thorough knowledge of the Latin language. Caesar inserts no word but what has an important mission, without any regard to embellishment. A perfect equality of expression pervades his writings. The narrative is clear and easy.

43. **The commentaries** were doubtless hastily written on the spot where the battles were fought, and were mere outlines which he perhaps hoped some day to fill out. Therefore we admire all the more the purity and neatness of Caesar's style, which have not been surpassed by any Roman writer, and easily pardon a deficiency of vigor.

44. **The writings** of Caesar which remain are seven books of the Gallic and three of the Civil war. The eighth book of the Gallic war was written by Aulus Hirtius, who was personally present with Caesar. Besides the works that have come down to us Caesar wrote other books, of which only fragments remain.

45. **As an orator** Cicero places him among the first, and Quintilian says that he spoke with the same spirit with which he fought, adding that if he had given his attention to the arts of peace, he would have rivalled Cicero in eloquence.

GAUL.

46. **The comparative study** of language throws a light upon the origin of the early inhabitants of Gaul. From the great family to which Hindu, Persian, Roman, Greek, and Teuton belonged, the Celts have separated. As the Vedas of India reflect the primitive creed of the

Aryans, so the system of the Druids undoubtedly must contain an impress, however small, of the religious thought of that ancient people.

47. **The language** of the Celts is not lost, for it lives in literature and is still spoken in the heart of Brittany, Wales, and in the north of Scotland, and in Ireland. Some standing ruins give evidence of monuments that have passed away.

48. **The Celtic race** had diffused itself over the valleys and hills of France, including the western districts of Germany and Switzerland, and from thence occupied the southern part of England. In spite of the difference in language and manners (B. G. i. 1), there seems to have been a bond of union which joined the tribes in mutual interest.

49. **All ancient writers** agree that Gaul was well peopled. Agriculture undoubtedly was practised. "Gallic oxen especially were of good repute in Italy," so Varro tells us. Plautus mentions the "Gallic ponies." Varro again says: "It is not every race that is suited for the business of herdsmen; neither the Bastulians nor the Turdulians are fit for it. The Celts are the best, especially as respects beasts for riding and burden."

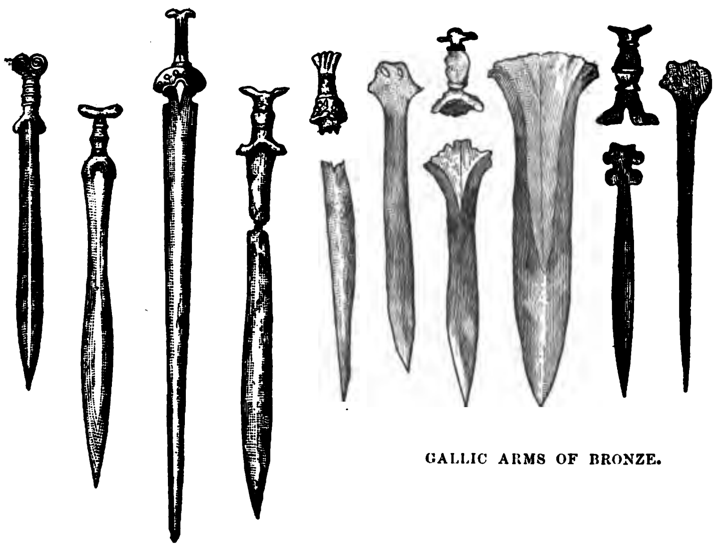
50. **The art of building** vessels had attained great progress among the Celts. They seem to be the first nation that regularly navigated the Atlantic ocean. Although in Caesar's time they used in the Channel a sort of portable leathern skiff, yet the peoples on the west coast, and especially the Veneti, sailed in large clumsy ships, propelled by leathern sails, and not by oars.

51. **Marine fishing** and the collection of the eggs of sea-birds were prosecuted on such an extensive scale that it probably gave rise to the statement in Caesar's time that "certain tribes at the mouth of the Rhine subsisted on fish and birds' eggs." The tolls of the river and seaports were important factors of commerce in certain cantons, as those of the Haedui and Veneti. The peculiar skill of the Celts in imitating any model and executing any instructions is observed by Caesar.

52. The implements of the Gauls for a long time were only stone axes bound to wooden handles by leathern bands, flint arrow-heads and



GALLIC STONE AXES.



GALLIC ARMS OF BRONZE.

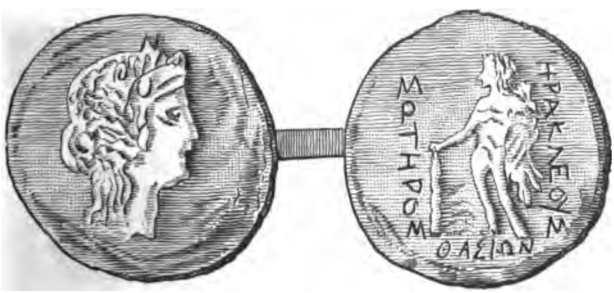
knives. Arms of bronze and iron are of a later period, and belonged to those tribes which were the nearest to Italy. Specimens of these earliest weapons are given.

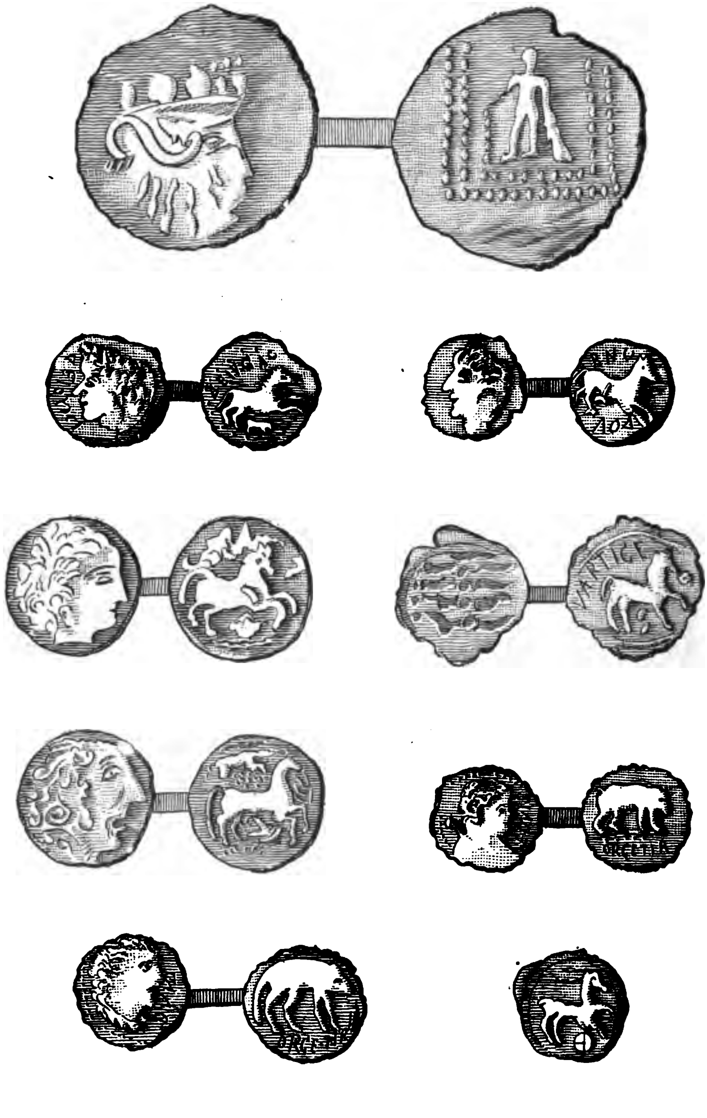


GALLIC TRUMPET.

53. The art of procuring metals had been developed to such an extent that miners played an important part in the sieges. The character of the country refutes the opinion prevalent among the Romans, that Gaul was one of the richest gold regions in the world.

54. The arts exhibit a remarkably low state when compared with the mechanical skill in the use of metals. The party-colored and brilliant ornaments show a lack of proper taste which the Gallic coins confirm with their simple, curious, and rude representations. On a great number is seen a wild boar or a horse without bridle, the symbol of liberty and war. The magnificent staters of Philip II. of Thasos were imitated, but in unskilled hands they lost all beauty of design. These coins of Macedon, however, gave an impulse toward producing varied pieces of curious types on which the likenesses of ambitious chiefs were stamped. Specimens of Gallic coins are given. See Illustrations.





55. The art of poetry on the other hand was highly valued by the Celts, and was intermingled with the religious and political institutions. Science and philosophy, although hampered by the theology of the country, received appreciation among them. The knowledge of writing was confined to the priests. In Caesar's time the Greek writing was made use of, but in the southern districts the Latin was predominant. (B. G. i. 29. "In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae." The documents written were not in the Greek *language* but in the Greek *characters*). The coins also show Greek writing.

56. The clan-canton was the basis of the constitution of the State, with its prince, its council of elders, and its freemen capable of bearing arms. In the time of Caesar this cantonal constitution still existed unaltered among the insular Celts, and in the northern cantons of the mainland. We cannot say that this Gallic clanship contained only those descended from a common ancestor, for Caesar (B. G. i. 18) tells us that Dumnorix, by his liberality, gained clients every day, hence introducing a foreign element into the clan. The general assembly held the supreme authority; the prince was bound to conform to its decrees; the common council, which numbered in certain clans six hundred members, appears to have the same importance as the Senate of Rome under the kings. A revolution had occurred, before the time of Caesar, among the Arverni, Haedui, Sequani, and Helvetii, which set aside the royal authority and gave the power into the hands of the nobility.

57. Some words which Caesar uses in his Commentaries would lead us to suppose that in some cases a great council of entire Gaul assembled. However, we cannot take this to mean anything more than a confederate alliance, which Caesar, perhaps, interpreted as national unity.

58. The assemblies take precautions against hasty movements. "In the cantons," says Caesar, "which are considered the best regulated, it is a sacred law that he who learns anything of interest to the city should inform the magistrate of it, without telling it to any other person, since experience has shown that imprudent and uneducated men are often

alarmed by what is false, take extreme measures, and even go into crime. The magistrates conceal what is proper, and reveal to the multitude what they think is good for them to know. It is only in this assembly that public affairs are discussed."

59. **There were two classes**, the nobles and the freemen. The nobles compelled the freemen, who were oppressed by debt, to borrow from them, and to give up their freedom, *de facto*, as debtors. It was the privilege of the nobility to surround themselves with a number of mounted servants called *ambacti*, and thus to form a state within a state. Resting upon the support of these troops the nobles could overthrow the legal power, and break down the commonwealth. If in a clan which contained eighty thousand men a single chief could muster ten thousand retainers, not counting the bondmen and the debtors, he easily became more powerful than the rest of the nobles. Thus the state could no longer preserve the old cantonal constitution, and the other nobles accordingly gave themselves over as clients to this more powerful one among his fellows.

60. **The cavalry** was the principal force in the military system of the Celtic people. Among the Belgae, and still more in Britain, the war-chariot appears with great efficiency. These warriors, on horseback and on foot, were formed from the nobility and its vassals. It is characteristic of their mode of fighting that at the moment of beginning a conflict with an enemy of which they made little account, they swore individually that they would keep aloof from house and home if their army should not charge at least twice through the enemy's line.

61. **Caesar** calls them *equites*, and this cavalry was much esteemed among the Roman legions. "When any war is declared all the nobles take arms and surround themselves with a number of servants and clients in proportion to their birth and their wealth." Some of these clients dedicated their lives to their chief. They were called *soldurii* among the Aquitani. "The *soldurii* enjoy all the good things of life with those to whom they have consecrated themselves in friendship. If their chief dies, they

are unwilling to survive him, and slay themselves. It never has happened within the memory of man that one of those who had dedicated themselves to a chief by such an agreement refused to die with him." (B. G. iii. 22).

62. The infantry was far inferior to the cavalry. The large shield was the principal defensive and the long lance was the chief offensive weapon, preferred to the sword. A long line of wagons carried the baggage of the army, and a barricade of these wagons was made at night which poorly corresponded to the entrenched camp of the Romans. Certain cantons, as the Nervii, had infantry of exceptional efficiency, but these had no cavalry and perhaps were an immigrant German tribe, and not Celtic. "The Celt," says Caesar, "dares not face the German in battle." So unwarlike did Caesar consider the Celtic infantry that after having become acquainted with them in his first campaign, he never employed them again in connection with the Roman infantry.

63. A Spirit of National unity was manifesting itself in various ways and gaining strength with the decline of the individual cantons. Amid the feudal strife there were those who were willing to gain the independence of the nation at the cost of the independence of the several cantons.

64. A league of the Belgae we find in northeastern Gaul in Caesar's time. In central Gaul two parties were ambitious for the hegemony, the one led by the Haedui, the other by the Sequani. These confederacies subsisted side by side. The impulse of the nation toward unity found undoubtedly a sort of gratification in such unions as these.

65. The character of this union was of the loosest kind. The Belgian confederacy alone seems to have been bound firmly together. The contests for the leadership made disruptions in every other league.

66. The condition of women in Gaul indicates an advance in civilization. They were free in their choice of a husband, and brought a dowry with them. The man advanced an equal amount. The whole, with

whatever increase there might be, went to the survivor. (B. G. vi. 19). The husband however had the power of life and death over both wife and children. No son could address his father in public until he was of an age to bear arms.

67. "**The funerals,**" says Caesar, "considering the civilization of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly; and they cast into the fire all things which they think are dear in this life; and a little while before this time, slaves and clients, who surely had been loved by the dead, were burned together with them." (B. G. vi. 19).

68. **The estimate of human life** was even lower among the Gauls than among the Romans. The stories of the old Gallic customs show the great indifference which the people felt toward their own life and that of others. Tilting by way of sport, fighting for life at feasts, selling themselves to death for a fixed sum of money or a number of casks of wine, accepting the fatal blow with willingness on a shield before the eyes of the Gallic people (a practice which outdid even the Roman gladiatorial shows) were frequent among them.

69. **In regard to their dress and customs,** Diodorus says: "Some of them wear coats of iron-mail, others fight naked. Instead of swords they wear great sabres suspended on the right side by chains of iron or brass. Some have gold or silver girdles. They also use pikes, the heads of which are a cubit long and about two palms broad. Their swords are scarcely less in size than the javelin of other nations, and the ***sauniae*** (heavy javelins) which they hurl have blades longer than their swords. Of these some are straight, others curved in order to tear the flesh and enlarge the wound when drawn out."

70. **The dress** of the Gauls differed from that of the Romans. They wore breeches tightly fitting on the legs, called *braccae*. A tunic covered the upper portion of their bodies, over which was thrown a *sagum*, a band of cloth light in summer, and thick in winter. On their feet they wore wooden-soled shoes (*gallicae*).

71. The personal appearance of the Gauls Diodorus again describes: "They are tall, possessing fair skin and light hair. Some of them shave their beard, while others allow it to grow long. They take their meals sitting on the skins of wolves and dogs. By their side are smoking caldrons and spits, on which are quarters of meat. The brave are honored by being offered the best morsels. Every stranger who comes to them is invited to the feast, and not until after the meal do they ask him who he is and what he wants. Then come long stories, for the Gauls desire to hear as well as see. These feasts, however, are often stained with blood; words beget quarrels; and as human life is despised, they challenge one another to single combat.

Their aspect is terrifying; they have loud rough voices, say little, and express themselves in riddles.

"A violent race," say the ancients, "who make war on mankind, Nature, and the gods. They shoot their arrows against heaven when it thunders; they take arms against the tempest; they march sword in hand upon overflowing rivers, or the ocean in its wrath."

RELIGION. (See Druidism.)

TOPOGRAPHY OF GAUL.

72. Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*), which Caesar refers to (B. G. i. 1), was that part not yet subdued by the Romans. The southern country had become a Roman province as early as 120 B.C., and to this conquered region Caesar gives the appellation *provincia*, or *provincia nostra.*

Ancient Gaul was bounded on the west by the Atlantic, on the north by the Rhine, on the east by the Rhine and the Alps, and on the south by the Pyrenees. The greatest breadth was 600 English miles, but much diminished toward each extremity, and its length was from 480 to 620 miles. It corresponds in some degree with the kingdom of France under Napoleon, which was 650 miles long from east to west and 560 broad from north to south. Three great nations comprised the Gauls, known as the Belgae, the Celtae, and the Aquitani. The Romans applied to the inhabitants of the country the general name Galli.

The Gauls proper, or Celtae, as they called themselves, occupied the central parts, extending from the Sequana (Seine) on the north to the Garumna (Garonne) on the south. The Belgae were in the north, between the Sequana and Lower Rhine. The Aquitani dwelt in the south, in the territory between the Garumna and Pyrenees, and intermingled with the Spaniards. Of these nations the Belgae were the bravest, but the Celtae the more numerous and indigenous. The Aquitani were of a race cognate to the Spanish tribes, while the Belgae were largely intermixed with the Germans.

The entire population of the country may have been about seven million.

73. **The Aquitani** probably spoke a language of Iberian origin. The Belgae and the Celtae used merely different dialects of the same language, the former Celtic mixed with German, the latter pure Celtic (B. G. i. 1).

GERMANY.

74. **The science** of language establishes the German races in the great family to which belong the Hindu, Roman, and Celt. The Teutonic language lives in its representatives, although the original speech has passed away without a literature. It is with peculiar interest that we study the early history of the Germans, who were our progenitors; and it is a matter of regret that no more writings of Latin authors concerning them have come down to us.

75. **The Romans** first met the Germans in 113 B.C., when they came upon the Roman confines and made invasions in Gaul and northern Italy, until checked by Marius. At that time they were under the appellation of Teutones and Cimbri.

76. **Upon the Celts** the Germans had exerted a pressure more violent even than that of the Romans on the south. All the land to the east of the Rhine was lost to the Celts. The Boii were wandering in search of a resting-place, and the land formerly possessed by the Helvetii was claimed by the Germans

77. **They were designated Germans** when Caesar began his conquest of Gaul. It is not strange that the Celts being threatened with danger from two national foes should seek the one as a protection against the other.

78. **Ariovistus attempted to establish the power of the nation** which dwelt across the Danube in Gaul, but was defeated by Caesar and compelled to cross the Rhine (B. G. i. 53).

79. **Caesar crossed the Rhine** twice, not with the intention of conquest, but to prevent the frequent invasions of the Germans into Gaul.

80. **Of the German tribes dwelling nearest the Rhine** Caesar had an accurate knowledge, but the Suebi, he was told, inhabited the rest of Germany, and were divided into a hundred districts, which sent annually a thousand men each to seek booty. They lived by hunting and fishing, and devastated their borders to prevent foreign invasion. This stratagem was employed by the Germans on an extensive scale, and the neighborhood for miles was laid waste to guard against hostile attacks.

81. **The appearance** of the Germans, Roman writers declare, was as follows: A people with fierce blue eyes, yellow hair, strong frame, and gigantic height, who are inured to cold and hunger, but not heat and thirst, friendly, faithful, warlike, and ready to sacrifice life for liberty, dwell beyond the Rhine.

82. **With the arts** of civilization the Germans are represented to have been unacquainted; and they were ignorant of agriculture and the use of letters, living in the forests and supporting themselves by the chase.

83. **The government was by the people** in the majority of tribes, but some obeyed the limited authority of kings without giving up individual rights.

84. In battle it was the duty of a commander to be as valiant as possible, and the duty of his soldiers not to be inferior to him. It was considered a disgrace to survive the fall of the commander, but to protect him was the motive of every soldier.

85. The estimate of women was high among the German tribes, and polygamy was permitted only to princes in order to extend their influence in neighboring tribes.

86. They worshipped the sun, moon, earth, fire, and imaginary beings controlling the events of life, whose will the priests divined by mysteries. Their temples were caves of the earth.

BRITAIN.

87. In regard to Britain little was known before the time of Caesar, who endeavored to reduce it, but his attempts were ineffectual. Ostorius in the reign of Claudius subjugated the southern part; and Agricola in the reign of Domitian increased the Roman sway there. Britain remained a Roman province until A. D. 426, when the assistance of the troops was demanded by Valentine III. against the Huns. The Britons under the Roman power became so effeminate that they were unable to drive away the inhabitants of the north; and the Saxons, who were invoked to aid them, subdued the country.

Britain abounded in Roman walls, traces of which remain to-day. The race to which the Britons belonged was the Celtic.

DRUIDISM.

88. Druidism was an impress of the Indo-European faith. As the sky became the first deification of the Aryans (cf. Jupiter = *Dyaus pita*, *divus* = heavenly, hence divine, the old idea lingering on in "sub divo" out of doors), so the Druids first worshipped the stars, the sun, and the forces of nature, and these phenomena became personified. Bel became the sun-god; Kirk, the wind from the valley of the Rhone; Tarann, the thunder.

89. The deities of the Sanskrit pantheon lingered on in the system of the Druids. Much importance was attached to kine in both religions. In the Veda one of the most fertile sources of metaphors is the cow-stall; and likewise the forms of bulls and oxen obtained a great vogue in Druid worship. Many ceremonies, as religious bathing, etc., exhibit a striking correspondence.

90. The Druids formed a distinct caste by themselves, possessing great authority. They were regarded as the interpreters of the will of heaven and the diviners of the secrets of the earth.

91. The power of the Druids was supreme in the government of the state. According to Caesar they appointed the chief magistrates, and these acted as was agreeable to the will of the priests. Justice was administered by them, and whoever opposed their decisions was excommunicated.

92. The Druids gave oral instruction to pupils, who learned from them verses of hidden meaning amounting to many thousand; but they wrote nothing, and the songs of the early bards have passed away.

93. A belief in a life beyond the grave was taught by them. This was more clear and definite to them than the Latin faith in the vague existence of the Manes. The mistletoe was a sacred plant, the rarity of which caused it to become the holiest object in Nature. The oak was also venerated. Human sacrifices were frequently offered to the gods.

94. Such is a brief description of the religious system among the Gauls and Britons.

95. Caesar refers to the Druids in the following passages. Druides, vi. 14; Druidum, vi. 13 (twice); Druidibus, vi. 13; Druides, vi. 21; Druidibus, vi. 16, 18.



THE ROMAN ART OF WAR.

96. The Organization of the army. — The Roman army of the late republic consisted of (*a*) legions; (*b*) auxiliary infantry; (*c*) cavalry; (*d*) artillery; (*e*) staff and staff troops.

97. The Legions. — It was both the duty and the right of every Roman citizen to serve in the army. But after the social war the number of Roman citizens had increased to such an extent that only a part was needed. We find therefore at the end of the republic the armies changing into an organization of professional soldiers who were mostly led by the hope of gain. The higher classes remained at home, unless, indeed, some one was driven by natural inclination or anticipations of ascending to a high rank. The levy (*dēlectus*) was held in Italy in the name of the consuls, in the provinces in the name of the proconsuls.

98. Number of soldiers. — The number of soldiers in a legion, at Caesar's time, may be estimated as amounting to 3,000 or 3,600. It was the custom to form a new legion (*legio tironum*) rather than to fill out vacancies in the old ones (*legiones veteranae*), unless their number was diminished to an extraordinary degree. (Cf. B. G. vii. 1, 7.)

99. Divisions of the Legions. — Each legion was divided into ten cohorts (300 to 360 men); each cohort into three maniples (100 to 120 men); each maniple into two platoons (50 to 60 men) [*ordines* = platoons].

100. Officers. — The officers of the legion were the six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*). Each maniple was under the command of

two centurions (*centurio prior* in charge of the first platoon and *centurio posterior* in charge of the second platoon).

The *centuriones* of the first maniple of a cohort were called *pili*, those of the second *principes*, those of the third *hastati*, — names which are an apparent survival of the older organization. The *centurio prior* (*pilus prior*, *principilus*) of the first maniple of the first cohort of the first legion had the highest rank. The centurions of the first maniple of a legion occupied an exceptional position, and took part in the council of war (B. G. v. 28).

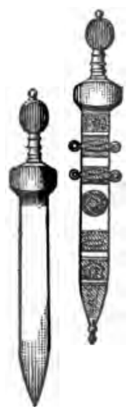
101. The tribuni militum. — The *tribuni militum* were men of higher social position who, after having served a short time in the *cohors praetoria*, were appointed military tribunes.

The difference between the centurions and the *tribuni* was the same as that between non-commissioned officers and commissioned officers, — centurions being very rarely promoted to the rank of *tribuni militum*.

102. Clothing. — Clothing, armor, and equipment were the same for all legionaries. They wore the military cloak (*sagum*) and the cuirass (*lorica*) of leather, the helmet of either brass (*cassis*) or



PILUM.



GLADIUS.



SARCINAE.



SCUTUM.

leather (*galea*), greaves (*ocreae*), the wooden, iron-plated shield (*scutum*), and the sword (*gladius*). Their characteristic weapon was the spear

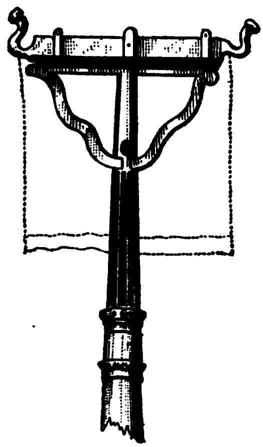
(*pilum*), the iron of which bent when the missile struck, since only the end was hardened: this made it useless to the enemy and prevented an easy removal. (B. G. i. 25).

Besides these each soldier carried entrenching tools (saws, spades, axes, etc.), cooking vessels, and spare clothing, and his ration of food (1⅔ pounds for a day).

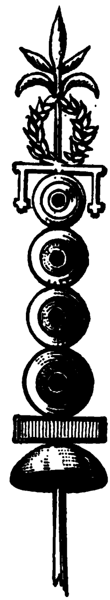
For convenient carrying, the baggage — about 30 to 45 pounds — was packed in bundles (*sarcinae*) and fastened to a small board which rested on the top of a forked pole (*furca*).



AQUILIFER.



VEXILLUM.

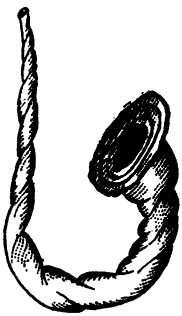


SIGNUM.

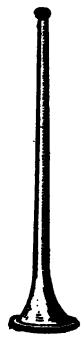
103. Standards. — Each legion had as a standard an eagle (*aquila*), entrusted to the *principilus*, first centurion of the first cohort (*aquilifer*). Each cohort had a *signum* (usually an animal).

(*Aquila* therefore sometimes = *legio*, and *signum* = *cohors*.)

104. Music. — Two kinds of instruments were used for giving signals to the legionaries: *buccina* (*buccinatores*) = bugle, and *tuba* (*tubicines*) = trumpet, — the latter being more numerous than the former.



BUCCINA.



TUBA.

105. Baggage train. — The heavy baggage of the legions was carried by pack-animals, horses, or mules (*jumenta sarcinaria*, B. G. vii. 45).

The first thing they carried were the leather tents (*tentoria*, *tabernacula*). Ten men formed a *contubernium*, but as two were always on guard-duty it was actually occupied by only eight. Each centurion had a tent for his own use. Making an allowance of two tents for servants, each maniple (one hundred and twenty men) needed sixteen tents, a cohort forty-eight, a legion four hundred and eighty (twelve tents for the *tribuni militum* and their servants excluded). Besides this, a great amount of stakes, tools, etc., was required for pitching camp, which justifies us in assuming one more pack-animal for each cohort ($48 + 1 = 49$).

The weight of a tent was about forty pounds, and as a pack-animal's load can be rated at about two hundred pounds, and as very probably each *contubernium* (ten men) had one mule or horse, it could convey besides the tent sixteen pounds of each soldier's baggage (food, mills, etc.). To this must be added about five servants and three pack-animals for each tribune, their several horses, etc., so that the sum total of animals hardly fell short of five hundred and twenty, — a real *impedimentum* for an army.

106. The antesignani. — The *antesignani* were a detachment from the cohorts (three hundred men for each legion) always ready for battle (*expediti*), and serving as vanguard and as light infantry in a hand-to-hand battle.

107. The Auxiliary Infantry. — *Auxilia* were raised by (*a*) enlistment from allied nations, — slingers from the Balearic Islands, archers from Numidia, and light-armed German troops (B. G. viii. 13); (*b*) by conscription from barbarian nations of the provinces, — troops which were seldom to be relied upon, and principally used for a show of strength, or for the construction of fortifications (B. G. i. 51; vii. 34); (*c*) by treaty with allied nations. The number of auxiliary troops is extremely varying. The name for all auxiliary infantry is *alarii*.

108. The Cavalry. — The cavalry in Caesar's army was raised in the manner described above. The soldiers came from Germany, Gaul, and Spain (B. G. v. 26, 46; vii. 13, 55).

As an average its strength was about one-fourth of that of the legions. They doubtless preserved to a certain extent their national organization. Bodies of from two hundred to four hundred were commanded by a *praefectus equitum* (either a native or a Roman, B. G. i. 18; iii. 26; iv. 11; viii. 12, 48). The whole was always under a Roman commander (B. G. i. 52; viii. 48). About four hundred horses made up an *ala* (regiment); the tactical unit of the *ala* was the *turma* (squadron) (32 men + the *decurio* = 33) (B. G. vi. 8; viii. 16, 18).

109. The Artillery. — Artillery was used by the Romans only in defending and attacking fortified places. Its organization is unknown to us. Very likely a number of *fabri* were entrusted with the transportation, construction, and use of the engines.

110. The Staff. — The general staff consists of: —

(*a*) The general (*imperator*).

(*b*) Legates (*legati*) were men of senatorial rank assigned to the pro-consuls by the senate. They were the lieutenants of the general, placed at the head of detachments of one or more legions. It was Caesar who first placed a legate at the head of each legion (B. G. i. 52).

(*c*) The *quaestor*, assigned by lot to the pro-consul as superintendent of the finances of the province. He with a numerous body of assistants

had to provide the army with food, pay, clothing, arms, equipments, and shelter.

(*d*) Aides-de-camp, and the staff of the quartermaster-general. A number of young noblemen followed the general as volunteers (*contubernales, comites praetorii, voluntarii*). They formed the nobler part of the general's suite (*cohors praetoria*), and served as aides-de-camp, orderly-officers, and were used as aids in the administrative department. If very numerous, they formed platoons by themselves, or joined the body-guard, taking part in the battle. The other part of the *cohors praetoria* was composed of *lictores*, scribes, servants, *apparitores* (orderlies), and *speculatores* (scouts, spies).

(*e*) Body-guard. This was not a choice troop, but troops which stood in a nearer personal relation to the general. (*α*) Small bodies of German cavalry (B. G. vii. 13) used as personal escort (*escadrons de service*); (*β*) *evocati* were those veteran soldiers who having completed their term of service either remained with the army or returned to it at the solicitation of the general. Those men who exercised more influence over the common soldier, with whom they were in every respect on the same plane, than officers and centurions, were of priceless value to a general.

They formed in Caesar's army an organized troop divided into *centuriae*, and were honored by a number of privileges. They had pack-animals and riding-horses, which they used on the march, and could therefore be used as orderlies for important communications or as scouts. In battle they fought near the general, protecting his person and the *vexillum* (standard). They were joined by the *voluntarii*.

(*f*) Engineers (*fabri*) stood under the command of the *praefectus fabrorum*. They were employed in building bridges, in constructing the winter-quarters, and in repairing the weapons. Thus the *pila*, which once hurled became useless, had to be collected after battle, and were repaired by the *fabri ferrarii*.

111. Pay. — Caesar had fixed the pay of the legionaries at 225 *denarii* ($45), paid by three instalments (*stipendia*). For food and equipment a reduction was made, which in the provinces however was very low. Be-

sides, booty and gifts of the general increased the income of the soldier considerably.

(The pay of a day-laborer in Rome at that time was about three-fourths of a *denarius* daily.)

The auxiliary infantry very likely received the same pay; the cavalry three times as much, if they brought their horses with them.

112. Discipline. — Better than by fear of punishment order was maintained by constant employment; such were the daily fortification of the camp, the severe guard-duty, and constant practice in the use of weapons. Courage was rewarded by substantial gifts of money. Military crimes (mutiny, desertion, cowardice, abuse of authority) were always severely punished. Violence to the conquered, robbery and plunder, however, were allowed by generals desirous to attach the soldiers to their person.

113. Tactics. — Tactics of a troop comprise: its order of arrangement for battle, — with reference to which every movement and formation are made, — its movements during battle, the order of march, the disposition in the camp, and all evolutions in passing from one to the other.

Because the order-of-battle of a body of soldiers is that of the tactical unit of this body, we have to consider first the order-of-battle of the cohort, as being the tactical unit of the legion.

114. The Order of Battle. — The three maniples arrayed side by side formed the order-of-battle of a cohort. The front of each maniple was 40, that of the cohort 120 feet; each maniple had twelve files. Each man in the front rank (*ordo*, B. G. vii. 62) of the maniple occupied three feet, which were sufficient to throw the *pilum*. For the use of the sword four to six feet were needed, which were gained by the stepping forward of the odd numbers (*laxare ordines*, B. G. ii. 25). Each file consisted of ten men; the maniple had therefore ten ranks; the distance from breast to breast in the file was four feet. The maniple forms then a square, each side forty feet; the cohort a rectangle, 120 feet front by forty feet deep.

115. Offensive order-of-battle of the legion. — The legions formed either two (*acies duplex*) or three lines (*acies triplex*); if they were arrayed

in two lines each line consisted of five cohorts; if in three, the first line of four, each of the two others of three. Between the cohorts of the first line intervals equal to or a little larger than the front of a cohort were left.

The front of a legion in order of battle is 840 feet, its depth 600 feet.

116. Attack. — The Roman legions never failed to take the advantage of a higher place (*superioris loci*, B. G. i. 22, 24, 25; ii. 8; iii. 4; v. 9; vi. 40; vii. 51), perhaps the slope of a hill, having thus the enemy below them. Under those circumstances more than one rank could hurl the spears (B. G. i. 25). If the distance was greater than about 250 paces to an enemy setting out for attack or greater than 120 paces to an enemy awaiting the onset, the legions first moved forward at an equal pace (*certo gradu*, B. G. viii. 9). At the proper distance they set out at a run (*concursus*); the first rank raised the spears (*infestis pilis*), which they hurled at a distance of ten to twenty paces (*emissio pilorum*, B. G. vi. 45), throwing thus the enemy into confusion. If the right moment had passed, and a rapidly advancing enemy had gotten too near, the soldiers had to drop the spears and use their swords (B. G. i. 52).

After they had hurled their spears the soldiers of the first rank drew their swords and rushed forward, taking advantage of the confusion of the enemy (*impetus gladiorum*, B. G. i. 25, 52; vi. 8). The first ranks were now engaged in single combats, while the other ranks hurled their spears over their comrades' heads into the enemy and served as a reserve. They also prevented the enemy from pouring into the intervals and attacking the cohorts in flank, especially at the unprotected right side (*latera aperta*, B. G. i. 25; ii. 23; iv. 25, 26; v. 35). So that the second line, which followed at a distance of about 200 feet and halted when the first had become engaged, could be used as a reserve behind which the exhausted first line after about fifteen minutes could retire.

117. Defensive order-of-battle. — (1) In one line (*acies simplex*). (2) The circle (*orbis*).

(1) The *acies simplex* was used for defending the walls of a camp. Where a second line and great depth were superfluous, five ranks were

enough. In this arrangement a legion would cover 4800 feet without intervals. If this arrangement without intervals was used in the open field, which was done in order to prevent an outflanking or incursions of cavalry, etc., the cohorts retained their normal front and depth, and a legion covered then 1200 feet.

(2) The circle was formed in case an attack on all sides was feared. Small divisions (maniples) formed a solid circle, greater ones (cohorts), a solid square, still greater detachments hollow squares. A legion could form such a hollow square by placing the first, second, and third cohort in front, the eighth, ninth, and tenth in the rear, the fifth and sixth on the left, the fourth and seventh on the right side. The front would be 360 feet, the sides 320 feet, the inner square covering 67,200 square feet.

118. The march of the cohorts. — Order of march (*agmen*) of the cohorts is twofold. (1) Column of maniples (*manipulatim*). (2) Column of centuries (*ordinatim centuriatim*).

(1) Column of maniples was formed from the order-of-battle by facing to the right or left; the width of the column was forty feet.

(2) Column of centuries. The first maniple (*pilani*) marched forward and the rest followed successively. Its width was also forty feet. In this order Caesar crossed the Rhine. The width could, if necessary, be diminished to twenty feet by doubling the depth. The length of a column of centuries was 120 feet; of a maniple, 144 feet.

The order of battle was formed —

From the column of maniples by the commands, Halt! Front! From the column of centuries by aligning on the right or left after the leading maniples had halted.

119. The march of the legions. — The legions marched in three forms. (1) In simple form (*agmen pilatum*); (2) in order-of-battle (*acies instructa*); (3) in square (*agmen quadratum*).

In simple column the legions followed each other according to their number, each cohort in column of centuries. The length of a legion was then 1,400 feet; with double ranks, 2,600 feet. With baggage-train its length was 2,050 feet, or if the road was small 3,900 feet.

The march in order-of-battle was either by lines or by wings. A legion that marches in order-of-battle by lines formed as many columns as the order-of-battle has lines, — in Caesar's army generally three. The cohorts marched in columns of maniples and were able to form the order-of-battle by simply facing to the right or left.

A legion that marched in order-of-battle by wings formed three columns. The cohorts of the right wing (Nos. 1, 5, 8) formed the first, the cohorts of the centre (Nos. 2, 6, 9) the second, the cohorts of the left wing (Nos. 4, 3, 7) the third columns. Each cohort marched in columns of centuries.

Order of march in square (corresponding to the *orbis*): a division of troops in order-of-battle by wings led, followed by the baggage; a similar division marched at the rear; on either side marched a division in cohorts in columns of maniples.

120. Tactics of the cavalry. — The tactical unit of the Roman cavalry was the *turma* (32 horses), arranged in four ranks of eight horses. Front and depth were 40 feet.

Twelve *turmae* formed a regiment (*ala*). The order-of-battle very likely resembled that of the infantry, and consisted of two or three lines with intervals, the front of a line being 440 feet (B. G. iv. 33; viii. 17–19).

A detachment of cavalry served as reserve (B. G. vii. 13).

Caesar not unfrequently strengthened his cavalry by placing German infantry or maniples of *antesignani* in the intervals between two *turmae* (B. G. viii. 13).

The order-of-march of the regiment was in column of *turmae*, each *turma* keeping the order-of-battle. The length of a regiment was then 480 feet, to which the train added about 240 feet.

121. The camps (*castra*). — We have to distinguish two kinds of camps. (1) Summer camps (*castra aestiva*), which were regularly pitched at the evening of each day's march, however long and fatiguing it might have been, and frequently were left the next day. (2) Winter-quarters (*castra hiberna*), where the legions stayed over winter, kept apart from any contact with the inhabitants (B. G. iii. 4), and under a constant

training. As regards the form of the latter, they were hardly different from the summer camps, but they were naturally furnished with more accommodations. The tents (*tabernacula, pelles*) of the summer camp, for instance, were replaced by huts (*casae stramenticiae*). (B. G. v. 43.)

The place for the camp — the slope of a hill where there was an easy supply of water and wood was considered the best situation — was selected by a number of tribunes and centurions sent in advance (B. G. ii. 17).

The form of the Roman camp at Caesar's time was a square or a rectangle, the sides of which were as 2 : 3. Its front faced the enemy.

Two streets, running parallel to the front, divided the camp into three parts: the *praetentura*, divided from the *latera praetorii* by the *via principalis;* and the *retentura*, divided from the *latera praetorii* by the *via quintana.*

Either extremity of the *via principalis* was faced by a gate (*porta principalis, dextra*, and *sinistra*); and when two gates are mentioned from which a sally is made (B. G. iii. 19; v. 58; vii. 41), these two gates are to be understood. Besides there were two other gates: one facing the enemy in front, *porta praetoria;* the other at the opposite side, *porta decumana.* From the *porta praetoria* a street (*via praetoria*) led to the *via principalis.*

Distribution of the troops: In the *praetentura*, one fourth or one fifth of all the cohorts, one half of the cavalry, and all the *milites levis armaturae* (slingers, archers, dartmen).

The middle part of the middle camp is occupied by the *praetorium* (general's quarter), with the tents for the commander and his staff, altars, tribunal (B. G. vi. 3, *suggestus*), etc.

The same place which is occupied by the *praetorium* in the middle camp is taken by the *quaestorium*, with the tents for the quaestor and his staff in the *retentura.* Provisions and booty, foreign ambassadors and hostages, are kept here, along with the rest of the cohorts.

a. The camp was surrounded by wall and ditch. Between the wall and the encampment there was a street about 120 feet broad. The depth of the ditch was generally about seven feet, its breadth nine feet.

It is to be remarked that Caesar expressly states depth and breadth only when they deviate from the common measures.

NOTE. — There are three forms of ditches. (1), scarp (*latus interius*) and counterscarp (*latus exterius*) are inclined (*fossa fastigata*). (2), scarp is inclined; counterscarp, vertical (*fossa punica*). (3), both scarp and counterscarp vertical (*directis lateribus*). Of these the first is decidedly the most common. For the third see B. G. vii. 72; viii. 9.

b. The ditch yielded the material for the construction of the wall (*vallum*). Its height was dependent on the depth of the ditch. In the whole the height can be assumed to be two thirds of the upper breadth of the ditch (cf. B. G. ii. 5; B. C. iii. 63, *erat eo loco fossa pedum* XV *et vallum contra hostem in altitudinem pedum* X). Its outside was generally turfed (B. G. viii. 9). To make it still more firm and strong, fences of hurdle-work running parallel to the length of the wall were used. Inside steps led up to the top. The ordinary upper breadth of the wall in general was six feet. Broader walls had a rampart (*lorica*, *loricula*) of palisades (*valli*) (cf. B. G. v. 40; vii. 72; viii. 9), either all of the same height, or with *pinnae* (as B. G. v. 40; vii. 72), between which intervals were left. Where wall and ditch were of unusual size, or where there were even two ditches, we find the wall crowned with towers (B. G. v. 40; vii. 72; viii. 9).

c. The digging out of an ordinary ditch and the construction of an ordinary wall took from three to four hours.

d. A number of troops — generally one or two cohorts before each gate, and one *turma equitum*, but if required stronger forces, as before Avaricum, two legions (B. G. vii. 24) — kept guard (*excubari*, *in statione esse*) before the gates of the wall, others on the rampart. The word *excubiae* denotes guards either by night or by day, while *vigiliae* those by night only. The night (from 6 o'clock P.M. to 6 o'clock A.M.) was divided into four watches of three hours each. The signal for changing the watches was given by the *buccinator*.

e. Every evening a watchword (*tessera*) was given by the general, which was made known to the soldiers by the *tesserarii*.

122. Marches. — Every greater distance was divided into day's marches (*itinera*); two or three days of march were generally followed by a day of rest, the contrary being expressly stated (B. G. i. 41). Every day's march led from a camp to a camp, so that the days of march are not unfrequently counted by camps (B. G. vii. 63).

The armies marched about seven hours (= five Roman hours in summer), from 4 or 5 A.M. to 11 A.M. or 12 M. (*justum iter*, B. C. iii. 76, "normal march"), at a rate of something less than a hundred paces a minute. But marches at a much more quickened pace were not rare (B. G. vii. 40; v. 46, 47; ii. 12).

There are to be distinguished two kinds of marches. (1) Perpendicular marches, where the line of march stands perpendicular to the assumed line of the hostile army, divided into two subdivisions, — (*a*) advance, (*b*) retreat. (2) Parallel marches, where the line of march runs parallel to the line of the hostile army or to the line of its march.

123. I. The Advance. When the column is marching forward we have to distinguish, — (1), the van (*primum agmen*); (2), the main body (*exercitus, omnes copiae, agmen legionum*); (3), the rear-guard (*agmen novissimum, agmen extremum*).

(1) The van consisted of light infantry and the greater part of the cavalry. Its object was (*a*) to delay the march of the hostile army (*novissimum agmen capere, demorari*), giving the main body time to deploy. (*b*) To reconnoitre the country (*loci naturam perspicere, iter cognoscere*, B. G. i. 15, etc.), and to give news of the enemy. This was done by detachments of cavalry (*exploratores*) sent out in different directions. (*c*) To select a proper situation for a camp.

(2) In some distance after the van the main body followed, marching in one of the following three forms: —

(*a*) In column, each legion followed with its baggage, which divided it from the legion next following. A column of five legions, with a breadth of forty feet, requires 10,250 feet length; and a sixth legion would need not less than forty minutes to reach the head and join with the other legions in battle. Legions marching in this form were therefore not ready for battle (*impeditae*, B. G. iii. 24), and the form was only adopted in a

friendly country. When near the enemy a second form was therefore adopted.

(*b*) In column, but with the baggage of the whole army assembled. Three fourths of the entire number of legions composed the head, followed by the collected baggage; the rest of the legions (one fourth) formed the rear-guard (*claudunt agmen*) as guard for the baggage (*praesidio impedimentis*). As the legions could in this form more easily deploy, they were called *expeditae*. Nevertheless the individual soldier was even here not ready for battle, being of course unable to fight *sub sarcinis*, — i.e., laden with all his personal baggage (*sarcinae*), etc. If therefore an army marching in this form was attacked, the legionaries had to pile their baggage (*sarcinas in acervum comportare, sarcinas conferre*, B. G. i. 24; vii. 18), to draw the shields from their coverings (*tegumenta scutis detrahere*, B. G. ii. 21), to put on their field-badges (*insignia accommodare*, B. G. ii. 21), to put on their helmets (*galeas induere*, B. G. ii. 21), and to get their weapons ready (*arma expedire, legio armatur*, B. G. vii. 18). Time for this was won by the van.

(*c*.) The advance in order-of-battle (*acie instructa*) could be adopted only for comparatively short distances (about three hours' way), provided the ground was suitable and the enemy near (B. G. iv. 14). The baggage was left in the camp.

II. The Retreat.

(*a*) The retreat in column, with baggage massed. For this form of the retreat the baggage was sent out of the camp as early as possible, accompanied by a legion which formed the van-guard, and selected the place for a new camp. Then followed the main body, the cohorts in columns of centuries, as in the advance. The rear-guard left the camp last, following at a suitable distance; it was composed of the greatest part of cavalry and of the *milites levis armaturae* (archers, slingers), often supported by the *antesignani*, or even an entire legion.

(*b*) When the enemy had numerous cavalry and were on a march through a rebellious country, the retreat in square (*agmen quadratum*) was chosen. As a rule, all the legions formed the square, with the united baggage in the centre. The cavalry, remaining outside the square, skir-

mished around it; if it was unable to resist the enemy, the legions formed the *orbis*.

III. Flank marches. They were made in order-of-battle, and therefore for short distances only, the legions marching in a column of lines (two, *acie duplici*, or three, *acie triplici*). The baggage-train marched either on the side opposite the enemy, or followed each legion (B. G. vii. 34), especially when a considerable obstacle was between the enemy and the Roman army.

124. Crossing a stream. — (1) By fords. This method was preferred by Caesar, as it required no long preparation. When the current was very strong two lines of cavalry were stationed, — one up-stream for breaking its force, one down-stream in order to save men carried from their footing (B. G. vii. 56).

(2) By bridges of every kind. Especially noteworthy is the elaborate bridge with which Caesar twice spanned the Rhine (described B. G. iv. 16–18; cf. also vi. 9). Bridges of boats were used (B. G. vi. 6); they were protected by strong fortifications and forces (*praesidia*).

125. The battle. — 1. The offensive. (*a*) The legions. The normal order for the offensive was the triple line (*acies triplex*), the third line being designed as a reserve. The first line had to attack the enemy and to overthrow them if possible. If it did not succeed, the second line took up the attack, the third line being designed to prevent a flank movement of the enemy (cf. B. G. i. 25), and to be hurled against the hostile army at the crisis of battle (B. G. i. 25). In B. G. i. 49 we see it also employed in pitching a camp.

Where there was no need of a reserve, as in a *coup-de-main*, a double line (*acies duplex*) was sufficient (B. G. iii. 24–26). Where on the other hand both flank movements of the foe were to be feared and a necessity for a reserve was felt, we find a quadruple line (*acies quadruplex*).

(*b*) The cavalry, which was commonly placed at both the flanks of the legions, had to guard against a flank movement of the enemy, to take

if circumstances permitted the enemy in flank, and to distress the fleeing foe (B. G. i. 53; iv. 14; viii. 29). Chiefly if the cavalry consisted of troops which could not be relied upon (B. G. i. 24, 25), and also from other reasons (B. G. i. 52), it was placed behind the first cohorts of the legions.

(*c*) The light troops were mostly placed at the wings of the legions.

(*d*) The front of the line-of-battle was divided into the centre (*acies media*) and right and left wing (*cornu dextrum* and *sinistrum*). The most experienced and reliable troops were placed at the wings, and the best of all (the tenth legion in Caesar's army) was stationed on the wing which was to begin the attack.

(*e*) Before the battle commenced the general personally encouraged each legion (B. G. ii. 20), going through the whole line-of-battle (*acies instructa*).

2. The defensive. The fundamental idea of every defensive method is to delay the enemy's approach by making use of the natural obstacles which the ground affords, to weaken him meanwhile by missiles, and finally to attack him at the weakest point. Now the Roman legions were fit only for a hand-to-hand fight, and their missiles being neither very far-reaching nor very numerous, the principal thing was to select a ground which was most disadvantageous to the approaching battle-line of the enemy, and to increase the natural obstacles by art (as B. G. vii. 56, 62, 63, 64, where we have ditches, pitfalls, etc.). An excellent illustration of a Roman defensive method is given in B. G. ii. 5.

126. The Siege. — Fortified places were assailed —

(*a*) By blockade (*obsidio*).

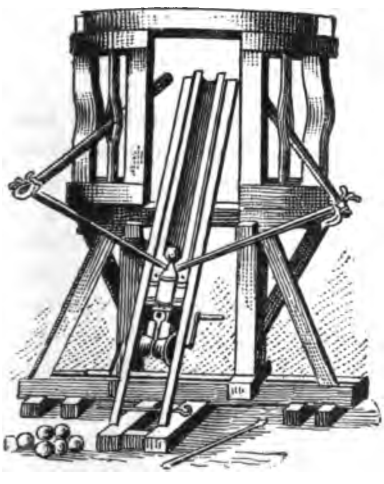
(*b*) By violent assault (*oppugnatio repentina*).

(*c*) By formal siege (*oppugnatio*).

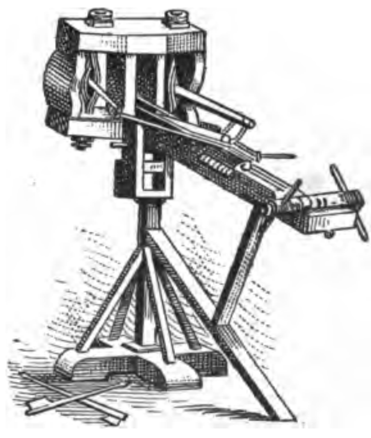
(*a*) Blockade (*obsidio*) was used against places of great strength which seemed to be poorly provided with provisions, provided their location allowed a complete environment. The most famous blockade is that of Alesia (B. G. vii. 69).

The besieged town was surrounded by fortifications (*circumvallatio*), consisting of redoubts (*castella*) at convenient places, connected by walls (*bracchia, munitiones*). Behind these fortifications the camps of the besieging army were pitched. The stronger the place and the weaker the blockading army the stronger the circumvallation was to be. (Cp. the circumvallation of Alesia with threefold ditches, a wall twelve feet high, etc.) If succor was to be feared, a second line of circumvallation facing outwards was to be built. The army camped then between the two lines (B. G. vii. 74). Small garrisons (*praesidia*) held the redoubts (*castella*), strengthened in day-time by sentries (*stationes*), in night-time by strong pickets (*excubitores*). (B. G. vii. 69.)

(*b*) Violent assault (*oppugnatio repentina*) was used against places with weak fortifications well supplied with provisions; and against strongly



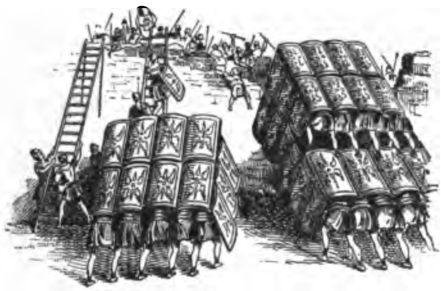
BALLISTA.



CATAPULTA.

fortified places if time pressed. The principal means for a violent assault were scaling-ladders and breaching-huts (*musculi*). Behind hurdles (*crates*) slingers and archers were as near the wall as possible in order to drive the soldiers from the ramparts. After this had been done the legionaries,

formed in several columns, rushed forward, in order to distract the enemy's attention by an attack on several points. At their head were laborers who carried the ladders and material for filling out the ditch. While a number of soldiers tried to climb up the wall, others tried to make a breach in the wall through which the place might be entered.



TESTUDO.



ARIES.

(*c*) The formal siege (*oppugnatio*) was used against strongly fortified and well-supplied places. It was often combined with (*a*) blockade (B. G. vii. 11).

127. The Agger. — The principal work for a formal siege was the mound (*agger*). It was begun at a distance of not less than about four hundred feet, the distance being dependent on the power of the hostile missiles. Its height was equal to the wall of the stronghold, or even a little higher. (Before Avaricum it was, for instance, eighty feet.) Its breadth must have been enough for a storming column, — at least fifty feet.

NOTE. — The breadth of the mound before Avaricum ("*pedes CCCXXX*") is incredible. The figures seem to be corrupt.

For the construction of the *agger* the ground had to be levelled by workmen protected by *musculi* (χελώνη χωστρίς), a sort of very strong *vineae* (movable sheds). Those who built the *agger* were guarded by *plutei* (standing shield) against missiles, while others brought the

material in covered galleries composed of a number of *vineae*. Archers and slingers posted behind *plutei* and the artillery in moving towers tried to keep the rampart free from soldiers. In a few cases *turres ambulatoriae* were placed on the mound (*agger*), (B. G. ii. 30, 31 ; viii. 41). The *agger* then was intended to give a firm, smooth roadway for the tower. As a rule, one or two (B. G. vii. 17) moving towers accompanied the *agger*. The *agger* contained much wood-work. (It was frequently set on fire, B. G. vii. 22, 24.) This wood-work was mainly logs (*arbores, materia*). It was not solid, but had holes which admitted draught (cf. B. G. vii. 24, where the mound is set on fire from below). It gradually approached the wall (B. G. vii. 24, *cum murum hostium paene contingeret*). It was erected story after story. The place near to the enemy's wall was filled out by pouring out great masses of rubbish, stones, wood, etc., brought through the galleries left in the middle of each story, after the *agger* had reached the required height.

INDUCTIVE STUDIES.

THE studies will contain (1) examples showing the method of Inductive Study, and (2) *a list of topics* for investigation. The topics may be regarded as review work. The purpose of this work is to give the student an impulse to original research.

I. The CONJUNCTION **cum** in First Book of the Gallic War.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps. 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13 (twice), 14, 16 (twice), 19, 20 (three times), 22, 23, 25, 26 (four times), 27, 31, 32, 33 (twice), 35, 36, 38, 39, 40 (four times), 41, 42 (three times), 43, 47, 50, 52 (twice), 53. In all, forty-six times.

B. CLASSIFICATION.

a. **" cum — prohibent — gerunt," 1.** **" cum — videbatur," 40.**

From *a* we observe the following: namely, the conjunction cum (1) denotes absolute time; (2) it takes the indicative mood.

b. " cum — conaretur — cogerent," 4.
" cum — nuntiatum esset," 7.
" cum — exisset," 12.
" cum — intellegerent," 13.
" cum — possent," 13.
" cum — posset," 16.
" cum — peteret," 20.
" cum — posset," 20.
" cum — teneretur — abesset — cognitus esset," 22.
" biduum supererat, cum — oporteret " = in quo tempore, 23.
" cum — inflexisset," 25.
" cum — esset pugnatum," 26.
" cum — possent," 26.
" cum — convenissent — proiecissent — petissent — iussisset," 27.
" cum — contenderent," 31.
" cum — quaereret — posset," 32.
" cum — occupavissent," 33.
" cum — vellet " (in *oratio obliqua*), 36.
" cum — processisset," 38
" cum — iussisset " (in *oratio obliqua*), 39.
" cum — tenuisset — fecisset," 40.
" cum — animadvertisset," 40.
" cum — mitterentur," 42.
" cum — fieret," 42.
" cum — conspexisset," 47.
" cum — quaeretur," 50.
" cum — animadvertisset," 52.
" cum — conversa esset," 52.
" cum — traheretur," 53.

From *b* we observe that the subjunctive mood is used without exception. The conjunction **cum** (1) takes the subjunctive mood, and (2) denotes relative time, — i. e., time present, past, or future, in connection with the time of the action of the principal verb. Or, since in numerous instances the notion of time and cause is mingled, we may say that **cum** (1) expresses the temporal idea with conjoint notion of cause, and (2) takes the subjunctive. We observe furthermore (3) that the tenses employed are the imperfect and pluperfect.

c. **" cum – praestarent," 2.**
" cum – possent," 9.
" cum – possent," 11.
" cum – accederent," 19.
" cum – teneretur," 20.
" cum – potuissent," 26.
" cum – appellatus esset," 35.
" cum – viderentur," 40.
" cum – intermitteret," 41.
" cum – polliceretur," 42.

With **praesertim.**
" praesertim cum – divideret," 33.

Perfect subjunctive with **praesertim.**
" praesertim cum – susceperit," 16.

From *c* we observe that the conjunction **cum** (1) denotes cause, and (2) takes the subjunctive mood when so used. Also it is seen (3) that the causal idea is sometimes emphasized by the adverb **praesertim.**

d. **" cum – haberet," 43.**

Perfect subjunctive.
" cum – pugnatum sit," 26.

Present subjunctive.
" cum – sint," 14.

From *d* we observe that the conjunction **cum** (1) denotes concession, — i. e., actions notwithstanding which other events occur; and (2) takes the subjunctive mood when so used.

II. Indirect Discourse, illustrated by chapter 20 of the First Book.

The exact words of the speaker are as follows: —

A.

"Do not pass any very severe sentence upon my brother. I know that these facts are true, and no one receives more pain on that account than I do. Because, when I could do a great deal by my influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and my brother Dumnorix very little on account of his youth, by my help he rose to authority and is now using the power and strength thus gained not only to lessen my influence, but almost for my own ruin. Yet I am moved by affection for my brother and by public opinion. If any very severe punishment is inflicted upon him by you, no one will think that it was done without my own desire, since I hold such a place in your friendship. And for that reason it will happen that the affections of the whole of Gaul will be turned from me."

In Latin.

B.

"Noli quid gravius in fratrem statuere. Ego scio haec esse vera, nec quisquam ex hoc plus quam ego doloris capio, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te gravius acciderit, cum ipse hunc locum amicitiae apud te teneam, nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum. Qua ex re fiet, uti totius Galliae animi a me avertantur."

The words of the speaker when indirectly quoted are as follows: —

C.

Divitiacus began to implore Caesar not to pass any very severe sentence upon his brother, (saying) that he knew that those facts were true, and no one received more pain on that account than he did. Because when he could do a great deal by his influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and his brother very little on account of his youth, by his help he had risen to authority, which power and strength he was using not only to lessen his influence, but almost for his ruin. Yet he was moved by affection for his brother and by public opinion. But if any very severe punishment should be inflicted upon him by Caesar, no one would think that it was done without his own desire, since he held such a place in Caesar's friendship. And for that reason it would happen that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be turned from him.

In Latin.

D.

Divitiacus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret. Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum. Qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.

From a study of the above we observe the following: —

1. Principal declarative clauses in indirect discourse have their verbs in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative: **scire se illa esse vera** for **ego scio**;

quemquam — se — capere for **quisquam — ego — capio**; **sese commoveri** for **commoveor**; **neminem existimaturum** for **nemo existimabit**; **futurum (esse)** for **futurum est, erit**, or **fiet**.

2. Unlike the English idiom, which changes the tense of principal verbs in indirect discourse from present to past after a verb of saying containing a past notion, the Latin language employs the present infinitive, the time of which is relative to that of the verb on which the *oratio obliqua* depends. E. g., He said that he knew that those things were true = **Dixit scire** (not **scivisse**) **se illa esse** (not **fuisse**) **vera**.

3. The verb in all subordinate clauses is in the subjunctive: **posset, crevisset, uteretur, accidisset, teneret, averterentur**. From B we see which of these verbs would be in the indicative in the direct narrative.

4. The tense of **coepit** throws the verbs of the subordinate clauses into the secondary tenses, i. e., imperfect and pluperfect.

5. The imperative becomes the subjunctive: **statueret** for **noli statuere**.

6. The first person is changed to the third: **ego** to **se** (**scire se, se capere, se commoveri, a se averterentur**); **meus** to **suus** (**ad suam perniciem, sua voluntate**); **ego ipse** to **is ipse** (**ipse posset, ipse teneret**); **haec** to **illa** (**illa esse vera**); **hoc** to **eo** (**ex eo plus**); **hunc** to **eum** (**eum locum amicitiae**).

7. The second person is changed to the third: **statue** to **statueret** (**quid statueret**); **te** to **Caesare** (**a Caesare accidisset**); **te** to **eum** (**apud eum teneret**).

8. In B we observe that **accidisset** would be the future perfect in the direct discourse, denoting the action as completed at the future time denoted by **existimabit**, — a nicety of expression which the English language does not exhibit. Notice the tense used in the *oratio obliqua*.

III. The Gerund and Gerundive in Second Book of the Gallic War.

A. Occurrence of the Gerund. Chaps. 1, 6 (twice), 7, 9, 10, 12, 17, 21 (three times), 24. In all, twelve times.

B. Occurrence of the Gerundive. Chaps. 1, 2 (impersonal construction), 5 (impersonal construction), 7, 8, 9, 10 (three times), 17, 19, 20 (nine times), 21 (five times), 28. In all, twenty-six times.

C. Classification.

a. Genitive of the gerund.

"**coniurandi causas**," 1.
"**consistendi potestas**," 6.
"**finem oppugnandi**," 6.
"**studium propugnandi**," 7.
"**transeundi initium**," 9.
"**pugnandi causā**," 10.
"**praedandi causā**," 17.
"**cohortandi causā**," 21.
"**pugnandi tempus**," 21.
"**praedandi causā**," 24.

b. Accusative of the gerund.

"**ad oppugnandum**," 12.

"**ad dimicandum**," 21.

c. Nominative of the gerundive.

"**Caesari omnia erant agenda**," 20.

"**vexillum proponendum**," 20.

"**signum tuba dandum**," 20.

"**revocandi milites**," 20.

"**(milites) arcessendi**," 20.

"**acies instruenda**," 20.

"**milites cohortandi**," 20.

"**signum dandum**," 20.

d. Genitive of the gerundive.

"**potiundi oppidi**," 7.

"**committendi proelii**," 19.

"**aggeris petendi**," 20.

"**committendi proelii signum**," 21.

e. Accusative of the gerundive.

"**non omittendum sibi concilium Nervii existimaverunt**," 17.

"**ad homines conducendos**," 1.

"**ad aciem instruendam**," 8.

"**ad bellum gerundum**," 9.

"**ad defendendos eos**," 10.

"**ad insignia accommodanda**," 21.

"**ad galeas induendas**," 21.

"**ad tegimenta detrudenda**," 21.

f. Ablative of the gerundive.

"**de expugnando oppido**," 10.

"**de flumine transeundo**," 10.

"**in quaerendis suis**," 21.

"**in commemoranda calamitate**," 28.

g. Impersonal construction

"**dubitandum non existimavit**," 3.

"**confligendum sit**," 3.

D. Conclusion.

From *a* and *d* we learn that the genitive of the gerund and gerundive depends on a noun, like any other genitive on its noun.

The examples in *b* and *e* exhibit a fondness to employ the preposition **ad** with the accusative to express purpose, readiness, and ability.

In the examples in *c* and *g*, and first example in *e*, we see the notion of necessity, duty, or obligation thrust into the gerundive.

From first example in *c*, **Caesari omnia erant agenda**, and first example in *e*, **omittendum sibi**, we observe that the **nomen agentis**, or the principal actor, is put in the dative case.

From *f* it is seen that the ablative with the prepositions **de** and **in** is of frequent occurrence.

The examples in *d*, *e*, and *f* show that when the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive formation is preferred; when the gerundive is used, the noun,

which would have been the direct object of the gerund, takes the construction which the gerund would have had.

From the first example in *d* and second example in *f* we notice that even deponent verbs and intransitive verbs allow the gerundive formation.

In studying the three following topics the student is expected to deduce as many principles as the classifications admit of.

IV. The Ablative Case in the Third Book of the Gallic War. Chaps. 16–20.

A. Occurrence. Chaps. 16 (six times), 17 (nineteen times), 18 (seventeen times), 19 (nine times), 20 (sixteen times). In all, sixty-seven times.

B. Classification.

a. "**quo proelio,**" **16**.
"**militum vocibus,**" **17**.
"**magnis praemiis pollicitationibus,**" **18**.
"**quibus angustiis prematur,**" **18**.
"**quibus fossas compleant,**" **18**.
"**quo plurimum valebant,**" **20**.

Ablative of means.

b. "**a barbaris ius conservaretur,**" **16**.
"**ab iis erat provisum,**" **18**.
"**ab his sit concessum,**" **18**.

Ablative of Agency. **nomen agentis** always takes the preposition **ab**.

c. "**cum his copiis,**" **17**.
"**cum Viridovice**" (friendly sense), **17**.
"**cum tanta multitudine**" (hostile sense), **17**.

Ablative of accompaniment; always with the preposition **cum**. The classical distinction between the ablative of manner and the ablative with **cum** is, that **cum** thrusts into the ablative the notion of addition or unexpectedness; e. g., **cum celeritate** would denote an additional quality or one which would not be expected.

d. Ablative with preposition **ab**.

1. See *b*.

2. "**ab agricultura et cotidiano labore,**" **17**.

Ablative of separation.

3 "**a Caesare acceperat,**" **17**. | "**ab imo acclivis,**" **19**.

Ablative of source.

e. Ablative with preposition **ex**.

1. **"ex quibus exercitum coegerat,"** 17.
"ex iis quos habebat," 18.
"ex tertia parte Galliae," 20.

Ablative of separation; often equivalent to a partitive genitive. This substitution of a preposition for the ending of the genitive case (cf. **ex his unus** for **horum unus**) is an anticipation of the breaking down of the inflectional system. The substitution of the preposition **de** in this sense is perpetuated in the Romance languages; cf. French *de*.

2. **"ex Gallia,"** 17.
"ex castris," 18.
"duces ex concilio dimittunt," 18.

Ablative of place from which. Notice that **ex** denotes "from the interior of."

3. **"ex fuga evaserant,"** 19.

Ablative of means; originally an ablative of source, but the source was looked upon as the means. A similar confusion of source and means is found in some Greek writers in their use of **ἐξ** for **ὑπὸ**.

f. **Tolosa et Narbone,"** 20.

Ablative of place from which, without a preposition; mostly confined to names of towns.

g. Ablative with preposition **de**.

1. **"ea de causa,"** 17.

Ablative of source; metaphorically.

2. **"de navali pugna, de victoria,"** 19.

de, "concerning."

h. **"in Venetis,"** 17.
"in iis locis," 20.
"in itinere agmen adorti," 20.
"in convalle in insidiis," 20.

Ablative with preposition **in**; place in which.

i. **"spatio duum milium,"** 17.
"idoneo loco," 17 (like **loco** are **locis, terra marique, dextra, laeva**, etc.).
"castris sese tenebat," 17.
"duabus portis," 19.

Ablative of place in which, without a preposition; chiefly when the place is regarded also as the means.

j. **"auxilii causa,"** 18.
"auxilii ferendi causa," 18.
"his rebus adducti," 18.
"opportunitate, inscientia, defatigatione, virtute, exercitatione," 19.
"latitudine, et multitudine," 19.

Ablative of cause.

k. "**his paucis diebus,**" 17.
"**proxima nocte,**" 18.
"**uno tempore,**" 19.
"**eodem tempore,**" 20.

Ablative of time when.

l. "**magno cursu contenderunt,**" 19.

Ablative of manner.

m. "**integris viribus milites,**" 19.

Ablative of characteristic or quality. The main distinction which can be observed between the ablative of quality and the genitive of quality is, that the genitive denotes the permanent condition, but the ablative the assumption of a new quality or a temporary state.

Notice **viribus** is a temporary condition, while "**omnes gravioris aetatis**" (chap. 16) shows a permanent state.

n. "**pro perfuga,**" 18 (equivalent to a noun in apposition).

Ablative with preposition **pro**.

o. "**eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit,**" 16.
"**quo diligentius ius conservaretur,**" 16 for **ut** with comparative degree to explain the comparison = **ut eo**.
"**paucis ante annis,**" 20.

Ablative denoting degree of comparison.

p. "**quibus amissis,**" 16
"**omni senatu necato,**" 16.
"**senatu suo interfecto,**" 17.
"**productis copiis,**" 17.
"**praesertim eo absente**" (the idea of cause, emphasized by **praesertim**), 17.
"**aequo loco**" (with an adjective for a participle; condition strengthened by **nisi**), 17.
"**opportunitate aliqua data,**" 17.
"**hac confirmata opinione,**" 18.
"**qua re concessa,**" 18.
"**ut explorata victoria**" (**ut** assisting a condition = contrary to fact), 18.
"**sarmentis virgultisque conlectis,**" 18.
"**impeditis hostibus,**" 19.
"**exercitu pulso,**" 19.
"**impedimentis amissis,**" 19.
"**re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis viris evocatis,**" 20.
"**cuius adventu cognito,**" 20.
"**magnis copiis coactis equitatu,**" 20.
"**equitatu suo pulso,**" 20
"**insequentibus nostris,**" 20.

Ablative absolute. Especially common, for the Latin language was handicapped in having no perfect active participle. The present active participle was used with much more exactness than in English, being never employed in the best writers unless the time of the action expressed by it is the same as that of the verb. Hence

to express the past notion conveyed by the present or perfect active participle in English the Latin language must use (1) a clause introduced by **cum, postquam,** etc.; or (2) the perfect participle of a deponent verb; or (3) the ablative absolute.

C. Let the student establish as many rules as possible from the above classification.

V. The Subjunctive Mood in the Fourth Book of the Gallic War. Chaps. 22–31.

A. Occurrence. Chaps. 22 (five times), 23 (seven times), 24 (once), 25 (four times), 26 (once), 27 (five times), 28 (four times), 29 (three times), 30 (once), 31 (twice). In all, thirty-three times.

B. Classification

a. "**legati qui se excusarent**" (**qui** = **ut ii**), 22.
"**qui pollicerentur,**" 22.
"**ut administrarentur,**" 23.
"**ut ea res eveniret,**" 25.
"**ne tantum dedecus admitteretur,**" 25.
"**ut ignosceretur petiverunt,**" 27.

Subjunctive of purpose.

b. "**quo minus venire possent**" (after verb of hindering), 22.
"**uti telum adigi posset,**" 23.
"**ut nulla cursum tenere posset,**" 28.
"**sed aliae eodem referrentur,**" 28.
"**ad partem insulae deicerentur,**" 28.
"**accidit ut esset luna plena,**" 29.
"**ut navigari commode posset effecit,**" 31.

Subjunctive of result.

c. "**naves quibus reportari possent,**" 29.

Subjunctive in relative clause of characteristic. This is a true subjunctive of result, the action of the verb being the result of other actions or qualities belonging to the antecedent of the relative; e.g., **nemo est qui noceat** = *there is no one who so conducts himself, or is of such a character, that he harms.*

d. "**quod bellum fecissent,**" 22. | "**questus quod bellum intulissent,**" 27.

Subjunctive with **quod**, denoting cause on the authority of another than the writer, or an assumed reason.

e. "**ut quae motum haberent**" (emphasized by **ut**), 23.

Subjunctive in relative clause expressing cause.

f. **"ut ratio, maritimae res postularent," 23.**
Subjunctive by the attraction of another subjunctive clause.

g. **"quae cognosset et quae fieri vellet ostendit," 23.**
Subjunctive in indirect question.

h. **"quae imperasset, facturos," 22.** | **"quaeque imperasset, facturos," 27.**
Subjunctive in subordinate clause in indirect discourse. In the direct narrative **imperasset** would have been in the future perfect, to show that the command will be given before the obedience begins.

i. **"dum reliquae naves convenirent, exspectavit," 23.**
Subjunctive with **dum**, denoting futurity and purpose.

j. **"cum esset administratum," 23.**
"cum tela conicerent, incitarent," 24.
"reliquae cum essent inutiles," 29.
"cum administraretur," 31.

Subjunctive with **cum**, denoting cause.

k. **"cum voce magna dixisset," 25.**
"hos cum conspexissent," 25.
"quod cum animadvertisset," 26.
"quae cum appropinquarent et viderentur," 28.
"cum equites intellegerent, cognoscerent," 30.

Subjunctive with **cum**, denoting relative time.

l. **"cum mandata deferret," 27.** | **"cum pacem petissent," 27.**
Subjunctive with **cum**, denoting concession.

C. Let the student establish as many rules for the subjunctive mood as he can, based upon the above classification.

VI. What we know of the Germans from the Text of Caesar.

A. For places where the words "Germania" and "Germani" occur, the student should consult the Geographical Index.

B. Principal facts about this people.

a. The training for war. i. 36.
b. The personal appearance and prowess. i. 39.
c. The method of engagement in cavalry battles. i. 48.
d. The superstition in vogue in regard to the expediency of entering battle i. 50.

e. The manner of fighting in battle. i. 52.

f. The method of life; means of protecting their own boundaries; proceedings in time of war; government in time of peace; morality; strength of the nation. vi. 23, 24.

C. Let the student construct an historical account of the Germans by filling out the references given above, and also by further investigation. (See A.)

VII. Additional Exercises.

In the following topics the places of occurrence in first four books are given to assist the student. The portion of text to be assigned is left to the discretion of the instructor.

1. debeo. oportet.

a. **debeo. — debeant,** i. 17. **debere,** i. 44, 45. **deberet,** ii. 27. **debuit,** ii. 33. **debuerint,** i. 11.

b. **oportet. — oportere,** i. 34, 36, 44; iii. 18, 24; iv. 29. **oportebat,** i. 4. **oporteret,** i. 16, 23, 44, 45 (twice); ii. 20.

2. licet.

licet, iv. 1. **liceat,** i. 7. **licere,** i. 42; iii. 10; iv. 8. **liceret,** i. 30, 31, 35, 39.

3. coepit.

coepit, i. 20, 26; ii. 10, 12, 23; iii. 3, 21; iv. 7, 14, 25. **coeperunt,** i. 15, 23, 25 (twice), 32, 54; ii. 6, 13, 19, 26; iii. 23, 26, 28; iv. 27, 30. **coeperint,** ii. 5. **coeperant,** i. 26; iii. 12. **coepisset,** iii. 13. **coepissent,** iii. 5, 24. **coeptus est,** iv. 18. **coepti sunt,** ii. 6. **coepta erat,** iv. 18. **coepta essent,** i. 47; ii. 2. Judging from the examples just cited when is coepisse used in passive? Note the voice of the complementary infinitive used in last four cases.

4. proprior and proximus.

propius, i. 42, 46; iv. 9, 11, 28. **proximus,** iii. 7. **proximum,** i. 22, 24. **proximo,** i. 50. **pröxima,** i. 40; ii. 12, 35; iii. 18. **proximo,** i. 44. **proximi,** i. 1, 54; ii. 3, 12, 27; iii. 11. **proximas,** i. 12. **proxima** (acc.), iii. 12. **proximis,** i. 3; ii. 33; iv. 25. **proxime,** i. 24; ii. 8, 19; iii. 29.

5. aut. sive. vel.

a. **aut,** i. 1 (twice), 13 (four times), 15, 19 (twice), 22, 27, 31 (twice), 34 (twice), 39 (three times), 40 (eight times), 43, 47 (twice), 48, 53; ii. 25, 30, 33 (twice);

iii. 6, 14, 16, 17, 22 (twice), 26; iv. 1, 2, 5, 16, 17, 20 (twice), 24 (twice), 29 (twice), 30.

b. **sive,** i. 12 (twice), 23, 27 (twice); iii. 13, 17.

c. **vel,** i. 6 (twice), 19 (twice), 31 (three times); iii. 14; iv. 7 (twice), 16.

6. postquam. cum.

a. **postquam,** i. 24, 27; ii. 5; iii. 15.

b. **cum,** i. 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13 (twice), 14, 16, 19, 20 (three times), 22, 23, 25, 26 (four times), 27, 31, 32, 33 (twice), 35, 36, 38, 39, 40 (four times), 41, 42 (three times), 43, 47, 50, 52 (twice), 53; ii. 1, 2, 3, 4 (twice), 6 (twice), 8, 11 (twice), 13 (twice), 15, 16, 17 (four times), 19, 20, 22, 24 (three times), 25, 26 (three times), 27, 28, 29 (three times), 33 (twice); iii. 1 (twice), 2 (twice), 3 (twice), 5, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 (twice), 15 (three times), 16, 17, 20 (twice), 21, 22, 24, 25 (twice), 28, 29; iv. 2, 3, 4 (twice), 5, 6, 7, 11 (twice), 12 (three times), 14, 15 (three times), 16 (three times), 23, 24, 25 (twice), 26, 27 (twice), 28, 29, 30, 31, 32 (twice), 33, 37 (twice), 38.

7. dum.

i. 7, 11, 27, 39, 46; iii. 17; iv. 13, 22, 23, 32, 34.

8. ut. ne.

a. **ut,** i. 2 (twice), 3 (three times), 4 (twice), 5 (twice), 6 (twice), 7 (twice), 9 (three times), 10, 11, 12, 13 (four times), 16, 19, 20 (twice), 22 (three times), 25 (four times), 26, 28 (twice), 29, 31 (three times), 33 (twice), 34, 35 (twice), 36, 38 (three times), 39 (four times), 40, 41 (twice), 42, 43 (five times), 44 (twice), 46 (twice), 47, 48 (twice), 49, 50, 51, 52; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9 (twice), 10 (twice), 11 (twice), 14, 17 (three times), 18 (three times), 21, 22 (three times), 23, 25, 26, 27 (five times), 28 (twice), 32 (twice), 33 (four times); iii. 2, 3, 4 (twice), 8 (twice), 9, 12, 13 (twice), 14 (three times), 15 (three times), 17 (twice), 18, 19 (three times), 20, 21, 22, 26 (twice); iv. 1, 2 (twice), 3, 11 (four times), 12, 13 (twice), 16 (twice), 17 (three times), 19 (three times), 21 (three times), 23 (three times), 25, 27, 28, 29, 31, 33, 35.

b. **ne,** i. 4, 9, 13 (twice), 17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31 (twice), 35, 37, 38, 42 (twice), 43, 46, 49, 51 (twice); ii. 1, 5, 8, 21, 26, 31, 32, 33; iii. 10, 11, 26, 29; iv. 6, 9, 11 (twice), 13, 25.

9. ante.

i. 3, 6, 16, 18, 21, 31 (three times), 33, 44, 49, 50; ii. 12, 22, 32, 33 (twice), 35; iii. 20 (twice); iv. 9, 12, 35, 36.

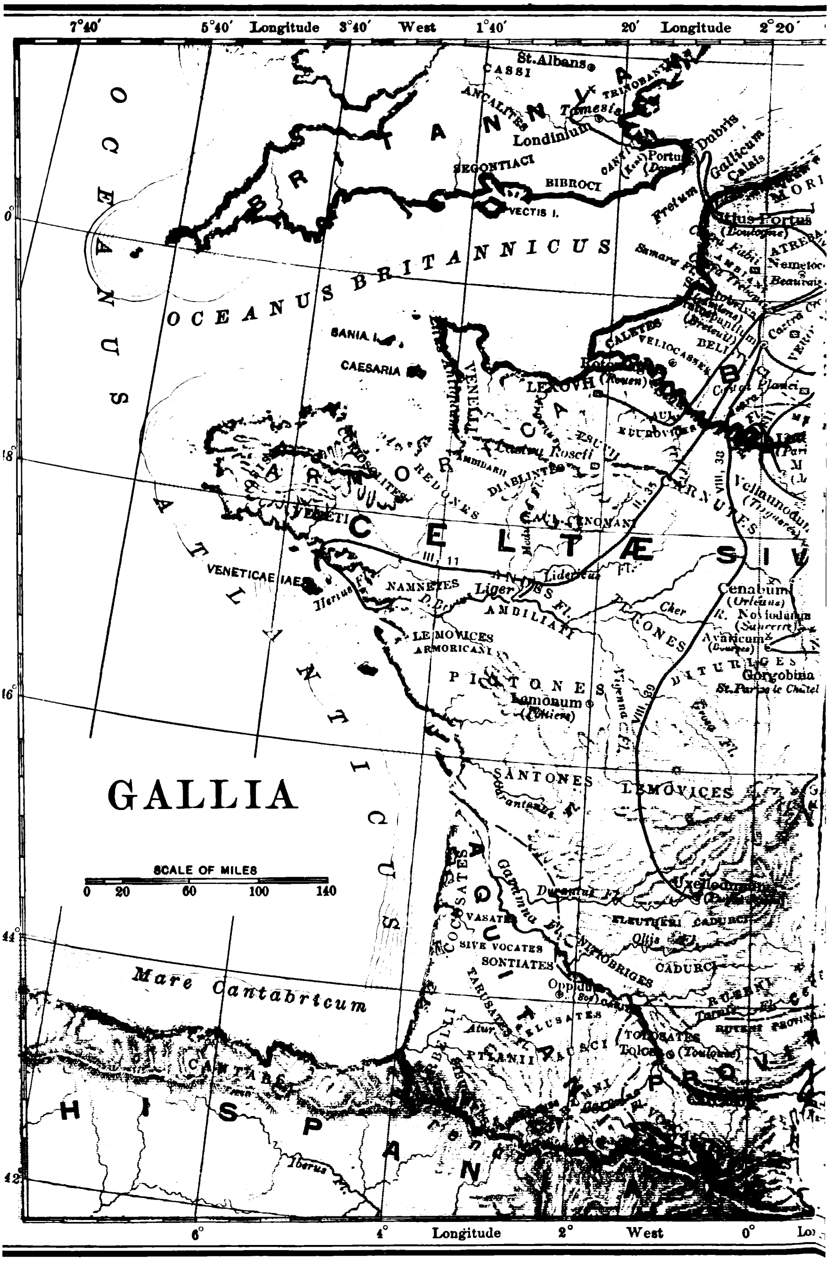
10. apud.

i. 2, 9, 17, 18 (twice), 16, 20 (twice), 31, 33, 40, 47, 50; ii. 2, 4, 7, 14; iii. 9, 21; iv. 1, 2, 8, 13, 15, 18.

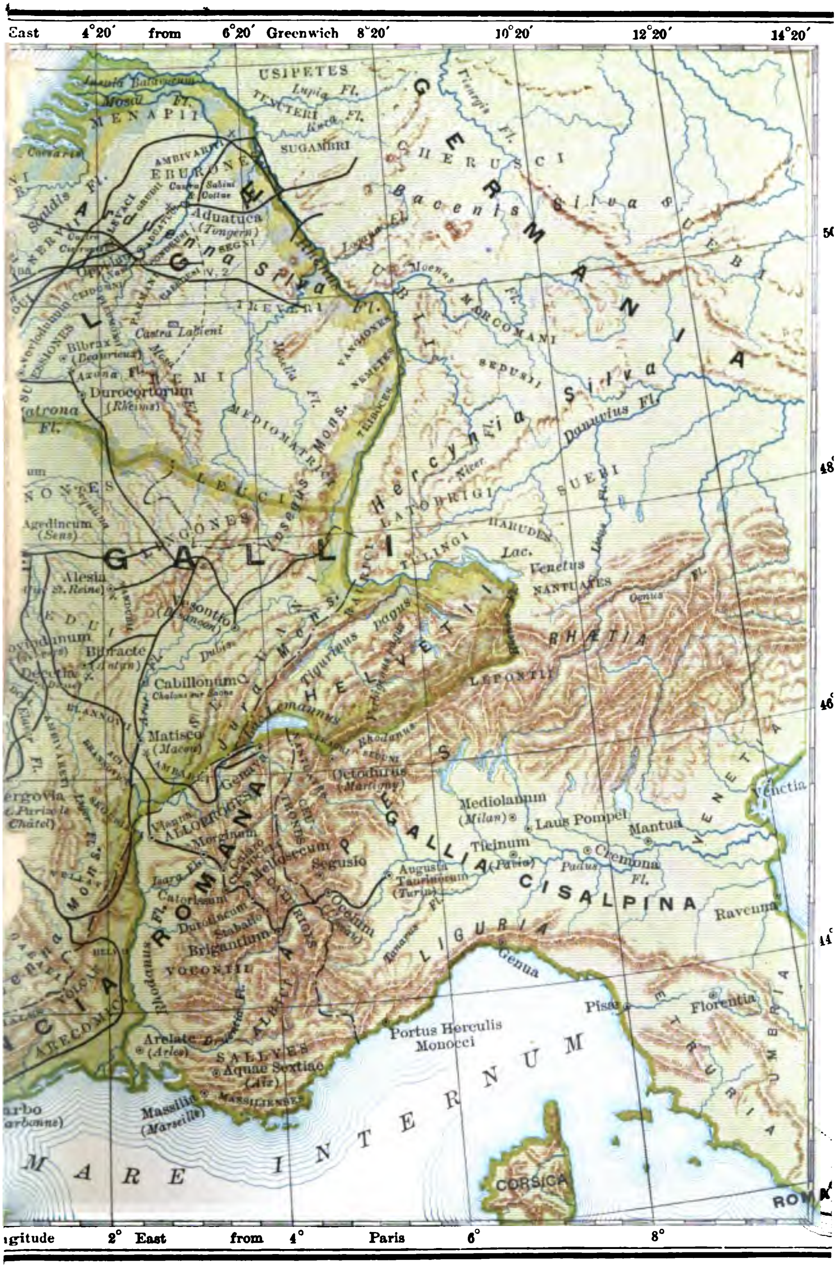
In the remaining topics no help is given, as the work should be pursued independently. The student should collect examples from the text, classify them, and establish as many principles or truths as he is able from the material which he has gathered.

11. Conjunctions.
12. { et. atque. que }
13. The conjunction cum.
14. antequam.
15. Particles.
16. Adjectives
17. Adverbs.
18. Appositives.
19. The nominative.
20. The genitive.
21. The dative.
22. Dative of agent so called.
23. Two datives.
24. The dative after verbs of persuading.
25. The accusative.
26. The accusative of extent of space and duration of time.
27. The accusative of limit of motion.
28. The ablative.
29. The ablative absolute.
30. The ablative of place.
31. Prepositions.
32. { ab. de. ex }
33. { ad. in. }
34. The objective genitive.
35. The locative case.
36. The comparative degree.
37. Comparatives and superlatives.
38. Noun formation.
39. Irregular nouns.
40. Collective nouns.
41. Abstract nouns.
42. Compounds.
43. Derivatives.
44. Numerals.
45. Negatives.
46. Classification of verbs.
47. Conjugation.
48. Irregular verbs.
49. The infinitive.
50. The supine.
51. The participle.
52. Gerund and gerundive.
53. The subjunctive mood.
54. Subjunctive of result.
55. Subjunctive of purpose.
56. Conditional sentences.
57. Commands and desires.
58. Mixed purpose or result.
59. The imperfect tense.
60. The perfect tense.
61. The present tense.
62. The sequence of tenses.
63. The active voice.
64. The passive voice.
65. Deponent verbs.
66. Impersonal verbs.
67. The periphrastic conjugation.
68. Methods of expressing futurity.
69. Methods of expressing necessity.
70. Methods of expressing cause.
71. Methods of expressing concession.
72. Indirect question.
73. Indirect discourse.
74. Construction after verbs of commanding.
75. Construction after verbs of fearing.
76. Verbs of remembering, etc.
77. Relative clauses.
78. Relative adverbs.
79. Conditional relative sentences.
80. Expressions of time.
81. Methods of denoting possession.
82. The Belgae.
83. The Boii.

84. Gaul.
85. The Helvetii.
86. Ariovistus.
87. Dumnorix.
88. The Allobroges.
89. Britain.
90. Helvetia.
91. Correlatives.
92. Classification of clauses
93. The Roman Calendar.
94. The predicate.
95. The style of Caesar.
96. Figures of speech.
97. Asyndeton.
98. Ellipsis.
99. Periphrasis.



GALLIA
SCALE OF MILES
0 20 60 100 140
7°40′ 5°40′ Longitude 3°40′ West 1°40′ 20′ Longitude 2°20′
6° 4° Longitude 2° West 0°
OCEANUS
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
ATLANTICUS
Mare Cantabricum
BRITANNIA
CELTÆ
AQUITANIA
HISPANIA
St. Albans
CASSI
TRINOBANTES
ANCALITES
Tamesis
Londinium
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
CANTII
Dubris
Fretum Gallicum
Calais
VECTIS I.
Portus Itius
(Boulogne)
SANIA I.
CAESARIA
CALETES
VELIOCASSES
BELLOVACI
Rotomagus
(Rouen)
LEXOVII
VENELLI
AULERCI
EBUROVICES
ESUVII
ARMORICA
CURIOSOLITES
REDONES
DIABLINTES
Castra Rosci
VENETI
CENOMANI
CARNUTES
VENETICAE IAE
NAMNETES
Liger Fl.
ANDES
ANDES ANDILIATI
TURONES
Cenabum
(Orléans)
Noviodunum
Avaricum
(Bourges)
BITURIGES
Gorgobina
LE MOVICES ARMORICANI
PICTONES
Lemonum
(Poitiers)
SANTONES
LEMOVICES
Garumna Fl.
Uxellodunum
VASATES
SIVE VOCATES
SONTIATES
NITIOBRIGES
CADURCI
ELEUTHERI CADURCI
RUTENI
TOLOSATES
Tolosa (Toulouse)
ELUSATES
TARUSATES
COCOSSATES
Atur Fl.
PTIANII
AUSCI
CANTABRI
Iberus Fl.


East 4°20′ from 6°20′ Greenwich 8°20′ 10°20′ 12°20′ 14°20′
GERMANIA
CHERUSCI
USIPETES
TENCTERI
SUGAMBRI
MENAPII
EBURONES
Aduatuca
(Tongern)
TREVERI
VANGIONES
NEMETES
MEDIOMATRICI
TRIBOCES
LEUCI
LINGONES
GALLI
Hercynia Silva
Danuvius Fl.
Moenus
MARCOMANI
SEDUSII
SUEBI
LATOBRIGI
HARUDES
TULINGI
Lac. Venetus
NANTUATES
RHAETIA
HELVETII
LEPONTII
Vesontio
(Besançon)
Alesia
Bibracte
(Autun)
Cabillonum
Chalons sur Saône
Matisco
(Macon)
Genava
Lac. Lemannus
Jura Mons
Octodurus
(Martigny)
Mediolanum
(Milan)
Laus Pompei
Mantua
Ticinum
(Pavia)
Cremona
Padus Fl.
Augusta Taurinorum
(Turin)
GALLIA CISALPINA
Ravenna
Venetia
VENETIA
LIGURIA
Genua
Pisae
Florentia
ETRURIA
UMBRIA
ALLOBROGES
Vienna
Segusio
Brigantium
VOCONTII
Rhodanus Fl.
Arelate
(Arles)
SALLYES
Aquae Sextiae
(Aix)
Massilia
(Marseille)
MASSILIENSES
Portus Herculis Monoeci
Narbo
(Narbonne)
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
Bibrax
Durocortorum
(Rheims)
REMI
Agedincum
(Sens)
AEDUI
Castra Labieni
Axona Fl.
Mosa Fl.
Arar Fl.
ROMA
Longitude 2° East from 4° Paris 6° 8°

C. IŪLIĪ CAESARIS

DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

COMMENTĀRIUS PRĪMUS.

---

1. A word which the student meets for the first time is printed in the **full-faced** type. (The first occurrence of different stems is also treated in the same way, e. g. **est** and **fuit**.)

2. After its first occurrence every word is put into ordinary type. The student can therefore, by a glance at a page, realize what words he has met already in his reading.

1. Description of Gaul.



1. [1]**Gallia est omnis** [2]**dīvīsa in partēs trēs,** [3]**quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam,** quī **ipsōrum** [4]**linguā** [5]**Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. hī** omnēs [6]linguā, **īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.** Gallōs **ab** Aquitānīs **Garumna flūmen, ā** Belgīs **Mātrona et Sēquana** [7]dīvidit. hōrum omnium **fortissimī** sunt Belgae, **proptereā quod** ā **cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant** atque ea, quae ad [8]**effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important, proxim**īque sunt [9]**Germānīs,** quī **trāns Rhēnum** incolunt, quibus**cum continenter bellum gerunt.**

1. [1] *Gallia,* Introd. No. 72, and Vocabulary. [2] *divisa,* H. 550, N. 2; A. & G. 291, *b*; G. 438. [3] *quarum,* H. 397; A. & G. 216; G. 367. [4] H. 418; A. & G. 248, *c*; G. 401. [5] *Celtae,* Introd. No. 48. [6] *lingua,* H. 424; A. & G. 253; G. 397; Introd. No. 73. [7] *dividit,* H. 463, II, 3; A. & G. 205, *b*; G. 211, R. 1. [8] *effeminandos,* H. 544; A. & G. 300; G. 427. [9] *Germanis,* H. 391, 1; A. & G. 234, *a*; G. 359. Introd. No. 74 and Vocabulary.

quā **dē causā Helvētii quoque** [10]**reliquōs** Gallōs **virtūte praecēdunt**, quod **ferē cotīdiānis proeliis** cum Germānīs **contendunt, cum aut** [11]**suīs** [12]**fīnibus** eōs **prohibent,** aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. eōrum ūna pars, quam [13]Gallōs **obtinēre** [14]**dictum** est, **initium capit** ā flūmine **Rhodanō; continētur** Garumnā flūmine, **Ōceanō,** fīnibus Belgārum; **attingit etiam** ab **Sēquanīs** et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; **vergit** ad **septentriōnēs.** Belgae ab **extrēmis** Galliae fīnibus **oriuntur;** pertinent ad **inferiōrem** partem flūminis Rhēnī; **spectant** in septentriōnēs et orientem **sōlem. Aquitānia** [15]ā Garumnā [16]flūmine ad **Pȳrēnaeōs mōntēs** et ad eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad **Hispāniam,** pertinet; spectat inter **occāsum** sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The geography of Gaul. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The ablative of specification. (4.) The dative after adjectives. (5.) The preposition regularly used with the ablative of accompaniment. (6.) The reflexive pronoun. (7.) The idiom *reliquos Gallos.* (8.) The impersonal construction. (9.) The different uses of the preposition *ad* in the chapter.

2–29. The Helvetian War.

The ambitious designs of the Helvetii under Orgetorix.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē **nōbilissimus** et **dītissimus fuit Orgetorix.** is **M. Messālā** et M. **Pisōne** [1]**cōnsulibus** [2]**rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit** et [3]**cīvitātī persuāsit,** [4]**ut** dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus **cōpiīs** [5]**exi-**

1. [10] *reliquos,* H. 440, 2, N. 1, 2; A. & G. 193; G. 291, R. 2. [11] *suis,* H. 449, 1; A. & G. 196; G. 309, 1. [12] *finibus,* H. 414; A. & G. 243; G. 390. [13] *Gallos obtinere,* H. 523, 1; 535; A. & G. 272; G. 528. [14] *dictum est,* H. 538; A. & G. 270; G. 535. [15] *a Garumna,* H. 415; A. & G. 244; G. 390. [16] *flumine,* H. 363; A. & G. 184; G. 321.

2. [1] *consulibus,* H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, *a*; G. 409. [2] *regni,* H. 396, III; A. & G. 217; G. 363, 2. [3] *civitati,* H. 385, II; A. & G. 227; G. 346, 2. [4] *ut—exirent,* H. 498; A. & G. 331; G. 546. [5] *exirent,* H. 493, 1; 461; A. & G. 286; 205, *c*, 1; G. 510.

rent: **perfacile** [6]esse, cum virtūte [7]omnibus [8]**praestārent, tōtīus** Galliae [9]**imperiō potīrī**. id hōc **facilius** eīs persuāsit, quod **undique locī nātūrā** Helvētiī continentur: ūnā **ex** parte flūmine Rhēnō, **lātissimō** atque **altissimō**, quī **agrum** Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; **alterā** ex parte mōnte **Iūrā** altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā **lacū Lemannō** et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. hīs **rēbus** [10]**fīēbat,** ut et **minus lātē** [11]**vagārentur,** et minus facile **fīnitimīs** bellum **īnferre possent**; quā ex parte **hominēs** [12]**bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur**. **prō multitūdine autem** hominum et prō **glōriā** bellī atque **fortitūdinis angustōs** [13]sē fīnēs **habēre arbitrābantur,** quī in **longitūdinem** [14]**mīlia** [15]**passuum** CCXL, **in lātitūdinem** CLXXX **patēbant.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The superlative degree. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The objective genitive. (4.) The construction after *persuasit*. (5.) The omission of the verb which governs the indirect discourse. (6.) The dative after compounds. (7.) The case employed after *potior*. (8.) The accusative of extent of space.

The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix is chosen to carry out their plans.

3. Hīs rēbus **adductī** et **auctōritāte** Orgetorigis **permōtī cōnstituērunt** ea, quae ad **proficīscendum** [1]pertinērent, **comparāre, iūmentōrum** et **carrōrum** [2]**quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs** quam māximās facere, ut in **itinere** cōpia

2. [6] *esse*, H. 523; A. & G. 336; 330, *e*; G. 650. [7] *omnibus*, H. 386; A. & G. 228; G. 347. [8] *praestarent*, H. 517; A. & G. 326; G. 586. [9] *imperio*, H. 421; A. & G. 249; G. 407. [10] *fiebat*, H. 468; A. & G. 277; G. 231. [11] *vagarentur*, H. 501, I; A. & G. 332, *a*; G. 553, 3. [12] *bellandi*, H. 399, I; 542, I; A. & G. 218, *a*; 298; G. 428. [13] *se*, H. 449; A. & G. 196; G. 309. [14] *milia*, H. 178; 379; A. & G. 94, *e*; 257; G. 95, R. 3; 335. [15] *passuum*, H. 396, IV; A. & G. 216; G. 367.

3. [1] *pertinerent*, H. 524; A. & G. 340; G. 628. [2] *quam maximum*, H. 170, 2; A. & G. 93, *b*; G. 303, R. 1.

frūmenti [8] **suppeteret,** cum proximīs cīvitātibus **pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre.** ad eās **rēs** [4] **cōnficiendās biennium** sibi **satis** esse **dūxērunt:** in tertium **annum profectiōnem** [5] lēge cōnfīrmant. ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix **dēligitur.** is sibi **lēgātiōnem** ad cīvitātēs **suscēpit.** in eō itinere persuādet [6] **Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō,** Sēquanō, cūius **pater** rēgnum in Sēquanīs **multōs** [7] annōs obtinuerat et **ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus** appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā [8] **occupāret,** quod pater **ante** habuerat; **itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Dīvitiacī,** quī eō [9] **tempore prīncipātum** in cīvitāte [10] obtinēbat **āc** māximē **plēbī acceptus** erat, ut **idem cōnārētur,** persuādet eīque **fīliam** suam in **mātrimōnium dat.** perfacile [11] factū [12] esse **illīs probat** cōnāta **perficere,** propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium [13] obtentūrus esset: **nōn** esse **dubium, quīn** tōtīus [14] Galliae **plūrimum** Helvētiī [15] possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque **exercitū** illīs rēgna **conciliātūrum** cōnfīrmat. hāc **ōrātiōne** adductī inter sē **fidem** et **iūsiūrandum** dant et [16] rēgnō occupātō **per** trēs **potentissimōs** āc **firmissimōs** populōs tōtīus [17] Galliae sēsē potīrī posse **spērant.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The superlative with *quam*. (2.) The subjunctive of purpose. (3) The gerundive construction. (4.) The accusative of duration of time. (5.) The historical present. (6.) The ablative of time. (7.) The datives in this chapter. (8.) The formation *factu*. (9.) The genitive after *potior*.

3. [3] *suppeteret*, H. 497, II; A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1. [4] *conficiendas*, H. 544; A. & G. 300; G. 427. [5] *lege*, H. 418; A. & G. 248, *c*; G. 401. [6] *Castico*, H. 385, II; A. & G. 227; G. 346, 2. [7] *annos*, H. 379; A. & G. 256; G. 336. [8] *occuparet*, H. 499, 3; A. & G. 331; G. 546. [9] *tempore*, H. 429; A. & G. 256; G. 393. [10] *obtinebat*, H. 468; A. & G. 277; G. 231. [11] *factu*, H. 547; A. & G. 303; G. 436. [12] *esse*, H. 535; A. & G. 336, 1, 2; G. 650. [13] *obtenturus esset*, H. 233; 524; A. & G. 113, *b*, 1; G. 515. [14] *Galliae*, H. 397; A. & G. 216; G. 367. [15] *possent*, H. 501, II, 2; A. & G. 319, *d*; G. 555, 2. [16] *regno occupato*, H. 431, 2; A. & G. 255; G. 409. [17] *Galliae*, H. 410, V, 3; A. & G. 249, *a*; G. 407, N. 2, *d*.

The scheme is discovered. Orgetorix is tried, and is rescued by his vassals. His death.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per **indicium ēnūntiāta.** [1] **mōribus** suīs Orgetorigem ex **vinculīs** causam dīcere **coēgērunt**; [2] **damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat**, ut **ignī** [3] **cremārētur.** [4] **diē** [5] cōnstitūtā causae **dictiōnis** Orgetorix ad **iūdicium** omnem suam **familiam**, ad hominum mīlia **decem**, undique coēgit et omnēs **clientēs obaerātōs**que suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, **eōdem condūxit**: [6] per eōs, **nē** causam dīceret, sē **ēripuit.** cum cīvitās **ob** eam rem **incitāta armīs iūs** suum **exsequī** [7] cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs **magistrātūs** cōgerent, Orgetorix **mortuus** est; **neque** abest **suspīciō**, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi **mortem** [8] **cōnscīverit.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ex vinculis causam dicere.* (2.) The participle. (3.) The substantive clause of result. (4.) The distinction between *per* with the accusative and *ab* with the ablative. (5.) The conjunction *cum* in temporal sense. (6.) The preposition *ad* with numerals. (7.) The subjunctive with *quin* after negative clauses. (8.) The intensive pronoun.

The Helvetii nevertheless complete their preparations.

5. Post ēius mortem [1] **nihilō** minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, [2] ut **ē** fīnibus suīs exeant. **ubi iam** sē ad eam rem **parātōs** esse arbitrātī sunt, **oppida** sua

4. [1] *moribus*, H. 416; A. & G. 245; G. 408. [2] *damnatum*, H. 549, 2; A. & G. 292, ex. 5; G. 667. [3] *cremaretur*, H. 501, III; A. & G. 332; G. 557. [4] *die*, H. 429; A. & G. 256, 1; G. 393. [5] *constituta*, H. 123; A. & G. 73; G. 64. [6] *per eos*, H. 415, I, 1, N. 1; A. & G. 246, *b*; G. 416, No. 18. [7] *conaretur*, H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585. [8] *consciverit*, H. 504; A. & G. 319, *d*; G. 555.

5. [1] *nihilo*, H. 423; A. & G. 250; G. 403. [2] *ut — exeant*, H. 501, III; A. & G. 332; G. 546.

omnia, [3]numerō ad **duodecim**, **vīcōs** ad **quadringentōs**, reliqua **prīvāta aedificia incendunt**, frūmentum omne, **praeterquam** quod sēcum **portātūrī** erant, **combūrunt**, ut **domum reditiōnis spē sublātā** parātiōrēs ad omnia **perīcula subeunda** [4]essent, trium **mēnsum molita cibāria** sibi **quemque** [5]domō **efferre iubent.** persuādent **Rauricīs** et **Tulingīs** et **Latovīcīs** fīnitimīs, **utī** eōdem [6]**ūsī cōnsiliō** oppidīs suīs vīcīsque **exūstīs ūnā** cum iīs proficīscantur, **Boiōs**que, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum **Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiam**que **oppūgnārant, receptōs** ad sē **sociōs** sibi **adscīscunt.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) Substantive clauses of purpose. (3.) The accusative of limit of motion. (4.) Verbal nouns. (5.) The ablative absolute. (6.) The gerundive. (7.) The construction after *utor*. (8.) Other verb which the student has met in the text that has the same construction after it.

The two routes offering an egress from the country.

6. Erant **omnīnō** itinera **duo**, quibus [1]itineribus domō exīre [2]possent: [3]ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et **difficile**, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, **vix quā singulī** carrī [4]dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus **impendēbat**, ut facile **per-paucī** prohibēre possent: [5]alterum per prōvinciam nostram, [6]multō facilius atque **expedītius**, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et **Allobrogum**, quī **nūper pācātī** erant, Rhodanus **fluit** isque **nōnnūllīs** [7]locīs **vadō** trānsitur. extrēmum oppi-

5. [3] *numero*, H. 424; A. & G. 253; G. 397. [4] *essent*, H. 497, II; 495, II; A. & G. 317; 287, *e*; G. 545, 1; 511, R. 1. [5] *domo*, H. 412, II, 1; A. & G. 258, *a*; G. 391. [6] *usi*, H. 421, 1; A. & G. 249; G. 407.

6. [1] *itineribus*, H. 453, 2; A. & G. 200; G. 615. [2] *possent*, H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320; G. 631, 1. [3] *unum*, H. 364; A & G. 184; G. 323. [4] *ducerentur*, H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320; G. 631, 1. [5] *alterum*, H. 364; A. & G. 184; G. 323. [6] *multo*, H. 423; A. & G. 250; G. 403. [7] *locis*, H. 425, II, 2; A. & G. 258, *f*; G. 385.

dum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus **Genāva.** ex eō oppidō **pōns** ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus **sēsē vel** persuāsūrōs, quod **nōndum** [8] **bonō** animō in populum Rōmānum [9] **vidērentur, existimābant,** vel **vī** coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs **īre paterentur.** omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, [10] quā diē ad **rīpam** Rhodanī omnēs [11] **conveniant.** is diēs erat **a. d.** V. [12] **Kal. Apr. L.** Pisōne, **A. Gabiniō** cōnsulibus.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun. (2.) Partitive apposition. (3.) The ablative of quality. (4.) Sequence of tenses. (5.) The Roman reckoning of time.

Caesar attempts to check the march of the Helvetii. They send ambassadors to him.

7. [1] **Caesarī** cum id [2] **nūntiātum** esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere [3] cōnārī, **mātūrat** ab **urbe** proficīscī et quam [4] māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem** contendit et ad Genāvam **pervēnit.** [5] prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest **mīlitum** numerum **imperat** (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre [6] **legiō** ūna), pōntem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet **rescindī.** ubi dē ēius **adventū** Helvētiī **certiōrēs** factī sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mittunt** nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis **Nammēius** et **Verucloetius prīncipem** locum obtinēbant, quī [7] dīcerent [8] sibi esse in animō **sine ūllō maleficiō** iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea

6. [8] *bono animo*, H. 419, II; A. & G. 251; G. 400. [9] *viderentur*, H. 524; 493, 1; A. & G. 286; 336, B; G. 518; 650. [10] *qua die*, H. 453, 2; A. & G. 200; G. 615. [11] *conveniant*, H. 497, I; A. & G. 317; G. 630. [12] *Kal.*, H. 642, III, 3; 644, 11; A. & G. 259, *e*; 376; G. appendix.

7. [1] *Caesari*, H. 384, 1; A. & G. 225, *e*; G. 345. [2] *nuntiatum esset*, H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325, ex. 2; G. 585. [3] *conari*, H. 539, II; A. & G. 329, 1; G. 535. [4] *maximis*, H. 170, 2; A. & G. 93, *b*; G. 303. [5] *provinciae*, H. 385, 1; A. & G. 227; G. 346. [6] *legio*, Introd. No. 98. [7] *dicerent*, H. 497, I; A. & G. 317; G. 630. [8] *sibi*, H. 387; A. & G. 231; G. 349.

quod aliud iter habērent **nūllum**: **rogāre**, ut ēius **voluntāte** id sibi facere **liceat**. Caesar, quod [9]**memoriā tenēbat** L. **Cassium** cōnsulem [10]**occīsum** exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs **pulsum** et **sub iugum** missum, **concēdendum** nōn **putābat**; neque hominēs **inimīcō** animō datā **facultāte** per prōvinciam [11]itineris faciundī **temperātūrōs** ab **iniūriā** et maleficiō exīstimābat. **tamen**, ut **spatium intercēdere** posset, **dum** mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, [12]convenīrent, lēgātīs **respondit** diem sē ad **dēlīberandum sūmptūrum**: **sī** quid **vellent**, ad **Īdūs** Apr. [13]**reverterentur.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative of indirect object. (2.) The infinitive clause as an appositive. (3.) The relative in purpose clauses. (4.) The dative of possessor. (5.) The idiom *certiores facti*. (6.) The ablatives in this chapter. (7.) The gerundive. (8.) The imperative after a verb of saying. (9.) The Roman legion.

Caesar erects fortifications. The Helvetii attempt to cross the Rhone against his will, but are compelled to desist.

8. Intereā eā [1]legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum **īnfluit**, ad mōntem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem **novem mūrum** in **altitūdinem** [2]**pedum sēdecim fossam**que **perdūcit**. eō **opere** perfectō **praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit,** [3]**quō** facilius, sī [4]sē **invītō** trānsīre [5]cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, **vēnit**, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, **negat** sē [6]mōre et **exemplō** populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per

7. [9] *memoria*, H. 420; A. & G. 248, *c*; G. 401. [10] *occisum*, H. 535, 1; A. & G. 272; G. 527. [11] *itineris faciundi*, H. 544; A. & G. 296; G. 427; 130, 8. [12] *convenirent*, H. 519, II, 2; A. & G. 328; G. 572. [13] *reverterentur*, H. 523, III; A. & G. 339; G. 652.

8. [1] *legione*, H. 420; A. & G. 248, *c*; G. 401. [2] *pedum*, H. 396, V; A. & G. 215, *b*; G. 365. [3] *quo — possit*, H. 497, II; A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2. [4] *se invito*, H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, *a*; G. 409. [5] *conarentur*, H. 529, 2; A. & G. 342; G. 629. [6] *more*, H. 416; A. & G. 245; G. 408.

prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere [7] cōnentur, prohibitūrum **ostendit.** Helvētiī eā [8] spē **dēlectī nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus** factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā **minima** altitūdō flūminis **erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū,** si **perrumpere** [9] possent, cōnātī, operis **mūnītiōne** et mīlitum **concursū** et **tēlīs repulsī** hōc **cōnātū dēstitērunt.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of instrument. (2.) The genitive of quality. (3.) The regular conjunction in final clauses containing a comparative. (4.) The subjunctive by attraction. (5.) The indirect question. (6.) The different parts of speech for forming the ablative absolute that the student has met with.

Dumnorix prevails upon the Sequani to allow the Helvetii to march through their territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs **via,** quā [1] Sēquanīs invītīs **propter angustiās** īre nōn poterant. hīs cum suā **sponte** persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut [2] eō **dēprecātōre ā** Sēquanīs [3] **impetrārent.** Dumnorix **grātiā** et **largītiōne** apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus [4] **novīs** rēbus **studēbat** et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō **beneficiō** habēre **obstrictās** volēbat. **itaque** rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, **obsidēsque** utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā [5] trānseant.

8. [7] *conentur,* H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. [8] *spe,* H. 414; A. & G. 243; G. 390. [9] *possent,* H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334; G. 460, *b.*

9. [1] *Sequanis invitis,* H. 431; A. & G. 255; G. 409. [2] *eo deprecatore,* H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, *a*; G. 409. [3] *impetrarent,* H. 495, II; A. & G. 287, *e*; G. 509, *a.* [4] *novis rebus,* H. 384, 1, 6; A. & G. 227; G. 346. [5] *transeant,* H. 497, II; A. & G. 317; G. 545.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The mood used with the conjunction *cum* in causal sense. (2.) The historical present. (3.) The construction after *studeo*. (4.) The idiom *plurimum posse*. (5.) The expression for "to marry" used of the man. (6.) The negatives used in purpose clauses. (7.) The anticipation of the part the verb "to have" was to hold in verbal conjugation.

Caesar prepares to defeat this plan.

10. Caesarī **renūntiātur**, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in **Santonum** fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā **Tolōsātium** fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. id sī [1] fieret, **intellegēbat** māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs **bellicōsōs**, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque **frūmentāriīs** fīnitimōs [2] habēret. ob eās causās eī [3] mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, **T. Labiēnum** [4] lēgātum **praefēcit**, ipse in **Ītaliam** māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque **ibi** legiōnēs **cōnscrībit** et trēs, quae **circum Aquilēiam hiemābant**, ex **hībernīs ēdūcit** et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per **Alpēs** erat, cum hīs **quīnque** legiōnibus īre contendit. ibi **Centrōnēs** et **Grāiocelī** et **Caturigēs** [5] locīs **superiōribus** occupātīs [6] itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs ab **Ōcelō**, quod est **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs **Vocontiōrum** ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō** pervēnit; **inde** in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in **Segūsiāvōs** exercitum dūcit. hī sunt **extrā** prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum **prīmī**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (2.) The dative after compounds. (3.) The ablative absolute. (4.) Substantive clauses of result. (5.) The ablative of separation. (6.) The comparison of adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel. (7.) The functions of the *legatus*.

10 [1] *fieret*, H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. [2] *haberet*, H. 501, 1; A. & G. 329; G. 506. [3] *munitioni*, H. 386; A. & G. 228; G. 347. [4] *legatum*, Introd. No. 110, *b*. [5] *locis — occupatis*, H. 431; A. & G. 255; G. 409. [6] *itinere*, H. 414; A. & G. 243; G. 390.

The Haedui and other tribes complain to Caesar of the devastation of their fields.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum **suās** cōpiās **trādūxerant** et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs **populābantur.** Haeduī, cum sē [1]suaque ab iīs **dēfendere** nōn [2]possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt [3]rogātum **auxilium**: **ita** sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō [4]**meritōs** esse, ut **paene** in **cōnspectū** exercitūs nostrī agrī [5]**vāstārī**, **līberī** eōrum in **servitūtem abdūcī**, oppida **expūgnārī** nōn [6]**dēbuerint.** eōdem tempore Haeduī, **Ambarrī**, **necessāriī** et **cōnsanguineī** Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē [7]**dēpopulātīs** agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim **hostium** prohibēre. item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs **possessiōnēs**que habēbant, [8]**fugā** sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et **dēmōnstrant** sibi **praeter** agrī **solum nihil** esse [9]reliquī. [10]quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn [11]**exspectandum** [12]sibi **statuit**, dum omnibus **fōrtūnīs** sociōrum **cōnsūmptīs** in Santonōs Helvētiī [13]pervenīrent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Causal clauses with *cum*. (2.) The use of the present infinitive after *debeo.* (3.) The time denoted by the infinitive. (4.) The supine. (5.) The passive notion in deponent verbs. (6.) The impersonal construction. (7.) The ablative of means. (8.) The partitive genitive. (9.) The dative of agent. (10.) Temporal clauses with *dum.* (11). The omission of the verb which governs the indirect discourse.

11. [1] *sua*, H. 441, 1, 449; A. & G. 188, 197, *d*, ex. 2; G. 204, N. 2. [2] *possent*, H. 517; A. & G. 326; G. 586. [3] *rogatum*, H. 546; A. & G. 302; G. 435. [4] *meritos esse*, H. 522–525; A. & G. 330, *e*; 335; 336; G. 648–650. [5] *vastari*, H. 537, 1; A. & G. 288, *a*; G. 423, N. 2. [6] *debuerint*, H. 495, VI; A. & G. 287, *c*; G. 513. [7] *depopulatis agris*, H 231, 2; A. & G. 135, *b*; G. 220, N. 1. [8] *fuga*, H. 420; A. & G. 248; G 399. [9] *reliqui*, H. 397; A. & G. 216; G. 369. [10] *quibus*, H. 453; A. & G. 180, *f*; G. 610, R. 1. [11] *exspectandum*, H. 234; A. & G. 330, *c*; G. 427. [12] *sibi*, H. 388; A. & G. 232; G. 355. [13] *pervenirent*, H. 519, II, 2; A. & G. 328; G. 572.

The destruction of the Tigurini.

12. Flūmen est **Arar,** quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit **incrēdibilī** [1]**lēnitāte,** ita ut **oculīs,** in **utram** partem [2]fluat, **iūdicārī** nōn [3]possit. id Helvētiī **ratibus** āc **lintribus** iūnctīs trānsībant. ubi per **explōrātōrēs** Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam cōpiārum partēs Helvētiōs id [4]flūmen trādūxisse, **quartam** ferē partem **citrā** flūmen Ararim **reliquam** esse, dē tertiā **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē **castrīs** profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. eōs **impedītōs** et **inopīnantēs aggressus** māgnam eōrum partem **concīdit:** reliquī fugae sēsē [5]**mandārunt** atque in proximās **silvās abdidērunt.** is **pāgus** appellābātur **Tigurīnus**; **nam** omnis cīvitās Helvētia in **quattuor** pāgōs dīvīsa est. hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem **interfēcerat** et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. ita **sīve cāsū** sīve cōnsiliō **deōrum immortālium,** quae [6]pars cīvitātis Helvētiae **īnsignem calamitātem** populō Rōmānō **intulerat,** ea [7]**prīnceps** poenās **persolvit.** quā in rē Caesar nōn **sōlum pūblicās, sed** etiam prīvātās iniūriās **ultus** est, quod ēius **socerī** L. Pīsōnis **avum,** L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of manner. (2.) The accusative after compounds. (3.) Indirect question. (4.) Subjunctive of result. (5.) The attraction of the antecedent. (6.) The contraction of the perfect. (7.) The idiom *princeps poenas persolvit.* (8.) The deponent verb. (9.) Temporal clauses. (10.) The divisions of the Roman day and night. (11.) The three methods (illustrated in this chapter) of supplying the deficiency caused by the absence of a perfect active participle in the Latin language.

12. [1] *lenitate*, H. 419, III; A. & G. 248; G. 399. [2] *fluat*, H. 529, I; A. & G. 334; G. 467. [3] *possit*, H. 500, II; A. & G. 319; G. 552. [4] *flumen*, H. 376; A. & G. 239, *b*; G. 331, 1, R. 1. [5] *mandarunt*, H. 235; A. & G. 128, *a*; G. 131, 1. [6] *pars*, H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, *b*, N. ex. 2; G. 620. [7] *princeps*, H. 442; A. & G. 191; G. 325, R. 6.

The embassy sent from the Helvetii. Divico speaks.

13. Hōc proeliō factō reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut **cōnsequī** [1] posset, pōntem in Arare [2] faciundum **cūrat** atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī **repentīnō** ēius adventū **commōtī** cum id, quod ipsī diēbus **vigintī aegerrimē** cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, ūnō illum diē fēcisse [3] intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis **Dīvicō** prīnceps fuit, quī bellō **Cassiānō dux** Helvētiōrum fuerat. is ita cum Caesare **ēgit**: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs [4] faceret, in eam partem [5] itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; **sīn** bellō **persequī persevērāret,** [6] **reminīscerētur** et **veteris incommodī** populī Rōmānī et **prīstinae** virtūtis Helvētiōrum. quod **improvīsō** ūnum pāgum **adortus** esset, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsissent, [7] suīs auxilium **ferre** nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae **māgnopere** virtūtī **tribueret** aut ipsōs **dēspiceret.** sē ita ā patribus **māiōribusque** suīs **didicisse**, ut **magis** virtūte, quam **dolō** [8] contenderent aut **īnsidiīs nīterentur.** **quārē** nē **committeret,** ut is locus, ubi **cōnstitissent,** ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et **interneciōne** exercitūs **nōmen** caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive of purpose. (2.) Temporal clauses with *cum*. (3.) The gerundive construction. (4.) The ablative of time. (5.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (6.) The prepositions in this chapter. (7.) The mood in indirect discourse representing the indicative future (perfect) of the direct. (8.) The sequence of tenses.

13 [1] *posset*, H. 497, II; A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1. [2] *faciundum*, H. 544; A. & G. 294, *d*; G. 430. [3] *intellegerent*, H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585. [4] *faceret*, H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. [5] *ituros*, H. 523, 1; A. & G. 336; G. 527. [6] *reminisceretur*, H. 523, III; A. & G. 339; G. 652. [7] *suis*, H. 441, 1; A. & G. 190, *a*; G. 204, N. 1, *b*. [8] *contenderent*, H. 500, II; A. & G. 319; G. 552.

Caesar's reply.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: [1]**eō** sibi minus [2]**dubitātiōnis** darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī **commemorāssent**, [3]memoriā tenēret, atque [4]eō **gravius** ferre, quō minus **meritō** populī Rōmānī **accidissent**: quī sī **alicūius** [5]iniūriae sibi **cōnscius** fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile **cavēre**; sed eō **dēceptum**, quod neque commīssum ā sē intellegeret, quārē **timēret**, neque sine causā timendum putāret. [6]quod sī veteris [7]**contumēliae oblīvīscī** vellet, [8]**num** etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim **temptāssent**, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogās [9]**vēxāssent**, memoriam **dēpōnere** posse? quod suā **victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur** quodque tam **diū** sē **impūne** iniūriās **tulisse admīrārentur**, eōdem pertinēre. **cōnsuēsse enim** deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex **commūtātiōne** rērum **doleant**, quōs prō **scelere** eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs **secundiōrēs interdum** rēs et **diūturniōrem impūnitātem** concēdere. cum ea ita [10]sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae **polliceantur**, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus **satisfaciant**, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs **institūtōs** esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint: ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse **testem**. hōc **respōnsō** datō **discessit**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of cause. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The correlative *quo* — *eo*. (4.) The ablative of difference. (5.) The ablative of means. (6.) The genitive after adjectives. (7.) The genitive after verbs. (8.) Concessive clauses with *cum*. (9.) Interrogative words used in text thus far.

14. [1] *eo*, H. 416; A. & G. 245; G. 408. [2] *dubitationis*, H. 397; A. & G. 216; G. 372. [3] *memoria*, H. 420; A. & G. 248; G. 401. [4] *eo — quo*, H. 423; A. & G. 106, *c*; G. 403. [5] *iniuriae*, H. 399, 2; A. & G. 218, *a*; G. 374. [6] *quod si*, H. 453, 6; A. & G. 240, *b*, last ex. [7] *contumeliae*, H. 406, II; A. & G. 219; G. 376. [8] *num*, H. 351, 1, N. 3; A. & G. 210, *c*; G. 456. [9] *vexassent*, H. 516; A. & G. 333; G. 525. [10] *sint*, H. 515, III; A. & G. 326; G. 587.

The cavalry of Caesar defeated by the Helvetii. The march of both armies.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō **movent.** idem facit Caesar **equitātum**que omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, **praemittit,** quī [1] videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. quī [2] cupidius novissimum **āgmen insecūtī aliēnō** locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et **paucī** [3] dē nostrīs **cadunt.** quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod **quīngentīs** equitibus **tantam** multitūdinem equitum **prōpulerant, audācius subsistere** nōnnumquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs **lacessere coepērunt.** Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis habēbat in **praesentiā** hostem **rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibus**que prohibēre. ita diēs **circiter quīndecim** iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum prīmum nōn **amplius quīnīs** aut **sēnīs** mīlibus passuum **interesset.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative clause of purpose. **(2.)** An equivalent for the partitive genitive. (3.) The force of the comparative. (4.) Collective nouns. (5.) The ablative of instrument. (6.) The accusative of duration of time. (7.) Distributive numerals.

The delay of the Haedui in furnishing grain. Caesar calls a council of their chiefs.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar [1] Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē polliciti, [2] **flāgitāre.** nam propter **frīgora,** quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, **posita** est, nōn **modo** frūmenta in agrīs **mātūra** nōn erant, sed nē **pābulī quidem** satis

15. [1] *videant,* H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317; G. 630. [2] *cupidius,* H. 444, 1; A. & G. 93, *a*; G. 297. [3] *de nostris,* H. 397, 3, N. 3; A. & G. 216, *c*; G. 372, R. 2.

16. [1] *Haeduos frumentum,* H. 374; A. & G. 239, *c*; G. 339. [2] *flagitare,* H. 536, 1; A. & G. 275; G. 647.

māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem [3]frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus **subvēxerat**, propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī **āverterant**, ā quibus discēdere **nōlēbat**. diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: **cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse** dīcere. ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem **instāre**, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus **mētīrī** oportēret, **convocātīs** eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Divitiacō et **Liscō**, quī **summō** magistrātuī **praeerat**, quem **vergobretum** appellant Haeduī, quī **creātur annuus** et **vītae necisque** in suōs habet **potestātem**, graviter eōs **accūsat**, quod, cum neque **emī** neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam **necessāriō** tempore, tam **propinquīs** hostibus ab iīs nōn [4]**sublevētur**; **praesertim** cum māgnā ex parte eōrum **precibus** adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit **dēstitūtus, queritur**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Verbs which admit two accusatives. (2.) Frequentatives. (3.) The "historical infinitive." (4.) The construction after *utor*. (5.) Position of the emphatic word with *ne — quidem*. (6.) The dative with compounds. (7.) The ablative with comparatives. (8.) Causal clauses introduced by *quod* on authority of another.

Speech of Liscus.

17. **Tum dēmum** Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod **anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit**: esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum **valeat**, quī **prīvātim** plūs possint, quam ipsī magistrātūs. hōs **sēditiōsā** atque **improbā** ōrātiōne multitūdinem **dēterrēre**, nē frūmentum [1]cōnferant, quod praestāre dēbeant: sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia **praeferre**, neque **dubitāre** [dēbeant], [2]quīn, sī Helvētiōs **superāverint** Rōmānī, ūnā cum

16. [3] *frumento*, H. 421, 1; A. & G. 249; G. 407. [4] *sublevetur*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 321; G. 541.

17. [1] *conferant*, H. 505, II, 1; A. & G. 331, *e*, 2; G. 548. [2] *quin*, H. 505, 1; A. & G. 319, *d*; G. 555.

reliquā Galliā [3] Haeduīs **lībertātem** sint ēreptūrī. ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē **coërcērī** nōn posse: quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesari ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, **quantō** id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering*. (2.) The time of the infinitive. (3.) Result expressed by *quin*. (4.) The dative for the ablative of separation. (5.) The accusatives in this chapter.

Liscus discloses the treachery of Dumnorix.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Divitiacī frātrem, **dēsīgnārī sentiēbat**, sed, quod plūribus **praesentibus** eās rēs **iactārī** nōlēbat, **celeriter concilium dīmittit**, Liscum **retinet**. **quaerit** ex **sōlō** ea, quae in **conventū** dīxerat. dīcit **līberius** atque audācius. eadem **sēcrētō** ab aliīs quaerit; **reperit** esse **vēra**: ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā **audāciā**, māgnā apud plēbem propter **līberālitātem** grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. complūrēs [1] annōs **portōria** reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum **vēctigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta** [2] habēre, propterea, quod illō **licente contrā** licērī **audeat nēmō**. hīs rēbus et suam rem **familiārem auxisse** et facultātēs ad **largiendum** māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō **sūmptū semper alere** et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum [3] domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs **largiter** posse, atque hūius **potentiae** [4] causā **mātrem** in **Biturigibus** hominī **illīc** nōbilissimō āc potentissimō **conlocāsse**, ipsum ex Helvētiīs **uxōrem** habēre, **sorōrem** ex mātre et propinquās suās [5] **nūptum** in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. **favēre** et

17. [3] *Haeduis*, H. 385, II, 2; A. & G. 229; G 345, R. 1.

18. [1] *annos*, H. 379; A. & G. 256; G. 336. [2] *habere*, H. 388, 1, N.; A. & G. 292, *c*; G. 238. [3] *domi*, H. 426, 2; A. & G. 258, *d*; G. 411. [4] *causa*, H. 416; A. & G. 245, *c*; G. 408. [5] *nuptum*, H. 546, 1; A. & G. 302; G. 435.

cupere Helvētiīs propter eam **adfinitātem, ōdisse** etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius **dēminūta** et Divitiacus frāter in **antīquum** locum grātiae atque **honōris** sit **restitūtus**. sī **quid** accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā **dēspērāre**. reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium **equestre adversum** paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem [6] auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum **perterritum**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative case. (2.) The ablative of cause. (3.) The supine. (4.) Two datives. (5.) The ablative of price. (6.) The dative with special verbs. (7.) The ablative of characteristic.

Caesar summons Divitiacus, brother of Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus **cōgnitīs**, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs **accēderent**, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs [1] trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo [2] **iniūssū** suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam **īnscientibus** ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse **animadverteret**, aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum **repūgnābat**, quod Divitiacī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum **studium**, summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem, **iūstitiam, temperantiam** cōgnōverat: nam, [3] nē ēius **suppliciō** Divitiacī animum **offenderet, verēbātur**. itaque **prius**, quam

18. [6] *auxilio Caesari*, H. 390, II; A. & G. 233; G. 356.

19. [1] *traduxisset*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 321; 341, *d*; G. 628. [2] *iniussu*, H. 134; A. & G. 71 *b*; G. 70, A. [3] *ne*, H. 498, III, N. 1; A. & G. 331, *f*; G. 550.

quicquam [4]cōnārētur, Divitiacum ad sē **vocārī** iubet et cotīdiānīs **interpretibus remōtīs**, per C. **Valerium Procillum**, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cuī summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō **conloquitur**: **simul commonefacit**, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae **sēparātim** quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. **petit** atque **hortātur**, ut sine ēius **offēnsiōne** animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Clauses introduced by *quod* on another's authority. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The construction after verbs of fearing. (4.) Defective nouns. (5.) The subjunctive with *priusquam*. (6.) Subjunctive of purpose.

Divitiacus intercedes for his brother. Caesar pardons Dumnorix.

20. Divitiacus multīs cum **lacrimīs** Caesarem **complexus obsecrāre** coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: **scīre** sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterеā quod, cum ipse [1]grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter **adulēscentiam** posset, per sē **crēvisset**; quibus **opibus** āc **nervīs** nōn sōlum ad **minuendam** grātiam, sed paene ad **perniciem** suam [2]ūterētur. sēsē tamen et **amōre** [3]**frāternō** et **exīstimātiōne vulgī** commovērī. quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius [4]accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum, nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. haec cum plūribus **verbīs flēns** ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius **dextram prendit**; **cōnsōlātus** rogat, fīnem **ōrandī** [5]faciat; [6]tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et

19. [4] *conaretur*, H. 520, II; A. & G. 327; G. 517.

20. [1] *gratia*, H. 416; A. & G. 245; G. 408. [2] *uteretur*, H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. [3] *fraterno*, H. 395, N. 2; A. & G. 190, *b*; G. 363. [4] *accidisset*, H. 525, 2; A. & G. 307, *f*; G. 656. [5] *faciat*, H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, *f*, R; G. 546, R. 2. [6] *tanti*, H. 404; A. & G. 252, *a*; G. 380.

reipūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus **condōnet.** Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem **adhibet**; quae in eō **reprehendat,** ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; **monet,** ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs **vītet**; **praeterita** sē Divitiacō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorigī **custōdēs** pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum **loquātur,** scīre possit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The adjective for the genitive. (2.) Principal clauses in indirect discourse. (3.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) Change of person in indirect discourse. (5.) The omission of *ut*. (6.) The periphrastic form *futurum esse.*

The preparations for engaging the Helvetii.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub mōnte **cōnsēdisse** mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs **octō, quālis** esset nātūra montis et quālis in **circuitū ascēnsus,** quī [1] cōgnōscerent, mīsit. renūntiātum est, facilem esse. dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō **praetōre,** cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum mōntis **ascendere** iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. **P. Cōnsidius,** quī reī **mīlitāris perītissimus** habēbātur et in exercitū L. **Sullae** et **posteā** in M. **Crassī** fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The powers of *praetor*. (2.) Relative clauses of purpose. (3.) The *vigiliae*. (4.) The indirect question.

These preparations are rendered useless by the fears of P. Considius.

22. Prīmā **lūce,** cum summus mōns ā T. Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs non lōngius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus

21. [1] *cognoscerent*, H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317; G. 630.

abesset, neque, ut posteā ex **captīvīs comperit**, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī [1] cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius **equō admissō** ad eum **accurrit**, dīcit mōntem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā **Gallicīs** armīs atque **īnsignibus** cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum [2] **collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.** Labiēnus, ut erat eī **praeceptum** ā Caesare, nē proelium [3] committeret, **nisi** ipsīus cōpiae **prope** hostium castra



vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs **impetus** fieret, mōnte **occupātō** nostrōs exspectābat [4] proeliōque **abstinēbat.** multō **denique** diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et mōntem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et



Cōnsidium **timōre** perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō **vīsō** sibi renūntiāsse. eō diē quō cōnsuērat **intervallō** hostēs sequitur et [5] mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *equo admisso*. (2.) Substantive clauses. (3.) Dependent clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) Asyndeton. (5.) The idiom *multo die*.

Caesar advances towards Bibracte.

23. Postrīdiē ēius [1] diēī, quod omnīnō **biduum supererat**, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā **Bibracte**, oppidō Haeduōrum longe māximō et **cōpiōsissimō**, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae **prōspiciendum**

22. [1] *cognitus esset*, H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585. [2] *collem*, Introd. No. 116. [3] *committeret*, H. 498, I; A. & G. 331; G. 546. [4] *proelio*, H. 414, 1; A. & G. 243; G. 390. [5] *milia*, H. 379; A. & G. 257, *b*; G. 335.

23. [1] *diei*, H. 398, 5; A. & G. 223, *e*; G. 372, N. 3.

exīstimāvit: iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. ea rēs per **fugitīvōs** L. **Aemilii**, **decuriōnis** equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, **seu** quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, [2]eō magis, quod **prīdiē** superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā **interclūdī** posse **cōnfīderent**, **commūtātō** cōnsiliō atque itinere **conversō** nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The genitive with *postridie*. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The powers of the *decurio*. (4.) Ablative of degree of difference. (5.) The dative after compounds.

Preparations for battle.

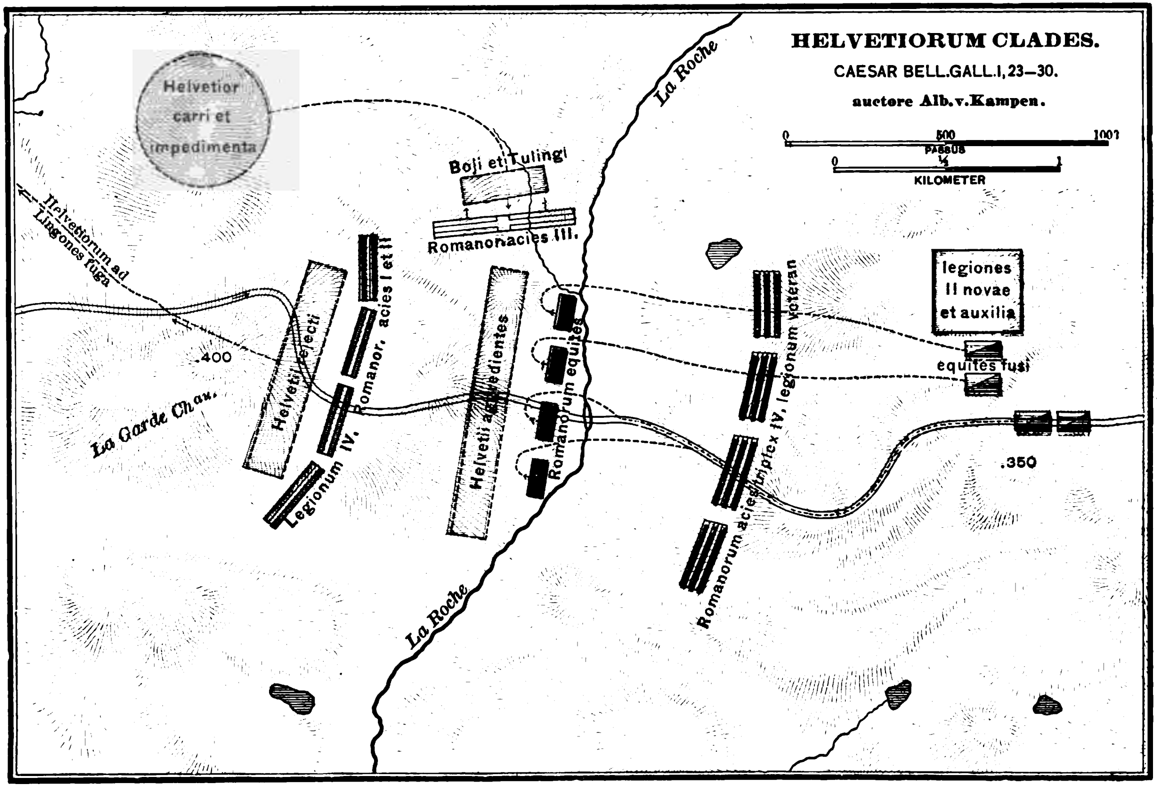
24. Postquam id animum **advertit**, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit [1]equitātumque, quī **sustinēret** hostium impetum, mīsit. ipse interim in colle **mediō** **triplicem** [2]aciem īnstrūxit [3]legiōnum quattuor **veterānārum** [ita utī **suprā**]; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia [4]auxilia conlocāvit āc tōtum mōntem hominibus **complēvit**; intereā [5]**sarcinās** in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, **mūnīrī** iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī **impedīmenta** in ūnum locum **contulērunt**; ipsī **cōnfertissimā** [6]aciē **rēiectō** nostrō equitātū **phalange** factā sub prīmam nostram aciem **successērunt**.



SARCINA.

23. [2] *eo*, H. 423; A. & G. 250, N.; G. 403.

24. [1] *equitatum*, Introd. No. 108. [2] *aciem*, Introd. No. 115. [3] *legionum*, Introd. No. 98. [4] *auxilia*, Introd. No. 107. [5] *sarcinas — conferri*, Introd. No. 123, I, 2) *b*. [6] *acie*, H. 419, III; A. & G. 248; G. 399.


HELVETIORUM CLADES.
CAESAR BELL.GALL.I, 23—30.
auctore Alb.v.Kampen.
0
500
1000
PASSUS
0
½
1
KILOMETER
Helvetior carri et impedimenta
Boji et Tulingi
Romanor. acies III.
Helvetiorum ad Lingones fuga
Helvetii electi
Romanor. acies I et II
Legionum IV.
Helvetii accedientes
Romanorum equites
Romanorum acies triplex IV. legionum veteran
legiones II novae et auxilia
equites fusi
La Roche
La Roche
La Garde Chau.
.400
.350

Topics for Study.

(1.) The Roman legion. (2.) The distinction between *sarcinas* and *impedimenta.* (3.) The Roman cavalry. (4.) Ablative absolute. (5.) The Roman line of battle.

The battle.



25. Caesar **prīmum** suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs **equīs**, ut **aequātō** omnium perīculō spem fugae **tolleret**, **cohortātus** suōs proelium commīsit. mīlitēs ē locō superiōre **pīlīs** mīssīs facile hostium phalangem **perfrēgērunt**. eā **disiectā** [1] **gladiīs dēstrictīs** in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad **pūgnam** erat impedīmentō, quod plūribus eōrum [2] **scūtīs** ūnō **ictū** [3] pīlōrum **trānsfīxīs** et **conligātīs**, cum **ferrum** sē [4] **inflēxisset**, neque **ēvellere** neque **sinistrā** impeditā satis **commodē pūgnāre** poterant, multī ut diū iactātō **bracchiō praeoptārent** scūtum **manū ēmittere** et **nūdō** corpore pūgnāre. **tandem vulneribus dēfessī** et pedem **referre** et, quod mōns **suberat** circiter mīlle passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. captō mōnte et succēdentibus nostrīs Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum [5] mīlibus circiter XV āgmen hostium **claudēbant** et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs **latere apertō** aggressī **circumvenīre**, et id **cōnspicātī** Helvētiī, quī in mōntem sēsē recēperant, **rūrsus** īnstāre et proelium **redintegrāre** coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa [6] **signa bipartītō** intulērunt: prīma āc secunda aciēs, ut **victīs** āc **submōtīs** resisteret, [7] tertia, ut venientēs exciperet.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of manner. (2.) Roman arms. (3.) Causal clauses with *cum.* (4.) The dative of service. (5.) The idiom *pedem referre.*

PILUM.

25. [1] *gladiis destrictis,* Introd. No. 116. [2] *scutis,* Introd. No. 102. [3] *pilorum,* Introd. No. 102. [4] *inflexisset,* H. 517; A. & G. 326; G. 586. [5] *milibus,* H. 420; A. & G. 248, *c*; G. 401. [6] *signa,* Introd. No. 103. [7] *tertia,* Introd. No. 125, 1) *a.*

The defeat of the Helvetii.

26. Ita **ancipitī** proeliō diū atque **ācriter** pūgnātum est. diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in mōntem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab **hōrā** septimā ad **vesperum** pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō **vallō** carrōs **obiēcerant** et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla **cōniciēbant** et nōnnūllī inter carrōs **rotās**que **matarās** āc **trāgulās** **subiciēbant** nostrōsque **vulnerābant**. diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. ibi Orgetorigis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum CXXX **superfuērunt** eāque tōtā **nocte** continenter iērunt: nūllam [1] partem noctis itinere **intermīssō** in fīnēs **Lingonum** [diē quartō] pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter **sepultūram** occīsōrum nostrī [**trīduum** **morātī**] eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad [2] Lingonas **litterās** **nūntiōs**que mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō **nēve** aliā rē **iuvārent**: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. ipse trīduō intermīssō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The impersonal construction. (2.) Duration of time. (3.) Missive weapons. (4.) Greek form in accus. plur.

The Helvetii surrender. Six thousand try to escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum **inopiā** adductī lēgātōs dē **dēditiōne** ad eum mīsērunt. [1] quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs **prōiēcissent** **suppliciter**que locūtī flentēs pācem **petīssent**,

26. [1] *partem*, H. 379; A. & G. 256; G. 336. [2] *Lingonas*, H. 68; A. & G. 63, *f*; G. 65, 2.

27. [1] *qui*, H. 453; A. & G. 180, *f*; G. 610.

atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum **adventum** exspectāre iūssisset, **pāruērunt**. eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, **servōs**, quī ad eōs **perfūgissent**, **poposcit**. dum ea **conquīruntur** et cōnferuntur, nocte intermīssā circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī, quī **Verbigēnus** appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs **trāditīs** suppliciō [2]adficerentur, sīve spē **salūtis** inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine **dēditīciōrum** suam fugam aut **occultārī**, aut omnīnō **ignōrārī** posse [3]exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum **ēgressī** **ad** Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun taking the place of a conjunction with a demonstrative. (2.) The construction after verbs of fearing. (3.) Causal clauses with *quod* expressing the thought of some other person than the author.

The return of the Helvetii to their territory.

28. Quod ubi Caesar **rescīit**, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et **redūcerent**, sī sibi **purgātī** esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, **perfugis** trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovicōs in fīnēs suōs, **unde** erant profectī, revertī iussit, et quod omnibus frūctibus āmīssīs [1]domī nihil erat, quō **famem tolerārent**, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent: ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. id ea māximē **ratiōne** fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, **vacāre**, nē propter **bonitātem** agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs **trānsīrent** et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs, petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīni-

27. [2] *adficerentur*, H. 498, III; A. & G. 331, *f*; G. 550. [3] *existimarent*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 321; G. 628.

28. [1] *domi*, H. 426, 2; A. & G. 258, *d*; G. 411, R. 2.

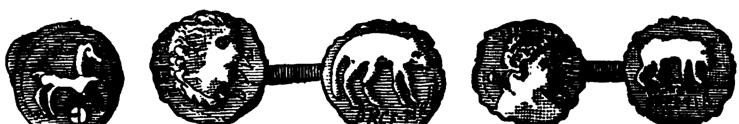
bus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in [2] **parem** iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative case. (2.) The dative after *impero.* (3.) Compare the construction after *iubeo* with that after *impero.* (4.) The idiom *parem atque.*

The comparative estimate of the number of Helvetii who returned home and the number that had gone forth from their country.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum **tabulae** repertae sunt litterīs **Graecīs** cōnfectae et ad Caesarem **relātae,** quibus in tabulīs **nōminātim** ratiō cōnfecta erat, [1] quī numerus domō [2] exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim **puerī, senēs mulierēsque.** quārum omnium rērum **summa** erat **capitum** Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latovicōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia XCII. summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. eōrum, quī domum **rediērunt, cēnsū** habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.



Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of place. (2.) The form of the interrogative pronoun used adjectively. (3.) Subjunctive in indirect questions. (4.) Agreement of a verb with the predicate noun.

28. [2] *parem — atque,* H. 451, 5; A. & G. 156, *a*; G. 643.

29. [1] *qui,* H. 188, II, 1; A. & G. 104, *a*; G. 106. [2] *exisset,* H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334; G. 467.

30–54. The War with Ariovistus.

Ambassadors from almost all parts of Gaul congratulate Caesar and request a council.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem [1]**grātulātum** convēnērunt: intellegere sēsē, **tametsī** prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō **repetisset**, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex **ūsū terrae** Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō conciliō **flōrentissimīs** rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent [2]imperiōque potīrentur locumque **domiciliō** ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā **oportūnissimum** āc **frūctuōsissimum** iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs **stīpendiāriās** habērent. petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam **indīcere** idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre **quāsdam** rēs, quās ex **commūnī cōnsēnsū** ab eō petere vellent. eā rē **permissā** diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūreiūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō [3]mandātum esset, inter sē **sanxērunt.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) Distinction between the subjective and objective genitive. (2.) The Supine. (3.) The mood and tense which represent the future perfect indicative in the indirect discourse. (4.) The ablative with special verbs.

Complaints made against Ariovistus and the Germans.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō in **occultō** dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs [1]Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et **labōrāre**, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiā-

30. [1] *gratulatum*, H. 546; A. & G. 302; G. 435. [2] *imperio*, H. 421, I; A & G. 249; G. 407. [3] *mandatum esset*, H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650.

31. [1] *Caesari*, H. 384, 4, N. 2; A. & G. 235, *a*; G. 350, 1.

rentur, quam utī ea, quae [2] vellent, impetrārent, propthereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. locūtus est prō hīs **Dīvitiacus** Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus **factiōnes** esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius **Arvernōs.** hī cum **tantopere** dē **potentātū** inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī [3] **mercēde arcesserentur.** hōrum **prīmō** circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsīsse: **posteāquam** agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs **ferī** āc **barbarī adamāssent,** trāductōs plūrēs: **nunc** esse in Galliā ad C et XX mīlium numerum. cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs **semel** atque **iterum** armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque **frāctōs,** quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī **hospitiō** atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūreiūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō **implōrātūrōs** neque **recūsātūrōs,** quō minus **perpetuō** sub illōrum **diciōne** atque imperiō [4] essent. ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut **iūrāret** aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte **profūgisse** et [5] **Rōmam** ad senātum vēnisse auxilium **postulātum,** quod sōlus neque iūreiūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. sed **pēius victōribus** Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propthereā quod **Ariovistus, rēx** Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset **optimus** tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē **alterā** parte tertiā Sēquanōs **dēcēdere** iubēret, propthereā quod paucīs [6] mēnsibus ante **Harudum** mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc **sēdēs parārentur.** futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex

31. [2] *vellent,* H. 524; A. & G. 336, 2; G. 650. [3] *mercede,* H. 422; A. & G. 252; G. 404. [4] *essent,* H. 497, II, 2; A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2. [5] *Romam,* H. 380, II; A. & G. 258, *b*; G. 337. [6] *mensibus,* H. 430; A. & G. 250; G. 403.

Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent: neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc **cōnsuētūdinem** **vīctūs** cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad **Magetobriam**, **superbē** et **crūdēliter** imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque **ēdere**, sī qua rēs nōn ad **nūtum** aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. hominem esse barbarum, **īrācundum**, **temerārium**: nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī. [7]nisi sī quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō **ēmigrent**, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fōrtūnamque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur**. haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, **gravissimum** supplicium [8]sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs, vel recentī vīctōriā, vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē **māior** multitūdō Germānōrum [9]Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *Caesari ad pedes*. (2.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (3.) Purpose clauses with *quo*. (4.) The ablative of price. (5.) Accusative of limit of motion, *Romam ad senatum*. (6.) Construction with *quin* after verbs of doubting. (7.) Manner of denoting an interval between two events. (8.) The ablative of time. (9.) The predicate accusative. (10.) The partitive genitive. (11.) Hendiadys. (12.) Relative clauses of purpose.

The wretched lot of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Divitiacō habitā omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō **flētū** auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. animadvertit Caesar

31. [7] *nisi si*, H. 507, 3, N. 4; A. & G. 315, *a*; G. 591, R. 2. [8] *sumat*, H. 501, II, 2; A. & G. 332, *g*; G. 555, 2. [9] *Rhenum*, H. 376, N.; A. & G. 239, *b*; G. 331, R. 1.

ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās **cēterī** facerent, sed **tristēs** capite **dēmissō** terram **intuērī**. ēius reī causa quae [1] esset, **mīrātus** ex ipsīs quaesiit. nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem **tristitiā** tacitī **permanēre**. cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō **vōcem exprimere** posset, īdem Divitiacus Haeduus respondit: hōc esse **miseriōrem** graviōremque fōrtūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent **absentis**que Ariovistī **crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram** adesset, **horrērent**, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, [2] Sēquanīs **vērō**, quī **intrā** fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The historical infinitive. (3.) Dative of agent. (4.) The indirect question.

Caesar resolves to remedy their evils.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est [1] sibi eam rem **cūrae** futūram: māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūrīs factūrum. hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. et [2] **secundum** ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem **cōgitandam** et suscipiendam putāret, **imprīmīs** quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī **turpissimum** sibi et reīpūblicae esse arbitrābātur. **paulātim** autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum

32. [1] *esset*, H. 529; A. & G. 334; G. 467. [2] *Sequanis*, H. 388; A. & G. 232; G. 355.

33. [1] *sibi*, H. 390; A. & G. 233; G. 356. [2] *secundum*, H. 433; A. & G. 153; G. 416.

trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō **periculōsum** vidēbat, neque sibi hominēs ferōs āc barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante **Cimbrī Teutonīque** fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus [3] rēbus quam mātūrrimē **occurrendum** putābat. ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi **spīritūs**, tantam **adrogantiam** sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative after compounds. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The dative with special verbs. (4.) The preposition *secundum*. (5.) Relative clauses of result.

Caesar demands a conference with Ariovistus. The refusal of Ariovistus.

34. Quamobrem **placuit** eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī [1] ab eō [2] postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium **utrīusque conloquiō** dīceret: velle sēsē dē rēpūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: sī quid ipsī ā Caesare [3] **opus** esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī [4] quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. **praetereā** sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar **possidēret**, neque exercitum sine māgnō **commeātū** atque **mōlīmentō** in ūnum locum **contrahere** posse. sibi autem **mīrum** vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō [5] **negōtiī** esset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The construction with *postulo*. (2.) The regular construction with *opus*; and the construction with *opus* as a predicate noun. (3.) The construction after verbs of asking. (4.) The dative of possession.

33. [3] *rebus*, H. 386; A. & G. 228; G. 347.

34. [1] *ab eo*, H. 374, N. 3; A. & G. 239, *c*, N. 1; G. 339, N. 2. [2] *postularent*, H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317; G. 630. [3] *opus*, H. 414, IV, N. 4; A. & G. 243, *e*, R.; G. 406. [4] *quid—se*, H. 374; A. & G. 239, *c*; G. 339. [5] *negotii*, H. 397; A. & G. 216; G. 369.

The second embassy.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: **quoniam** tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in **cōnsulātū** suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre **invītātus gravārētur** neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum nē quam hominum multitūdinem amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, **redderet** Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs [1] iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsve eōrum bellum īnferret. sī id ita [2] fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō **perpetuam** grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram: sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus **cēnsuisset**, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod **commodō** reīpūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs ceterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sēsē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn **neglēctūrum**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *gratiam referre*. (2.) The repetition of prepositions. (3.) The ablative of manner. (4.) Conditional sentences in indirect discourse.

The reply of Ariovistus.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, **quemadmodum** vellent, imperārent: item populum Rōmānum [1] victīs nōn ad alterius **praescrīptum**, sed ad suum **arbitrium** imperāre cōnsuēsse. sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn **praescrīberet**, quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fōrtūnam temptāssent et armīs **congressī** āc superātī

35. [1] *iniuria*, H. 419, III, N. 2; A. & G. 248; G. 399. [2] *fecisset*, H. 527, 1; A. & G. 337; G. 656.

36. [1] *victis*, H. 441; A. & G. 188; G. 204, N. 1, *b*.

essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi **dēteriōra** [2]faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque iīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum **inlātūrum**, sī in eō **manērent**, quod convēnisset, **stīpendium**que **quotannīs penderent**; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī **āfutūrum**. quod sibi Caesar **dēnūntiāret** sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. cum vellet, [3]congrederētur: intellēctūrum, quid **invictī** Germānī, **exercitātissimī** in armīs, quī inter annōs **quattuordecim tēctum** nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The substantive use of adjectives and participles. (2.) Relative clauses expressing cause. (3.) The mood which represents the imperative in indirect discourse. (4.) The idiom *longe — afuturum.*

Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and seizes Vesontio.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī [1]questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam [2]**trānsportātī** essent, fīnēs eōrum [3]populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; **Trēverī** autem, pāgōs centum **Suēbōrum** ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse **Nasuam** et **Cimberium** frātrēs. quibus rēbus Caesar **vehementer** commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē **coniūnxisset**, minus facile [4]resistī posset. itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

36. [2] *faceret,* H. 517; A. & G. 320, *e*; G. 633. [3] *congrederetur,* H. 523, III; A. & G. 339; G. 652.

37. [1] *questum,* H. 546; A. & G. 302; G. 435. [2] *transportati essent,* H. 524; A. & G. 336; 341, *a*; G. 508. [3] *popularentur,* H. 516, II; A. & G. 321; G. 628. [4] *resisti,* H. 384, 5; A. & G. 230; G. 207.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *eodem tempore — et.* (2.) The dative with special verbs. (3.) The impersonal construction. (4.) Clauses introduced by *quod* expressing the reason of another.

38. Cum trīduī [1]viam **prōcēssisset,** nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum **Vesontiōnem,** [2]quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus **prōfēcisse.** id nē accideret, māgnopere sibi **praecavendum** Caesar exīstimābat. **namque** omnium **rērum,** quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī **sīc** mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen **Dūbis** ut **circinō circumductum** paene tōtum oppidum **cingit;** reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut **rādīcēs** mōntis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis **contingant.** hunc mūrus **circumdatus arcem efficit** et cum oppidō coniungit. **hūc** Caesar māgnīs **nocturnīs diurnīsque** itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of extent of space. (2.) The attraction of the relative. (3.) The gerundive. (4.) The ablative of characteristic.

Reports reach the Roman soldiers concerning the huge stature and remarkable skill of the Germans. The army is in a state of panic.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex **percontātiōne** nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum āc mercātōrum, quī **ingentī māgnitūdine corporum** Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque **exercitātiōne** in armīs esse **praedicābant** (**saepenumerō** sese cum hīs congressōs nē **vultum**

38. [1] *viam,* H. 379; A. & G. 257; G. 335. [2] *quod,* H. 445, 4; A. & G. 199; G. 614, R. 3.

quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus **subitō** timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn **mediocriter** omnium **mentēs** animōsque **perturbāret**. hīc prīmum ortus est ā [1] **tribūnīs** mīlitum, **praefectīs** reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant: quōrum [2] alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse [3] dīceret, petēbat, ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī **pudōre** adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vītārent, **remanēbant**. hī neque vultum **fingere** neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant: abditī in **tabernāculīs** aut suum **fātum** querēbantur, aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum **miserābantur**. **vulgō** tōtīs castrīs **testāmenta obsignābantur**. hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam iī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs **centuriōnēs**que quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. quī sē ex hīs mīnus **timidōs** exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris, māgnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut [4] rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē **supportārī** posset, timēre dīcēbant. nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī renūntiābant, cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō **audientēs** mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna **lātūrōs**.


TABERNACULUM.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *alius alia*. (2.) Clauses which contain a statement on the authority of another. (3.) The accusative of anticipation. (4.) The idiom *signa laturos*.

39. [1] *tribunis militum.* Introd. No. 101. [2] *alius alia*, H. 459, 1; A. & G. 203, *c*; G. 319. [3] *diceret*, H. 528, I; A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 628. [4] *rem frumentariam*, A. & G. 334, *c*; G. 468.

Caesar's speech.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō conciliō omniumque **ōrdinum** ad id concilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus vehementer eōs **incūsāvit**: prīmum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum [1] putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam **appetīsse**: **cūr** hunc tam **temerē** quisquam ab **officiō** discessūrum [2] iūdicāret? sibi quidem [3] persuādērī cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs atque **aequitāte** condiciōnum **perspectā** eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam **repudiātūrum.** quod sī **furōre** atque **āmentiā impulsus** bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus **dīligentiā** dēspērārent? factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā **Gāiō Mariō** pulsīs nōn minōrem **laudem** exercitus quam ipse **imperātor** meritus [4] vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā **servīlī tumultū**, [5] quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc **disciplīna**, quae ā **nōbīs** accēpissent, sublevārent. ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē [6] bonī **cōnstantia**, propterea quod, quōs **aliquamdiū inermōs** sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā **armātōs** āc victōrēs superāssent. denique hōs esse eōsdem, quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus **plērumque** superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse **diūturnitāte** bellī **dēfatīgātīs** Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē āc **palūdibus** tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et **dispersōs** subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō

40. [1] *putarent*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 321; 341, *d*; G. 628. [2] *iudicaret*, H. 523, II, N; A. & G. 338; G. 651. [3] *persuaderi*, H. 301, I; A. & G. 230; G. 217. [4] *videbatur*, H. 524, 2, 2; A. & G. 336, *b*; G. 628, R. [5] *quos*, H. 445, 6; A. & G. 199, *b*. [6] *boni*, H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, 3; G. 204, N. 2.

quam virtūte vīcisse. cuī [7] ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque **imperītōs** locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae **simulātiōnem** angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere **adroganter,** cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, **Leucōs,** Lingonēs **subministrāre,** iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs **brevī** tempore iūdicātūrōs. quod nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque sīgna [8] lātūrī [9] dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut **male** rē gestā fōrtūnam **dēfuisse,** aut aliquō **facinore** compertō **avāritiam** esse **convictam.** suam **innocentiam** perpetuā vītā, **fēlīcitātem** Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem **conlātūrus** fuisset, **repraesentātūrum** et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, [10] **utrum** apud eōs pudor atque officium, **an** timor valēret. quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā **decimā** legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam **praetōriam cohortem** futūram. huic legiōnī Caesar et **indulserat praecipuē** et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The rank of the centurions. (2.) The passive of intransitive verbs. (3.) Parenthetical clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) The antecedent implied in an adjective. (5.) The attraction of the antecedent. (6.) The personal construction with verbs of saying. (7.) Double questions. (8.) The dative of service. (9.) The partitive genitive. (10.) The subjunctive in interrogative sentences.

The ardor of the soldiers. The march.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in **modum** conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque **alacritās** et cupiditās bellī gerendī

40. [7] *rationi,* H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, *b*; G. 616. [8] *laturi,* H. 536, 2; A. & G. 272, *b*. [9] *dicantur,* H. 534, I, N. 1; A. & G. 330, *b*; G. 528. [10] *utrum — an,* H. 353; A. & G. 211; G. 458.

innāta est, [1] prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum **parātissimam** cōnfīrmāvit. deinde reliquae legiōnēs per tribūnōs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque **umquam** dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed [2] imperātōris esse, exīstimāvisse. eōrum **satisfactiōne** acceptā et itinere **exquīsītō** per Divitiacum, quod ex aliīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius **quīnquāgintā** circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *princeps egit*. (2.) The predicate genitive. (3.) The Subjunctive of result. (4.) The Roman legion. (5.) The Roman method of march.

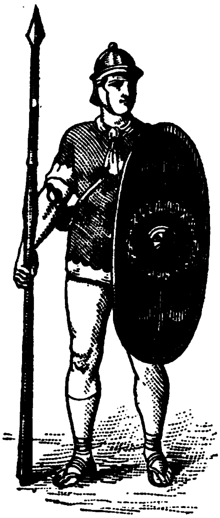
The demands for a conference.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāre. nōn **respuit** condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad **sānitātem** revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī [1] **dēnegāsset, ultrō** pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs fore, utī **pertināciā** dēsisteret. diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. interim saepe ūltrō **citrōque** cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem **peditem** ad conloquium Caesar

41. [1] *princeps*, H. 443, N. 1; A. & G. 191; G. 525, R. 6. [2] *imperatoris*, H. 402; A. & G. 214, *c*; G. 366.

42. [1] *denegasset*, H. 524; A. & G. 336, 2; G. 650.

addūceret: verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum equitātū venīret: aliā ratiōne sē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque conloquium **interpositā** causā tollī volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equīs Gallīs [2]equitibus **dētrāctīs** eō **legiōnāriōs** mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cuī quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, **impōnere**, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī [3]quid opus [4]factō esset, habēret. quod cum fieret, nōn **inrīdiculē** quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum ad equum **rescrībere.**



MILES LEVIS ARMATURAE.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative instead of the ablative of separation. (2.) The adverbial accusative. (3.) The construction after *opus*. (4.) The periphrastic future.

Caesar's speech.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā **tumulus terrēnus** satis **grandis**. hīc locus **aequō** ferē spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs **dēvēxerat**, [1]passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē **dēnōs** ut ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. ubi eō ventum

42. [2] *equitibus*, H. 385, II, 2; A. & G. 229; G. 345, R. 1. [3] *quid*, H. 378; A. & G. 238, *b*; G. 333, 2. [4] *facto*, H. 414, N. 3; A. & G. 243, *e*; G. 406.

43. [1] *passibus*, H. 379, 2; A. & G. 257, *b*; G. 403.

est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx [2] appellātus esset ā senātu, quod amīcus, quod **mūnera** amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs hominum **contigisse** et prō māgnīs officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī **docēbat**; illum, cum neque **aditum** neque causam postulandī **iūstam** habēret, beneficiō āc līberālitāte suā āc senātūs **ea praemia** cōnsecūtum. docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae **necessitūdinis** ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae **senātūscōnsulta quotiēns** quamque **honōrifica** in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amīcitiam **appetissent**. populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil **dēperdere**, sed grātiā, **dignitāte**, honōre **auctiōrēs** velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī **attulissent**, id iīs ēripī quis patī [3] posset? postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat, nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum **remittere** posset, **at** nē [4] quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) Causal clauses introduced by *quod*. (3.) The deliberative subjunctive in indirect discourse. (4.) The indefinite *quis* in compounds.

The answer of Ariovistus.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit; trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et **arcessītum** ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā [1] spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs

43. [2] *appellatus esset*, H. 528, 1; A. & G. 321; 341, *d*; G. 541. [3] *posset*, H. 523, II, 1, N.; A. & G. 338, *a*; G. 651. [4] *quos*, H. 455, 1; A. & G. 105, *d*; G. 315.

44. [1] *spe—praemiis*, H. 636, III, 2; A. & G. 385, No. 13; G. 698.

habēre in Gallīa ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse: omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs copiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātās esse. sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse **dēcertāre**; sī pace ūtī velint, **inīquum** esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. amīcitiam populī Rōmānī [2] sibi **ōrnāmentō** et praesidiō, nōn **dētrīmentō** esse oportēre, idque sē eā spē petīsse. sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī **subtrahantur**, nōn minus **lībenter** sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit. quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae **impūgnandae** causā facere; ēius reī **testimōnium** esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. sē prius in Galliam vēnisse, quam populum Rōmānum. **numquam** ante hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnēs ēgressum. quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, **sīcut** illam nostram. ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quī in suō iūre sē **interpellārēmus**. quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs **contentiōnibus**. quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. dēbēre sē **suspicārī simulātā** Caesarem **amīcitiā**, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī **opprimendī** causā habēre. quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum **dēdūcat** ex hīs **regiōnibus**, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed hoste habitūrum. quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī **grātum**

44. [2] *sibi ornamento*, H. 390, I; A & G 233; G. 356.

esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs [3]compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō **remūnerātūrum** et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius **labōre** et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Hendiadys. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The genitive with adjectives. (4.) The impersonal construction. (5.) The ablative of time.

Caesar's reply. The conference broken off by an attack of the Germans.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn [1]posset, et neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē merentēs sociōs **dēsereret,** neque sē iūdicāre Galliam **potius** esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et **Rutēnōs** ab Q. **Fabiō Māximō,** quibus populus Rōmānus **ignōvisset** neque in prōvinciam **redēgisset** neque stīpendium imposuisset. quod sī [2]antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium sēnātūs **observārī** oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō vīctam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The indirect question. (2.) Distinction between ablative of agent and ablative of means. (3.) The dative after special verbs. (4.) *Quisque* with superlatives.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō [1]geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius [2]tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs **ade-**

44. [3] *compertum habere,* H. 388, 1, N.; A. & G. 292, *c*; G. 238.

45. [1] *posset,* H. 529, I; A. & G. 334; G. 467. [2] *antiquissimum quodque,* H. 458, 1; A. & G. 93, *c*; G. 318, 2.

46. [1] *geruntur,* H. 467, 4; A. & G. 276, *e*; G. 229, R. [2] *tumulum,* H. 437, I; A. & G 234, *e*; G. 359, N. 1.

quitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem facit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. nam **etsi** sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. posteāquam in **vulgus** mīlitum **ēlātum** est, quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus [3] omnī Galliā Rōmānīs **interdīxisset**, impetumque in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut **dirēmisset**, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī **iniectum** est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The regular tense used with *dum*. (2.) The two constructions after *propius*, *propior*, *proxime*, *proximus*. (3.) The construction with *interdixisset*. (4.) The objective genitive.

The ambassadors sent to Ariovistus are put in chains.

47. [1] Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō: utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs [lēgātīs] aliquem ad sē mitteret. conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn poterant, quīn in nostrōs tēla [2] cōnicerent. lēgātum ex suīs sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum mīssūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. commodissimum vīsum est, Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī **Cabūrī** fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte **adulēscentem**, cūius pater ā Gāiō Valeriō **Flaccō** [3] cīvitāte **dōnātus** erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae **scientiam**, quā multā iam Ariovistus

46. [3] *omni Gallia*, H. 413; A. & G. 243; G. 390, 2.

47. [1] *biduo*, H. 430; A. & G. 250; G. 403, N. 4. [2] *conicerent*, H. 504, 4; A. & G. 319, *d*; G. 554. [3] *civitate*, H. 384 II, 2; A. & G. 225, *d*; G. 348.

longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō **peccandī** Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et M. **Metium**, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus **cōnspēxisset**, exercitū suō praesente **conclāmāvit**: quid ad sē venīrent? an **speculandī** causā? conantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

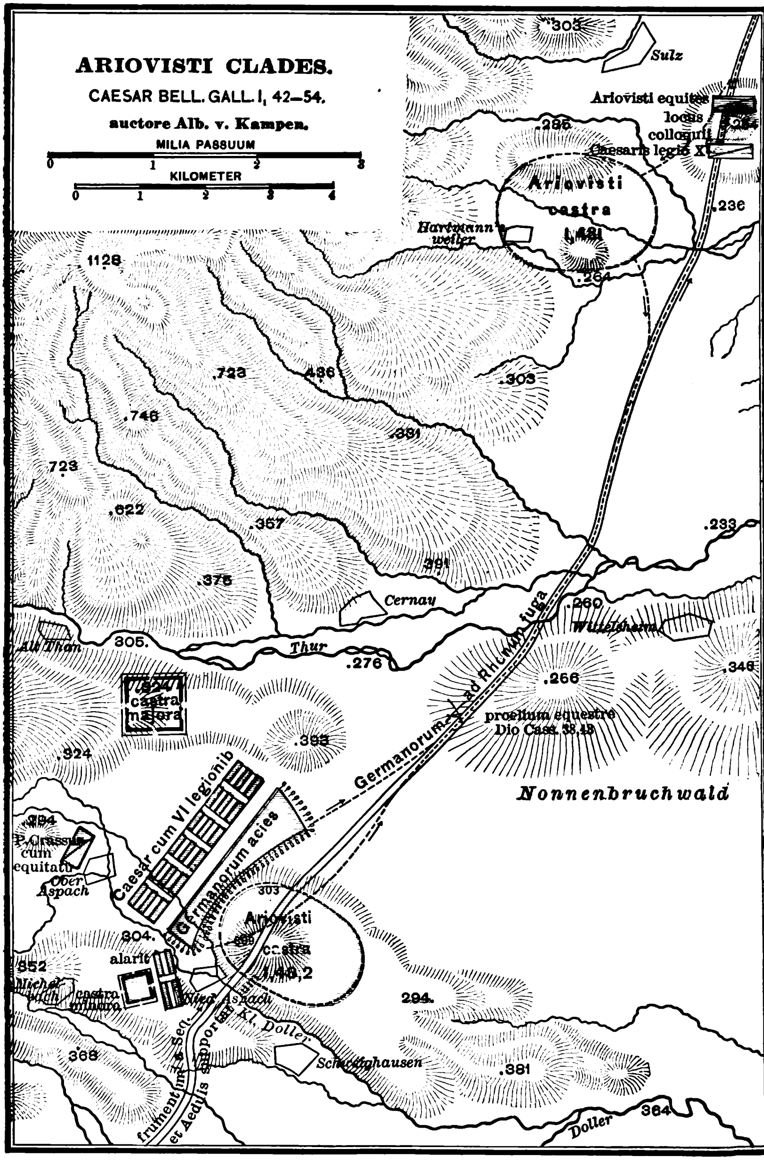
Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) *Coepi* with a passive infinitive. (3.) The construction after verbs of hindering. (4.) The constructions with *donare*.

The German method of fighting.

48. Eōdem diē castra **prōmōvit** et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub mōnte cōnsēdit. postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus **ūltrā** eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs [1] supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. ex eō diē diēs **continuōs** quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās **prōdūxit** et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. **Genus** hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī **exercuerant.** equitum mīlia erant sex, **totidem** numerō peditēs **vēlocissimi** āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant: cum hīs in proeliīs **versābantur.** ad hōs sē equitēs recipiēbant: hī, sī quid erat **dūrius**, **concurrēbant**: sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō **dēciderat**, **circumsistēbant**; sī quō erat longius **prōdeundum** aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne **celeritās, ut iubīs** equōrum sublevātī **cursum adaequārent.**

48. [1] *supportaretur*, H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629.


ARIOVISTI CLADES.
CAESAR BELL. GALL. I, 42–54.
auctore Alb. v. Kampen.
MILIA PASSUUM
0 1 2 3
KILOMETER
0 1 2 3 4
Sulz
Ariovisti equites
locus colloquii
Caesaris legio X
Ariovisti castra
Hartmann's weiler
Cernay
Thur
Alt Thann
Wittelsheim
castra maiora
Germanorum ad Rhenum fuga
proelium equestre Dio Cass. 38,48
Nonnenbruchwald
Caesar cum VI legionib
Germanorum acies
P. Crassus cum equitatu
Ober Aspach
Ariovisti castra
alarii
castra minora
Nied. Aspach
Kl. Doller
Schweighausen
Doller
frumentum a Seq. et Aedulis supportatum
303
285
236
264
303
723
436
746
391
723
622
357
391
375
260
233
305.
276
266
346
393
324
294
304.
352
294.
368
381
364

Topics for Study.

(1.) The manners of the Germans. (2.) The subjunctive by attraction. (3.) The ablative of time. (4.) The ablative of specification.

Ariovistus attacks the lesser camp of Caesar, but does not dare to contend in battle.

49. Ubi eum [1]castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs, castrīs **idōneum** locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, [2]tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne [3]prohibērent. nihilō **sētius** Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem **prōpulsāre**, tertiam opus perficere iussit. mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

Topic for Study.

The Roman camp.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit **paulumque** ā māiōribus castrīs **prōgressus** aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. ubi nē tum quīdem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter **merīdiem** exercitum in castra redūxit. tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. ācriter **utrimque usque** ad vesperum pūgnātum est. sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proeliō nōn

49. [1] *castris,* Introd. No. 121. [2] *tertiam,* Introd. No. 125, 1) *a.* [3] *prohiberent,* H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317; G. 630.

dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō [1] esset, ut mātrēsfamiliae eōrum **sortibus** et **vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent,** [2] utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset, **necne**: eās ita dīcere: nōn esse **fās** Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam **lūnam** proeliō contendissent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The mood used with *quod* to assign a reason on another's authority. (2.) Clauses of result. (3.) Double questions.

The battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, omnīs [1] **ālāriōs** in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad **speciem** ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt **generātim**que cōnstituērunt paribus intervallīs, Harūdēs, **Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemētēs, Sedusiōs,** Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam **rēdīs** et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscentēs mīlites **passīs** manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Topic for Study.

The Roman legion.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et [1] **quaestōrem** praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hōstium esse

50. [1] *esset*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 321; 341, *d*; G 541; 628. [2] *utrum—necne*, H. 353, N. 3; A. & G. 211; G. 459.

51. [1] *alarios*, Introd. No. 107.

52. [1] *quaestorem*, Introd. No. 110, *c*.

animadverterat, proelium commīsit. ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs **repentē** celeriterque **prōcurrērunt**, ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōniciendī nōn darētur. rēiectīs pīlīs, **comminus** gladiīs pūgnātum est. at Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī mīlitēs, quī in [2] phalangas [3] īnsilīrent et scūta manibus **revellerent** et dē superō vulnerārent. cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō **cornū** pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem **premēbant**. id cum animadvertisset **Publius** Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam hī, quī inter aciem versābantur, [4] tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs **subsidiō** mīsit.

Topics for Study.

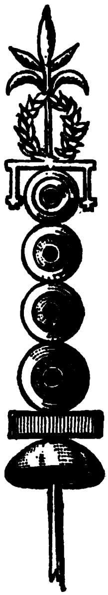
(1.) The gerund with direct object. (2.) The Greek accusative plural. (3.) The subjunctive of characteristic. (4.) The idiom *a sinistro cornu*. (5.) The dative of service.

The defeat of the Germans. Caesar leads his army into winter quarters and sets out for Cisalpine Gaul.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs **terga vertērunt** neque prius **fugere** dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī **trānāre** contendērunt aut lintribus **inventīs** sibi salūtem repperērunt. in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī **nāviculam dēligātam** ad rīpam **nactus** eā profūgit: reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, una **Suēba** [1] **nātiōne**, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis **Vocciōnis** soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre

52. [2] *phalangas*, H. 68; A. & G. 63, *f*; G. 65, R. 2. [3] *insilirent*, H. 503, I; A. & G. 320, *a*; G. 631, 2. [4] *tertiam aciem*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *a*.

53. [1] *natione*, H. 424; A. & G. 253; G. 397.



SIGNUM.

mīssam: utraeque in eā fugā **periērunt.** duae fīliae hārum, altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā [2]**trīnis** catēnīs **vinctus traherētur,** in ipsum Caesarem hostēs [3]equitātū persequentem **incidit.** quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa vīctōria **voluptātem** attulit, quod hominem **honestissimum** prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et **hospitem,** ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et **grātulātiōne** quicquam fōrtūna dēminuerat. is sē praesente dē sē **ter** sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī **statim necārētur,** an in aliud tempus **reservārētur**: sortium beneficiō sē esse **incolumem.** item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Semi-deponent verbs. (2.) The ablative of specification. (3.) Distributive numerals.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs **Ubiī,** quī proximī [1]Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī, māgnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā **aestāte** duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in [2]hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit, hībernīs Labiēnum **praeposuit**; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of limit of motion. (2.) The omission of the preposition with this accusative. (3.) The two possible constructions with *proximi*. (4.) The gerundive construction.

53. [2] *trinis*, H. 172, 3; A. & G. 95, *b*; G. 97, 3. [3] *equitatu*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *b*.

54. [1] *Rhenum*, H. 391, II, 2; A. & G. 234, *e*; G. 359, N. 1. [2] *hiberna*, Introd. No. 121.

C. IŪLIĪ CAESARIS

DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

COMMENTĀRIUS SECUNDUS.

THE BELGIAN WAR.

The Belgian confederacy. Caesar proceeds against the Belgae.



1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā [in hībernīs], ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, **crēbrī** ad eum **rūmōrēs** adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, [1]quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum **coniūrāre** obsidēsque inter sē dare. [2]coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod [3]verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs **sollicitārentur, partim** quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque **inveterāscere** in Galliā **molestē** ferēbant, partim quī **mōbilitāte** et **levitāte** animī [4]novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad

1. [1] *quam*, H. 445, 4; A. & G. 199; G. 614, 3, *b*. [2] *coniurandi*, H. 542, I; A. & G. 298; G. 428. [3] *vererentur*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 321, 341, *d*; G. 541. [4] *novis imperiis*, H. 385; A. & G. 227; G. 346.

condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The attraction of the antecedent. (2.) The genitive of the gerund. (3.) *Quod* assigning a reason on the authority of another. (4.) The idiom *moleste ferebant*. (5.) The ablative of cause. (6.) The dative with special verbs.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et [1] **initā** aestāte, in **interiōrem** Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quintum **Pedium** lēgātum mīsit. ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse [2] **inciperet**, ad exercitum venit. dat negōtium **Senonibus** reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. hī **cōnstanter** omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet [3] diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) Relative clause of purpose. (3.) The idiom *cum primum*. (4.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (5.) The impersonal construction.

The Remi submit to Caesar and inform him of the strength of the confederates.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnī [1] **opīniōne** vēnisset, **Rēmī**, quī proximī [2] Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs **Iccium** et **Andecumborium**, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī [3] dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī per-

2. [1] *inita aestate*, H. 431; A. & G. 255; G. 409. [2] *inciperet*, H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585. [3] *diebus*, H. 429; A. & G. 256; G. 393.

3. [1] *opinione*, H. 417; A. & G. 247; G. 398. [2] *Galliae*, H. 391, I; A. & G. 234, *a*; G. 359. [3] *dicerent*, H. 497, I; A. & G. 317; G. 630.

mittere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs **cōnsēnsisse** neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī **cis** Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē **Suessiōnēs** quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem [4]iūre et eīsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quin cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *celerius omni opinione*. (2.) The dative after adjectives. (3.) Adjectives used substantively. (4.) The two possible constructions after *paratus*.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs, quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō [1]possent, sīc reperiēbat: **plērōsque** Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs [2]Rhēnumque **antīquitus** trāductōs propter locī **fertilitātem** ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, **expulisse**, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vēxātā Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā fīnēs suōs **ingredī** prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre **explōrāta** Rēmī dīcēbant, propter̄eā quod **propīnquitātibus** adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. plūrimum inter eōs **Bellovacōs** et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum: pollicitōs ex eō numerō **ēlēcta** LX, tōtīus bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; lātissimōs **ferācissimōs**que agrōs possidēre. apud eōs

3. [4] *iure*, H. 421, I; A. & G. 249; G. 407.

4. [1] *possent*, H. 529, I; A. & G. 334; G. 467. [2] *Rhenum*, H. 376, N.; A. & G. 239, 2, N. 2; G. 331, R. 1.

fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Divitiacum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī [3] cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam **Brittaniae** imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem **Galbam**: ad hunc propter iūstitiam **prūdentiamque** tōtīus bellī summam omnium voluntāte **dēferrī**: oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā: totidem **Nerviōs**, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia **Atrebatēs**, **Ambianōs** X mīlia, **Morinōs** XXV mīlia, **Menapiōs** VII mīlia, **Caletōs** X mīlia, **Veliocassēs** et **Viromanduōs** totidem, **Aduātucōs** decem et novem mīlia; **Condrūsōs**, **Eburōnēs**, **Caeroesōs**, **Paemānōs**, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The adverbial accusative. (2.) The indirect question. (3.) The two accusatives with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition. (4.) The idiom *plurimum valere*. (5.) Correlatives.

Caesar encamps on the banks of the Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus **līberāliterque** ōrātiōne **prōsecūtus** omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. quae omnia ab hīs **dīligenter** ad diem facta sunt. ipse Divitiacum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis [1] intersit manūs hostium **distinērī**, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore **cōnflīgendum** sit. id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum **intrōdūxerint** et eōrum agrōs [2] populārī coeperint. hīs mandātīs eum ab sē dīmittit. postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen **Axonam**, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīni-

4. [3] *cum — tum*, H. 554, I, 5; A. & G. 155, *a*, ex. 4; G. 588.

5. [1] *intersit*, H. 406, III; A. & G. 222; G. 381. [2] *populari*, H. 533, I, 1; A. & G. 271; G. 423.

bus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis [3] mūniēbat et post eum quae essent **tūta** ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. in eō flūmine pōns erat. ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. **Titurium Sabīnum** lēgātum cum sex [4] cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim [5] vāllō [6] fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The complementary infinitive. (2.) The intensive pronoun. (3.) The construction with *interest*. (4.) The ablative of manner. (5.) Substantive clauses of result. (6.) The Roman method of fortifying the camp.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi, attacked by the Belgae. Caesar relieves the siege and fortifies a camp.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum [1] nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. aegrē eō diē **sustentātum** est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum **oppūgnātiō** est haec. ubi **circumiectā** multitūdine hominum tōtīs [2] **moenibus** undique in mūrum lapidēs **iacī** [3] coeptī sunt mūrusque **dēfēnsōribus** **nūdātus** est, **testūdine** factā [**portās**] **succēdunt** mūrumque **subruunt**.



TESTUDO.

5. [3] *muniebat*, Introd. No. 125, 2). [4] *cohortibus*, Introd. No. 99. [5] *vallo*, Introd. No. 121, *b*. [6] *fossa*, Introd. No. 121, *a*, and note.

6. [1] *nomine*, H. 424; A. & G. 253; G. 397. [2] *moenibus*, H. 425, II, 1; A. & G. 258, *f*; G. 389. [3] *coepti sunt*, H. 297, I, 1; A. & G. 143, *a*; G. 423, 2, N. 3.

quod tum facile fīēbat. nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi **submittātur**, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of specification. (2.) The ablative of place. (3.) The ablative of time. (4.) The voice of *coepi* when used with a passive infinitive. (5.) The ablative of separation.

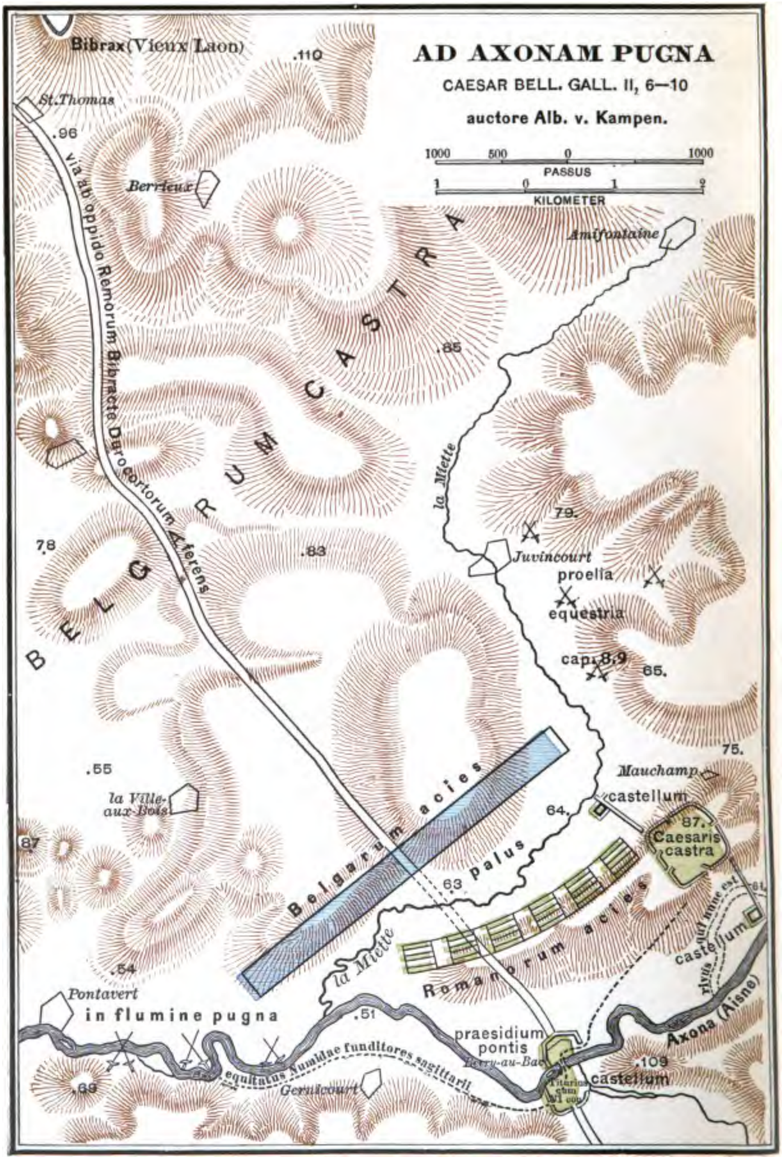
7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar [1] īsdem dūcibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, **Numidās** et **Crētās sagittāriōs** et **funditōrēs Baleārēs** [2] subsidiō **oppidānīs** mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē **dēfēnsiōnis** studium **prōpūgnandī** accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. itaque paulīsper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, [3] quōs **adīre** potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut **fūmō** atque īgnibus **sīgnificābātur**, amplius [4] mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Topics for Study.

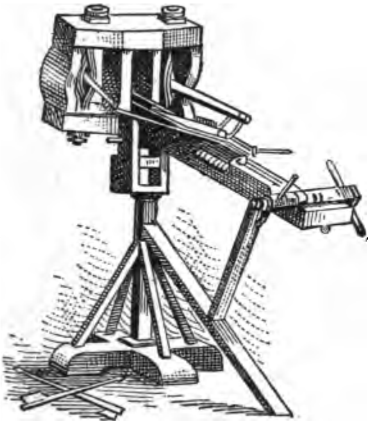
(1.) The construction after *utor*. (2.) The dative of purpose. (3.) The treatment of *potior* in the gerundive construction. (4.) The idiom *de media nocte*

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter **eximiam** opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō **supersedēre** statuit; cotīdiē

7. [1] *isdem*, H. 421, 1; A. & G. 249; G. 407. [2] *subsidio oppidanis*, H. 390; A. & G. 233; G. 356. [3] *quos*. H. 445, 3, N. 1; A. & G. 198, *a*; G. 614, R. 5. [4] *milibus*, H. 417; A. & G. 247; G. 388.


AD AXONAM PUGNA
CAESAR BELL. GALL. II, 6—10
auctore Alb. v. Kampen.
1000 500 0 1000
PASSUS
1 0 1 2
KILOMETER
Bibrax (Vieux Laon)
.110
St. Thomas
.96
via ab oppido Remorum Bibracte Durocortorum ferens
Berrieux
Amifontaine
BELGARUM CASTRA
.85
la Miette
79.
7.8
.83
Juvincourt
proelia
equestria
cap. 8,9
65.
75.
.55
Mauchamp
castellum
la Ville-aux-Bois
64.
87.
Caesaris castra
87
Belgarum acies
palus
63
Romanorum acies
rivus qui nunc est
castellum
.54
la Miette
Pontavert
in flumine pugna
.51
praesidium pontis
Berry-au-Bac
Axona (Aisne)
.109
castellum
equitatus Numidae funditores sagittarii
Gernicourt
.69

tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte [1] posset et quid nostrī audērent, **periclitābātur.** ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, **paululum** ex plānitiē **ēditus** tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum [2] locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et **frontem lēniter fastīgātus** paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere ēius collis **trānsversam** fossam **obdūxit** circiter passuum CD, et ad [3] extrēmās [4] fossās castella cōnstituit ibique **tormenta** conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvēnīre possent. hōc factō duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relīctīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant.



CATAPULTA.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The indirect question. (2.) The gerundive construction. (3.) The partitive genitive. (4.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (5.) The use of participles. (6.) The adverbial accusative. (7.) The difference of construction after *ubi* and *cum*, as illustrated in this chapter. (8.) The Roman engines of war.

8. [1] *posset*, H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334; G. 467. [2] *loci*, H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, 3; G. 369. [3] *extremas fossas*, H. 440, 2, N. 1; A. & G. 193; G. 291, R. 2. [4] *fossas*, Introd. No. 121, *a*, and note.

The Belgae try to cross the Axona. The Romans attack them in the rear and pursue them with great slaughter.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. hanc [1] sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs [2] aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. ubi **neutrī** trānseundī initium faciunt, [3] secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. hostēs **prōtinus** ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius lēgātus, expūgnārent pōntemque **interscinderent**; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Clauses of purpose. (2.) The ablative absolute construction with a noun and adjective. (3.) The ablative of separation.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Tituriō omnem equitātum et **levis armātūrae** Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pōntem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum repulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. hostēs ubi et [1] dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē **fefellisse** intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī

9. [1] *si*, H. 529, II, 1, n. 1; A. & G. 334, *f*; G. 460, *b*. [2] *aggrederentur*, H. 497, II; A. & G. 317; G. 545. [3] *secundiore proelio*, H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, *a*; G. 409.

10. [1] *de expugnando oppido*, H. 544, 2; A. & G. 301; G. 433.

causā **vīdērunt**, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria **dēficere** coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse, [2] domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et **domesticīs** cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Divitiacum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum **appropīnquāre** cōgnōverant. hīs [3] persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *certior factus.* (2.) The ablative of the gerundive with *de.* (3.) The accusative of limit of motion. (4.) The dative with compounds. (5.) The impersonal construction.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum **strepitū** āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum [1] peteret et domum pervenīre **properāret**, [2] fēcērunt, ut **cōnsimilis** fugae profectiō vidērētur. hāc rē statim Caesar per **speculātōrēs** cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen [3] morārētur, praemīsit. hīs Quintum Pedium et Lūcium **Aurunculēium Cottam** lēgātōs praefēcit. **Titum** Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus **subsequī** iussit. hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent

10. [2] *domum*, H. 380, II, 2, 1; A. & G. 258, *b*; G. 337. [3] *persuaderi*, H. 301, 1; A. & G. 230; G. 217.

11. [1] *peteret*, H. 517; A. & G. 326; G. 586. [2] *fecerunt, ut*, H. 498, II, N. 2; A. & G. 332, *e*; G. 553, 1. [3] *moraretur*, H. 497, I; A. & G. 317; G. 630.

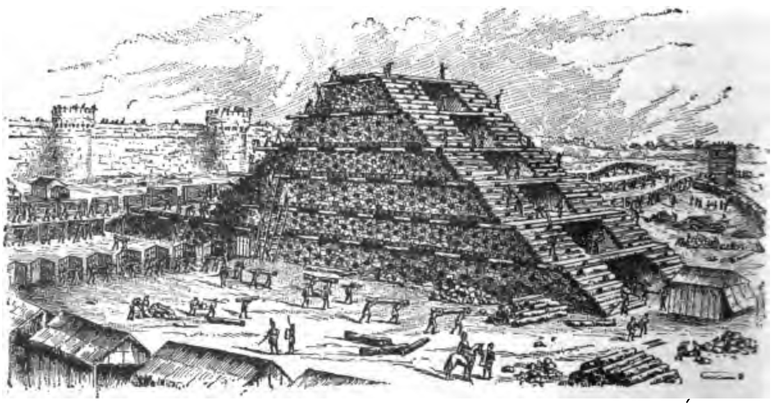
fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, **priōrēs**, quod abesse ā perīculō [4] vidērentur neque ūllā **necessitāte** neque imperiō continērentur, **exaudītō clāmōre** perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* in causal clauses. (2.) The idiom *prima luce.* (3.) Relative clauses of purpose. (4.) The subjunctive by attraction.

Caesar marches against the Suessiones and the Bellovaci. Divitiacus pleads for the latter.

12. Postrīdiē ēius [1] diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex **terrōre** āc fugā [2] reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere [cōnfectō] ad oppidum

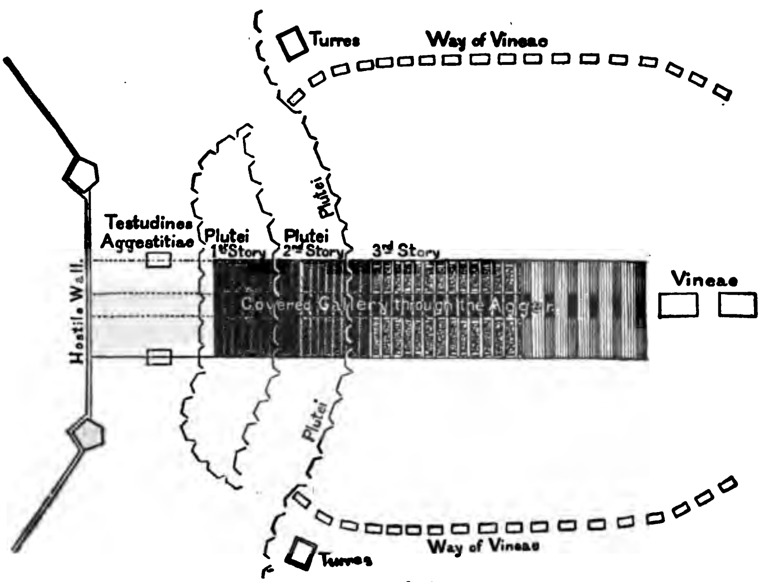


AGGER (perspective view).

11. [4] *viderentur*, H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629.

12. [1] *diei*, H. 398, 5; A. & G. 223, *e*; G. 372, N. 3. [2] *reciperent*, H. 520, II; A. & G. 327; G. 577.

Noviodūnum contendit. id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod **vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. castrīs mūnītīs **vineās** agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, [3] **aggere** iactō **turribus**que cōnstitūtīs māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs, ut **cōnservārentur**, impetrant.



AGGER (ground plan).

Topics for Study.

(1.) The genitive after *postridie*. (2.) The two possible constructions after *proximi*. (3.) The dative of purpose. (4.) The construction of the *agger*.

12. [3] *aggere*. Introd. No. 127.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum **Bratuspantium** contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs [1]māiōrēs **nātū** ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem **tendere** et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The adjective used substantively. (2.) The idiom *maiores natu*. (3.) The accusative of extent of space.

14. Prō hīs Divitiacus (nam post **discessum** Belgārum dīmīssīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis **Haeduae** fuisse: impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī [1]dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs **indignitātēs** contumēliāsque perferre et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. quī ēius cōnsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā **clēmentiā** āc **mānsuētūdine** in eōs ūtātur. quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās **amplificātūrum**; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

Topic for Study.

The changes in moods, tenses, and persons in the indirect discourse.

13. [1] *maiores natu*, H. 424; A. & G. 253; G. 397.
14. [1] *dicerent*, H. 524; A. & G. 336, 1, 2; G. 650.

Caesar's reply. Account of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Divitiacī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās [1]auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambianōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine **morā dēdidērunt**. eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat; nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī [2]**vīnī** reliquārumque rērum [ad **lūxuriam** pertinentium] īnferrī, quod iīs rēbus **relanguēscere** animōs [eōrum] et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; **increpitāre** atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent **patriam**que virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of cause. (2.) The objective genitive. (3.) The partitive genitive. (4.) The ablative of quality. (5.) The genitive of quality.

Caesar marches against the Nervii. Some Gauls and Belgians desert to the Nervii and give information.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs [1]trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs [2]**Sabim** flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius [3]mīlia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebatīs et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī

15. [1] *auctoritate*, H. 419, III; A. & G. 251; G. 400. [2] *vini*, H. 397, 1; A. & G. 216, 3; G. 369.

16. [1] *triduum*, H. 379; A. & G. 256; G. 336. [2] *Sabim*, H. 62, II, 2; A. & G. 56, *a*, 1; G. 57, R. 1. [3] *milia*, H. 417, 1, N. 2; A. & G. 247, *c*; G. 296, R. 4.

eandem bellī fōrtūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque per **aetātem** ad pūgnam **inūtilēs** vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of duration of time. (2.) The idiom *iter fecisset*. (3.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*. (4.) The dative with special verbs.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum [1] idōneum castrīs dēligant. cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque [2] Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine [3] itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma [4] legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum [5] spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque **dīreptīs** futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. **adiuvābat** etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed, **quicquid** possunt, **pedestribus** valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī **praedandī** causā ad eōs vēnisset, impedīrent, **teneris arboribus incisis** atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem **rāmis ēnātis** et **rubis sentibusque interiectis** effēcerant, ut **īnstar** mūrī hae **sēpēs mūnimenta praebērent,** quō nōn modo nōn **intrārī**, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. hīs rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn **omittendum** sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

17. [1] *idoneum castris*, Introd. No. 121. [2] *ex Gallis*, H. 397, N. 3; A. & G. 216, *c*; G. 372, R. 2. [3] *itineris*, Introd. No. 122. [4] *legio*, Introd. No. 98. [5] *spatium*, H. 379; A. & G. 257; G. 335.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (2.) The idiom *quicquam negotii*. (3.) The accusative of extent of space. (4.) The impersonal construction. (5.) The Roman legion. (6.) The Roman method of march.

The character of the ground. The assault of the Nervii.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem [1]locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. collis ab summō **aequāliter** **dēclīvis** ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā **nōmināvimus**, vergēbat. ab eō flūmine parī **acclīvitāte** collis **nāscēbātur** adversus huic et **contrārius**, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte **silvestris**, ut nōn facile **intrōrsus** perspicī posset. intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae **statiōnēs** equitum vidēbantur. flūminis erat altitūdo circiter pedum trium.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjective genitive in all its divisions. (2.) The repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause. (3.) The substantive use of adjectives.

19. Caesar equitātū praemīssō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque āgminis **aliter** sē habēbat, āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. nam quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen **trānsgressī** cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. cum sē illī **identidem** in silvās ad suōs reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem **porrēcta** loca aperta pertinēbant, **cēdentēs** īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae [1]prīmae vēnerant, oper

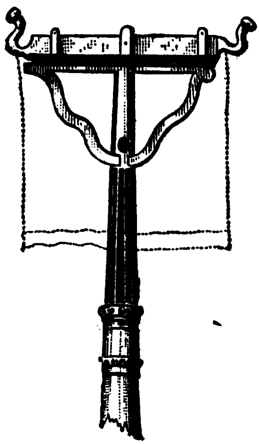
18. [1] *locum*, H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, *a*; G. 616.
19. [1] *primae*, H. 443; A. & G. 191; G. 325, R. 6.

[2] **dīmēnsō** castra mūnīre coepērunt. ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī **latēbant**, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs **prōvolāvērunt** impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. hīs facile pulsīs āc **prōturbātīs** incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen **dēcucurrērunt**, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. eādem autem celeritāte [3] adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of accompaniment. (2.) Contract forms. (3.) Two datives. (4.) Deponent verbs in passive sense.

The generalship and courage of Caesar.


VEXILLUM.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: **vēxillum** prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsīgne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum [1] **tubā** dandum, ab opere **revocandī** mīlitēs, quī [2] paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, [3] mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis **brevitās** et **successus** hostium impediēbat. hīs **difficultātibus** duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrī-

19. [2] *dimenso*, H. 231, 2; A. & G. 135, *b*; G. 167, N. 2. [3] *adverso colle*, H. 431; A. & G. 258, *g*; G. 389.

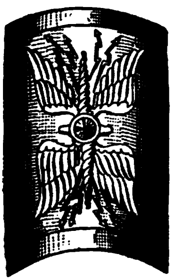
20. [1] *tuba*, Introd. No. 104. [2] *paulo longius*, H. 444, 1; A. & G. 93, *a*; G. 297, 2. [3] *milites cohortandi*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *e*.

bere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs **vetuerat.** hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium [4] nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, **administrābant.**

Topics for Study.

(1.) The gerundive construction. (2.) The significations of the comparative. (3.) Distributive numerals. (4.) The dative of agency.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam [in] partem **fōrs obtulit**, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam **dēvēnit.** mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam [1] retinērent **neu** perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum **adicī** [2] posset, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit. atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. temporis tanta fuit **exiguitās** hostiumque tam parātus ad **dīmicandum** animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia **accommodanda**, sed etiam ad **galeās induendās** [3] scūtīsque **tegimenta dētrūdenda** tempus dēfuerit. quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.



SCUTUM.

Topics for Study.

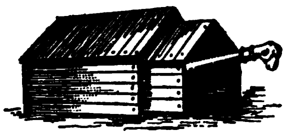
(1.) A result clause with *ut* after *quam*. (2.) The dative after compounds. (3.) Relative clause of result after *quam*. (4.) The ablative of separation.

20. [4] *nihil*, H. 378, 2; A. & G. 240, *a*; G. 334.

21. [1] *retinerent*, H. 502, 2; A. & G. 332, *b*; G. 631, 3. [2] *posset*, H. 502, 2; A. & G. 320, *c*; G. 298. [3] *scutisque tegimenta detrudenda*, Introd. No. 123, I, 2) *b*.

The various fortune of the battle.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum **dīversīs** legiōnibus [1]aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, sēpibusque **dēnsissimīs**, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs **prōspectus** impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, **prōvidērī** neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. itaque in tantā rērum **inīquitāte** fōrtūnae quoque **ēventūs variī** sequēbantur.



ARIES.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The idiom *aliae alia*. (3.) The indirect question.

23. Legiōnis **nōnae** et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte [1]aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmīssīs cursū āc **lassitūdine exanimātōs** vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebatēs (nam hīs ea pars **obvēnerat**) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen **compulērunt** et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dūbitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, **undecima** et **octāva**, **prōflīgātīs** Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs **proeliābantur.** at tōtīs ferē ā frōnte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō āgmine dūce

22. [1] *aliae alia*, H. 459, 1; A. & G. 203, *c*; G. 319.
23. [1] *acie*, H. 120; A. & G. 74, *a*; G. 63, R. 2, N. 1.

Boduōgnātō quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars [2]apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The position of preposition *cum* with relative pronouns. (2.) The ablative of degree of difference. (3.) Two nouns in the ablative absolute construction. (4.) The ablative of place.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et **cālōnēs**, quī ab **decumānā** portā āc summō iugō collis nostrōs vīctōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum **respēxissent** et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, **praecipitēs** fugae sēsē mandābant. simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor **fremitus**que oriēbātur, [1]aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est **singulāris**, quī auxiliī causā ab cīvitāte ad Caesarem mīssī vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs **dissipātōs**que in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (2.) The ablative of cause. (3.) The idiom *alii aliam in partem*. (4.) Agreement of a verb with compound subject.

23. [2] *aperto latere*, Introd. No. 116.
24. [1] *alii aliam*, H. 459, 1; A. & G. 203, *c*; G. 319.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis [1] **cohortātiōne** ad dextrum cornū prōfectus, ubi suōs **urgērī** sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs **sīgniferōque** interfectō, sīgnō amīssō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs [2] prīmipīlō P. **Sextiō Baculō**, fortissimō **virō**, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse **tardiōrēs** et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō **excēdere** āc tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod summíttī [3] posset, scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī [4] mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et [5] **manipulōs** [6] **laxāre** iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus **operam nāvāre** cuperet, paulum hostium impetus **tardātus** est.

Topics for Study.

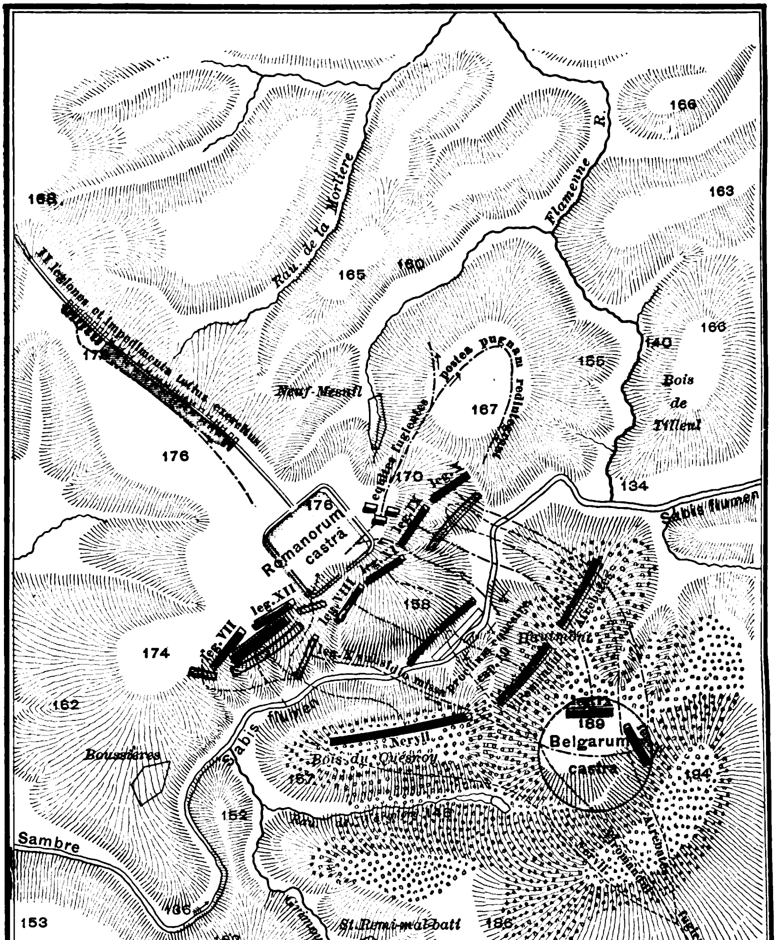
(1.) The periodic structure. (2.) The relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The dative to supply the place of the ablative of separation.

Labienus sends the tenth legion as a relief to the Romans. The defeat and excessive losses of the Nervii.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae **iūxtā** cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et [1] conversa sīgna in hostēs

25. [1] *cohortatione*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *e*. [2] *primipilo*, Introd. No. 100. [3] *posset*, H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320, *a*; G. 631, 2. [4] *militi*, H. 385, II, 2; A. & G. 229; G. 345, R. 1. [5] *manipulos*, Introd. No. 99. [6] *laxare*, Introd. No. 114.

26. [1] *conversa signa*, H. 549, 5; A. & G. 292, R.; G. 668.



NERVIORUM CLADES.

CAES. BELL. GALL. II, 16-28.

auctore Alb. v. Kampen.

PASSUS
0 250 500 750 1000
METER
0 500 1000 1500 2000

īnferrent. quō factō cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus, castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate use of the participle. (2.) The indirect question. (3.) The partitive genitive.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī **prōcubuissent**, scūtīs **innīxī** proelium redintegrārent, tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam **inermēs** armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut **turpitūdinem** fugae virtūte **dēlērent**, omnibus in locīs pūgnārent, [1] quō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. at hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī **iacentibus īnsisterent** atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et **coacervātīs cadaveribus**, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla **intercepta** remitterent: ut nōn **nēquīquam** tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdo redēgerat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative ablative. (2.) Purpose clauses introduced by *quo*. (3.) The dative with compounds.

27. [1] *quo—praeferrent*, H. 497, 2; A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et propē ad interneciōnem **gente** āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in **aestuāria** āc palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum vīctōribus nihil impedītum, vīctīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex DC ad trēs **senātōrēs**, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre [1] possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc **supplicēs** ūsus **misericordiā** vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *maiores natu.* (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The gerundive construction.

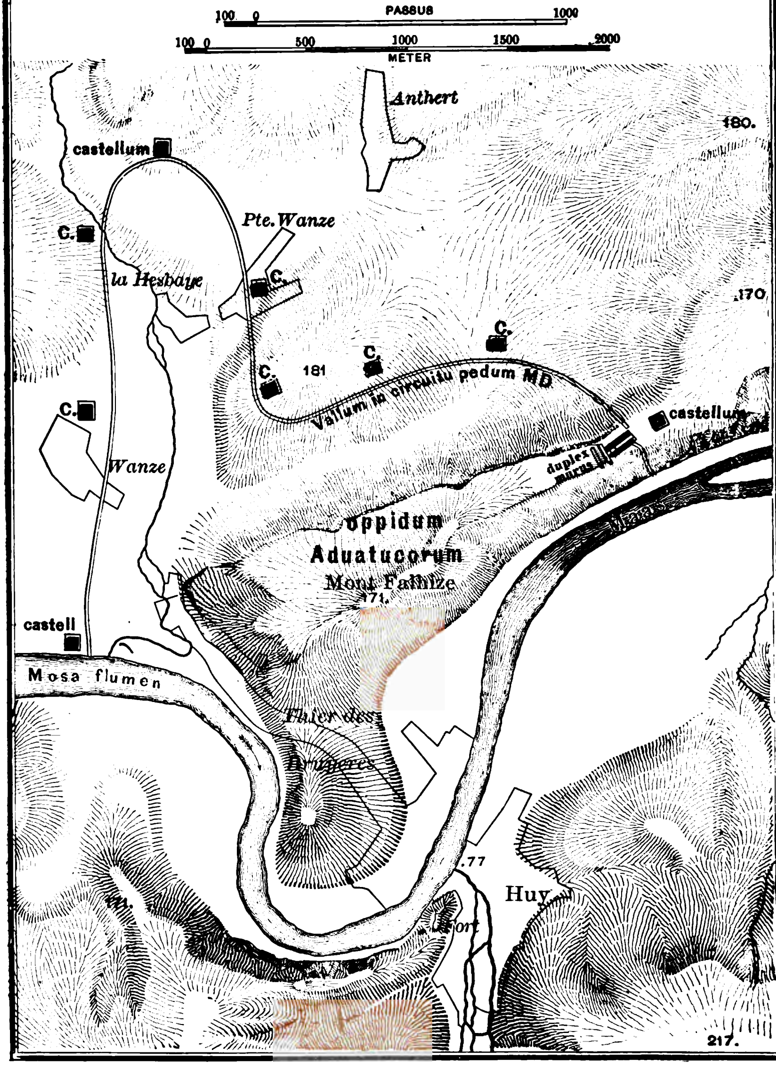
The Aduatuci withdraw to a town fortified by nature.

29. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā **scrīpsimus**, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; **cūnctīs** oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē natūrā mūnītum contulērunt. quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās **rūpēs dēspectūs**que habēret, ūnā ex parte leniter **acclīvis** aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum **duplicī** altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum [1] māgnī **ponderis saxa** et **praeacūtās trabēs** in mūrō conlocābant. ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque **prōgnātī**, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs **custōdiam** ex suīs āc praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquērunt. hī post

28. [1] *possent*, H. 524; A. & G. 336, 2; G. 650.

29. [1] *magni ponderis*, H. 396, V; A. & G. 215, *b*; G. 365.

ADUATUCORUM OPPIDUM lib. II. 29–33.



eōrum **obitum** multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs **exagitātī**, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium **pāce factā** hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of accompaniment. (2.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*. (3.) The genitive of measure. (4.) The dative of purpose.

They show contempt for the Roman engineering.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō **excursiōnēs** faciēbant **parvulīs**que proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vallō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs **circummūnītī** oppidō sēsē continēbant. ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere **exstrūctō** turrim **procul** cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum **inrīdēre** ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta **māchinātiō** ab tantō spatiō īnstruerētur: **quibusnam** manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs **tantulae statūrae** (nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs **prae** māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra [1]**contemptuī** est) tantī **oneris** turrim mōtūrōs sēsē cōnfīderent?

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative in *ab tanto spatio*. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The genitive of quality.

They pretend to submit to the Romans.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropīnquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque **inūsitātā** speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī; nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope **dīvīnā** bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre [1]possent, sē suaque

30. [1] *contemptui*, H. 390; A. & G. 233, *a*; G. 356.
31. [1] *possent*, H. 517; A. & G. 320, *e*; G. 633.

omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. ūnum petere āc **dēprecārī**: sī fōrte prō suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduātucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs [2] **dēspoliāret.** sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs āc suae virtūtī **invidēre**; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, **quamvis** fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs **dominārī** cōnsuēssent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Relative clause expressing cause. (2.) The imperative in indirect discourse. (3.) Omitted subjects of infinitives.

Caesar receives them into surrender. They treacherously attack the Romans, but many are cut to pieces and the rest reduced to slavery.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī prius, quam **ariēs** mūrum attigisset, sē dēdidissent: sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent. rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem **acervī** armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, **cēlātā** atque in oppidō retentā portīs **patefactīs** eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The future perfect in the indirect discourse. (2.) Subjunctive of result. (3.) Construction after *utor*.

31. [2] *despoliaret*, H. 523, III; A. & G. 339; G. 652.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique **indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant**, partim cum hīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex **cortice** factīs aut **vīminibus intēxtīs**, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, **pellibus** indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē **arduus** ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs **repentīnō** ex oppidō **ēruptiōnem** fēcērunt. celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus **sīgnificātiōne** factā ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, [1]pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. postrīdiē ēius diēī **refrāctīs** portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque **intrōmissīs** mīlitibus nostrīs, **sectiōnem** ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar **vendidit**. ab iīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Sub* with the accusative in temporal expressions. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The present infinitive after a past tense of *debeo*.

Many maritime states are subdued.

34. Eōdem tempore ā Publiō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad **Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs,** [1]**Cūriosolītas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs,** quae sunt **maritimae** cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

33. [1] *pugnari debuit*, H. 537, I; A. & G. 288, *a*; G. 423, 2, N. 2.
34. [1] *Curiosolitas*, H. 68; A. & G. 63, *f*; G. 65, R. 2.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *certior factus*. (2.) The time indicated by the tenses of the infinitive.

The Germans send ambassadors to Caesar on account of the high opinion of the war. Caesar returns to Italy. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam **Illyricum**que properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. ipse in **Carnūtēs**, **Andēs**, **Turonēs**que, quae cīvitātēs propīnquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in **hībernācula** dēductīs in Ītaliam profectus est. ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim **supplicātiō dēcrēta** est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *inita proxima aestate*. (2.) The intensive pronoun. (3.) The accusative of duration of time. (4.) The relative in agreement with the idea contained in a clause.

C. IŪLIĪ CAESARIS

DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

COMMENTĀRIUS TERTIUS.

1–6. War with the Alpine Tribes.

Servius Galba is sent against the Nantuates, Veragri, and the Seduni. Galba goes to winter-quarters at Octodurus.



1. Cum in Ītaliam [1] proficīscerētur Caesar, **Servium** Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in **Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque** mīsit, quī ab fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum perīculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuerant, patefierī volēbat. huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba secundīs **aliquot** proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs, mīssīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur **Octodūrus,** hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in **valle** nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē altissimīs mōntibus undique continētur. cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī

1. [1] *proficisceretur*, H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585.

Gallīs [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam ab illīs relīctam cohortibus **attribuit.** eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* introducing temporal clause. (2.) The idiom *summas Alpes.* (3.) The ablative absolute. (4.) The conditional sentence. (5.) The Roman legion.

The Seduni and Veragri form a design of cutting off the legion. Galba calls a council.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent; prīmum, quod legiōnem neque eam **plēnissimam** dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus **singillātim**, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, [absentibus] propter **paucitātem** dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cōnicerent, nē prīmum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant. accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs **abstrāctōs** obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis **culmina** Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae **adiungere** sibi [1] persuāsum habēbant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The indirect discourse. (2.) Substantive clauses. (3.) The expression *sibi persuasum habebant.*

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent [1] perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reli-

2. [1] *persuasum habebant,* H. 388, 1, N.; A. & G. 292, *c*; G. 238.
3. [1] *perfectae,* H. 439; A. & G. 187, *a*; G. 290.

quōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnciliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. quō in conciliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, āc iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque [2]subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae **hūiusmodī** sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relīctīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. māiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The agreement of an adjective with two nouns of different gender. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The dative of purpose.

The Romans are attacked. The battle rages for six hours without cessation.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut hīs rēbus, quās [1]cōnstituissent, conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō [2]dēcurrere, lapidēs **gaesa**que in vāllum cōnicere. nostrī prīmō **integrīs** vīribus fortiter repūgnāre neque ūllum **frūstrā** tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, ut quaeque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, āc nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē **sauciō** quidem ēius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī āc suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

3. [2] *subsidio*, H. 384, 1, 3); A. & G. 233; G. 356.

4. [1] *constituissent*, H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629. [2] *decurrere*, H. 536, I; A. & G 275; G. 647.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive by attraction. (2.) The historical infinitive. (3.) A noun and adjective in ablative absolute construction.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter [1] pūgnārētur, āc nōn sōlum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent **languidiōribus**que nostrīs vāllum **scindere** et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, Publius Sextius Baculus, **pīlī** prīmī centuriō, quem **Nervicō** proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item Gāius **Volusēnus**, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam adcurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulīsper intermitterent proelium āc **tantummodo** tēla mīssa **exciperent** sēque ex labōre **reficerent**, post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The use of the imperfect tense. (2.) The historical present. (3.) Purpose clauses.

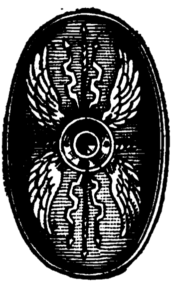
The enemy is defeated in a sally. Galba hastens to return to the province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt āc subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret, neque [1] suī **conligendī** hostibus facultātem relinquunt. ita commūtātā fōrtūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex hominum mīlibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse **cōnstābat**, plūs tertiā

5. [1] *pugnaretur*, H. 469, II, 2; A. & G. 277, *b*; G. 234.

6. [1] *sui conligendi*, H. 542, I, N. 1; A. & G. 298, *a*; G. 428, R. 1.

parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōniciunt āc nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs **fūsīs** [2]armīsque **exūtīs** sē in castra mūnitiōnēsque suās recipiunt. quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fōrtūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse **meminerat**, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, āc nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter **dēmorante** incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.



SCUTUM.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The gerund and gerundive construction. (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) The use of the participle. (4.) Asyndeton.

7–16. War with the Veneti.

An unexpected war breaks out in Gaul. The Veneti are the instigators.

7. Hīs rēbus **gestīs** cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, vīctīs in Alpibus Sēdūnīs, atque ita initā **hieme** in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, **subitum** bellum in Galliā **coortum** est. ēius bellī haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus [1]**mare** Ōceanum in Andibus hiemārat. is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum com-

6. [2] *armis*, H, 414, I; A. & G. 225, *d*; G. 348.
7. [1] *mare*, H. 391, 2; A. & G. 261, *a*; G. 359, N. 1.

plūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī commeātūsque petendī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō erat Titus **Terrasidius**, missus in Esubiōs, Mārcus **Trebius Gallus** in Cūriosolītas, Quīntus **Velānius** cum Titō **Siliō** in Venetōs.

Topic for Study.

The two possible constructions after *proximus*.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis **ōrae** maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam **nāvigāre** cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū **nauticārum** rērum reliquōs **antecēdunt** et in māgnō impetū maris atque apertō paucīs **portibus** interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent **vēctigālēs.** ab hīs fit initium retinendī Siliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, **recuperātūrōs** exīstimābant. hōrum auctoritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia) eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs, eundemque omnis fōrtūnae **exitum** esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā māiōribus [1]accēperant, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre **māllent.** omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (2.) The imperative form of speech in indirect discourse. (3.) The use of the indicative mood in indirect discourse.

8. [1] *accēperant*, H. 524, 2; A. & G. 336, *b*; G. 628, *a*.

Caesar prepares for the war. The Veneti unite allies to themselves. The motives that urged Caesar to the war.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās **aedificārī** in flūmine **Ligere**, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, **rēmigēs** ex prōvinciā īnstituī, **nautās gubernātōrēs**que comparārī iubet. hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs **sānctum inviolātum**que semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, **nāvigātiōnem** impedītam propter **īnscientiam** locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant: āc iam [1] ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, **īnsulās nōvisse**; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in **conclūsō** marī atque in **vāstissimō** atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in **Venetiam**, ubi Caesarem prīmum esse bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt, cōgunt. sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, **Lexoviōs**, **Namnētēs**, **Ambiliātōs**, Morinōs, **Diablintrēs**, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Ut* with the subjunctive expressing concession. (2.) The idiom *plurimum posse.* (3.) The idiom *aliam — atque.*

9. [1] *ut — acciderent*, H. 515, III; A. & G. 266, *c*; G. 608.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: iniūriae [1] retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, **rebelliō** facta post dēditiōnem, **dēfectiō** datīs obsidibus, **tot** cīvitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs nŏvīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum **mōbiliter** celeriterque **excitārī**, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs **cōnspīrārent, partiendum** sibi āc lātius **distribuendum** exercitum putāvit.

Topic for Study.

The participle containing the main idea.

Labienus is sent to the north, Crassus into Aquitania. Brutus is given command of the fleet.

11. Itaque Titum Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās [1] adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Quīntum Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Cūriosolītēs Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. **Decimum Brūtum** adulēscentem **classī** Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex **Pictonibus** et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum posset, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

10. [1] *retentorum equitum*, H. 549, 5, N. 2; A. & G. 292, *a*; G. 664, R. 2

11. [1] *adeat*, H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, *f*, R.; G. 546, 2, R. 2.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The two possible constructions with *proximus*. (2.) The omission of *ut*. (3.) The relative clause of purpose.

The advantageous situation of the towns of the Veneti. Description of their maritime power.

12. Erant **ēiusmodī** ferē **sitūs** oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs **lingulīs prōmunturiīs**que neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē **aestus** incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XXIIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs **adflictārentur**. ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī **quandō** māgnitūdine operis fōrte superātī, **extrūsō** marī [1] aggere āc **mōlibus**, atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fōrtūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium **appulsō**, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua **dēportābant** omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūrsus īsdem **opportūnitātibus** locī dēfendēbant. haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs **tempestātibus dētinēbantur**, summaque erat [2] vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, **rārīs** āc prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Hendiadys. (2.) The ablative of degree of difference. (3.) A noun and adjective in the ablative absolute construction.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: **carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs** quam nostrārum nāvium, [1] quō facilius vada āc **dēcessum** aestūs excipere possent; **prōrae admodum ērēctae** atque item **puppēs** ad māgnitūdinem **fluctuum**

12. [1] *aggere ac molibus*, H. 636, III, 2; A. & G. 385, NO. 13; G. 698. [2] *vasto — mari*, H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, *a*; G. 409.
13. [1] *quo — possent*, H. 497, 2; A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2.

tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex **rōbore** ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; **trānstra pedālibus** in altitūdinem trābibus **cōnfixa clāvis ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine**; **ancorae** prō **fūnibus** ferreīs catēnīs **revinctae**; pellēs prō **vēlīs alūtae**que **tenuiter** cōnfectae, hae sīve propter **līnī** inopiam atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis **vērisimile**, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs **ventōrum** sustinērī āc tanta onera nāvium **regī** vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. cum hīs nāvibus nostrae [2]classī ēiusmodī **congressus** erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et **pulsū rēmōrum** praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent **aptiōra** et **accommodātiōra**. neque enim hīs nostrae **rostrō nocēre** poterant (tanta in iīs erat **firmitūdō**), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adiciēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē **cōpulīs** continēbantur. accēdēbat, ut, cum **saevīre** ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relīctae nihil saxa et **cautēs** timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs [3]nāvibus cāsus erat **extimēscendus**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative *quo* in final clauses. (2.) The dative of possession. (3.) The dative of agent.

A naval engagement. The Veneti defeated. The war terminated.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs **reprimī** neque [1]iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. quae ubi convēnit āc prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX

13. [2] *classi*, H. 387; A. & G. 231; G. 349. [3] *navibus*, H. 388; A. & G. 232; G. 355.

14. [1] *iis noceri*, H. 384, 5; A. & G. 230; G. 217.

nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum **ōrnātissimae** profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. rostrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adicī possent et mīssa ab Gallīs gravius acciderent. ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs **praeparāta** ā nostrīs, **falcēs** praeacūtae **īnsertae affīxae**que **longuriīs**, nōn **absimilī fōrmā mūrālium** falcium. hīs cum fūnēs, quī **antemnās** ad **mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī** adductīque erant, **nāvigiō** rēmīs incitātō **praerumpēbantur**. quibus **abscīsīs** antemnae necessāriō **concidēbant**, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs [2]nāvibus spēs in vēlīs **armāmentīs**que cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. reliquum erat **certāmen** positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propīnquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

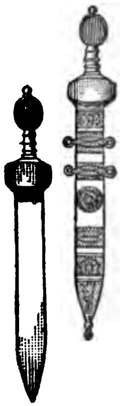
Topics for Study.

(1.) The passive of intransitive verbs. (2.) The dative of purpose. (3.) The dative of reference. (4.) The ablative of degree of difference.

15. Disiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās **bīnae** āc **ternae** nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī **trānscendere** in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. āc iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō

14 [2] *navibus*, H. 384, II, 4, N. 2; A. & G. 235; G. 352.

malacia āc **tranquillitās exstitit**, ut sē ex locō commovēre nōn possent. quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna: nam singulās nostrī **cōnsectātī** expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis **interventū** ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quartā usque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.



GLADIUS.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Distributives. (2.) The use of the imperfect tense.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. nam [1] cum omnis **iuventus**, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsiliī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod **ubique** fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmīssīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. in quōs eō gravius Caesar **vindicandum** statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub **corōnā** vendidit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Correlatives. (2.) The partitive genitive.

17–19. War with the Venelli.

Q. Titurius Sabinus by stratagems defeats the Venelli.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs [1] geruntur, Quīntus Titurius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. hīs praeerat **Viridovix** āc summam imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum

16. [1] *cum — tum*, H. 554, I, 5; A. & G. 155, *a*, ex. 4; G. 588.
17. [1] *geruntur*, H. 467, III, 4; A. & G. 276, 3; G. 229, R.

māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs **paucīs** diēbus Aulercī **Eburovīcēs** Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā **perditōrum** hominum **latrōnum**que convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab **agricultūrā** et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum [2]hostibus in **contemptiōnem** Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus **nōnnihil carperētur**; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vallum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Dum* with the present indicative. (2.) The dative of reference. (3.) The adverbial accusative. (4.) The dependent clause in indirect discourse.

18. Hāc cōnfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs, quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. huic māgnīs praemiīs **pollicitātiōnibus**que persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat et, quid fierī velit, **ēdocet**. quī ubi pro perfugā ad eōs venit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet, neque longius abesse, quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus **clam** ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscātur. quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs **occāsiōnem** negōtiī **bene** gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī **cunctātiō**, perfugae **cōnfirmātiō**, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī **parum**

17. [2] *hostibus*, H. 384. II, 4, N. 2; A. & G. 235, *a*; G. 350, 1, ex. 2.

dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs **Venetici** bellī et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque dūcēs ex conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab hīs [1]sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. quā rē concessā [2]**laetī**, ut explōrātā victōriā, **sarmentīs virgultīsque** conlēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra **pergunt**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Indirect question. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) *Prius quam* with the subjunctive. (4.) The use of the ablative absolute.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab **īmō** acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā āc **dēfatīgātiōne**, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent āc statim terga verterent. quōs impedītōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā **ēvāserant**, relīquērunt. sīc ūnō tempore et dē **nāvālī** pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum **alacer** āc **prōmptus** est animus, sīc **mollis** āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

Topic for Study.

The various uses of the genitive.

18. [1] *sit concessum*, H 520, I, 2; A. & G. 327; G. 577. [2] *laeti*, H. 443; A. & G. 191; G. 325, R. 6.

20–27. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania.

Crassus defeats the Sontiates. The "Soldurii."

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est **aestimanda**, cum intellegeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi [1] paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius **Praecōnius** lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. **Mallius prōcōnsul** impedīmentīs āmīssis profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus **Tolōsā** et **Narbōne**, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim **ēvocātīs** in **Sontiātum** fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. cūius adventū cōgnitō Sontiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in **convalle** in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) The dative after adjectives.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sontiātēs superiōribus vīctōriīs **frētī** in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus **adulēscentulō** duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertēre. quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiātum oppūgnāre coepit. quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās **cunīculīs** ad aggerem

20. [1] *paucīs ante annīs*, H. 430; A. & G. 259, *d*; G. 403, N. 4, *a*.

vīneāsque āctīs, cūius reī sunt longē peritissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod multīs locīs apud eōs [1] **aerāriae sectūrae**que sunt, ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iūssī faciunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (2.) Description of the *vineae* and *turres*. (3.) The idiom *alias — alias*. (4.) Hendiadys.

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrōrum **intentīs** animīs aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, cum sexcentīs **dēvōtīs**, quōs illī [1] **soldūriōs** appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum hīs **fruantur**, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid iīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque **adhūc** hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae [2] dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret: cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ab Crassō impetrāvit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *mortem consciscant*. (2.) The relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The subjunctive by attraction.

Crassus advances against the Vocates and Tarusates. He invites the enemy to battle. They decline.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et **Tarusātium** profectus est. tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus

21. [1] *aerariae secturaeque*, H. 636, III, 2; A. & G. 385, NO. 13; G. 698.

22. [1] *soldurii*, Introd. No. 60. [2] *devovisset*, H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629.

eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs **quōqueversum** dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae, fīnitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. **Sertōriō** omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile **dīdūcī**, hostem et vagārī et viās **obsidēre** et castrīs satis praesidiī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn **cunctandum** exīstimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. hāc rē ad cōnsilium **dēlātā**, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate genitive of possession. (2.) The relative taking the place of a demonstrative pronoun and a conjunction. (3.) The impersonal construction.


TUBA.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs [1]duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsiliī caperent, exspectābat. illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī gloriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē **tūtō** dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, [2]impedītōs in āgmine et sub sarcinīs [3]**īnfirmiōre** animō adorīrī cogitābant. hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. hāc rē perspectā

24. [1] *duplici acie*, Introd. No. 125, 1) *a*. [2] *impeditos*, Introd. No. 60. [3] *infirmiore animo*, H. 419, II; A. & G. 251; 179; G. 400.

Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alācriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The uses of the participle. (2.) The ablative of quality. (3.) The partitive genitive.

Crassus attacks the enemy in their camp and is victorious. The greater part of Aquitania surrenders to Crassus.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vallō mūnitiōnibusque **dēpellerent**, **auxiliārēs**que, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem **cēspitibus** comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter āc nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs **circumitis** hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab [1] decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *alii — alii.* (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) Position of the *decumana porta.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit, ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relīctae **intrītae** ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs **prōrutis** prius in hostium castrīs

25. [1] *decumana porta,* Introd. No. 121.

cōnstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid reī gererētur, cōgnōscī [1] posset. tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē vīctōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere intendērunt. quōs equitātus apertissimīs **campīs** cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā **Cantabrīs**que convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quartā parte relīctā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Prius quam* with the subjunctive. (2.) The idiom *multa nocte.*

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā māxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ūltrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt **Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs,** Tarusātēs, **Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs,** paucae **ūltimae** nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiēms suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

Topic for Study.

The semi-deponent verb.

28–29. Expedition of Caesar against the Morini and the Menapii.

Caesar advances against the Morini and Menapii, who are defeated with great loss.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope **exācta** iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum addūxit; quī longē [1] aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs,

26. [1] *posset,* H. 520, II; A. & G. 327; G. 577.
28. [1] *alia—ac,* H. 459, 2; A. & G. 156, *a*; G. 643.

quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae **ēvolāvērunt** et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs **secūtī** paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *longē alia — ac*. (2.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (3.) The signification of the comparative degree.

The complete subjugation prevented by the inclemency of the season. Caesar leads his army into winter-quarters.

29. Reliquīs **deinceps** diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** īnstituit, et nē quis inermibus **imprūdentibus**que mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam **māteriam**, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vallō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma impedīmenta ab nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēiusmodi sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et **continuātiōne imbrium** diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The subjunctive of result.

C. IŪLII CAESARIS

DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

COMMENTĀRIUS QUARTUS.

1–15. WAR WITH THE USIPETES AND THE TENCHTHERI.

The Usipetes and Tenchtheri, disturbed by the Suebi, cross over into Gaul. Description of the Suebi.



1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, [1] quī fuit annus **Gnaeō Pompēiō**, Mārcō Crassō cōnsulibus, **Usīpetēs** Germānī et item **Tencteri** māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. hī centum pāgōs habēre [2] dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs [3] singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. hī rūrsus in **vicem** annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. sīc neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. sed prīvātī āc **sēparātī agrī** apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in

1. [1] *qui*, H. 445, 4; A. & G. 199; G. 614, R. 3, *b*. [2] *dicuntur*, H. 534, I, N. 1; A. & G. 330, *b*; G. 528. [3] *singula milia*, H. 174, 2, 1; A. & G. 95, *a*; G. 97.

locō incolendī causā licet. neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem **lacte** atque pecore **vīvunt** multumque sunt in **vēnātiōnibus**; quae rēs et **cibī** genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, cum ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā **adsuēfactī** nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciant, et vīrēs alit et **immānī** corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs **frīgidissimīs** neque **vestītūs** praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et **lavārentur** in flūminibus.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The agreement of the relative with an appositive in its own clause. (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) The personal construction with verbs of saying. (4.) The partitive genitive.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī [1] **dēsīderent**. quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallia **dēlectātur** quaeque **impēnsō** parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque **dēfōrmia**, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint [2] labōris efficiunt. equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs **dēsiliunt** āc pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre **vestīgiō** adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut **inertius** habētur, quam **ephippiīs** ūtī. itaque ad quemvīs numerum **ephippiātōrum** equitum **quamvīs** paucī adīre audent. vīnum ad sē omnīnō importārī nōn **sinunt**, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum **remollēscere** hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Quo* with an implied negative. (2.) The ablative of price. (3.) The predicate genitive.

2. [1] *desiderent*, H. 516, II, 2; A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 541, N. 2. [2] *laboris*, H. 403; A. & G. 214, *c*; G. 366.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī, māgnum numerum cīvitātium suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum, et paulō sunt ēiusdem generis ceterīs **hūmāniōrēs**, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs **ventitant**, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter **amplitūdinem gravitātem**que cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen [1] vēctīgālēs sibi fēcērunt āc multō **humiliōrēs** īnfirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *una ex parte*. (2.) The accusative of extent of space. (3.) The ablative of degree of difference.

The Menapii are distressed.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usīpetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs **Germāniae triennium** vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant, sed tantae multitūdinis aditū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, **dēmigrāvērunt** et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō **insciōs** inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine **metū**

3. [1] *vectigales*, H. 373, 1; A. & G. 186, *c*; G. 340.

trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs **remigrāverant.** hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum quiēta in suīs sēdibus erat, certior [1] fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs **reliquam** partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The difference between the construction after *prohibere* and that after other verbs of hindering. (2.) The construction with *priusquam*.

Caesar resolves to make war upon the Usipetes and Tenchtheri.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et **īnfirmitātem** Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs **mōbilēs** et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. est enim hōc Gallicae [1] cōnsuētūdinis, utī et **viātōrēs** etiam invītōs cōnsistere [2] cōgant et, quod quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, **prōnūntiāre** cōgant. hīs rēbus atque **audītiōnibus** permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, [3] quōrum eōs ē vestīgiō **paenitēre necesse** est, cum **incertīs** rumōribus **serviant,** et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate genitive. (2.) Singular subject with plural verb. (3.) The construction after *paenitere*. (4.) The ablative of the gerundive construction with *in*.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē [1] graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuerat, ad exercitum proficīscitur. eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cōgnōvit:

4. [1] *fieret*, H. 520, II; A. & G. 327; G. 577.

5. [1] *consuetudinis*, H. 401; A. & G. 214, *d*; G. 366, R. 1. [2] *cogant*, H. 461, 1; A. & G. 205, *c*; G. 211, exception *a*. [3] *quorum*, H. 409, III; A. & G. 221, *b*; G. 377.

6. [1] *graviori*, H. 444, 1; A. & G. 93, *a*; G. 297, 2.

mīssās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae [2] postulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur et in fīnes Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea, quae cōgnōverat, **dissimulanda** sibi exīstimāvit eōrumque animīs **permulsīs** et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The significations of the comparative. (2.) The future perfect in indirect discourse. (3.) The ablative absolute.

The Germans send ambassadors to Caesar.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum [1] iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacēssantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, **ēiectōs** domō. sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs **ūtilēs** esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs [2] **attribuant** vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs **possēderint**: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of extent of space. (2.) The repetition of the antecedent. (3.) The mood which represents the imperative in indirect discourse.

6. [2] *postulassent*, H. 525, 2; A. & G. 336, B.; G. 510.

7. [1] *iter*, H. 379; A. & G. 257; G. 335. [2] *attribuant*, H. 523, III; A. & G. 339; G. 652.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs **tuērī** nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

Topic for Study.

The moods and tenses of *oratio obliqua*.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs: intereā nē propius [1]sē castra movēret, petiērunt. nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. cōgnōverat enim, māgnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī **frūmentandīque** causā ad **Ambivarītōs** trāns **Mosam** mīssam: hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Topic for Study.

The two possible constructions after *propius, proxime, propior,* and *proximus.*

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

10. Mosa **prōfluit** ex mōnte **Vosegō**, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur **Vacalus**, īnsulam efficit **Batāvōrum**, neque longius ab Rhēnō mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex **Lepontiīs**, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, **Mediōmatricum, Tribōcōrum,** Trēverōrum [1]**citātus** fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropīnquāvit, in

9. [1] *se*, H. 437, 1; A. & G. 234, *e*; G. 359, 3, N. 1.
10. [1] *citatus*, H. 443; A. & G. 191; G. 325, R. 6.

plūrēs **dēfluit** partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, quī **piscibus** atque **ōvīs avium** vīvere exīstimantur, multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

Topic for Study.

The different uses of the ablative in the chapter.

The perfidy of the Germans.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen [1] antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique utī potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs āc senātus sibi iūreiūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condīciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor **aquātiōnis** causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit: hūc posterō diē quam **frequentissimī** convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacēsserent et, sī ipsī lacēsserentur, sustinērent, **quoad** ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive by attraction. (2.) Relative clauses of purpose. (3.) The gerund with direct object.

12. At hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspēxērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius

11. [1] *antecessissent*, H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629.

octingentōs [1]equitēs habērent, quod iī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs **indūtiīs** erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, **subfossīs** equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōnspectum āgminis nostrī vēnissent. in eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit: ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus **obtulit** atque interfectus est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ubi primum*. (2.) The ablative of source. (3.) The various significations of the participle.

Caesar resolves to attack them at once.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condīciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ūltrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae **dēmentiae** esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatiī dandum exīstimābat. hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs

12. [1] *equites*, H. 417, 1, N. 2; A. & G. 247, *c*, N.; G. 296, R. 4.

et quaestōre **commūnicātō**, nē quem diem pūgnae **praetermitteret**, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ēius [1]diēī **māne** eādem et **perfidiā** et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī purgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. quōs sibi Caesar **oblātōs gāvīsus** illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, āgmen subsequī iussit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The different uses of the genitive in this chapter. (2.) The expression *sui purgandi*. (3.) Semi-deponent verbs.

The enemy are defeated with great slaughter and betake themselves into the territories of the Sigambri.

14. [1]Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter octō mīlium itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit, quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre [2]possent. quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne **adversus** hostem ēdūcere, [3]an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra **inrūpērunt**. quō locō, quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) **passim** fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

13. [1] *diei*, H. 398, 5; A. & G. 223, *e*; G. 372, N. 3.

14. [1] *acie triplici instituta*, Introd. 123, I, 2), *c*. [2] *possent*, H. 520, II; A. & G. 327; G. 577. [3] *ne — an — an*, H. 353; A. & G. 211; G. 458.

Topics for Study.

(1). The line of battle. (2.) The construction after *prius — quam.* (3.) Correlatives. (4.) Double questions.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs **abiectīs** sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad **cōnfluentem** Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen **praecipitāvērunt** atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vēxāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ad unum omnes.* (2.) The various significations of the ablative absolute.

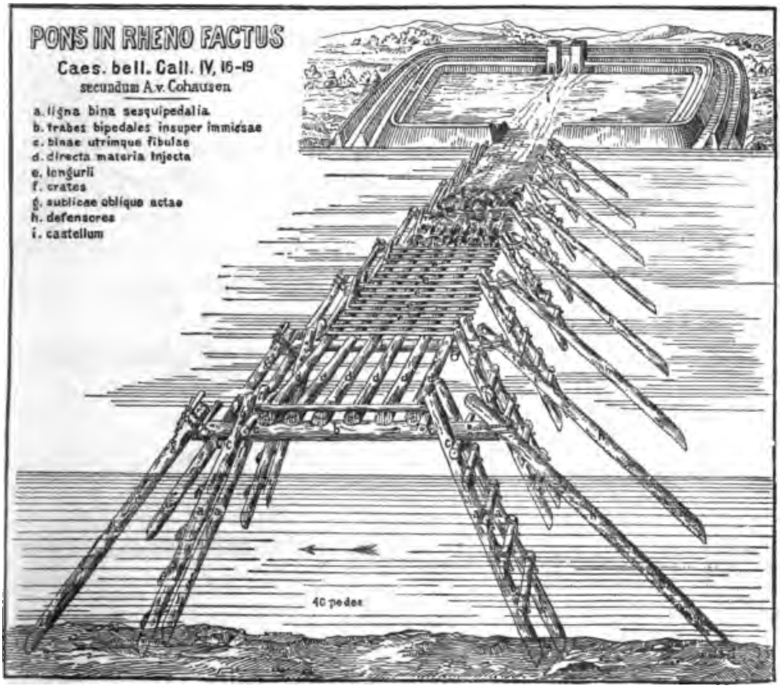
16–19. Caesar's crossing into Germany.

Caesar determines to cross into Germany.

16. **Germānicō** bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usīpetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs **Sugambrōrum** recēperat sēque cum iīs coniūnxerat. ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi [1] dēderent,

16. [1] *dederent*, H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, *f*, R.; G. 546, R. 2.

respondērunt: populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum **fīnīre**: sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?. Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex **Trānsrhēnānīs** ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dēderant, māgnopere



ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere **occupātiōnibus** reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opī-

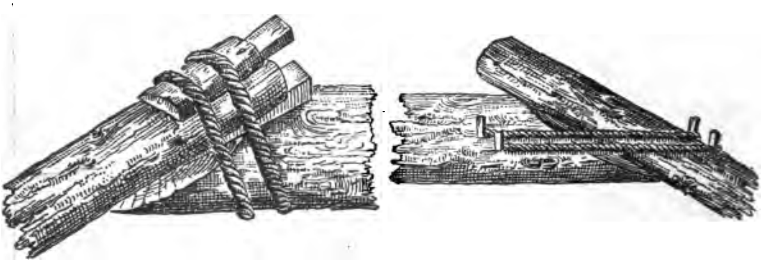
niōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possint. nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The omission of *ut*. (2.) The use of the relative at the beginning of a sentence. (3.) The possessive genitive in the predicate.

Description of the bridge which Caesar builds across the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pōntis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, **rapiditātem** altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trānsdūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. ratiōnem pōntis hanc īnstituit. **tigna** bīna **sēsquipedālia,** paulum ab īmō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. haec cum machinātiōni-

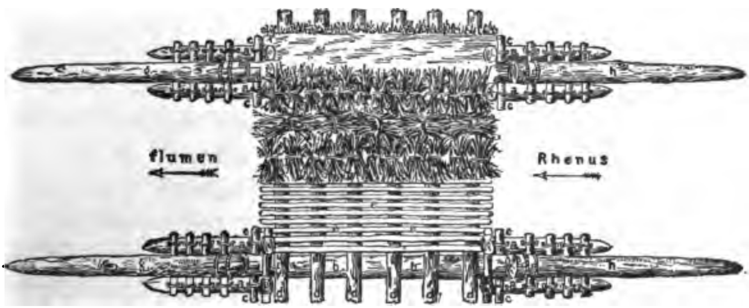


QUOMODO SUBLICAE AC DEFENSORES CUM TRABIBUS BIPEDALIBUS CONIUNCTA SINT.

bus **immissa** in flūmen **dēfīxerat fistūcīs**que **adēgerat,** nōn **sublicae** modō **dīrēctē** ad **perpendiculum,** sed **prōnē** āc fastīgātē, **ut** secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, hīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum [1] **quadrāgēnum** ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis

17. [1] *quadragenum*, H. 52, 3; A. & G. 40, *e*; G. 33, 4.

conversa statuēbat. haec utraque **insuper bipedālibus** trabibus immīssīs, quantum eōrum tīgnōrum **iūnctūra distābat**, bīnīs utrimque **fībulīs** ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus **disclūsīs** atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs **aquae** sē [2]incitāvisset, hōc **artius inligāta** tenērentur. haec [3]**dīrēcta** māteria iniecta **contexēbantur** et longuriīs **crātibusque cōnsternēbantur**; āc nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis **oblīquē** agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis [4]exciperent, et aliae item suprā pōntem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum **truncī** sīve nāvēs [5]dēiciendī operis essent ā barbarīs mīssae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pōntī nocērent.



PONTIS IUGUM SUPERNE VISUM.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The structure of the bridge (see plan). (2.) The indicative mood after *cum*. (3.) The ablative of degree of difference. (4.) The uses of the participle. (5.) Purpose clauses. (6.) The genitive of the gerundive. (7.) Distributive numerals.

17. [2] *incitavisset*, H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629. [3] *directa*, H. 443; A. & G. 191; G. 325, R. 6. [4] *exciperent*. H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317; G. 630. [5] *deiciendi operis*, H. 544, N. 2; A. & G. 298, R.; G. 428, R. 2.

Caesar enters the territories of the Sugambri, and proceeds into the country of the Ubii, from whom he gains information regarding the Suebi. He returns to Gaul.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pōntis fīrmō praesidiō relīctō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iīs, quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usīpetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia **exportāverant**, sēque in **sōlitūdinem** āc silvās abdiderant.

Topic for Study.

The voice of *coepi* when used with a passive infinitive.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque **succīsis**, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pōntem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvās dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hunc esse dēlēctum [1] medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: **hīc** Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse. quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus hīs rēbus cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs **obsidiōne līberāret**, diēbus omnīnō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum

19. [1] *medium*, H. 440, N. 2; A. & G. 193; G. 325, R. 6.

cōnsūmptīs satis et ad laudem et ad **ūtilitātem** prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pōntemque rescidit.

Topic for Study.

Appositive clauses.

20–36. War in Britain.

Caesar resolves to proceed into Britain.

20. **Exiguā** parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subminīstrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam [1]adīsset et genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant **incōgnita**. neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam, praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. itaque ēvocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Conditional sentences. (2.) Sequence of tenses.

Volusenus is sent to examine the state of affairs on the island. Ambassadors come from Britain.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam

20. [1] *adīsset*, H. 509, N. 3; A. & G. 307, *f*; G. 596, R. 5.

prīmum revertātur. ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam **trāiectus.** hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et [1]quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem iubet convenīre. interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad **Britannōs** ā complūribus ēius īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs [2]dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī **obtemperāre.** quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā **Commium,** quem ipse Atrebatibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi **fidēlem** arbitrābātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus [3]māgnī habēbātur, mittit. huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī āc sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset, renūntiat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The verbal noun *traiectus*. (2.) The genitive of price. (3.) The idiom *fidem sequantur*. (4.) The omission of *ut*.

Caesar's passage across, and his arrival.

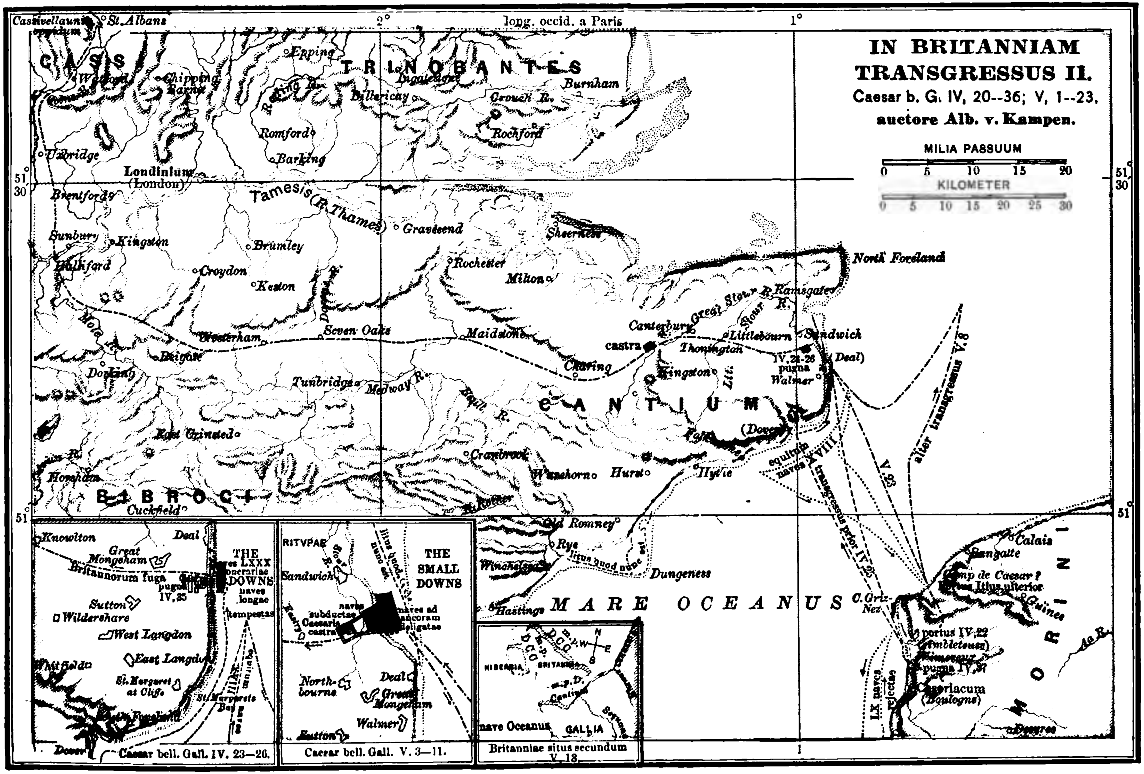
22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō **excūsārent,** quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō [1]fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. hōc sibi satis opportūnē Caesar accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post ter-

21. [1] *quam classem*, H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, *b*; G. 616. [2] *dare*, H. 537, 1; A. & G. 330, *f*, N.; G. 527, R. 3. [3] *magni*, H. 404; A. & G. 215, *c*; G. 380, 1.

22. [1] *fecissent*, H. 516, II; A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 541.

IN BRITANNIAM TRANSGRESSUS II.

Caesar b. G. IV, 20--36; V, 1--23. auctore Alb. v. Kampen.



gum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās [2] tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs sibi Britanniae **antepōnendās** iūdicābat, māgnum hīs obsidum numerum imperat. quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit. nāvibus circiter LXXX **onerāriīs** coāctīs contrāctīsque, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum pervenīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. reliquum exercitum Quīntō Titūriō Sabīnō et Lūciō Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dēdūcendum dedit. Pūblium Sulpicium **Rūfum** lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Relative clauses of purpose. (2.) Diminutives. (3.) *Quod* expressing cause on the authority of another. (4.) The gerundive construction.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā **solvit** equitēsque in ūlteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs **cōnscendere** et sē sequī iussit. ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus **expositās** hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspēxit. cūius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita mōntibus angustīs mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in **lītus** tēlum adigī posset. hunc ad ēgrediendum **nēquāquam** idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō [1] convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et

22. [2] *tantularum*, H. 332; A. & G. 164, *a*; G. 189, 6.

23. [1] *convenirent*, H. 519, II, 2; A. & G. 328; G. 572.

quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōsset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque **instābilem mōtum** [2]habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. hīs dīmīssīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum **septem** ab eō locō prōgressus apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Dum* with the subjunctive. (2.) Relative clause expressing cause. (3.) The omission of *ut*.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemīssō equitātū et **essedāriīs**, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, [1]mīlitibus autem īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus māgnō et gravī armōrum onere oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex **āridō** aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus **membrīs** expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs **insuēfactōs** incitārent. quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō [2]generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte āc studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, nitēbantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The difference between the construction after *prohibere* and that after other verbs of hindering. (2.) The dative of agent. (3.) The use of conjunctions. (4.) The genitive after adjectives.

23. [2] *haberent*, H. 517, 3, I; A. & G. 320, *e*; G. 634.

24 [1] *militibus*, H. 388; A. & G. 232; G. 355. [2] *generis*, H. 399; A. & G. 218, *a*; G. 374.

Engagement with the Britons.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde **fundīs**, **sagittīs**, tormentīs hostēs propellī āc submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. nam et nāvium **figūrā** et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum modo pedem retulērunt. atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis [1] **aquilam** ferēbat, **contestātus** deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī **fēlīciter ēvenīret**: 'dēsilīte,' **inquit**, 'mīlitēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: **ego** certē **meum** reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium [2] praestitero.' hōc cum māgnā vōce dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. tum nostrī cohortātī [3] inter sē, nē tantum **dēdecus** admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt; hōs item ex proximīs (prīmīs) nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropīnquārunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative of service. (2.) The idiom *pedem retulerunt*. (3.) The future perfect. (4.) Condensed expressions.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque **firmiter** īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque [1] alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē **aggregābat**, māgnopere perturbābantur: hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in

25. [1] *aquilam*, Introd. No. 103. [2] *praestitero*, H. 473; A. & G. 281, R.; G. 244. [3] *inter se*, H. 448, N.; A. & G. 196, *f*; G. 221.

26. [1] *alius alia*, H. 459, 1; A. & G. 203, *c*; G. 319.

ūniversōs tēla cōniciēbant. quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, **scaphās** longārum nāvium, item **speculātōria** nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspēxerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fōrtūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The impersonal construction. (2.) The idiom *alius alia*. (3.) The adjective used substantively. (4.) The dative after compounds.

The Britons surrender.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt, obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemīssum. hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs **ōrātōris** modo Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant: tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce ēius **reī culpam** in multitūdinem contulērunt et propter **imprūdentiam** ut īgnōscerētur, petīvērunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ūltrō in continentem lēgātīs mīssīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longīnquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī **commendāre** coepērunt.

Topic for Study.

The passive of the intransitive verb.

A severe storm assails the Roman fleet.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. quae cum appropīnquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō [1]suī cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum **prōvēctae** continentem petiērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The two possible constructions after *propius, proxime, propior, proximus.* (2.) The reflexive pronoun. (3.) The objective genitive.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut **auxiliandī** dabātur. complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmīssīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, [1]id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs **perturbātiō** facta est. neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus **reportārī** possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The gerundive construction. (2.) A neuter pronoun in apposition with a clause.

28. [1] *sui*, H. 396, III; A. & G. 217; G. 363.

29. [1] *id quod*, H. 445. 7; A & G. 200. *e*; G. 614. R. 2.

The Britons take advantage of this opportunity. Caesar's provision against emergencies.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, quae [1] hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant.

Topic for Study.

The ablative of degree of difference.

31. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere āc suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt. at Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et [1] quae gravissimē **adflīctae** erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque **aere** ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmīssīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The antecedent in the relative clause. (2.) The signification of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of *cognosco*.

30. [1] *hoc*, H. 423; A. & G. 250; G. 403.
31. [1] *quae — naves*, H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, *b*; G. 616.

The stratagem of the Britons.

32. Dum ea [1]geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum mīssā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra [2]ventitāret, iī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt **pulverem** māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās [3]armārī et **cōnfestim** sēsē subsequī iussit. cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōnicī animadvertit. nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus **dēmessō** frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs **dēlituerant**; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in **metendō** occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Dum* with the present indicative. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The reflexive use of verbs. (4.) Frequentative verbs.

Their mode of fighting from chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae: prīmō per omnēs partēs **perequitant** et tēla cōniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum [1]**turmās īnsinuāvērunt**, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et

32. [1] *geruntur*, H. 467, III, 4; A. & G. 276, *e*; G. 229, R. [2] *ventitaret*, H. 336; A. & G. 167, *b*; G. 191, 1. [3] *armari*, H. 465; A. & G. 111, *a*, N.; G. 218.

33. [1] *turmas*, Introd. No. 120.

pedibus proeliantur. **aurīgae** interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita **currūs** conlocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs **receptum** habeant. ita mōbilitātem equitum, **stabilitātem** peditum in proeliīs praestant āc tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī **moderārī āc flectere** et per **tēmōnem percurrere** et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs **citissimē** recipere cōnsuērint.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The objective genitive. (2.) The reflexive pronoun. (3.) Subjunctive of result. (4.) The use of the participles.

They advance upon the Roman camp.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs **novitāte** pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. quō factō ad lacēssendum et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermīssō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs [1] continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta **praedae** faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine **peditātūs** equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The various uses of the ablative in this chapter. (2.) Asyndeton. (3.) The gerund and gerundive constructions. (4.) Relative clauses of result. (5.) Indirect question.

34. [1] *continerent*, H. 500, 1; A. & G. 319; G. 631, 1.

Caesar defeats them and returns to Gaul.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum **effugerent**, tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. commīssō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. quōs tantō [1] spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Conditional sentences in indirect discourse. (2.) The reflexive pronoun.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus mīssī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem anteā imperāverat, **duplicāvit** eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propīnquā diē **aequinoctiī** īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō **infrā** dēlātae sunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *mediam noctem*. (2.) The gerundive construction. (3.) Deponent verbs. (4.) The idiom *portus capere*.

37–38. War with the Morini and Menapii.

The Morini attack a detachment of the Romans.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter **trecentī** atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē

35. [1] *spatio*, H. 379, 2; A. & G. 257, *b*; G. 389.

interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. cum illī [1] **orbe** factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum [2] suīs auxiliō mīsit. interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The dative of service. (4.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*, *plus*, etc. (5.) Tmesis as illustrated in *postea — quam*.

Labienus subdues them. Titurius and Cotta lay waste the territories of the Menapii. Caesar fixes his winter-quarters among the Belgae. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. quī cum propter [1] **siccitātēs** palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre annō **perfugiō** fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. at Q. Titurius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun used for a demonstrative and a conjunction. (2.) Relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The construction after *utor*.

37. [1] *orbe facto*, Introd. No. 117, 2). [2] *suis auxilio*, H. 390, II; A. & G. 233; G. 356.

38. [1] *siccitates*, H. 130, 2; A. & G. 75, *c*; G. 204, 5.

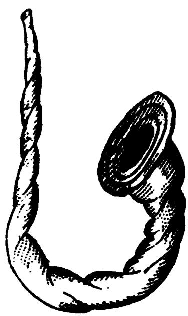
C. IŪLIĪ CAESARIS

DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ

COMMENTĀRIUS QUĪNTUS.

1–23. Caesar's second expedition into Britain.

Caesar orders a fleet to be built. He subdues the Pirustae.



1. L. **Domitiō**, **Ap. Claudiō** cōnsulibus discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. ad celeritātem **onerandī subductiōnēs**que paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibī fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. hās omnēs **āctuāriās** imperat fierī, quam ad rem **humilitās** multum adiuvat. ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā **apportārī** iubet. ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris **perāctīs** in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā **Pīrūstīs** fīnitimam partem prōvinciae **incursiōnibus** vās-

tūrī audiēbat. eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. **perceptā** ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. iīs ad diem adductīs, ut imperāverat, **arbitrōs** inter cīvitātēs dat, quī **lītem** aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

He returns to Gaul; marches against the Treveri.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. eō cum vēnisset, circuitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sexcentās ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs, et longās XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. **conlaudātīs** mīlitibus atque iīs, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum **Itium** convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum XXX [**trānsmissum**] ā continentī: huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relīquit. ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Indutiomarus and Cingetorix.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, **tangit**. in eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, **Indutiomārus** et **Cingetorix**; ex quibus alter,

simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. at Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere iīsque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam **Arduennam** abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit; sed posteāquam nōnnūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et **familiāritāte** Cingetorigis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī **cōnsulere** nōn possent, veritus, nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, [Indutiomārus] lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē **idcircō** ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam **lāberētur**: itaque esse cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitātisque fōrtūnās ēius fideī permīssūrum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dīcerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus ad **Britannicum** bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indutiomārum ad sē cum CC obsidibus venīre iussit. hīs adductīs, in iīs fīliō propīnquīsque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est, utī in officiō permanēret; nihilō tamen sētius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorigī conciliāvit, quod cum meritō ēius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. id tulit factum graviter Indutiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et, quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre **exārsit**.

Caesar goes to port Itius. Dumnorix shows treachery and is slain.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervēnit. ibī cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in **Meldīs** factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invēnit. eōdem tōtīus Galliae equitātus convēnit numerō mīlium quattuor prīncipēsque omnibus ex cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbīs dictum est. hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. accēdēbat hūc, quod iam in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim, quod **īnsuētus** nāvigandī mare timēret, partim, quod **religiōnibus** impedīrī sēsē dīceret. posteāquam id **obstinātē** sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī **adēmptā** prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, **sēvocāre** singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū **territāre**: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte **spoliārētur**, id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūsiūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi āc reī pūblicae nocēre posset. itaque diēs circiter XXV in eō locō **commorātus**, quod **Cōrus** ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs **flāre** cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret: tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere in nāvēs iubet. at omnium impedītīs animīs Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermīssā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus **postpositīs** māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit **retrahī**que imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō **sānō** factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. ille enim revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe **clāmitāns** līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar crosses into Britain.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit et lēnī **Āfricō** prōvēctus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermīssō cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relīctam cōnspēxit. tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs

contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse **ēgressum** superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs **laudanda**, quī **vēctōriīs** gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermīssō **rēmigandī** labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus **merīdiānō** ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs comperit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum **annōtinīs** prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Britons make a bold resistance, but are defeated.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubī ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relīctīs et equitibus trecentīs, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancoram relinquēbat, et praesidiō nāvibus Quīntum **Atrium** praefēcit. ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant: nam crēbrīs arbōribus succīsīs omnēs **introitūs** erant **praeclūsī**. ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. at mīlitēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

The Roman fleet suffer from a storm. Labienus is ordered to build more ships.

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne **tripartītō** mīlitēs equitēsque in **expeditiōnem** mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Quīntō Atriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs adflīctās atque in lītore ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim patī tempestātis possent: itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet; ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. itaque ex legiōnibus **fabrōs** dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, iīs legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, tamen commodis simum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. in hīs rēbus circiter diēs X cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermīssīs. subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relīquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permīssā **Cassivellaunō**, cūius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur **Tamesis**, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

A description of Britain and its inhabitants.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab iīs, quī praedae āc bellī īnferendī causā ex **Belgiō** trānsierant (quī omnēs ferē iīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibī permānsērunt atque agrōs **colere** coepērunt. hominum est **īnfīnīta** multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecorum māgnus numerus. ūtuntur aut aere [aut **nummō aereō**] aut **tāleīs** ferreīs ad certum pondus **exāminātīs** prō nummō. nāscitur ibī **plumbum album** in **mediterrāneīs** regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est, praeter **fāgum** atque **abietem**. **leporem** et **gallīnam** et **ānserem** **gustāre** fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. loca sunt **temperātiōra** quam in Galliā **remissiōribus** frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā **triquetra**, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. hūius lateris alter **angulus**, quī est ad **Cantium**, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. hōc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque **occidentem** sōlem; quā ex parte est **Hibernia**, **dīmidiō** minor, ut aestimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmīssus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. in hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur **Mona**; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur, dē quibus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt, diēs continuōs XXX sub **brūmā** esse noctem. nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus **reperiēbāmus**, nisi certīs ex aquā **mēnsūrīs** breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, **septingentōrum** mīlium. tertium est contrā **septentriōnēs**, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed ēius angulus

lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. hōc milia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū **viciēs** centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn **serunt**, sed lacte et **carne** vīvunt pellibusque sunt **vestītī**. omnēs vērō sē Britannī **vitrō īnficiunt**, quod **caeruleum** efficit **colōrem**, atque hōc **horridiōre** sunt in pūgnā **aspectū**; **capillō**que sunt **prōmissō** atque omnī parte corporis **rāsā** praeter caput et **labrum** superius. uxōrēs habent dēnī **duodēnī**que inter sē commūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus **parentēs**que cum līberīs; sed sī quī sunt ex hīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum **virgō** quaeque dēducta est.

Cassivellaunus, the leader of the Britons, is defeated. Caesar advances as far as the Thames.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. at illī intermīssō spatiō imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt duābusque mīssīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae **perexiguō** intermīssō [locī] spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. eō diē Quīntus **Laberius Dūrus**, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. illī plūribus submīssīs cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam **cōnsultō** plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus **dispari** proeliō contenderent. equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius, quam prīdiē, nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacēssere coepērunt. sed merīdiē, cum Caesar **pābulandī** causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum Gaiō **Treboniō** lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad **pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt**, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn **absisterent**. nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō repulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. eō cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. rīpa autem erat **acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs**

mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine **tegēbantur**. hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemīssō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā **exstārent**, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis dīmīssīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat, paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vastandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs **sēmitīsque** essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum iīs cōnflīgēbat, atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur et **tantum** in agrīs vastandīs **incendiīsque** faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes and several other tribes surrender. The return to Gaul.

20. Interim **Trinobantēs**, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā **Mandubrācius** adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus **ad** eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubrācium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem

mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubrāciumque ad eōs mittit. illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trīnobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs **Cenīmāgnī, Sēgontiacī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī** lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus: locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. māgnus ibī numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingētorix, **Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax**, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. iī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce **Lugotorige**, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vastātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile **extrahī** posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs singulōs vēctīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia

penderet, cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubrūciō neu Trīnobantibus noceat.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte **dēperierant** nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. āc sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur; at ex iīs, quae **inānēs** ex continentī ad eum remitterentur et priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne **exclūderētur**, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit āc summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

24–51. War with Ambiorix.

The Roman army is more widely scattered than usual on account of a scarcity of provisions. There is a sudden revolt of Ambiorix and Cativolcus.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum **Samarobrīvae** perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius **prōvēnerat**, coāctus est aliter āc superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam Gaiō Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Quīntō **Cicerōnī**, tertiam in Esubiōs Luciō **Rosciō**, quartam in Rēmīs cum Titō Labiēnō in **cōnfīniō** Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Belgīs conlocāvit: hīs Marcum Crassum quaestōrem et Lucium **Munātium Plancum**

et Gaium Trebonium lēgātōs praefēcit. ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns **Padum** cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs V in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam āc Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō **Ambiorigis** et **Catuvolcī** erant, mīsit. hīs mīlitibus Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē **medērī** posse exīstimāvit. atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna praeter eam, quam Luciō Rosciō in pācātissimam et **quiētissimam** partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

25. Erat in Carnūtibus summō locō nātūs **Tasgētius**, cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. huic Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē **benevolentiā**, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. tertium iam hunc annum **rēgnantem** inimīcīs multīs **palam** ex cīvitāte et iīs auctōribus eum interfēcērunt. dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum **impulsū** dēficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnūtēs proficīscī iubet ibīque hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōgnōverat Tasgētium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. interim ab omnibus lēgātīs quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

26. Diēbus circiter XV, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs āc dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque **praestō** fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs **concitāvērunt** subitōque oppressīs **lignātōribus** māgnā manū castra oppūgnātum vēnērunt. cum

celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque ūnā ex parte **Hispānīs** equitibus ēmīssīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs ab oppūgnātiōne suōs redūxērunt. tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, uti aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīrent: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus **contrōversiās** minuī posse spērārent.

The camp of Sabinus and Cotta is attacked. Sabinus is treacherously persuaded to leave the camp, and is slain together with the troops.

27. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā Gaius **Arpinēius**, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Quīntī Titūriī, et Quīntus **Iūnius** ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante **missū** Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōnsuēverat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī **cōnfitērī** dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset, quod Aduātucīs fīnitimīs suīs pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque ei et fīlius et frātris fīlius ab Caesare remīssī essent, quōs Aduātucī obsidum numerō mīssōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed **coāctū** cīvitātis, suaque esse ēiusmodī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō, quam ipse in multitūdinem. cīvitātī **porrō** hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn **adeō** sit imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum sē superāre posse cōnfīdat. sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium: omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē **recuperandā** commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. quibus quoniam prō **pietāte** satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiīs

Caesaris: monēre, ōrāre Titūrium prō hospitiō, ut suae āc mīlitum salūti cōnsulat. māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc adfore bīduō. ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius, quam fīnitimī sentiant, ēdūctōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab hīs absit. illud sē pollicērī et iūreiūrandō cōnfirmāre tūtum iter per fīnēs suōs datūrum. quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs **levētur**, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs grātiam referre. hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

28. Arpīnēius et Iūnius, quae audiērunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem **ignōbilem** atque humilem Ebūrōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. Lucius Auruncolēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hībernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum, exīstimābant: **quantāsvis** cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant: rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ūltrō vulneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint: rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia: **postrēmō** quid esse levius aut turpius, quam **auctōre** hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius **sērō** factūrōs clāmitābat, cum **māiōrēs** hostium manūs adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiundī Tasgētiī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Ebūrōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī

ad castra ventūrōs esse. nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; **ārdēre** Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris **exstinctā.** postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium **dēscendisse?** suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nīl esset dūrius, nūllō perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī **dissentīrent**, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certe longīnquā obsidiōne famēs esset pertimēscenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem **disputātiōne** habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur 'vincite' inquit, 'sī ita vultis,' Sabīnus, et id **clāriōre** vōce, ut māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret: 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex **vōbīs** mortis perīculō **terrear**: hī **sapient**; sī gravius quid acciderit, **abs tē** ratiōnem **repōscent**; quī, sī per tē liceat, **perendinō** diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nec rēiectī et **relēgātī** longē ab cēterīs aut ferrō aut famē **intereant**.'

31. **Cōnsurgitur** ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā **dissēnsiōne** et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīnī. prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles **circumspiceret**, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex **instrūmentō** hībernō-

rum relinquere cōgerētur. omnia **excōgitantur**, quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur, et **languōre** mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō Ambiorige cōnsilium datum, longissimō āgmine māximīsque impedīmentīs.

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs īnsidiīs bipartītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novīssimōsque premere et prīmos prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, ut quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, **trepidāre** et **concursāre** cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. at Cotta, quī cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia praestābat. cum propter longitūdinem āgminis minus facile omnia per sē **obīre** et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, providēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāre, ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. quod cōnsilium etsī in ēiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen **incommodē** accidit: nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alācriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et **dēspērātiōne** id factum vidēbātur. praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quae quisque eōrum **cārissima** habēret, ab impedīmentīs

petere atque **arripere** properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiāre iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent: **proinde** omnia in vīctōriā posita exīstimārent. erant et virtūte et numerō pūgnandō parēs nostrī; tametsī ab duce et ā fōrtūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus hostium numerus cadēbat. quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil iīs nocērī posse), rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum **quaepiam** cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs velōcissimē **refugiēbant**. interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī. rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant ēgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab iīs, quī cesserant, et ab iīs, quī proximī **steterant**, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. tamen tot incommodīs **cōnflīctātī**, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil, quod ipsīs esset **indīgnum**, committēbant. tum Titō **Balventiō**, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque **femur** trāgulā **trāicitur**; Quīntus **Lūcānius**, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō fīliō **subvenit**, interficitur; Lucius Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque **adhortāns** in adversum **ōs** fundā vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Quīntus Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretem suum Gnaeum Pompēium ad eum mittit rōgātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque **parcat**. ille appellātus respondit: sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre, ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige ūnā conloquantur: spērāre ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte impetrāre posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque, ut idem faciant, imperat. interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorige īnstituitur **sermō**, paulātim circumventus interficitur. tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque **ululātum** tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. ibī Lucius Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. ex quibus Lucius **Petrosidius aquilifer**, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnans occīditur. illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. paucī ex proeliō **ēlapsī** incertīs itineribus per silvās ad Titum Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

The Eburones attack Cicero. Caesar marches to his aid and relieves the siege. The enemy is defeated.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē subsequī iubet.

rē dēmōnstrātā Aduātucīsque concitātīs posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō iīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs, occāsiōnem dīmittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtiī subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmīssīs nūntiīs ad Ceutrōnēs, **Grūdiōs**, **Lēvācōs**, **Pleumoxiōs**, **Geidumnōs**, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt, cōgunt et dē inprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant nōndum ad eum **fāmā** dē Titūriī morte perlātā. huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī mīlitēs, quī **lignātiōnis** mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. hīs circumventīs māgnā manū Ebūrōnēs, Nerviī, Aduātucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc **adeptī** vīctōriam in perpetuum sē fore vīctōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent. obsessīs omnibus viīs mīssī intercipiuntur. noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum CXX excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur. hōc idem deinceps reliquīs fit diēbus. nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn **aegrīs**, nōn vulnerātīs facultās **quiētis** dātur. quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae **praeūstae** sudēs, māgnus

mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs **contabulantur**, **pinnae lōrīcaeque** ex crātibus **attexuntur**. ipse Cicerō, cum **tenuissimā valētūdine** esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ūltrō mīlitum concursū āc vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. **Tunc** ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. factā potestāte eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī. **addunt** etiam dē Sabīnī morte: Ambiorigem **ostentant** fideī faciundae causā. **errāre** eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab hīs praesidiī spērent, quī suīs rēbus **diffīdant**; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint: licēre illīs incolumibus per sē ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscúmque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī, accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant: spērāre prō ēius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum IX et fossā pedum XV hīberna cingunt. haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nostrīs cōgnōverant, et quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā **ferramentōrum** cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs cēspitēs **circumcīdere**, manibus **sagulīs**que terram **exhaurīre** nītēbantur. quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdo cōgnōscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum XV in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt, reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō ferventēs **fūsilī** ex **argillā glandēs** fundīs et **fervefacta iacula** in **casās,** quae mōre Gallicō **strāmentīs** erant tectae, iacere coepērunt. hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem castrōrum locum distulērunt. hostēs māximō clāmōre **sīcutī partā** iam atque explōrātā vīctōriā turrēs testūdinēsque agere et **scālīs** vāllum ascendere coepērunt. at tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit, ut, cum undique **flammā torrērentur** māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās **cōnflagrāre** intellegerent, nōn modō dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō **cōnstīpāverant recessum**que prīmīs ūltimī nōn dabant. paulum quidem intermīssā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō **recessērunt** suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī **introīre** vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs **dēturbātī** turrisque succēnsa est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus appropīnquārent, Titus **Puliō** et Lucius **Vorēnus**. hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, quīnam **anteferrētur,** omnibusque annīs dē locīs summīs **simultātibus** contendēbant. ex hīs Puliō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, 'quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vorēne? aut quem locum probandae virtūtis **tuae** exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.' haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quāque parte hostium cōnfertissima est vīs, eā irrumpit. nē Vorēnus quidem tum vāllō sēsē continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur.

mediocrī spatiō relictō Puliō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō **percussō** et exanimātō hunc scūtīs **prōtegunt**, in hostem tēla ūniversī cōniciunt neque dant **regrediendī** facultātem. trānsfīgitur scūtum Puliōnī et **verūtum** in **balteō** dēfīgitur. āvertit hīc cāsus **vāginam** et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. **succurrit** inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Puliōne omnis multitūdō convertit: illum verūtō arbitrantur occīsum. gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. huic rūrsus circumventō fert subsidium Puliō, atque **ambō** incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque **versāvit**, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque **dīiūdicārī** posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque **asperior** oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars **dēprehēnsa** in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābantur. erat ūnus **intus** Nervius, nomine **Verticō**, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. hīc servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī **statim** nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cūius

hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV. iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. exit cum nūntiō Crassus. alterum ad Gāium Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibī iter faciendum sciēbat. scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab **antecursōribus** dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum XX prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvēxerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus **interitū** Sabīnī et **caede** cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus, sī ex hībernīs fugae **similem** profectiōnem fēcisset, ut hostium impetum sustinēre posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset, rem gestam in Ebūrōnibus **perscrībit**, docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. ibī ex captīvīs cōgnōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem **epistulam** dēferat. hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. si adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad **āmentum** dēligātā

intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. in litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. haec cāsū ad turrim **adhaesit** neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, **dēmpta** ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. ille **perlēctam** in conventū mīlitum **recitat** māximāque omnēs **laetitiā** adficit. tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. hae erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc **admonet**, iter **cautē** dīligenterque faciat: perscrībit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat. posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et **rīvum** multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. erat māgnī perīculī rēs, tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat: cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō locō potest, castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum, quam māximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmīssīs explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās,

quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī fōrte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum **ēlicere** posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque **obstruī** atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne timōris agī iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt, nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēdūctīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōniciunt **praecōnibus**que **circummīssīs** prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem: āc sīc nostrōs **contempsērunt**, ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus cēspitum, quod eā nōn posse **intrōrumpere** vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmīssō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus cōpiīs eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; legiōne prōductā cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere: ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat;

centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. posterō diē **cōntiōne** habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat: quod dētrīmentum culpā et **temeritāte** lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum **expiātō** incommodō neque hostibus **diūtina laetātiō** neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

53–58. Insurrections among the Senones and Treveri.

Indutiomarus retreats among the Treveri. Disturbance caused by the Senones.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incredibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX, eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orīrētur, quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō victōriae gratulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō **cōnsultābant**, nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōnsiliī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. neque ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine **sollicitūdine** Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs āc mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. in hīs ab Luciō Rosciō [quaestōre], quem legiōnī tertiae decimae praefēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum

cīvitātum, quae **Aremoricae** appellantur, oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlia passuum octō ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē vīctōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs aliās territandō, cum sē scīre, quae fierent, dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs fīrma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, **Cavarinum**, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cūius frāter **Moritasgus** adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille **praesēnsisset** āc profūgisset, usque ad fīnēs īnsecūtī, rēgnō domōque expulērunt, et mīssīs ad Caesarem satisfaciundī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īnferendī tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs **praecipuō** semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere āc perpetuā **ergā** populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn **suspecta** nōbis. idque adeō **haud** sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē, quod eī, quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē ēius opīniōnis dēperdidisse, ut ā populō Rōmānō imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

The enemy is overcome by Labienus. Gaul in a more peaceful state.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum **tempus** intermīsērunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, **pecūniās** pollicērentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem.

neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum **persuādērī** potuit, ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē **bis** expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tenctērōrum **trānsitū**: nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. hāc spē lapsus Indutiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finitimīs equōs parāre, **exsulēs** damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs praemiīs ad sē **adlicere** coepit. āc tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

56. Ubī intellēxit ūltrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnūtēsque **cōnscientiā** facinoris **īnstīgārī**, alterā Nerviōs Aduātucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi **voluntāriōrum** cōpiās dēfore, sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī: quō lēge commūnī omnēs **pūberēs** armātī convenīre cōnsuērunt; quī ex iīs novissimus venit, in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur. in eō conciliō Cingētorigem, alterīus prīncipem factiōnis, **generum** suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius **pūblicat**. hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnūtibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc iter factūrum per fīnēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum āc, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum.

57. Quae fierī velit, praecipit. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret, cōgitābat. itaque ā Cingētorige atque ēius propīnquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomārī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs equitēsque undique ēvocat: hīs certum diem conveniendī dīcit. interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū

Indutiomārus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem, quibuscumque poterat rēbus, augēbat.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomārus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmīssīs equitibus omnium fīnitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā dīligentiā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit, ut nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēī cōnsūmit;. equitēs tēla cōniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubī vīsum est, sub vesperum dīspersī āc dissipātī discēdunt. subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit, **prōterritīs** hostibus atque in fugam coniectīs (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat) ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomārum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit iīs, quī occīderint, praemia: submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. **comprobat** hominis cōnsilium fōrtūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomārus interficitur, caputque ēius refertur in castra: redeuntēs equitēs, quōs possunt, cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. hāc rē cōgnitā, omnēs Ebūrōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant, cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

1–8. Commotions in Gaul.

Caesar levies additional forces.



1. Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, per Marcum **Silanum**, Gaium **Antistium Reginum**, Titum Sextium legatos **delectum** habere instituit; simul ab Gneo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicae causa remaneret, quos ex **Cisalpina** Gallia consulis **sacramento** rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore **resarciri**, sed etiam maioribus augeri copiis posset. quod cum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

The Nervii, Senones, Carnutes, and Menapii are subdued.

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. inventis nonnullis civitatibus iureiurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cavent: Ambiorigem sibi **societate** et **foedere** adiungunt. quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduatucos [ac] Menapios adiunctis **Cisrhenanis** omnibus Germanis esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

3. Itaque nondum hieme confecta proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque ea praeda militibus concessa vastatisque agris in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coëgit. eo celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. concilio Galliae primo **vere**, ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium **Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. confines** erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoria coniunxerant, sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existimabantur. hac re pro **suggestu** pronuntiata eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

4. Cognito eius adventu **Acco**, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur. necessario

sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Haeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduis dat **veniam excusationemque** accipit, quod **aestivum** tempus instantis belli, non **quaestionis** esse arbitratur. obsidibus imperatis centum hos Haeduis **custodiendos** tradit. eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in **clientela**: eadem ferunt responsa. peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

5. Hac parte Galliae pacata totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius **iracundia**, aut ex eo, quod meruerat, **odio** civitatis motus exsistat. his rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat Ambiorigem proelio non esse **concertaturum**, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne desperata salute aut se in Menapios abderet aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. hoc inito consilio totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci iubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. illi nulla coacta manu loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque **confugiunt** suaque eodem conferunt.

6. Caesar partitis copiis cum Gaio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripartito. aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis

petendae causa mittunt. ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. his confirmatis rebus Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

Labienus defeats the Treveri.

7. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant, iamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. positis castris a milibus passuum XV auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito consilio sperans, temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto cum XXV cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes. loquitur in concilio palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non **devocaturum** et postero die prima luce castra moturum. celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogebat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. his rebus fugae similem profectionem effecit. haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent: longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant, flumen transire et iniquo loco proelium committere non dubitant. quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris, placide progrediebatur. tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis, 'habetis,' inquit, 'milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate.' simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. illi, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas petiverunt. quos Labienus equitatu consectatus magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis paucis post diebus civitatem recepit; nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga sese domum contulerunt. cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excessere. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permanisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

9–28. Second Expedition into Germany.

Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time and marches against the Suebi.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod

auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. his constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. nota atque instituta ratione magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oriretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa, neque ab se fidem **laesam**: petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum **innocentes** pro nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum velit, dare pollicentur. cognita Caesar causa reperit ab Suebis auxilia missa esse; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suebos **perquirit**.

10. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. his cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperitos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coegissent, **penitus** ad extremos fines sese recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur **Bacenis**; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro **nativo** muro obiectam **Cheruscos** ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

The customs of the Gauls. Druidism, etc.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere. in Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii **egeret**: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae: namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani. hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Haeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adiunxerant eosque ad se magnis **iacturis** pollicitationibusque perduxerant. proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Haeduorum interfecta tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduis ad se traducerent obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent et publice iurare cogerent nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros; et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus **imperfecta re redierat.** adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, **meliore** condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis

rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata Sequani principatum dimiserant. in eorum locum Remi successerant: quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Haeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

13. In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo; nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. haec poena apud eos est gravissima. quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. his autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. hoc mortuo aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, nonnumquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum,

quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco **consecrato.** huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. disciplina in **Britannia** reperta atque inde in Galliam **translata** esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque **illo** discendi causa proficiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, **militiae vacationem** omniumque rerum habent **immunitatem.** tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. magnum ibi numerum **versuum ediscere** dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli **vicenos** in disciplina permanent. neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus Graecis litteris utantur. id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in **perdiscendo** ac memoriam remittant. inprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire **animas,** sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant metu mortis neglecto. multa praeterea de **sideribus** atque eorum motu, de **mundi** ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate **disputant** et iuventuti tradunt.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere **solebat,** uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se **ambactos** clientesque habet. hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

16. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus **morbis** quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro **victimis** homines **immolant** aut se immolaturos **vovent administris**que ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter deorum immortalium **numen placari** arbitrantur, publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. alii immani magnitudine **simulacra** habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra **vivis** hominibus complent: quibus succensis circumventi flamma exanimantur homines. supplicia eorum, qui in **furto** aut in **latrocinio** aut aliqua **noxia** sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis copia deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. Deum maxime **Mercurium** colunt: huius sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium **inventorem artium** ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad **quaestus** pecuniae **mercaturas**que habere vim maximam arbitrantur. post hunc **Apollinem** et **Martem** et **Iovem** et **Minervam**; de his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque **artificiorum** initia tradere, Iovem imperium **caelestium** tenere, Martem bella regere. huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent. cum superaverunt, **animalia** capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulus locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut, neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab **Dite** patre prognatos praedicant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies **natales**

et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. in reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum **adoleverunt**, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque **puerili** aetate in publico in conspectu patris **adsistere** turpe ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus **dotis** nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis **aestimatione** facta cum dotibus communicant. huius omnis pecuniae **coniunctim** ratio habetur **fructus**que servantur: uter eorum vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum paterfamiliae **illustriore** loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis **excruciatas** interficiunt. **funera** sunt pro cultu Gallorum **magnifica** et **sumptuosa**; omniaque, quae vivis **cordi** fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis **dilectos** esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

The manners of the Germans.

20. Quae civitates commodius suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat neve cum quo alio communicet, quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos **falsis** rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. magistratus quae visa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex usu iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. de re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

21. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. intra annum vero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus; cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis rhenonum tegimentis utuntur magna corporis parte nuda.

22. Agriculturae non student; maiorque pars victus eorum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. eius rei multas afferunt causas: ne assidua consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

23. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissimas circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. hoc propium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur repentinae incursionis timore sublato. cum bellum civitas aut illatum

defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. in pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent **infamiam**, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac **desidiae** minuendae causa fieri praedicant. atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex iis secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac **proditorum** numero ducuntur omniumque his rerum postea fides **derogatur**. hospites **violare**, fas non putant; qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

24. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum **colonias** mitterent. itaque ea, quae **fertilissima** Germaniae sunt, loca circum **Hercyniam** silvam, quam **Eratostheni** et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi **Orcyniam** appellant, **Volcae Tectosages** occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et **bellicae** laudis opinionem. nunc, quod in eadem inopia, **egestate patientia**que Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur, Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et **transmarinarum** rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur, paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute **comparant**.

The Hercynian forest and the remarkable animals found there.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim aliter

finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus, **rectaque** fluminis **Danuvii** regione pertinet ad fines **Dacorum** et **Anartium**: **hinc** se flectit **sinistrorsus** diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter LX processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit: multaque in ea genera **ferarum** nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est **bos cervi** figura, cuius a media fronte inter **aures** unum cornu exsistit **excelsius** magisque **directum** his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus. ab eius summo sicut **palmae** ramique late **diffunduntur.** eadem est feminae **maris**que natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur **alces.** harum est consimilis **capris** figura et **varietas** pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt **mutilae**que sunt cornibus et **crura** sine **nodis articulis**que habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt, neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. his sunt arbores pro **cubilibus**: ad eas se **applicant** atque ita paulum modo **reclinatae** quietem capiunt. quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a **venatoribus**, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut **accidunt** arbores, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eorum, qui **uri** appellantur. hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra **elephantos**, specie et colore et figura **tauri.**

magna vis eorum est et magna **velocitas**, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcunt. hos **studiose foveis** captos interficiunt. hoc se labore **durant** homines adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. sed **assuescere** ad homines et **mansuefieri** ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. haec studiose conquisita ab labris **argento circumcludunt** atque in amplissimis **epulis** pro **poculis** utuntur.

29–44. War against Ambiorix and the Eburones.

Caesar returns to Gaul. Ambiorix is defeated. The territories of the Eburones are laid waste.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum **reditus** sui barbaris tolleret, atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum CC rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim **tabulatorum** quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus **firmat**. ei loco praesidioque Gaium **Volcatium Tullum** adulescentem praefecit, ipse, cum **maturescere** frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus, per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium **Minucium Basilum** cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes fieri in

castris prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus procul significatio fiat: sese confestim subsequi dicit. Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit.

30. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit: eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum **incautum** atque etiam **imparatum** incideret, priusque eius adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntiis afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis ipsum effugere mortem. sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates, **comites** familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. his pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

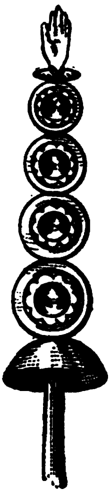
31. Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est; sed certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere iussit. quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceanum fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt: multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omni-

bus precibus **detestatus** Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, **taxo**, cuius magna in Gallia Germaniaque copia est, se exanimavit.

32. Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam iudicaret: nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit; si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. tum copiis in tris partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum **Aduatucam** contulit. id castelli nomen est. hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. praesidio impedimentis legionem quartamdecimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. ei legioni castrisque Quintum **Tullium** Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitu Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum **versus** in eas partes, quae Menapios **attingunt**, proficisci iubet; Gaium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae Aduatucis **adiacet**, depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen **Scaldem**, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partis ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat: quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, frumentum deberi sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicae com-

modo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud belli initium capere possint.



MANIPULUS.

34. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed in omnes partis dispersa multitudo. ubi cuique aut valles abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat, non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites; si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. at in eiusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar: omnes ad se evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitudine circumfusa pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

The Sugambri cross the Rhine, but change their design and attack the camp of Cicero. Caesar arrives and repels the enemy.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. hic quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proxumi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque **triginta** milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum: primos Eburonum fines adeunt; multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cuius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. invitati praeda longius procedunt. non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur. quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. atque unus ex captivis, 'quid vos,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuem **sectamini** praedam, quibus licet iam esse **fortunatissimis**? tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit: praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.' oblata spe Germani quam nacti erant praedam in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt, usi eodem duce, cuius haec indicio cognoverant.

36. Cicero, qui per omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, sep-

timo die diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius eum progressum audiebat, neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene **obsessionem** appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eiusmodi casum exspectans, quo novem **oppositis** legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas **segetes** mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. complures erant in castris ex legionibus aegri relicti; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum **convaluerant**, circiter CCC, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris **subsederat**, facta potestate sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites **interveniunt** protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur, nec prius sunt visi obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. aegre portas nostri tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. alius iam castra capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. tali timore omnibus perterritis confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius **mentionem** superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo **caruerat.** hic diffisus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt **imminere** hostes atque in summo rem esse **discrimine**: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat: paulisper una proelium sustinent. relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre per manus tractus servatur. hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

39. Interim confecta **frumentatione** milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt: **praecurrunt** equites; quanto sit res in periculo, cognoscunt. hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his praecipiatur, exspectant. nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt: redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant; postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt. calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt: hinc celeriter deiecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milites.

40. Alii, **cuneo** facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. itaque inter se cohortati, duce Gaio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. hos subsecuti calones equi-

tesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. at ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam **prodesse** aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, **imitari** potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. militum pars horum virtute submotis hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

41. Germani desperata **expugnatione** castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Gaius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. sic omnino animos timor **praeoccupaverat**, ut paene **alienata** mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum tantum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille eventus belli non ignorans unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus — ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse — multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati **optatissimum** Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

A council is held respecting the conspiracy. Acco receives capital punishment. Caesar departs for Italy.

43. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnis partis diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi nec plane etiam **abisse** ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille **latebris** aut **saltibus** se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret non maiore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

44. Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium **damno Durocortorum** Remorum reducit concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto de coniuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit et de Accone, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata more maiorum supplicium sumpsit. nonnulli iudicium veriti profugerunt. quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus **Agedinci** in hibernis collocavit frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

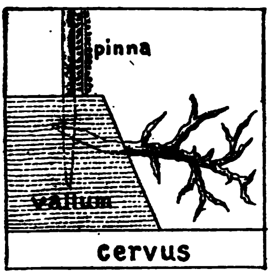
C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

1–90. WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX.

The conspiracy of the Gallic nations for freedom.



1. Quieta Gallia Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. ibi cognoscit de **Clodii** caede senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes **iuniores** Italiae coniurarent, delectum tota provincia habere instituit. eae res in Galliam **Transalpinam** celeriter perferuntur. addunt ipsi et **affingunt** rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere videbatur, retineri **urbano** motu Caesarem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. hac impulsi occasione, qui iam ante se populi Romani imperio subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt. indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de Acconis morte; posse hunc casum ad ipsos **recidere** demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis **deposcunt**, qui belli initium faciant et sui capitis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. in primis

rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum **clandestina** consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit; postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a maioribus acceperint recuperare.

2. His rebus **agitatis** profitentur Carnutes se nullum periculum communis salutis causa recusare principesque ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut iureiurando ac fide sanciatur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, quo more eorum gravissima **caerimonia** continetur, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. tum collaudatis Carnutibus dato iureiurando ab omnibus, qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto ab concilio disceditur.

3. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes **Gutruato** et **Conconnetodumno** ducibus, desperatis hominibus, **Cenabum** dato signo concurrunt **civesque** Romanos, qui **negotiandi** causa ibi constiterant, in his Gaium **Fufium Citam**, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae **iussu** Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. nam ubicumque maior atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proxumis tradunt, ut tum accidit. nam quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium circiter CLX.

4. Simili ratione ibi **Vercingetorix**, **Celtilli** filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae

totius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. prohibetur ab **Gobannitione, patruo** suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant, expellitur ex oppido **Gergovia**; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causa arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis **adversarios** suos, **a** quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. rex ab suis appellatur. dimittit quoqueversus legationes; **obtestatur**, ut in fide maneant. celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, **Cadurcos**, Turonos, Aulercos, **Lemovices**, **Andos** reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. qua oblata potestate omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit: in primis equitatui studet. summae diligentiae summam imperii **severitatem** addit: magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. nam maiore commisso **delicto** igni atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviore de causa auribus **desectis** aut singulis **effossis** oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis **documento** et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu **Lucterium** Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. eius adventu Bituriges ad Haeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Haedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Haeduis

dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntor legatisque nostris renuntiant se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsisterent. id eane de causa, quam legatis pronuntiarunt, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse proponendum. Bituriges eorum discessu statim cum Arvernis iunguntur.

Caesar returns to Gaul. The Averni are overcome. Caesar marches against Vercingetorix.

6. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute **Cn.** Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. nam si legiones in provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem **recte** committi videbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cacurcus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. progressus in **Nitiobriges** et **Gabalos** ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam Narbonem versus eruptionem facere contendit. qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis **antevertendum** existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. eo cum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis **provincialibus**, Volcis Arecomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum ex provincia **supplementumque**, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in **Helvios**, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

8. His rebus comparatis, represso iam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, in Helvios proficiscitur. etsi mons **Cevenna**, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissima **nive** iter impediebat, tamen **discussa** nive sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis summo militum **sudore** ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem umquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam latissime possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. celeriter haec fama ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortunis consulat, neve ab hostibus diripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

9. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnis partes equites quam latissime **pervagentur**: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. his constitutis rebus suis inopinantibus quam maximis potest itineribus **Viennam** pervenit. ibi nanctus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Haeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Haeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus **Gorgobinam**, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi **Helvetico** proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Haeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

10. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, si reliquam partem hiemis uno loco legiones contineret, ne stipendiariis Haeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videret positum esse; sin maturius ex hibernis educeret, ne ab re frumentaria duris **subvectionibus** laboraret. praestare visum est tamen omnes difficultates **perpeti**, quam tanta contumelia accepta omnium suorum voluntates alienare. itaque cohortatus Haeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

Caesar takes Vellaunodunum and several other towns, and marches against Avaricum.

11. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum **Vellaunodunum** venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque biduo **circumvallavit**; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. ea qui conficeret, Gaium Trebonium legatum relinquit. ipse, ut quam primum iter faceret, Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. huc biduo pervenit. castris ante oppidum positis diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt quaeque ad eam rem usui sint militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris continebat, veritus, ne noctu ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis **excubare** iubet. **Genabenses** paulo ante mediam noctem **silentio** ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. qua re per exploratores nuntiata Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse

iusserat, portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur **perpaucis** ex hostium numero desideratis, quin cuncti vivi caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant. oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque **obviam** Caesari proficiscitur. ille oppidum Biturigum, positum in via, Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallorum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

13. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet proeliumque equestre committit: laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter CCCC submittit, quos ab initio secum habere instituerat. eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatam existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum **Avaricum**, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est, quod eo

oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis suos ad concilium convocat. docet longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea sit gestum. omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi **abundent** et quod anni tempore subleventur. pabulum **secari** non posse; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda: vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio [a Boia] quoqueversus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur. harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur: Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno cum periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant, impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit. praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta, neu suis sint ad **detractandam** militiam **receptacula** neu Romanis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque tollendam. haec si gravia aut **acerba** videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, **coniuges** in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici, quae sit necesse accidere victis.

15. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata uno die amplius XX urbes Biturigum incenduntur. hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus. in omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi **solatii** proponebant, quod se prope explorata victoria celeriter amissa recuperaturos confidebant. deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret, an defendi. procumbunt omnibus

Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne **pulcherrimam** prope totius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata unum habeat et **perangustum** aditum. datur petentibus venia, **dissuadente** primo Vercingetorige, post concedente et precibus ipsorum et misericordia vulgi. defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

16. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum, ab Avarico longe milia passuum XVI. ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat. omnis nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat, dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat, etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

17. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a palude aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem **apparare**, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit: nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. de re frumentaria Boios atque Haeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adiuvabant, alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu **tenuitate** Boiorum, **indiligentia** Haeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque eo ut complures dies milites frumento caruerint et pecore e longinquioribus vicis adacto, extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romani **maiestate** et superioribus victoriis indigna. quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et,

si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant: sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent, nusquam infecta re discederent: hoc se ignominiae laturos loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent: praestare omnes perferre acerbitates, quam non civibus Romanis, qui Cenabi perfidia Gallorum interissent, parentarent. haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

18. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. quibus rebus cognitis media nocte silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. illi celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnis in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri iussit.

19. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. hoc se colle interruptis pontibus Galli fiducia loci continebant generatimque distributi in civitates omnia vada ac *saltus eius paludis* obtinebant sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore, ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimaret, qui iniquitatem condicionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes ferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium

morte necesse sit constare victoriam; quos cum sic animo paratos videat, ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquitatis **condemnari** debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit.

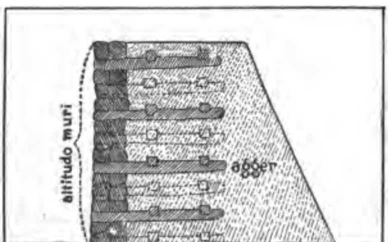
Vercingetorix vindicates himself from the charge of treachery.

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, **proditionis insimulatus**, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta opportunitate et celeritate venissent: non haec omnia **fortuito** aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris **concessu** quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit: quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipse ut munitione defenderet: equitum vero operam neque in loco **palustri** desiderari debuisse et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti: summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi **mollitiem** studere omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae, si alicuius indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere, et virtutem despicere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi, turpiter se in castra receperint. imperium se ab Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata: quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere, quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. 'haec ut intellegatis,' inquit, 'a me **sincere** pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites.' producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vincu-

lisque excruciaverat. hi iam ante edocti, quae **interrogati** pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent: simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam vires **sufficere** cuiusquam nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. 'haec,' inquit, 'a me,' Vercingetorix, 'beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis, cuius opera sine **vestro sanguine** tantum exercitum victorem fame consumptum videtis; quem turpiter se ex fuga recipientem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.'

21. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis **concrepat**, quod facere in eo consuerunt, cuius orationem **approbant**; summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de eius fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari posse. statuunt, ut decem milia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent, quod paene in eo, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intellegebant.

The able defence of Avaricum.

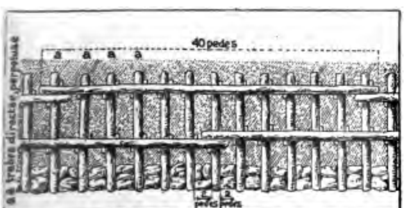


murus Gallicus intercisus

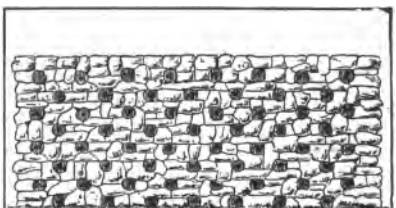
22. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cuiusque modi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus **solertiae** atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab quoque traduntur, aptissimum. nam et **laqueis** falces avertebant, quas cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo **scientius**, quod apud eos magnae sunt

ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque **usitatum** est. totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has **coriis intexerant.** tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur et nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has cotidianus agger expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant, et apertos cuniculos praeusta et praeacuta materia et **pice** fervefacta et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

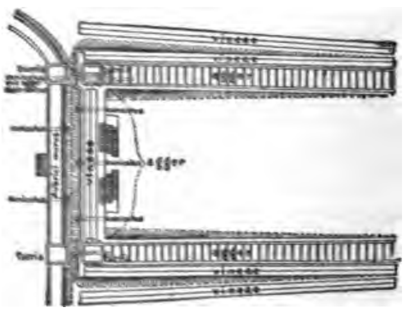
23. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. hae revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur: ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis **effarciuntur.** his collocatis et **coagmentatis** alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur, neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis singulae singulis saxis interiectis arte contineantur. sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo **expleatur.** hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est, **alternis** trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis **lineis** suos ordines servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitatem, quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete materia defendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta neque perrumpi neque **distrahi** potest.



muri Gallici imus ordo


muri Gallici adspectus

24. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione milites, cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardarentur, tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus XXV aggerem *latum pedes CCCXXX*, altum pedes LXXX exstruxerunt. cum is murum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubaret militesque hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant, eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat: alii faces atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus iaciebant, picem reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant, ut, quo primum occurreretur aut cui rei ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. tamen, quod instituto Caesaris semper duae legiones pro castris excubabant pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad restinguendum concurreret.



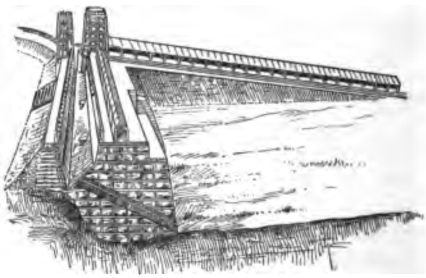
munimentorum forma

de
10 culis

25. Cum in omnibus locis consumpta iam reliqua parte noctis pugnaretur, semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod **deustos pluteos** turrium videbant nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant, semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positam arbitrarentur, accidit **inspectantibus** nobis, quod **dignum** memoria visum praetereundum non existimavimus. quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus, qui per manus **sevi** ac picis traditas **glebas** in ignem e regione turris proiciebat: **scorpione** ab latere dextro traiectus exanimatusque concidit. hunc ex proximis unus iacentem transgressus eodem illo munere **fungebatur**; eadem ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato alteri successit tertius et tertio quartus, nec prius ille est a **propugnatoribus** vacuus relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni ex parte submotis hostibus finis est pugnandi factus.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. id silentio noctis conati non magna iactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederent, quos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impediret. ubi eos in sententia **perstare** viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

27. Postero die Caesar promota turri directisque operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. legionibusque intra vineas in occulto expeditis cohortatus, ut **aliquando** pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis, qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt.



munimenta intercisa oblique conspecta

The capture of the town. The war continued by Vercingetorix.

28. Hostes re nova perterriti muro turribusque deiecti in **foro** ac locis patentioribus **cuneatim** constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam contra veniretur, acie instructa **depugnarent.** ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu petiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non aetate

confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. denique omni ex numero, qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. quos ille multa iam nocte silentio ex fuga excepit veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et misericordia vulgi seditio oriretur, ut procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum disparandos deducendosque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

29. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo. non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. errare, si qui in bello omnis secundos rerum proventus exspectent: sibi numquam placuisse, Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum imprudentia Biturigum et nimia obsequentia reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur. id tamen se celeriter maioribus commodis sanaturum. nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensu ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope iam effectum habere. interea aequum esse, ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

30. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo, neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incommodo accepto in dies

augebatur. simul in spem veniebant eius **affirmatione** de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt et sic sunt animo **consternati**, homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda et perferenda existimarent.

31. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas **donis** pollicitationibusque alliciebat. huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione **subdola** aut amicitia facillime capere posset. qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra adduci velit, sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat **permagnus** numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. his rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. interim **Teutomatus**, **Olloviconis** filius, rex Nitiobrigum, cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

Caesar quelling the commotions among the Haedui lays siege to Gergovia.

32. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nanctus exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. iam prope hieme confecta cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Haeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari atque **regiam** potestatem annum obtinere consuessent,

duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. horum esse alterum **Convictolitavem**, florentem et illustrem adulescentem, alterum Cotum, antiquissima familia natum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognationis, cuius frater **Valetiacus** proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit. civitatem omnem esse in armis; divisum senatum, divisum populum, suas cuiusque eorum clientelas. quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat. id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

33. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere **detrimentosum** esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus **ornasset**, ad vim atque ad arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi confideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei **praevertendum** existimavit et, quod legibus Haeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de iure aut de legibus eorum deminuisse videretur, ipse in Haeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se **Decetiam** evocavit. cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia vivo utroque non solum magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Cotum imperium deponere coegit, Convictolitavem, qui per **sacerdotes** more civitatis intermissis magistratibus esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

34. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Haeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionum obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se,

devicta Gallia, exspectarent, equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit; sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen **Elaver** duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in conspectu fereque e regione castris castra ponebant, dispositis exploratoribus, **necubi** effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent. erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante **autumnum** Elaver vado transiri solet. itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, captis* quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. his quam longissime possent progredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore **coniecturam** ceperat in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

36. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique proelio eo die levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnis aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. at Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum [in monte] positis mediocribus circum se

intervallis separatim singularum civitatium copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, qua despici poterat, **horribilem** speciem praebebat principesque earum civitatium, quos sibi ad consilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce cotidie ad se convenire iubebat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum videretur, neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, periclitaretur. erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis, egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione libera prohibituri hostes videbantur. sed is locus praesidio ab his non **nimis** firmo tenebatur. tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium **incursu** etiam singuli commeare possent.



Cergovia a castris minoribus conspecta

New troubles among the Haedui. The Romans take possession of three of the enemy's camps, but, pressing the attack too impetuously, are repulsed.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, cui magistratum **adiudicatum** a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecunia cum quibusdam adulescentibus

colloquitur; quorum erat princeps Litavicus atque eius fratres, amplissima familia nati adulescentes. cum his praemium communicat hortaturque, ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint. unam esse Haeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere. cur enim potius Haedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem disceptatorem, quam Romani ad Haeduos veniant? celeriter adulescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant. placuit, ut Litavicus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. reliqua qua ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

38. Litavicus accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter XXX ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus lacrimans, 'quo proficiscimur,' inquit, 'milites? omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis ab Romanis indicta causa interfecti sunt. haec ab ipsis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt: nam ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare.' producuntur ii, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litavicus pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt: equites Haeduorum interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede profugisse. conclamant Haedui et Litavicum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. 'quasi vero,' inquit ille, 'consilii sit res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernis

nosmet coniungere. an dubitamus, quin **nefario** facinore admisso Romani iam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt atque hos latrones interficiamus.' ostendit cives Romanos, qui eius praesidii fiducia una erant: magnum numerum frumenti commeatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit: nuntios tota civitate Haeduorum dimittit, eodem **mendacio** de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas iniurias persequantur.

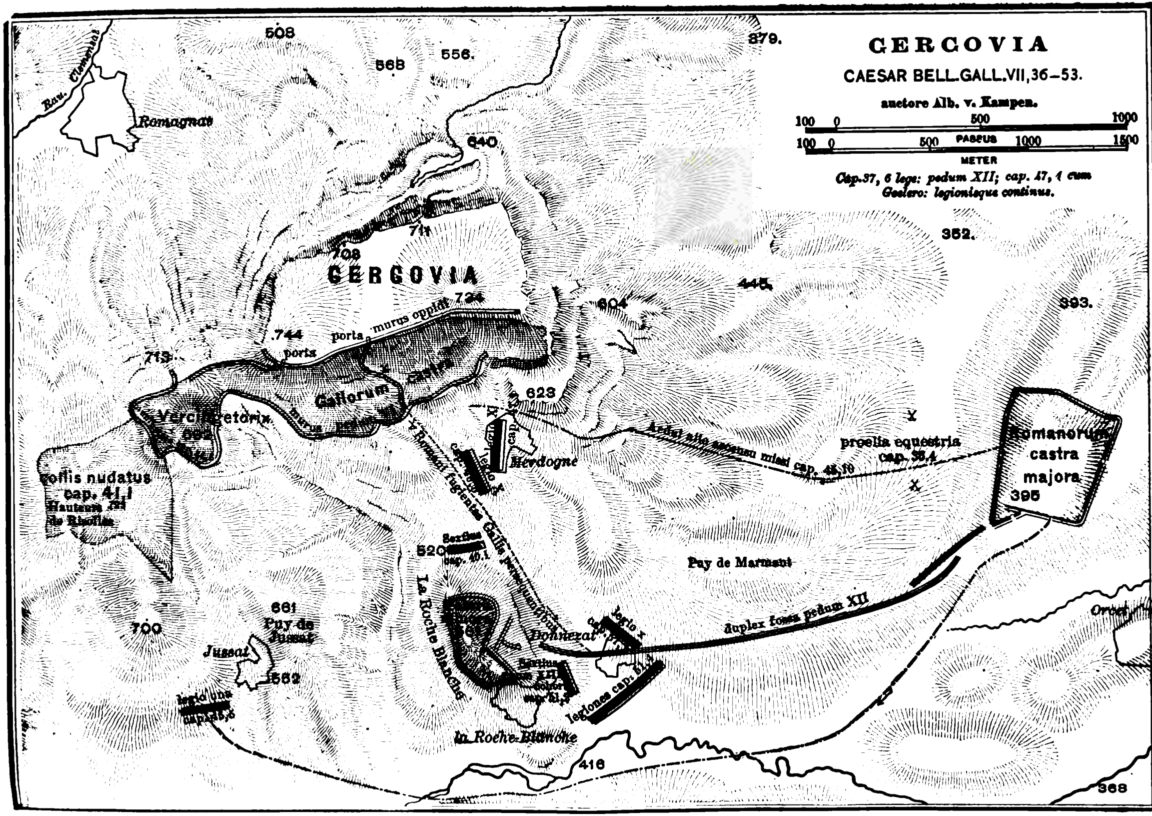
39. Eporedorix Haeduus, summo loco natus adulescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus, pari aetate et gratia, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab Divitiaco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant nominatim ab eo evocati. his erat inter se de principatu contentio, et in illa magistratuum controversia alter pro Convictolitavi, alter pro **Coto** summis opibus pugnaverant. ex his Eporedorix cognito Litavici consilio media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem **pravis** adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere; quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniunxerint, quorum salutem neque propinqui neglegere, neque civitas levi **momento** aestimare posset.

40. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Haeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit, nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur; Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. fratres Litavici cum comprehendi iussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes fugisse. adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore itineris labore

permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus progressus milia passuum XXV, agmen Haeduorum conspicatus immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. his cognitis et Litavici **fraude** perspecta Haedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litavicus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere **patronos**, Gergoviam profugit.

41. Caesar nuntiis ad civitatem Haeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis castra ad Gergoviam movit. medio fere itinere equites ab Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum **crebro** integri defessis succederent nostrosque assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset iisdem in vallo permanendum. multitudine sagittarum atque omni genere telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessu eorum duabus relictis portis obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo addere et se in posterum diem similem ad casum parare. his rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante **ortum** solis in castra pervenit.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haedui primis nuntiis ab Litavico acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta. bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. adiuvat rem **proclinatam** Convictolitavis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore



GERCOVIA
CAESAR BELL.GALL.VII,36–53.
auctore Alb. v. Kampen.
PASSUS
METER
Cap. 37, 6 lege: pedum XII; cap. 47, 1 cum Goelero: legionisque continus.
GERGOVIA
murus oppidi
porta
Gallorum
castra
Romanorum castra majora
395
proelia equestria cap. 36,4
duplex fossa pedum XII
Puy de Marmant
La Roche Blanche
Jussat
Puy de Jussat
Romagnat
Orcet
collis nudatus cap. 44,1
Heudogne
Donnezat
legio X
legiones cap. 51,4
508
568
556
879.
640
711
708
724
744
713
604
623
352.
393.
520
661
700
552
416
368

admisso ad sanitatem reverti **pudeat.** Marcum **Aristium,** tribunum militum, iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido **Cabillono** educunt: idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis maiorem multitudinem armatorum concitant.

43. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis direptis decernunt, Litavici fratrumque bona publicant, legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. haec faciunt recuperandorum suorum causa: sed **contaminati** facinore et capti **compendio** ex direptis bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae **exterriti,** consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen quam **mitissime** potest legatos appellat: nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque de sua in Haeduos benevolentia deminuere. ipse, maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quem ad modum ab Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

44. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene gerendae rei. nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus **confluebat.** constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, **dorsum** esse eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua

esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi: vehementer huic loco illos timere nec iam aliter sentire uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

45. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas eodem media nocte: imperat, ut paulo **tumultuosius** omnibus in locis vagarentur. prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris **mulorumque** produci deque his stramenta detrahi **muliones**que cum **cassidibus** equitum specie ac simulatione collibus **circumvehi** iubet. his paucos addit equites, qui latius **ostentationis** causa vagarentur. longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra, neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari poterat. legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. augetur Gallis suspicio atque omnes illo munitionum copiae traducuntur. vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri vellet, ostendit: imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit: hoc una celeritate posse **mutari**: occasionis esse rem, non proelii. his rebus expositis, signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Haeduos mittit.

46. Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus recta regione, si nullus **amfractus** intercederet, MCC passus aberat: quidquid huc circuitus ad **molliendum clivum** accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. a medio fere colle in longitudinem,

ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, **praeduxerant** Galli atque inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie **conquieverat**, superiore corporis parte nudata vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

47. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui **cani** iussit legionisque decimae, quacum erat, **contionatus** signa constituit; ac reliquarum milites legionum non exaudito tubae **sono**, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur. sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga superiorumque temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi existimabant, quod non virtute consequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore qui longius aberant repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. matresfamiliae de muro **vestem** argentumque iactabant et **pectore** nudo **prominentes** passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent, neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent: nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. Lucius Fabius, centurio legionis VIII, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat excitari se **Avaricensibus** praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nanctus **manipulares** atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit: hos ipse rursus singulos **exceptans** in murum extulit.

48. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum ab Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aequa contentio: simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

49. Caesar, cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

50. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Haedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miserat. hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris humeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio quique una murum ascenderant circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitantur. Marcus Petronius, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans multis iam

vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, 'quoniam,' inquit, 'me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. vos data facultate vobis consulite.' simul in medios hostis irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta paulum summovit. conantibus auxiliari suis, 'frustra,' inquit, 'meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt: proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite.' ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

51. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centurionibus amissi deiecti sunt loco. sed **intolerantius** Gallos insequentes legio X tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. hanc rursus XIII legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato locum ceperant superiorem. legiones, ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

Caesar reproves the rashness of the soldiers.

52. Postero die Caesar contione **advocata** temeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicavissent, quo procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent neque ab tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent. exposuit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset, tanto opere **licentiam** arrogantiamque reprehen-

dere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent; nec minus se in milite **modestiam** et **continentiam** quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

Caesar raises the siege and removes his camp to the territories of the Haedui.

53. Hac habita contione et ad extremam orationem confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectione cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco constituit. cum Vercingetorix nihilo magis in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio atque eo secundo in castra exercitum reduxit. cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans in Haeduos movit castra. ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus tertio die ad flumen Elaver pontes reficit atque exercitum traducit.

54. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Haeduis appellatus discit cum omni equitatu Litavicum ad sollicitandos Haeduos profectum: opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. etsi multis iam rebus perfidiam Haeduorum perspectam habebat atque horum discessu **admaturari** defectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non constituit, ne aut inferre iniuriam videretur aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. discedentibus his breviter sua in Haeduos merita exponit: quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, **multatos** agris omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia **extortis**, et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. his datis mandatis, eos ab se dimisit.

55. Noviodunum erat oppidum Haeduorum ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc magnum numerum equorum huius belli causa in Italia atque Hispania coemptum miserat. eo cum Eporedorix Viridomarusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracti ab Haeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavim magistratum magnamque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia concilianda publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus quique eo negotiandi causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt; oppidum, quod a se teneri non posse iudicabant, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt; frumenti quod subito potuerunt navibus **avexerunt**, reliquum flumine atque incendio **corruperunt**; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligeris disponere equitatumque omnibus locis iniciendi timoris causa ostentare coeperunt, si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere aut adductos inopia in provinciam expellere possent. quam ad spem multum eos adiuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. nam ne commutato consilio iter in provinciam converteret, ut nemo non tum quidem necessario faciundum existimabat, cum infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons Cevenna viarumque difficultas impediebat, tum maxime, quod **abiuncto** Labieno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. itaque admo-

dum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis contra omnium opinionem ad Ligerim venit vadoque per equites invento pro rei necessitate opportuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis incolumem exercitum traduxit frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nanctus, **repleto** his rebus exercitu iter in Senonas facere instituit.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agedinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. summa imperii traditur **Camulogeno** Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

The successes of Labienus.

58. Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque aggere paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur. postquam id difficilius **confieri** animadvertit, silentio e castris tertia vigilia egressus eodem, quo venerat, itinere **Melodunum** pervenit. id est oppidum Senonum in insula Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetia diximus. deprehensis navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque coniunctis atque eo militibus iniectis et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. refecto ponte, quem superiori-

bus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum traducit et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. hostes re cognita ab iis, qui a Meloduno fugerant, Lutetiam incendi pontesque eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsi profecti a palude ad ripas Sequanae e regione Lutetiae contra Labieni castra considunt.

59. Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur, iam de Haeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem inopia frumenti coactum in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem defectione Haeduorum cognita, qui ante erant per se **infideles**, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. tum Labienus tanta rerum commutatione longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intellegebat neque iam, ut aliquid **acquireret** proelioque hostes lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum reduceret, cogitabat. namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant, alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. tantis subito difficultatibus obiectis ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

60. Itaque sub vesperum consilio convocato cohortatus, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter **industrie**que administrarent, naves, quas Meloduno deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attribuit et prima confecta vigilia quattuor milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi ibique se exspectari iubet. quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque eiusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. conquirit etiam lintres: has, magno **sonitu** remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. ipse post paulo

silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appelli iusserat.

61. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur: exercitus equitatusque equitibus Romanis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur in castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine, sonitumque remorum in eadem parte exaudiri et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos defectione Haeduorum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. nam praesidio e regione castrorum relicto et parva manu Melodunum versus missa, quae tantum progrediatur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

62. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati, et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut suae pristinae virtutis et tot secundissimorum proeliorum retinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum, quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt signaque intulerunt. ne eo quidem tempore

quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. at ii, qui praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relicti, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt collemque ceperunt neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum sustinere potuerunt. sic cum suis fugientibus **permixti**, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. hoc negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relicta erant: inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

All the Gauls join the Haedui. Vercingetorix is appointed commander. The Gauls attack Caesar, but are put to flight with great slaughter.

63. Defectione Haeduorum cognita bellum augetur. legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur: quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur; nancti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. petunt a Vercingetorige Haedui, ad se veniat rationesque belli gerendi communicet. re impetrata contendunt, ut ipsis summa imperii tradatur, et re in controversiam deducta totius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. eodem conveniunt undique frequentes. multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur: ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem. ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treveri afuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam Romanorum sequebantur; Treveri, quod aberant longius et ab Germanis premebantur: quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent. magno dolore Haedui ferunt se deiectos principatu, queruntur fortunae commutationem et Caesaris in se **indulgentiam** requirunt; neque tamen suscepto bello suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. inviti summae spei adulescentes Eporedorix et Viridomarus Vercingetorigi parent.

64. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diemque huic rei constituit. omnes equites, XV milia numero, celeriter convenire iubet: peditatu, quem ante habuerat, se fore **contentum** dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum aut in acie dimicaturum; sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere, aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, qua rei familiaris iactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant. his constitutis rebus Haeduis Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat: huc addit equites DCCC. his praeficit fratrem Eporedorigis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. altera ex parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum **Arecomicorum** depopulandos mittit. nihilo minus clandestinis nuntiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello **resedisse** sperabat. horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicetur.

65. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa provincia ab Lucio Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur et Gaio Valerio **Donnotauro**, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis intra oppida murosque compelluntur. Allobroges crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magna cum cura et diligentia suos tuentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat et interclusis omnibus itineribus, nulla re ex provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consuerant. eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit Germanisque distribuit.

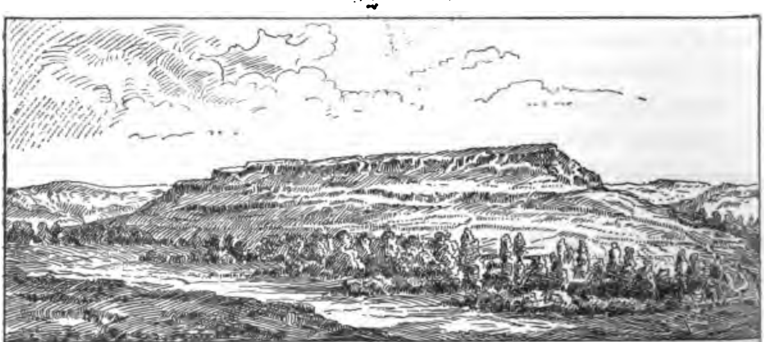
66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernis equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Romanis trinis castris Vercingetorix consedit convocatisque ad concilium praefectis equitum, venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat. fugere in provinciam Romanos Galliaque excedere. id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici: maioribus enim coactis copiis reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. proinde agmine impeditos adoriantur. si pedites suis auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat, relictis impedimentis suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, et ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. id quo maiore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum. conclamant equites, sanctissimo iureiurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset.

67. Probata re atque omnibus iureiurando adactis postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu duae se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. qua re nuntiata Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripartito divisum contra hostem ire iubet. pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. consistit agmen; impedimenta intra legiones recipiuntur. si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui iubebat; quae res et hostes ad insequendum tardabat et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. tandem Germani ab dextro latere summum iugum nacti hostes

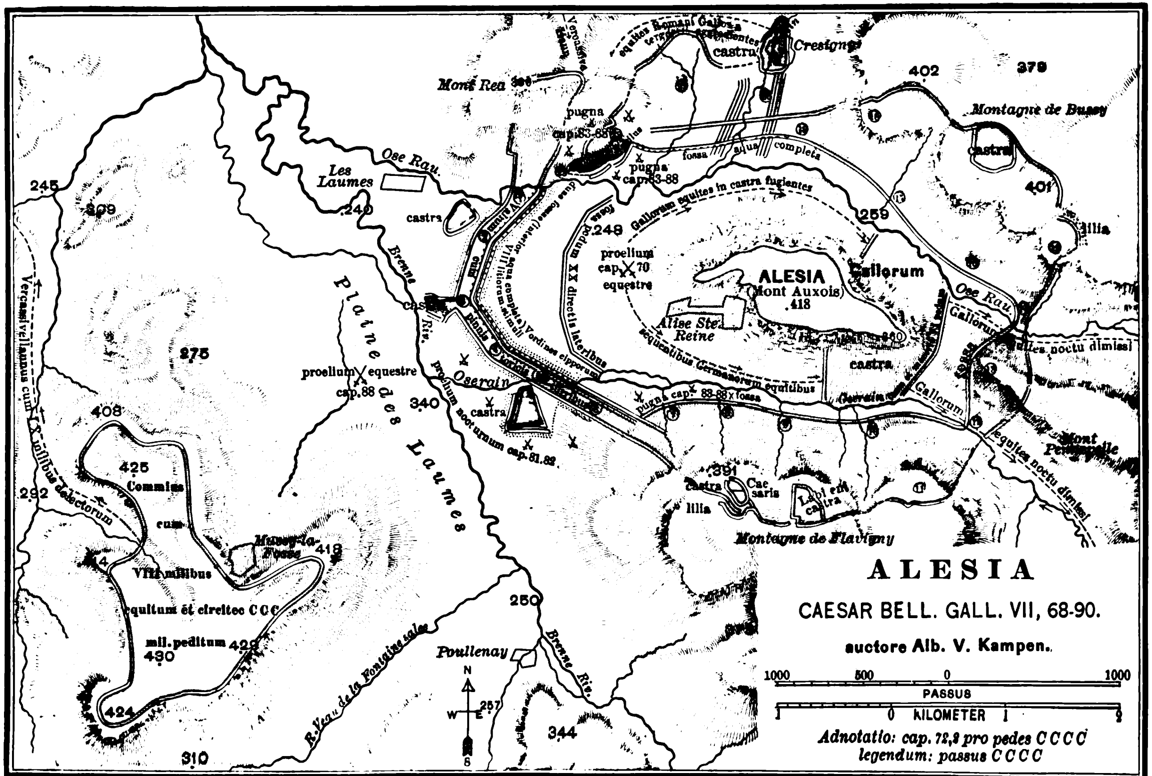
loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. qua re animadversa reliqui, ne circumvenirentur, veriti se fugae mandant. omnibus locis fit caedes. tres nobilissimi Haedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis **comitiis** habuerat, et **Cavarillus**, qui post defectionem Litavici pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

Vercingetorix withdraws to Alesia. Caesar lays siege to the town.

68. Fugato omni equitatu Vercingetorix copias suas, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque **Alesiam,** quod est oppidum **Mandubiorum,** iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta


Alesia a castris a Vercassivellauno oppressis conspecta.

ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis duabus legionibus praesidio relictis secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis altero die ad Alesiam


ALESIA
CAESAR BELL. GALL. VII, 68-90.
auctore Alb. V. Kampen.
PASSUS
KILOMETER
Adnotatio: cap. 72,3 pro pedes CCCC legendum: passus CCCC
ALESIA (Mont Auxois) 418
Alise Ste. Reine
Mont Rea
Montagne de Bussy
Montagne de Flavigny
Cresigny
Les Laumes
Plaine des Laumes
Poullenay
Ose Rau.
Oserain
Brenne Riv.
R. Veau de la Fontaine sales
castra
Gallorum
proelium equestre cap. 88
proelium cap. 70 equestre
pugna cap. 83-88
fossa podum XX directis lateribus
Vercassivellaunus cum LX millibus delectorum
Commius cum VIII millibus equitum et circiter CCC mil. peditum
equites noctu dimissi
Gallorum equites in castra fugientes
STRUTHERS & CO., ENGR'S, N.Y.

castra fecit. perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

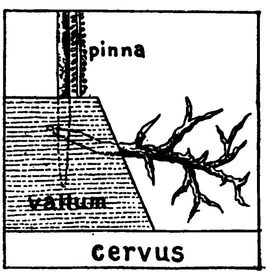
69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur; cuius collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina **subluebant.** ante id oppidum planities circiter milia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat: reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles mediocri interiecto spatio pari altitudinis **fastigio** oppidum cingebant. sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant fossamque et **maceriam** sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant. eius munitionis, quae ab Romanis instituebatur, circuitus XI milium passuum tenebat. castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiu stationes ponebantur, ne qua subito eruptio fieret: haec eadem noctu **excubitoribus** ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

70. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in ea planitie, quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patere supra demonstravimus. summa vi ab utrisque contenditur. laborantibus nostris Caesar Germanos summittit legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua subito **irruptio** ab hostium peditatu fiat. praesidio legionum addito nostris animus augetur: hostes in fugam coniecti se ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coacervantur. Germani acrius usque ad munitiones sequuntur. fit magna caedes: nonnulli relictis equis fossam transire et maceriam transcendere conantur. paulum legiones Caesar, quas pro vallo constituerat, promoveri iubet. non minus, qui intra munitiones erant, perturbantur Galli: veniri ad se confestim existimantes ad arma conclamant; nonnulli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portas

claudi, ne castra nudentur. multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis Germani sese recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eorum civitatem adeat omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant; sua in illos merita proponit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant neu se de communi libertate optime meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. quod si indiligentiores fuerint, milia hominum delecta LXXX una secum interitura demonstrat. ratione inita se exigue dierum XXX habere frumentum, sed paulo etiam longius tolerari posse parcendo. his datis mandatis, qua opus erat intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitatum mittit. frumentum omne ad se referri iubet; capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit: pecus, cuius magna erat copia ab Mandubiis compulsa, **viritim** distribuit; frumentum **parce** et paulatim metiri instituit; copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recipit. his rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum administrare parat.

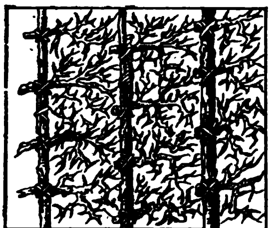
72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit.



fossam pedum XX directis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum **tantundem** pateret, quantum summa labra distarent; reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa pedes CCCC reduxit, id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus, nec facile totum corpus corona militum cingeretur, ne de improviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, aut interdiu tela in nostros operi destinatos conicere possent. hoc intermisso

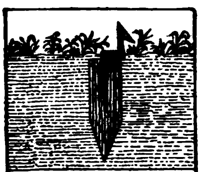
spatio duas fossas XV pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit: quarum interiorem, **campestribus** ac demissis locis, aqua ex flumine **derivata** complevit. post eas aggerem ac vallum XII pedum exstruxit; huic loricam pinnasque adiecit grandibus cervis **eminentibus** ad **commissuras** pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent, et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

73. Erat eodem tempore et **materiari** et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab



cippi superne visi

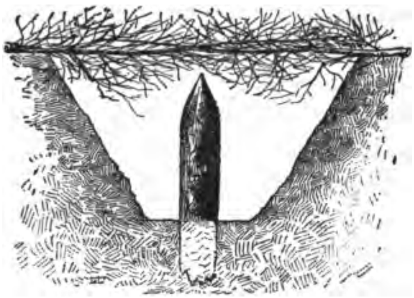
castris progrediebantur; ac nonnumquam opera nostra Galli tentare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum **delibratis** ac praeacutis **cacuminibus** perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. huc illi **stipites** demissi et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. quini erant ordines, coniuncti inter se atque **implicati**; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi



stimulus

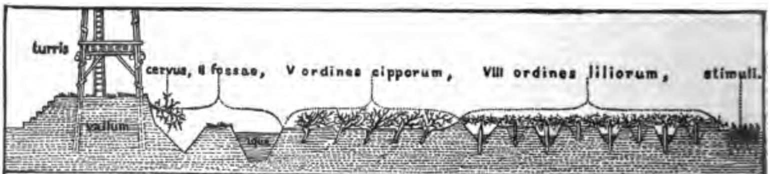
acutissimis vallis induebant. hos **cippos** appellabant. ante quos obliquis ordinibus in **quincuncem** dispositis **scrobes** trium in altitudinem pedum **fodiebantur** paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. huc **teretes** stipites feminis crassitudine ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demittebantur, ita ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terra eminerent; simul confirmandi et **stabiliendi** causa singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra **exculcabantur**, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac

virgultis integebatur. huius generis **octoni** ordines ducti ternos inter se pedes distabant. id ex similitudine **floris lilium** appellabant. ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis **hamis infixis** totae in terram **infodiebantur** mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis **disserebantur**; quos **stimulos** nominabant.



LILIUM.

74. His rebus perfectis regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas pro loci natura quattuordecim milia passuum complexus



munimenta Romanorum in planitie facta a latere conspecta.

pares eiusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra **exteriorem** hostem perfecit, ut ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat, eius discessu munitionum praesidia circumfundi possent, ac ne cum periculo ex castris egredi cogantur, dierum XXX pabulum frumentumque habere omnes **convectum** iubet.

The Gauls try to relieve the besieged, but are defeated.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli concilio principum indicto non omnes eos, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique ex civitate imperandum; ne tanta multitudine **confusa** nec

moderari nec **discernere** suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. imperant Haeduis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiavis, **Ambluaretis**, Aulercis **Brannovicibus**, **Brannoviis**, milia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernis, adiunctis **Eleuteris**, Cadurcis, Gabalis, **Vellaviis**, qui sub imperio Arvernorum esse consuerunt; Sequanis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena milia; Bellovacis X; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; Senonibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, **Petrocoriis**, Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus quina milia; Aulercis **Cenomanis** totidem; Atrebatibus IIII; Veliocassis, Lexoviis et Aulercis Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis . . .; XXX universis civitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt, quaeque eorum consuetudine Aremoricae appellantur, quo sunt in numero **Curiosolites**, Redones, **Ambibarii**, **Caletes**, Osismi, Lemovices, Veneti, Venelli. ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicerent, neque cuiusquam imperio **obtemperaturos**: rogati tamen ab Commio pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt.

76. Huius opera Commii, ita ut antea demonstravimus, fideli atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem eius **immunem** esse iusserat, iura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinos attribuerat. tamen tanta universae Galliae **consensio** fuit libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoria moverentur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum **incumberent**. coactis equitum VIII milibus et peditum circiter CCXL, haec in Haeduorum finibus **recensebantur**, numerusque inibatur, praefecti constituebantur: Commio Atrebati, Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Haeduis, **Vercassivellauno** Arverno, **consobrino** Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. his delecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum

administraretur. omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione pugnaretur, **foris** tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque cernerentur.

The distress in the town.

77. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita die, qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, consumpto omni frumento inscii, quid in Haeduis gereretur, concilio coacto de exitu fortunarum suarum consultabant. ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebat, non praetereunda oratio **Critognati** videtur propter eius singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. hic summo in Arvernis ortus loco et magnae habitus auctoritatis, 'nihil,' inquit, 'de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant, neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad consilium adhibendos censeo. cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant: quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae **residere** virtutis memoria videtur. animi est **ista mollitia**, non virtus, inopiam paulisper ferre non posse. qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem **patienter** ferant. atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. quid hominum milibus LXXX uno loco interfectis, propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? nolite hos vestro auxilio **exspoliare**, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerunt, nec **stultitia ac** temeritate vestra aut animi **imbecillitate** omnem Galliam **prosternere** et perpetuae servituti subicere. an, quod ad diem non

venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatis? quid **ergo?** Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa cotidie exerceri putatis? si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu **praesepto**; his utimini testibus appropinquare eorum adventum; cuius rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. quid ergo mei consilii est? facere, quod nostri maiores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopia **subacti** eorum corporibus, qui aetate inutiles ad bellum videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt. cuius rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui et posteris prodi pulcherrimum iudicarem. nam quid illi simile bello fuit? depopulata Gallia Cimbri magnaque illata calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt; iura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquerunt. Romani vero quid petunt aliud, aut quid volunt, nisi **invidia** adducti, quos fama nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere atque his **aeternam iniungere** servitutem? neque enim umquam alia condicione bella gesserunt. quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, iure et legibus commutatis, **securibus** subiecta perpetua premitur servitute.'

The Mandubii are compelled to leave their own city.

78. Sententiis dictis constituunt, ut ii, qui valetudine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam descendant: illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam condicionem. Mandubii, qui eos oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. hi, cum ad munitiones Romanorum accessis-

sent, flentes omnibus precibus orabant, ut se in servitutem receptos cibo iuvarent. at Caesar dispositis in vallo custodiis recipi prohibebat.

The Gauls make frequent attacks upon the Roman lines, but are driven back.

79. Interea Commius et reliqui duces, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriore occupato non longius mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. postero die equitatu ex castris educto omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem tria milia passuum patere demonstravimus, complent pedestresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in locis superioribus constituunt. erat ex oppido Alesia despectus in campum. concurrunt his auxiliis visis; fit gratulatio inter eos atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. itaque productis copiis ante oppidum considunt et proximam fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

80. Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi iubet. erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenebant, despectus, atque omnes milites intenti pugnae proventum exspectabant. Galli inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interiecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. ab his complures de improviso vulnerati proelio excedebant. cum suos pugna superiores esse Galli confiderent et nostros multitudine premi viderent, ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et hi, qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis

cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabat. cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt, quibus in fugam coniectis sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. item ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes usque ad castra insecuti sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. at ii, qui ab Alesia processerant, **maesti** prope victoria desperata se in oppidum receperunt.

81. Uno die intermisso Galli atque hoc spatio magno cratium, scalarum, **harpagonum** numero effecto, media nocte silentio ex castris egressi ad campestres munitiones accedunt. subito clamore sublato, qua significatione qui in oppido obsidebantur de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates proicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinent, parant administrare. eodem tempore clamore exaudito dat tuba signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppido educit. nostri ut superioribus diebus, ut cuique locus erat attributus, ad munitiones accedunt; fundis, **libribus** sudibusque, quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent. prospectu **tenebris** adempto multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complura tormentis tela coniciuntur. at Marcus **Antonius** et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus eae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos summittebant.

82. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant; posteaquam propius successerunt, aut se stimulis inopinantes induebant aut in scrobes delati **transfodiebantur** aut ex vallo ac turribus traiecti pilis muralibus interibant. multis undique vulneribus acceptis nulla munitione perrupta, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos recepe-

runt. at interiores, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant, proferunt, priores fossas explent, diutius in his rebus administrandis morati prius suos discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. ita re infecta in oppidum reverterunt.

83. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt; locorum peritos adhibent: ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. erat a septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri: necessario paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. haec Gaius Antistius Reginus et Gaius Caninius Rebilus legati cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. cognitis per exploratores regionibus duces hostium LX milia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. his copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. ille ex castris prima vigilia egressus prope confecto sub lucem itinere, post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere iussit. cum iam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus ex oppido egreditur; cratis, longurios, musculos, falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert. pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis acriter atque omnia temptantur: quae minime visa pars firma est, huc concurritur. Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. multum ad terrendos nostros valuit clamor, qui post tergum pug-

nantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare: omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

85. Caesar idoneum locum nanctus, quid quaque in parte geratur, cognoscit, laborantibus summittit. utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum illud esse tempus, quo maxime contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium exspectant. maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. iniquum loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momentum. alii tela coniciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defatigatis in vicem integri succedunt. agger ab universis in munitionem coniectus et ascensum dat Gallis, et ea, quae in terra occultaverant Romani, contegit; nec iam arma nostris, nec vires suppetunt.

86. His rebus cognitis Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit: imperat, si sustinere non posset, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnaret; id nisi necessario ne faciat. ipse adit reliquos, cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta ex ascensu temptant: huc ea, quae paraverant, conferunt: multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas explent, [aditus expediunt]; falcibus vallum ac loricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit primo Brutum adulescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gaium Fabium legatum; postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnarent, integros subsidio adducit. restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus eo, quo Labienum miserat, contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo castello deducit, equitum partem

se sequi, partem circumire exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri iubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una XL cohortibus, quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiorem, quid faciendum existimet.

The great slaughter of the Gauls. Alesia and Vercingetorix surrender. The Haedui and Arverni submit. The winter-quarters.

88. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit. eius adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consueverat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quae se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, nostri proelium committunt. utrimque clamore sublato excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. nostri emissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant. hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt: fit magna caedes. **Sedulius**, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur: pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a munitionibus reducunt. fit protinus hac re audita ex castris Gallorum fuga. quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. de media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt.

89. Postero die Vercingetorix concilio convocato id se bellum suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque

rem se illis offerre, seu morte sua Romanis satisfacere seu vivum tradere velint. mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesarem legati. iubet arma tradi, principes produci. ipse in munitione pro castris consedit: eo duces producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur, arma proiciuntur. reservatis Haeduis atque Arvernis, si per eos civitates recuperare posset, ex reliquis captivis toto exercitui capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

90. His rebus confectis in Haeduos proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. eo legati ab Arvernis missi, quae imperaret se facturos pollicentur. imperat magnum numerum obsidum. legiones in hiberna mittit. captivorum circiter viginti milia Haeduis Arvernisque reddit. Titum Labienum duabus cum legionibus et equitatu in Sequanos proficisci iubet: huic Marcum **Sempronium Rutilum** attribuit: Gaium Fabium et Lucium Minucium Basilum cum duabus legionibus in Remis collocat, ne quam ab finitimis Bellovacis calamitatem accipiant. Gaium Antistium Reginum in Ambilaretos, Titum Sextium in Bituriges, Gaium Caninium Rebilum in Rutenos cum singulis legionibus mittit. Quintum Tullium Ciceronem et Publium **Sulpicium** Cabilloni et **Matiscone** in Haeduis ad Ararim rei frumentariae causa collocat. ipse Bibracte hiemare constituit. his *litteris* cognitis Romae dierum viginti supplicatio redditur.

A. HIRTII

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS OCTAVUS.

Letter of Hirtius to Balbus.



Coactus assiduis tuis vocibus, Balbe, cum cotidiana mea recusatio non difficultatis excusationem, sed inertiae videretur deprecationem habere, rem difficillimam suscepi. Caesaris nostri commentarios rerum gestarum Galliae non cohaerentibus superioribus atque insequentibus eius scriptis contexui novissimumque imperfectum ab rebus gestis Alexandriae confeci usque ad exitum non quidem civilis dissensionis, cuius finem nullum videmus, sed vitae Caesaris. quos utinam qui legent scire possint quam invitus susceperim scribendos, quo facilius caream stultitiae atque arrogantiae crimine, qui me mediis interposuerim Caesaris scriptis. constat enim inter omnes nihil tam operose ab aliis esse perfectum, quod non horum elegantia commentariorum superetur. qui sunt editi, ne scientia tantarum rerum scriptoribus deesset, adeoque probantur omnium iudicio, ut praerepta, non praebita facultas scriptoribus videatur. cuius tamen rei maior nostra quam reliquorum est admiratio: ceteri enim, quam bene atque emendate, nos etiam, quam facile atque celeriter eos perfecerit, scimus. erat autem in Caesare cum facultas atque elegantia summa

scribendi, tum verissima scientia suorum consiliorum **explicandorum**. mihi ne illud quidem accidit, ut **Alexandrino** atque **Africano** bello interessem; quae bella **quamquam** ex parte nobis Caesaris sermone sunt nota, tamen aliter audimus ea, quae rerum novitate aut admiratione nos capiunt, aliter, quae pro testimonio sumus dicturi. sed ego **nimirum**, dum omnes excusationis causas colligo, ne cum Caesare conferar, hoc ipsum crimen arrogantiae subeo, quod me iudicio cuiusquam existimem posse cum Caesare comparari. vale.

Commotions in Gaul.

1. Omni Gallia devicta Caesar cum a superiore aestate nullum bellandi tempus intermisisset militesque hibernorum quiete reficere a tantis laboribus vellet, complures eodem tempore civitates renovare belli consilia nuntiabantur coniurationesque facere. cuius rei verisimilis causa afferebatur, quod Gallis omnibus cognitum esset neque ulla multitudine in unum locum coacta resisti posse Romanis, nec, si diversa bella complures eodem tempore intulissent civitates, satis auxilii aut spatii aut copiarum habiturum exercitum populi Romani ad omnia persequenda; non esse autem alicui civitati sortem incommodi recusandam, si tali mora reliquae possent se vindicare in libertatem.

2. Quae ne opinio Gallorum confirmaretur, Caesar Marcum Antonium quaestorem suis praefecit hibernis; ipse equitum praesidio pridie Kal. Ianuarias ab oppido Bibracte proficiscitur ad legionem XIII, quam non longe a finibus Haeduorum collocaverat in finibus Biturigum, eique adiungit legionem XI, quae proxima fuerat. binis cohortibus ad impedimenta tuenda relictis reliquum exercitum in copiosissimos agros Biturigum inducit, qui, cum latos fines et complura oppida haberent, unius legionis hibernis non potuerint contineri, quin bellum pararent coniurationesque facerent.

Caesar receives hostages from the Bituriges and proceeds against the Carnutes.

3. Repentino adventu Caesaris accidit, quod imparatis disiectisque accidere fuit necesse, ut sine timore ullo **rura** colentes prius ab equitatu opprimerentur, quam confugere in oppida possent. namque etiam illud **vulgare** incursionis hostium signum, quod incendiis aedificiorum intellegi consuevit, Caesaris erat interdicto sublatum, ne aut copia pabuli frumentique, si longius progredi vellet, deficeretur, aut hostes incendiis terrerentur. multis hominum milibus captis perterriti Bituriges, qui primum adventum potuerant effugere Romanorum, in finitimas civitates aut privatis hospitiis confisi aut societate consiliorum confugerant. frustra: nam Caesar magnis itineribus omnibus locis occurrit nec dat ulli civitati spatium de aliena potius quam de domestica salute cogitandi; qua celeritate et fideles amicos retinebat et dubitantes terrore ad condiciones pacis adducebat. tali condicione proposita Bituriges, cum sibi viderent clementia Caesaris reditum patere in eius amicitiam finitimasque civitates sine ulla poena dedisse obsides atque in fidem receptas esse, idem fecerunt.

4. Caesar militibus pro tanto labore ac **patientia**, qui **brumalibus** diebus itineribus difficillimis, frigoribus **intolerandis** studiosissime permanserant in labore, **ducenos sestertios**, centurionibus *tot milia* nummum praedae nomine condonanda pollicetur legionibusque in hiberna remissis ipse se recipit die XXXX Bibracte. ibi cum ius diceret, Bituriges ad eum legatos mittunt auxilium petitum contra Carnutes, quos intulisse bellum sibi querebantur. qua re cognita, cum dies non amplius decem et octo in hibernis esset moratus, legiones XIIII et VI ex hibernis ab Arare educit, quas ibi collocatas explicandae rei frumentariae

causa superiore commentario demonstratum est: ita cum duabus legionibus ad persequendos Carnutes proficiscitur.

5. Cum fama exercitus ad hostes esset perlata, calamitate ceterorum ducti Carnutes desertis vicis oppidisque, quae tolerandae hiemis causa constitutis repente exiguis ad necessitatem aedificiis incolebant (nuper enim devicti complura oppida dimiserant), dispersi profugiunt. Caesar erumpentes eo maxime tempore **acerrimas** tempestates cum subire milites nollet, in oppido Carnutum Cenabo castra ponit atque in tecta partim Gallorum, partim quae coniectis celeriter stramentis **tentoriorum** integendorum gratia erant **inaedificata**, milites **compegit.** equites tamen et auxiliarios pedites in omnes partes mittit, quascumque petisse dicebantur hostes; nec frustra: nam plerumque magna praeda potiti nostri revertuntur. oppressi Carnutes hiemis difficultate, terrore periculi, cum tectis expulsi nullo loco diutius consistere auderent nec silvarum praesidio tempestatibus durissimis tegi possent, dispersi magna parte amissa suorum dissipantur in finitimas civitates.

6. Caesar tempore anni difficillimo, cum satis haberet convenientes manus dissipare, ne quod initium belli nasceretur, quantumque in ratione esset, exploratum haberet sub tempus aestivorum nullum summum bellum posse **conflari**, Gaium Trebonium cum duabus legionibus, quas secum habebat, in hibernis Cenabi collocavit; ipse, cum crebris legationibus Remorum certior fieret Bellovacos, qui belli gloria Gallos omnes Belgasque praestabant, finitimasque his civitates duce **Correo** Bellovaco et Commio Atrebate exercitus comparare atque in unum locum cogere, ut omni multitudine in fines Suessionum, qui Remis erant attributi, facerent **impressionem**, pertinere autem non tantum ad dignitatem, sed etiam ad salutem suam iudicaret nullam calamitatem socios optime de republica meritos accipere, legionem ex hibernis evocat

rursus undecimam, litteras autem ad Gaium Fabium mittit, ut in fines Suessionum legiones duas, quas habebat, adduceret, alteramque ex duabus ab Labieno arcessit. ita, quantum hibernorum opportunitas bellique ratio postulabat, perpetuo suo labore in vicem legionibus expeditionum onus iniungebat.

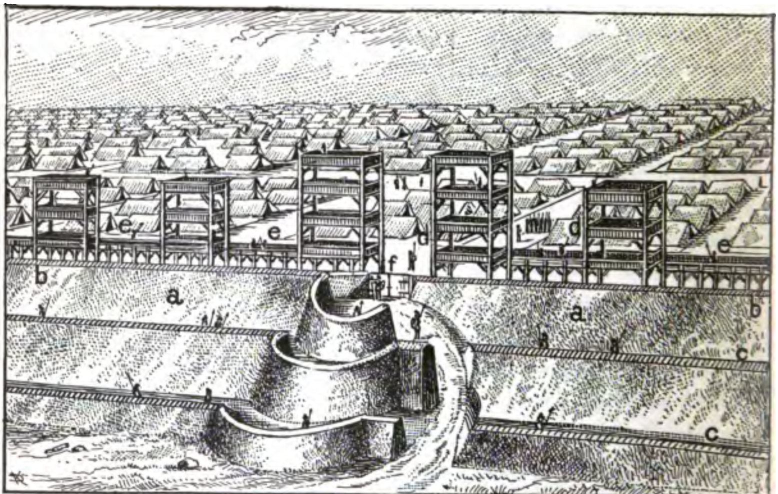
Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who are compelled to retreat.

7. His copiis coactis ad Bellovacos proficiscitur castrisque in eorum finibus positis equitum turmas dimittit in omnes partes ad aliquos excipiendos, ex quibus hostium consilia cognosceret. equites officio functi renuntiant paucos in aedificiis esse inventos, atque hos, non qui agrorum colendorum causa remansissent (namque esse undique diligenter demigratum), sed qui speculandi causa essent remissi. a quibus cum quaereret Caesar, quo loco multitudo esset Bellovacorum quodve esset consilium eorum, inveniebat: Bellovacos omnes, qui arma ferre possent, in unum locum convenisse, itemque Ambianos, Aulercos, Caletos, Velliocassis, Atrebatas; locum castris excelsum in silva circumdata palude delegisse, impedimenta omnia in ulteriores silvas contulisse. complures esse principes belli auctores, sed multitudinem maxime Correo obtemperare, quod ei summo esse odio nomen populi Romani intellexissent. paucis ante diebus ex his castris Atrebatem Commium discessisse ad auxilia Germanorum adducenda; quorum et vicinitas propinqua et multitudo esset infinita. constituisse autem Bellovacos omnium principum consensu, summa plebis cupiditate, si, ut diceretur, Caesar cum tribus legionibus veniret, offerre se ad dimicandum, ne miseriore ac duriore postea condicione cum toto exercitu decertare cogerentur; si maiores copias adduceret, in eo loco permanere, quem delegissent, pabulatione autem, quae propter anni tempus cum exigua tum disiecta esset, et frumentatione et reliquo commeatu ex insidiis prohibere Romanos.

8. Quae Caesar consentientibus pluribus cum cognosset atque ea, quae proponerentur, consilia plena prudentiae longeque a temeritate barbarorum remota esse iudicaret, omnibus rebus **inserviendum** statuit, quo celerius hostis contempta sua paucitate prodiret in aciem. singularis enim virtutis veterrimas legiones VII, VIII, VIIII habebat, summae spei delectaeque iuventutis XI, quae octavo iam stipendio tamen in **collatione** reliquarum nondum eandem **vetustatis** ac virtutis ceperat opinionem. itaque concilio advocato rebus iis, quae ad se essent delatae, omnibus expositis animos multitudinis confirmat. si forte hostes trium legionum numero posset elicere ad dimicandum, agminis ordinem ita constituit, ut legio septima, octava, nona ante omnia irent impedimenta, deinde omnium impedimentorum agmen, quod tamen erat mediocre, ut in expeditionibus esse consuevit, cogeret undecima, ne maioris multitudinis species accidere hostibus posset, quam ipsi depoposcissent. hac ratione paene **quadrato** agmine instructo in conspectum hostium celerius opinione eorum exercitum adducit.

9. Cum repente instructas velut in acie certo **gradu** legiones accedere Galli viderent, quorum erant ad Caesarem plena fiduciae consilia perlata, sive certaminis periculo sive subito adventu sive **expectatione** nostri consilii copias instruunt pro castris nec loco superiore decedunt. Caesar, etsi dimicare **optaverat**, tamen admiratus tantam multitudinem hostium valle intermissa magis in altitudinem **depressa** quam late patente castra castris hostium confert. haec imperat vallo pedum XII muniri, **loriculam** per **aggerationem** eius altitudini inaedificari; fossam duplicem pedum denum quinum lateribus deprimi directis; turris excitari crebras in altitudinem trium tabulatorum, pontibus traiectis constratisque coniungi, quorum frontes **viminea** loricula munirentur: ut ab hostibus duplici fossa, duplici propugnatorum ordine defenderentur, quorum alter ex pontibus, quo tutior altitudine esset,

hoc audacius longiusque permitteret tela, alter, qui propior hostem in ipso vallo collocatus esset, ponte ab incidentibus telis tegeretur. portis **fores** altioresque turres imposuit.



a. vallum ped. XII. b. loricula. c. fossa duplex. d. turres. e. pontes. f. porta

10. Huius munitionis duplex erat consilium. namque et operum magnitudinem et timorem suum sperabat fiduciam barbaris allaturum, et cum pabulatum frumentatumque longius esset proficiscendum, parvis copiis castra munitione ipsa videbat posse defendi. interim crebro paucis utrimque procurrentibus inter bina castra palude interiecta contendebatur; quam tamen paludem nonnumquam aut nostra auxilia Gallorum Germanorumque transibant acriusque hostes insequebantur, aut **vicissim** hostes eadem transgressi nostros longius submovebant. accidebat autem cotidianis pabulationibus (id quod accidere erat necesse, cum raris disiectisque ex aedificiis pabulum conquireretur), ut impeditis locis dispersi pabulatores circumvenirentur; quae res, etsi mediocre detrimentum iumentorum ac servorum nostris

afferebat, tamen **stultas cogitationes** incitabat barbarorum, atque eo magis, quod Commius, quem profectum ad auxilia Germanorum arcessenda docui, cum equitibus venerat; qui tametsi numero non amplius erant quingenti, tamen Germanorum adventu barbari nitebantur.

11. Caesar, cum animadverteret hostem complures dies castris palude et loci natura munitis se tenere neque oppugnari castra eorum sine dimicatione **perniciosa** nec locum munitionibus claudi nisi a maiore exercitu posse, litteras ad Trebonium mittit, ut quam celerrime posset legionem XIII, quae cum T. Sextio legato in Biturigibus hiemabat, arcesseret atque ita cum tribus legionibus magnis itineribus ad se veniret; ipse equites in vicem Remorum ac Lingonum reliquarumque civitatum, quorum magnum numerum evocaverat, praesidio pabulationibus mittit, qui subitas hostium incursiones sustinerent.

12. Quod cum cotidie fieret, ac iam consuetudine diligentia minueretur, quod plerumque accidit diuturnitate, Bellovaci delecta manu peditum cognitis stationibus cotidianis equitum nostrorum silvestribus locis insidias disponunt eodemque equites postero die mittunt, qui primum elicerent nostros, deinde circumventos aggrederentur. cuius mali sors incidit Remis, quibus ille dies fungendi muneris obvenerat. namque hi, cum repente hostium equites animadvertissent ac numero superiores paucitatem contempsissent, cupidius insecuti peditibus undique sunt circumdati. quo facto perturbati celerius, quam consuetudo fert equestris proelii, se receperunt amisso **Vertisco**, principe civitatis, praefecto equitum; qui cum vix equo propter aetatem posset uti, tamen consuetudine Gallorum neque aetatis excusatione in suscipienda **praefectura** usus erat neque dimicari sine se voluerat. **inflantur** atque incitantur hostium animi secundo proelio, principe et praefecto Remorum interfecto, nostrique detrimento admonentur

diligentius exploratis locis stationes disponere ac moderatius cedentem insequi hostem.

13. Non intermittunt interim cotidiana proelia in conspectu utrorumque castrorum, quae ad vada transitusque fiebant paludis. qua contentione Germani, quos propterea Caesar traduxerat Rhenum, ut equitibus interpositi proeliarentur, cum constantius universi paludem transissent paucisque resistentibus interfectis **pertinacius** reliquam multitudinem essent insecuti, perterriti non solum ii, qui aut comminus opprimebantur aut eminus vulnerabantur, sed etiam, qui longius **subsidiari** consuerant, turpiter refugerunt nec prius finem fugae fecerunt saepe amissis superioribus locis, quam se aut in castra suorum reciperent, aut nonnulli pudore coacti longius profugerent. quorum periculo sic omnes copiae sunt perturbatae, ut vix iudicari posset, utrum secundis minimisque rebus **insolentiores**, an adverso mediocri casu timidiores essent.

14. Compluribus diebus iisdem in castris consumptis, cum propius accessisse legiones et Gaium Trebonium legatum cognossent, duces Bellovacorum veriti similem obsessionem Alesiae noctu dimittunt eos, quos aut aetate aut viribus inferiores aut inermes habebant, unaque reliqua impedimenta. quorum perturbatum et confusum dum explicant agmen (magna enim multitudo carrorum etiam expeditos sequi Gallos consuevit), oppressi luce copias armatorum pro suis instruunt castris, ne prius Romani persequi se inciperent, quam longius agmen impedimentorum suorum processisset. at Caesar neque resistentes aggrediundos tanto collis ascensu iudicabat, neque non usque eo legiones admovendas, ut discedere ex eo loco sine periculo barbari militibus instantibus non possent. ita, cum palude impedita a castris castra dividi videret, quae transeundi difficultas celeritatem insequendi tardare posset, atque id iugum, quod trans paludem paene

ad hostium castra pertineret, mediocri valle a castris eorum **intercisum** animum adverteret, pontibus palude constrata legiones traducit celeriterque in summam planitiem iugi pervenit, quae declivi fastigio duobus ab lateribus muniebatur. ibi legionibus instructis ad ultimum iugum pervenit aciemque eo loco constituit, unde tormento missa tela in hostium cuneos conici possent.

15. Barbari confisi loci natura, cum dimicare non recusarent, si forte Romani subire collem conarentur, paulatim copias distributas dimittere non possent, ne dispersi perturbarentur, in acie permanserunt. quorum pertinacia cognita Caesar XX cohortibus instructis castrisque eo loco metatis muniri iubet castra. **absolutis** operibus pro vallo legiones instructas collocat, equites **frenatis** equis in statione disponit. Bellovaci, cum Romanos ad insequendum paratos viderent neque **pernoctare** aut diutius permanere sine periculo eodem loco possent, tale consilium sui recipiendi ceperunt. **fasces**, ut consueverant [namque in acie **sedere** Gallos consuesse superioribus commentariis Caesaris declaratum est], per manus stramentorum ac virgultorum, quorum summa erat in castris copia, inter se traditos ante aciem collocarunt extremoque tempore diei signo pronuntiato uno tempore incenderunt. ita continens flamma copias omnes repente a conspectu texit Romanorum.

16 Quod ubi accidit, barbari **vehementissimo** cursu refugerunt. Caesar, etsi discessum hostium animadvertere non poterat incendiis oppositis, tamen id consilium cum fugae causa initum suspicaretur, legiones promovet, turmas mittit ad insequendum; ipse veritus insidias, ne forte in eodem loco subsistere hostis atque elicere nostros in locum conaretur iniquum, tardius procedit. equites cum intrare summum iugum et flammam densissimam timerent ac, si qui cupidius intraverant, vix suorum ipsi

priores partes animadverterent equorum, insidias veriti liberam facultatem sui recipiendi Bellovacis dederunt. ita fuga timoris simul calliditatisque plena sine ullo detrimento milia non amplius decem progressi hostes loco munitissimo castra posuerunt. inde cum saepe in insidiis equites peditesque disponerent, magna detrimenta Romanis in pabulationibus inferebant.

17. Quod cum crebrius accideret, ex captivo quodam comperit Caesar Correum, Bellovacorum ducem, fortissimorum milia sex peditum delegisse equitesque ex omni numero mille, quos in insidiis eo loco collocaret, quem in locum propter copiam frumenti ac pabuli Romanos missuros suspicaretur. quo cognito consilio legiones plures, quam solebat, educit equitatumque, qua consuetudine pabulatoribus mittere praesidio consuerat, praemittit: huic interponit auxilia levis armaturae; ipse cum legionibus quam potest maxime appropinquat.

The Gauls are placed in ambush. Their defeat. Commius sought by treachery.

18. Hostes in insidiis dispositi, cum sibi delegissent campum ad rem gerendam non amplius patentem in omnes partes passibus mille, silvis undique aut impeditissimo flumine munitum, velut indagine hunc insidiis circumdederunt. explorato hostium consilio nostri ad proeliandum animo atque armis parati, cum subsequentibus legionibus nullam dimicationem recusarent, turmatim in eum locum devenerunt. quorum adventu cum sibi Correus oblatam occasionem rei gerendae existimaret, primum cum paucis se ostendit atque in proximas turmas impetum fecit. nostri constanter incursum sustinent insidiatorum neque plures in unum locum conveniunt; quod plerumque equestribus proeliis cum propter aliquem timorem accidit, tum multitudine ipsorum detrimentum accipitur.

19. Cum dispositis turmis in vicem rari proeliarentur neque ab lateribus circumveniri suos paterentur, erumpunt ceteri Correo proeliante ex silvis. fit magna contentione diversum proelium. quod cum diutius pari Marte iniretur, paulatim ex silvis instructa multitudo procedit peditum, quae nostros coegit cedere equites. quibus celeriter subveniunt levis armaturae pedites, quos ante legiones missos docui, turmisque nostrorum interpositi constanter proeliantur. pugnatur aliquamdiu pari contentione; deinde, ut ratio postulabat proelii, qui sustinuerant primos impetus insidiarum, hoc ipso fiunt superiores, quod nullum ab insidiantibus imprudentes acceperant detrimentum. accedunt propius interim legiones, crebrique eodem tempore et nostris et hostibus nuntii afferuntur, imperatorem instructis copiis adesse. qua re cognita praesidio cohortium confisi nostri acerrime proeliantur, ne, si tardius rem gessissent, victoriae gloriam communicasse cum legionibus viderentur; hostes concidunt animis atque itineribus diversis fugam quaerunt. nequiquam: nam quibus difficultatibus locorum Romanos claudere voluerant, iis ipsi tenebantur. victi tamen perculsique maiore parte amissa consternati profugiunt partim silvis petitis, partim flumine (qui tamen in fuga a nostris acriter insequentibus conficiuntur), cum interim nulla calamitate victus Correus excedere proelio silvasque petere aut invitantibus nostris ad deditionem potuit adduci, quin fortissime proeliando compluresque vulnerando cogeret elatos iracundia victores in se tela conicere.

20. Tali modo re gesta recentibus proelii vestigiis ingressus Caesar, cum victos tanta calamitate existimaret hostes nuntio accepto locum castrorum relicturos, quae non longius ab ea caede abesse plus minus octo milibus dicebantur, tametsi flumine impeditum transitum videbat, tamen exercitu traducto progreditur. at Bellovaci reliquaeque civitates repente ex fuga paucis atque his vulneratis receptis, qui silvarum beneficio casum

evitaverant, omnibus adversis, *cognita calamitate,* interfecto Correo, amisso equitatu et fortissimis peditibus, cum **adventare** Romanos existimarent, concilio repente **cantu turbarum** convocato conclamant, legati obsidesque ad Caesarem mittantur.

21. Hoc omnibus probato consilio Commius Atrebas ad eos confugit Germanos, a quibus ad id bellum auxilia **mutuatus erat.** ceteri e vestigio mittunt ad Caesarem legatos petuntque, ut ea poena sit contentus hostium, quam si sine dimicatione inferre integris posset, pro sua clementia atque humanitate numquam **profecto** esset illaturus. afflictas opes equestri proelio Bellovacorum esse; delectorum peditum multa milia interisse, vix refugisse nuntios caedis. tamen magnum ut in tanta calamitate Bellovacos eo proelio commodum esse consecutos, quod Correus, auctor belli, **concitator** multitudinis, esset interfectus. numquam enim senatum tantum in civitate illo vivo quantum imperitam plebem potuisse.

22. Haec orantibus legatis commemorat Caesar: eodem tempore superiore anno Bellovacos ceterasque Galliae civitates suscepisse bellum; pertinacissime hos ex omnibus in sententia permanisse neque ad sanitatem reliquorum deditione esse perductos. scire atque intellegere se causam peccati facillime mortuis delegari. neminem vero tantum **pollere**, ut invitis principibus, resistente senatu, omnibus bonis repugnantibus infirma manu plebis bellum concitare et gerere posset. sed tamen se contentum fore ea poena, quam sibi ipsi contraxissent.

23. Nocte insequenti legati responsa ad suos referunt, obsides conficiunt. concurrunt reliquarum civitatium legati, quae Bellovacorum speculabantur eventum; obsides dant, imperata faciunt excepto Commio, quem timor prohibebat cuiusquam fidei suam committere salutem. nam superiore anno Titus Labienus Caesare

in Gallia citeriore ius dicente, cum Commium comperisset sollicitare civitates et coniurationem contra Caesarem facere, **infidelitatem** eius sine ulla perfidia iudicavit **comprimi** posse. quem **quia** non arbitrabatur vocatum in castra venturum, ne tentando **cautiorem** faceret, Gaium Volusenum Quadratum misit, qui eum per simulationem colloqui curaret interficiendum. ad eam rem delectos idoneos ei tradit centuriones. cum in colloquium ventum esset, et, ut convenerat, manum Commii Volusenus arripuisset, centurio vel insueta re permotus vel celeriter a familiaribus prohibitus Commii conficere hominem non potuit; graviter tamen primo ictu gladio caput percussit. cum utrimque gladii destricti essent, non tam pugnandi quam diffugiendi fuit utrorumque consilium: nostrorum, quod mortifero vulnere Commium credebant affectum; Gallorum, quod insidiis cognitis plura, quam videbant, extimescebant. quo facto statuisse Commius dicebatur numquam in conspectum cuiusquam Romani venire.

Caesar lays waste the country of Ambiorix. Labienus is sent against the Treveri.

24. Bellicosissimis gentibus devictis Caesar, cum videret nullam iam esse civitatem, quae bellum pararet, quo sibi resisteret, sed nonnullos ex oppidis demigrare, ex agris diffugere ad praesens imperium evitandum, pluris in partes exercitum dimittere constituit. M. Antonium quaestorem cum legione duodecima sibi coniungit. C. Fabium legatum cum cohortibus XXV mittit in diversissimam partem Galliae, quod ibi quasdam civitates in armis esse audiebat neque C. Caninium Rebilum legatum, qui in illis regionibus erat, satis firmas duas legiones habere existimabat. Titum Labienum ad se evocat; legionem autem XV, quae cum eo fuerat in hibernis, in **togatam** Galliam mittit ad colonias civium Romanorum tuendas, ne quod simile incommodum accideret **decursione** barbarorum, ac superiore aestate **Tergestinis**

acciderat, qui repentino latrocinio atque impetu illorum erant oppressi. ipse ad vastandos depopulandosque fines Ambiorigis proficiscitur; quem perterritum ac fugientem cum redigi posse in suam potestatem desperasset, proximum suae dignitatis esse ducebat, adeo fines eius vastare civibus, aedificiis, pecore, ut odio suorum Ambiorix, si quos fortuna reliquos fecisset, nullum reditum propter tantas calamitates haberet in civitatem.

25. Cum in omnes partes finium Ambiorigis aut legiones aut auxilia dimisisset atque omnia caedibus, incendiis, rapinis vastasset, magno numero hominum interfecto aut capto Labienum cum duabus legionibus in Treveros mittit; quorum civitas propter Germaniae vicinitatem cotidianis exercitata bellis cultu et **feritate** non multum a Germanis differebat neque imperata umquam nisi exercitu coacta faciebat.

Dumnacus while attacking Lemonum is defeated.

26. Interim Gaius Caninius legatus, cum magnam multitudinem convenisse hostium in fines Pictonum litteris nuntiisque **Durati** cognosceret, qui perpetuo in amicitia manserat Romanorum, cum pars quaedam civitatis eius defecisset, ad oppidum **Lemonum** contendit. quo cum adventaret atque ex captivis certius cognosceret multis hominum milibus a **Dumnaco**, duce Andium, Duratium clausum Lemoni oppugnari neque infirmas legiones hostibus committere auderet, castra posuit loco munito. Dumnacus, cum appropinquare Caninium cognosset, copiis omnibus ad legiones conversis castra Romanorum oppugnare instituit. cum complures dies in oppugnatione consumpsisset et magno suorum detrimento nullam partem munitionum **convellere** potuisset, rursus ad **obsidendum** Lemonum redit.

27. Eodem tempore C. Fabius legatus complures civitates in fidem recipit, obsidibus firmat litterisque Gai Canini Rebili fit

certior, quae in Pictonibus gerantur. quibus rebus cognitis proficiscitur ad auxilium Duratio ferendum. at Dumnacus adventu Fabii cognito desperata salute, si tempore eodem coactus esset et Romanum **externum** sustinere hostem et respicere ac timere oppidanos, repente ex eo loco cum copiis recedit nec se satis tutum fore arbitratur, nisi flumine Ligeri, quod erat ponte propter magnitudinem transeundum, copias traduxisset. Fabius, etsi nondum in conspectum venerat hostibus neque se Caninio coniunxerat, tamen doctus ab iis, qui locorum noverant naturam, potissimum credidit hostes perterritos eum locum, quem petebant, petituros. itaque cum copiis ad eundem pontem contendit equitatuque tantum procedere ante agmen imperat legionum, quantum cum processisset, sine defetigatione equorum in eadem se reciperet castra. consequuntur equites nostri, ut erat praeceptum, **invaduntque** Dumnaci agmen et fugientes perterritosque sub sarcinis in itinere aggressi magna praeda multis interfectis potiuntur. ita re bene gesta se recipiunt in castra.

28. Insequenti nocte Fabius equites praemittit sic paratos, ut confligerent atque omne agmen morarentur, dum consequeretur ipse. cuius praeceptis ut res gereretur, Quintus **Atius Varus**, praefectus equitum, singularis et animi et prudentiae vir, suos hortatur agmenque hostium consecutus turmas partim idoneis locis disponit, parte equitum proelium committit. confligit audacius equitatus hostium succedentibus sibi peditibus; qui toto agmine subsistentes equitibus suis contra nostros ferunt auxilium. fit proelium acri certamine. namque nostri contemptis pridie superatis hostibus, cum subsequi legiones meminissent, et pudore cedendi et cupiditate per se conficiendi proelii fortissime contra pedites proeliantur, hostesque nihil amplius copiarum accessurum credentes, ut pridie cognoverant, delendi equitatus nostri nacti occasionem videbantur.

29. Cum aliquamdiu summa contentione dimicaretur, Dumnacus instruit aciem, quae suis esset equitibus in vicem praesidio: cum repente confertae legiones in conspectum hostium veniunt. quibus visis perculsae barbarorum turmae ac perterritae acies hostium perturbato impedimentorum agmine magno clamore **discursuque** passim fugae se mandant. at nostri equites, qui paulo ante cum resistentibus fortissime conflixerant, laetitia victoriae elati magno undique clamore sublato cedentibus circumfusi, quantum equorum vires ad persequendum dextraeque ad caedendum valent, tantum eo proelio interficiunt. itaque amplius milibus XII aut armatorum aut eorum, qui eo timore arma proiecerant, interfectis omnis multitudo capitur impedimentorum.

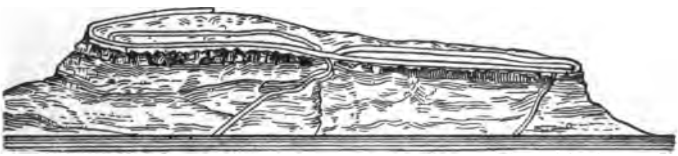
Fabius subdues the Carnutes. Caninius besieges Uxellodunum.

30. Qua ex fuga cum constaret **Drappetem** Senonem, qui, ut primum defecerat Gallia, collectis undique perditis hominibus, servis ad libertatem vocatis, exulibus omnium civitatum **ascitis**, receptis latronibus impedimenta et commeatus Romanorum interceperat, non amplius hominum milibus ex fuga quinque collectis provinciam petere unaque consilium cum eo Lucterium Cadurcum cepisse, quem superiore commentario prima defectione Galliae facere in provinciam voluisse impetum cognitum est, Caninius legatus cum legionibus duabus ad eos persequendos contendit, ne detrimento aut timore provinciae magna infamia perditorum hominum latrociniis caperetur.

31. Gaius Fabius cum reliquo exercitu in Carnutes ceterasque proficiscitur civitates, quarum eo proelio, quod cum Dumnaco fecerat, copias esse accisas sciebat. non enim dubitabat, quin recenti calamitate **summissiores** essent futurae, dato vero spatio ac tempore eodem instigante Dumnaco possent concitari. qua in re summa felicitas celeritasque in recipiendis civitatibus Fabium

consequitur. nam Carnutes, qui saepe vexati numquam pacis fecerant mentionem, datis obsidibus veniunt in deditionem, ceteraeque civitates positae in ultimis Galliae finibus, Oceano coniunctae, quae Aremoricae appellantur, auctoritate adductae Carnutum adventu Fabii legionumque imperata sine mora faciunt. Dumnacus suis finibus expulsus errans **latitansque** solus extremas Galliae regiones petere est coactus.

32. At Drappes unaque Lucterius, cum legiones Caniniumque adesse cognoscerent nec se sine certa pernicie persequente exercitu putarent provinciae fines intrare posse nec iam libere vagandi



UXELLODUNUM AD OCCIDENTEM SPECTANS.

latrociniorumque faciendorum facultatem haberent, in finibus consistunt Cadurcorum. ibi cum Lucterius apud suos cives **quondam** integris rebus multum potuisset, semperque auctor novorum consiliorum magnam apud barbaros auctoritatem haberet, oppidum **Uxellodunum**, quod in clientela fuerat eius, egregie natura loci munitum, occupat suis et Drappetis copiis oppidanosque sibi coniungit.

33. Quo cum confestim Gaius Caninius venisset animadverteretque omnes oppidi partes praeruptissimis saxis esse munitas, quo defendente nullo tamen armatis ascendere esset difficile, magna autem impedimenta oppidanorum videret, quae si clandestina fuga subtrahere conarentur, effugere non modo equitatum, sed ne legiones quidem possent, tripartito cohortibus divisis trina

excelsissimo loco castra fecit; a quibus paulatim, quantum copiae patiebantur, vallum in oppidi circuitum ducere instituit.

34. Quod cum animadverterent oppidani miserrimaque Alesiae memoria sollicitì similem casum obsessionis vererentur, maximeque ex omnibus Lucterius, qui fortunae illius periculum fecerat, moneret frumenti rationem esse habendam, constituunt omnium consensu parte ibi relicta copiarum ipsi cum expeditis ad importandum frumentum proficisci. eo consilio probato proxima nocte duobus milibus armatorum relictis reliquos ex oppido Drappes et Lucterius educunt. hi paucos dies morati ex finibus Cadurcorum, qui partim re frumentaria sublevare eos cupiebant, partim prohibere, quo minus sumerent, non poterant, magnum numerum frumenti comparant, nonnumquam autem expeditionibus nocturnis castella nostrorum adoriuntur. quam ob causam Gaius Caninius toto oppido munitiones circumdare moratur, ne aut opus effectum tueri non possit aut plurimis in locis infirma disponat praesidia.

35. Magna copia frumenti comparata considunt Drappes et Lucterius non longius ab oppido X milibus, unde paulatim frumentum in oppidum supportarent. ipsi inter se provincias partiuntur: Drappes castris praesidio cum parte copiarum restitit; Lucterius agmen iumentorum ad oppidum ducit. dispositis ibi praesidiis hora noctis circiter decima silvestribus angustisque itineribus frumentum importare in oppidum instituit. quorum strepitum vigiles castrorum cum sensissent, exploratoresque missi, quae gererentur, renuntiassent, Caninius celeriter cum cohortibus armatis ex proximis castellis in frumentarios sub ipsam lucem impetum fecit. ii repentino malo perterriti diffugiunt ad sua praesidia; quae nostri ut viderunt, acrius contra armatos incitati neminem ex eo numero vivum capi patiuntur. profugit inde cum paucis Lucterius nec se recipit in castra.

Drappes is taken prisoner.

36. Re bene gesta Caninius ex captivis comperit partem copiarum cum Drappete esse in castris a milibus longe non amplius XII. qua re ex compluribus cognita, cum intellegeret fugato duce altero perterritos reliquos facile opprimi posse, magnae felicitatis esse arbitrabatur neminem ex caede refugisse in castra, qui de accepta calamitate nuntium Drappeti perferret. sed in experiundo cum periculum nullum videret, equitatum omnem Germanosque pedites, summae velocitatis homines, ad castra hostium praemittit; ipse legionem unam in trina castra distribuit, alteram secum expeditam ducit. cum propius hostis accessisset, ab exploratoribus, quos praemiserat, cognoscit castra eorum, ut barbarorum fere consuetudo est, relictis locis superioribus ad ripas fluminis esse demissa; at Germanos equitesque imprudentibus omnibus de improviso advolasse proeliumque commisisse. qua re cognita legionem armatam instructamque adducit. ita repente omnibus ex partibus signo dato loca superiora capiuntur. quod ubi accidit, Germani equitesque signis legionis visis vehementissime proeliantur. confestim cohortes undique impetum faciunt omnibusque aut interfectis aut captis magna praeda potiuntur. capitur ipse eo proelio Drappes.

37. Caninius felicissime re gesta sine ullo paene militis vulnere ad obsidendos oppidanos revertitur externoque hoste deleto, cuius timore antea dividere praesidia et munitione oppidanos circumdare prohibitus erat, opera undique imperat administrari. venit eodem cum suis copiis postero die Gaius Fabius partemque oppidi sumit ad obsidendum.

Caesar puts to death Gutruatus.

38. Caesar interim M. Antonium quaestorem cum cohortibus XV in Bellovacis relinquit, ne qua rursus novorum consiliorum

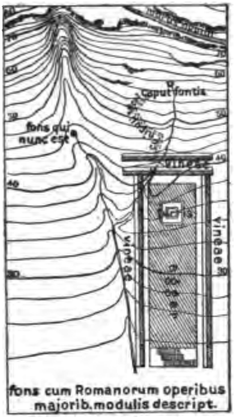
capiendorum Belgis facultas daretur. ipse reliquas civitates adit, obsides plures imperat, timentes omnium animos **consolatione** sanat. cum in Carnutes venisset, quorum in civitate superiore commentario Caesar exposuit initium belli esse ortum, quod praecipue eos propter conscientiam facti timere animadvertebat, quo celerius civitatem timore liberaret, principem sceleris illius et concitatorem belli, Gutruatum, ad supplicium depoposcit. qui etsi ne civibus quidem suis se committebat, tamen celeriter omnium cura quaesitus in castra perducitur. cogitur in eius supplicium Caesar contra suam naturam concursu maximo militum, qui omnia pericula et detrimenta belli Gutruato accepta referebant, adeo ut **verberibus** exanimatum corpus securi **feriretur**.

Uxellodunum. The capture of the town.

39. Ibi crebris litteris Caninii fit certior, quae de Drappete et Lucterio gesta essent, quoque in consilio permanerent oppidani. quorum etsi paucitatem contemnebat, tamen pertinaciam magna poena esse afficiendam iudicabat, ne universa Gallia non sibi vires defuisse ad resistendum Romanis, sed constantiam putaret, neve hoc exemplo ceterae civitates locorum opportunitate fretae se vindicarent in libertatem, cum omnibus Gallis notum esse sciret reliquam esse unam aestatem suae provinciae, quam si sustinere potuissent, nullum ultra periculum vererentur. itaque Q. **Calenum** legatum cum legionibus reliquit, qui iustis itineribus subsequeretur; ipse cum omni equitatu quam potest celerrime ad Caninium contendit.

40. Cum contra exspectationem omnium Caesar Uxellodunum venisset oppidumque operibus clausum animadverteret neque ab oppugnatione recedi videret ulla condicione posse, magna autem copia frumenti abundare oppidanos ex perfugis cognosset, aqua prohibere hostem temptare coepit. flumen infimam vallem

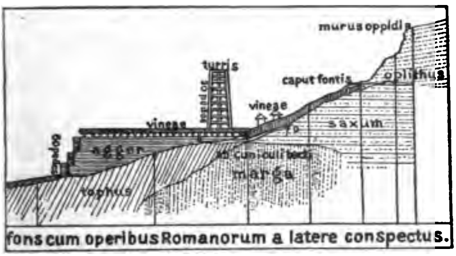
dividebat, quae totum paene montem cingebat, in quo positum



fons cum Romanorum operibus majorib. modulis descript.

erat praeruptum undique oppidum Uxellodunum. hoc avertere loci natura prohibebat: in infimis enim sic radicibus montis ferebatur, ut nullam in partem depressis fossis derivari posset. erat autem oppidanis difficilis et praeruptus eo **descensus**, ut prohibentibus nostris sine vulneribus ac periculo vitae neque adire flumen neque arduo se recipere possent ascensu. qua difficultate eorum cognita Caesar sagittariis funditoribusque dispositis, tormentis etiam quibusdam locis contra facillimos descensus collocatis aqua fluminis prohibebat oppidanos.

41. Quorum omnis postea multitudo **aquatorum** unum in locum conveniebat sub ipsius oppidi murum, ubi magnus



fons cum operibus Romanorum a latere conspectus.

fons aquae **prorumpebat** ab ea parte, quae fere pedum CCC intervallo fluminis circuitu vacabat. hoc fonte prohiberi posse oppidanos cum optarent reliqui, Caesar unus videret, e regione eius vineas agere adversus montem et aggerem instruere coepit magno cum labore et continua dimicatione. oppidani enim loco superiore decurrunt et eminus sine periculo proeliantur multosque pertinaciter succedentes vulnerant; non deterrentur tamen milites nostri vineas proferre et labore atque operibus locorum vincere difficultates. eodem tempore cuniculos tectos ab vineis agunt ad caput fontis; quod genus operis sine ullo periculo,

sine suspicione hostium facere licebat. **exstruitur** agger in altitudinem pedum sexaginta, collocatur in eo turris decem tabulatorum, non quidem quae moenibus aequaret (id enim nullis operibus effici poterat), sed quae superare fontis fastigium posset. ex ea cum tela tormentis iacerentur ad fontis aditum, nec sine periculo possent **aquari** oppidani, non tantum pecora atque iumenta, sed etiam magna hostium multitudo siti consumebatur.

42. Quo malo perterriti oppidani **cupas** sevo, pice, **scandulis** complent; eas ardentes in opera **provolvunt** eodemque tempore acerrime proeliantur, ut ab incendio restinguendo dimicationis periculo deterreant Romanos. magna repente in ipsis operibus flamma exstitit. quaecumque enim per locum praecipitem missa erant, ea vineis et aggere **suppressa** comprehendebant id ipsum, quod morabatur. milites contra nostri, quamquam periculoso genere proelii locoque iniquo premebantur, tamen omnia fortissimo sustinebant animo. res enim gerebatur et excelso loco et in conspectu exercitus nostri, magnusque utrimque clamor oriebatur. ita quisque, ut erat maxime insignis, quo notior **testatior**que virtus esset eius, telis hostium flammaeque se offerebat.

43. Caesar cum complures suos vulnerari videret, ex omnibus oppidi partibus cohortes montem ascendere et simulatione moenium occupandorum clamorem undique iubet tollere. quo facto perterriti oppidani, cum, quid ageretur in locis reliquis, essent **suspensi**, revocant ab impugnandis operibus armatos in murisque disponunt. ita nostri fine proelii facto celeriter opera flamma comprehensa partim restinguunt, partim interscindunt. cum pertinaciter resisterent oppidani, magna etiam parte amissa siti suorum in sententia permanerent, ad postremum cuniculis **venae** fontis intercisae sunt atque aversae. quo facto repente **perennis exaruit** fons tantamque attulit oppidanis salutis despe-

rationem, ut id non hominum consilio, sed deorum voluntate factum putarent. itaque se necessitate coacti tradiderunt.

44. Caesar, cum suam lenitatem cognitam omnibus sciret neque vereretur, ne quid crudelitate naturae videretur asperius fecisse, neque exitum consiliorum suorum animadverteret, si tali ratione diversis in locis plures consilia iniissent, exemplo supplicii deterrendos reliquos existimavit. itaque omnibus, qui arma tulerant, manus **praecidit** vitamque concessit, quo testatior esset poena improborum. Drappes, quem captum esse a Caninio docui, sive indignitate et dolore vinculorum sive timore gravioris supplicii paucis diebus cibo se abstinuit atque ita interiit. eodem tempore Lucterius, quem profugisse ex proelio scripsi, cum in potestatem venisset **Epasnacti** Arverni (crebro enim mutandis locis multorum fidei se committebat, quod nusquam diutius sine periculo commoraturus videbatur, cum sibi conscius esset, quam inimicum deberet Caesarem habere), hunc Epasnactus Arvernus, amicissimus populi Romani, sine dubitatione ulla vinctum ad Caesarem deduxit.

The Treveri subdued by Labienus. Commius surrenders to M. Antonius.

45. Labienus interim in Treveris equestre proelium facit secundum compluribusque Treveris interfectis et Germanis, qui nullis adversus Romanos auxilia denegabant, principes eorum vivos redigit in suam potestatem atque in his **Surum** Haeduum, qui et virtutis et generis summam nobilitatem habebat solusque ex Haeduis ad id tempus permanserat in armis.

46. Ea re cognita Caesar, cum in omnibus partibus Galliae bene res geri videret iudicaretque superioribus aestivis Galliam devictam subactamque esse, Aquitaniam numquam adisset, per Publium Crassum quadam ex parte devicisset, cum duabus

legionibus in eam partem Galliae est profectus, ut ibi extremum tempus consumeret aestivorum. quam rem sicuti cetera celeriter feliciterque confecit. namque omnes Aquitaniae civitates legatos ad Caesarem miserunt obsidesque ei dederunt. quibus rebus gestis ipse equitum praesidio Narbonem profectus est, exercitum per legatos in hiberna deduxit: quattuor legiones in Belgio collocavit cum M. Antonio et C. Trebonio et P. **Vatinio** legatis, duas legiones in Haeduos deduxit, quorum in omni Gallia summam esse auctoritatem sciebat, duas in Turonis ad fines Carnutum posuit, quae omnem illam regionem coniunctam Oceano continerent, duas reliquas in Lemovicum finibus non longe ab Arvernis, ne qua pars Galliae vacua ab exercitu esset. paucos dies ipse in provincia moratus, cum celeriter omnes conventus percucurrisset, publicas controversias cognosset, bene meritis praemia tribuisset (cognoscendi enim maximam facultatem habebat, quali quisque fuisset animo in totius Galliae defectione, quam sustinuerat fidelitate atque auxiliis provinciae illius), his confectis rebus ad legiones in Belgium se recipit **hibernatque Nemetocennae.**

47. Ibi cognoscit Commium Atrebatem proelio cum equitatu suo contendisse. nam cum Antonius in hiberna venisset, civitasque Atrebatum in officio esset, Commius, qui post illam **vulnerationem**, quam supra commemoravi, semper ad omnes motus paratus suis civibus esse consuesset, ne consilia belli quaerentibus auctor armorum duxque deesset, parente Romanis civitate cum suis equitibus latrociniis se suosque alebat infestisque itineribus commeatus complures, qui comportabantur in hiberna Romanorum, intercipiebat.

48. Erat attributus Antonio praefectus equitum C. Volusenus Quadratus, qui cum eo hibernaret. hunc Antonius ad persequendum equitatum hostium mittit. Volusenus ad eam virtutem,

quae singularis erat in eo, magnum odium Commii adiungebat, quo libentius id faceret, quod imperabatur. itaque dispositis insidiis saepius equites eius aggressus secunda proelia faciebat. novissime, cum vehementius contenderetur, ac Volusenus ipsius intercipiendi Commii cupiditate pertinacius eum cum paucis insecutus esset, ille autem fuga vehementi Volusenum produxisset longius, inimicus homini suorum **invocat** fidem atque auxilium, ne sua vulnera per fidem imposita paterentur **impunita**, conversoque equo se a ceteris incautius permittit in praefectum. faciunt hoc idem omnes eius equites paucosque nostros convertunt atque insequuntur. Commius incensum **calcaribus** equum coniungit equo Quadrati **lancea**que infesta magnis viribus medium femur traicit Voluseni. praefecto vulnerato non dubitant nostri resistere et conversis equis hostem pellere. quod ubi accidit, complures hostium magno nostrorum impetu perculsi vulnerantur ac partim in fuga **proteruntur**, partim intercipiuntur; quod malum dux equi velocitate evitavit: ac sic proelio secundo graviter ab eo vulneratus praefectus, ut vitae periculum aditurus videretur, refertur in castra. Commius autem sive expiato suo dolore sive magna parte amissa suorum legatos ad Antonium mittit seque et ibi futurum, ubi praescripserit, et ea facturum, quae imperarit, obsidibus firmat; unum illud orat, ut timori suo concedatur, ne in conspectum veniat cuiusquam Romani. cuius **postulationem** Antonius cum iudicaret ab iusto nasci timore, veniam petenti dedit, obsides accepit.

Preface of Hirtius.

Scio Caesarem singulorum annorum singulos commentarios confecisse; quod ego non existimavi mihi esse faciendum, propterea quod insequens annus, L. **Paulo**, C. **Marcello** consulibus, nullas habet magnopere Galliae res gestas. ne quis tamen ignoraret, quibus in locis Caesar exercitusque eo tempore fuissent, pauca esse scribenda coniungendaque huic commentario statui.

Caesar treats the Gauls with clemency. His honors in Italy.

49. Caesar in Belgio cum hiemaret, unum illud propositum habebat, continere in amicitia civitates, nulli spem aut causam dare armorum. nihil enim minus volebat, quam sub decessu suo necessitatem sibi aliquam imponi belli gerendi, ne, cum exercitum deducturus esset, bellum aliquod relinqueretur, quod omnis Gallia libenter sine praesenti periculo susciperet. itaque honorifice civitates appellando, principes maximis praemiis afficiendo, nulla onera iniungendo defessam tot adversis proeliis Galliam condicione parendi meliore facile in pace continuit.

50. Ipse hibernis peractis contra consuetudinem in Italiam quam maximis itineribus est profectus, ut municipia et colonias appellaret, quibus M. Antonii, quaestoris sui, commendaverat **sacerdotii petitionem.** contendebat enim gratia cum libenter pro homine sibi coniunctissimo, quem paulo ante praemiserat ad petitionem, tum acriter contra factionem et potentiam paucorum, qui M. Antoni repulsa Caesaris decedentis gratiam convellere cupiebant. hunc etsi **augurem** prius factum, quam Italiam attingeret, in itinere audierat, tamen non minus iustam sibi causam municipia et colonias adeundi existimavit, ut iis gratias ageret, quod **frequentiam** atque officium suum Antonio praestitissent, simulque se et honorem suum sequentis anni commendaret, propterea quod insolenter adversarii sui gloriarentur L. **Lentulum** et C. Marcellum consules creatos, qui omnem honorem et dignitatem Caesaris spoliarent, ereptum Ser. Galbae consulatum, cum is multo plus gratia suffragiisque valuisset, quod sibi coniunctus et familiaritate et consuetudine legationis esset.

51. Exceptus est Caesaris adventus ab omnibus municipiis et coloniis incredibili honore atque amore. tum primum enim veniebat ab illo universae Galliae bello. nihil relinquebatur, quod ad

ornatum portarum, itinerum, locorum omnium, qua Caesar iturus erat, excogitari poterat. cum liberis omnis multitudo obviam procedebat, **hostiae** omnibus locis immolabantur, **tricliniis stratis** fora **templaque** occupabantur, ut vel **spectatissimi triumphi** laetitia praecipi posset. tanta erat magnificentia apud **opulentiores**, cupiditas apud humiliores.

Labienus is made Governor of Gaul.

52. Cum omnes regiones Galliae togatae Caesar percucurrisset, summa celeritate ad exercitum Nemectocennam rediit legionibusque ex omnibus hibernis ad fines Treverorum evocatis eo profectus est ibique exercitum lustravit. T. Labienum Galliae togatae praefecit, quo maiore **commendatione** conciliaretur ad consulatus petitionem. ipse tantum itinerum faciebat, quantum satis esse ad mutationem locorum propter **salubritatem** existimabat. ibi quamquam crebro audiebat Labienum ab inimicis suis sollicitari certiorque fiebat id agi paucorum consiliis, ut interposita senatus auctoritate aliqua parte exercitus spoliaretur, tamen neque de Labieno credidit quicquam neque, contra senatus auctoritatem ut aliquid faceret, potuit adduci. iudicabat enim liberis sententiis patrum conscriptorum causam suam facile obtineri. nam C. **Curio**, tribunus plebis, cum Caesaris causam dignitatemque defendendam suscepisset, saepe erat senatui pollicitus, si quem timor armorum Caesaris laederet, quoniam Pompei **dominatio** atque arma non minimum terrorem foro inferrent, discederet uterque ab armis exercitusque dimitteret: fore eo facto liberam et sui iuris civitatem. neque hoc tantum pollicitus est, sed etiam per se **discessionem** facere coepit; quod ne fieret, consules amicique Pompei iusserunt, at *reliqui tamen omnes eo* discesserunt.

Caesar suspects the design of his enemies. The beginnings of the civil war.

53. Magnum hoc testimonium senatus erat universi conveniensque superiori facto. nam Marcellus proximo anno, cum impugnaret Caesaris dignitatem, contra legem Pompei et Crassi retulerat ante tempus ad senatum de Caesaris provinciis, sententiisque dictis discessionem faciente Marcello, qui sibi omnem dignitatem ex Caesaris invidia quaerebat, senatus frequens in alia omnia transiit. quibus non frangebantur animi inimicorum Caesaris, sed admonebantur, quo maiores pararent necessitates, quibus cogi posset senatus id probare, quod ipsi constituissent.

54. Fit deinde senatusconsultum, ut ad bellum Parthicum legio una a Cn. Pompeio, altera a C. Caesare mitteretur; neque **obscure** duae legiones uni detrahuntur. nam Cn. Pompeius legionem primam, quam ad Caesarem miserat, confectam ex delectu provinciae Caesaris, eam **tamquam** ex suo numero dedit. Caesar tamen, cum de voluntate minime dubium esset adversariorum suorum, Pompeio legionem remisit et suo nomine quintam decimam, quam in Gallia citeriore habuerat, ex senatusconsulto iubet tradi. in eius locum tertiam decimam legionem in Italiam mittit, quae praesidia tueretur, ex quibus praesidiis quinta decima deducebatur. ipse exercitui distribuit hiberna: C. Trebonium cum legionibus quattuor in Belgio collocat, C. Fabium cum totidem in Haeduos deducit. sic enim existimabat tutissimam fore Galliam, si Belgae, quorum maxima virtus, Haedui, quorum auctoritas summa esset, exercitibus continerentur. ipse in Italiam profectus est.

55. Quo cum venisset, cognoscit per C. Marcellum consulem legiones duas ab se remissas, quae ex senatusconsulto deberent

ad Parthicum bellum duci, Cn. Pompeio traditas atque in Italia retentas esse. hoc facto quamquam nulli erat dubium, quidnam contra Caesarem pararetur, tamen Caesar omnia patienda esse statuit, quoad sibi spes aliqua relinqueretur iure potius disceptandi quam belli gerundi. contendit . . .

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

CAESAR.

Trollope; the Commentaries of Caesar. Phil., 1880
Mommsen; History of Rome, Vol. IV.
Duruy; History of Rome, Vol. III.
Merivale; Roman Empire, Vols. I., II.
Arnold; Later Roman Commonwealth.
Cruttwell; Roman Literature.
Napoleon III.; Histoire de Jules César.
Shakspeare; Julius Caesar.
Macmillan's Magazine (F. D. Maurice); Vol. 12, p. 23.
Blackwood's Magazine (T. De Quincey); Vol. 32, p. 531.
Fraser's Magazine; Vol. 76, p. 1.
Character of Caesar. Dublin Review; Vol. 80, p. 127.
Fall of Caesar. American Monthly Magazine; Vol. 4, p. 347.
Caesar and Cicero. Dublin University Magazine; Vol. 94, p. 202.
A Sketch of Caesar (J. A. Froude). Edinburgh Review; Vol. 150, p. 498.
Froude on Caesar (W. F. Allen). Nation; Vol. 29, p. 161.
Caesar in Gaul. Westminster Review; Vol. 77, p. 399.
Landing in Britain Archaeologia; Vol. 34, p. 230.
Passage over the Thames (S. Gale). Archaeologia; Vol. 1, p 183.
Recent Histories of Caesar (G. F. Holmes).
Warfare and Writings of Caesar. Atlantic Monthly; Vol. 44, p. 273.

THE GALLIC WAR.

Kraner. Berlin.
Nipperdey. Leipzig.
Doberenz. Leipzig.
Reinhard; with plans. Stuttgart.
Holder. Tübingen.
Long. London.
Meusel; Lexicon Caesarianum. Completed as far as *hostis*.
Göler; Caesars gallischer Krieg, 2 Aufl., 2 Bde. Tübingen.
Kerviler; Caesar et les Vénètes; Questions controversées de l'histoire. Paris; Société bibliographique, p. 21.
Maissiat; Jules César en Gaule. Paris, Didot, p. 377.
Braumann; die Principes d. Gallier u. Germanen. Berlin (Weber).
Rauchenstein; der Feldzug Cäsars gegen die Helvetier.
Zeus; Grammatica Celtica. Leipzig.
Wagler; Hilfsbüchlein zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum. Berlin.
Rüstow; Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars. Nordhausen.

IDIOMS.

PREPOSITIONAL

a dextro cornu, *on the right wing.*
a fronte, *in front.*
a pueris, *from boyhood.*
a sinistro cornu, *on the left wing.*
ab armis discedere, *to lay down the arms.*
ab signis discedere, *to leave the ranks.*
ab officio discedere, *to fail in one's duty*
ab cohortatione, *after exhorting.*
ab eis defendere, *to defend against them.*
ab milibus passuum octo, *eight miles off.*
ab re frumentaria laborare, *to suffer in respect to provisions.*
ad equum rescribere, *to enroll in the cavalry.*
ad Caesarem deferre, *to lay before Caesar.*
ad extremum, *at last.*
ad hunc modum, *in this way.*
ad milia decem, *about ten thousand.*
ad speciem, *for show.*
ad unum, *to a man.*
ad urbem, *near the city.*
ad urbem pervenit, *he arrived at the city.*
ad Alpes pertinent, *extend as far as the Alps.*
apud Caesarem, *in the presence of Caesar.*
de ea causa, *for this reason.*
de improviso, *suddenly.*
ex aqua mensurae, *measures by the water-clocks.*
ex itinere, *on the march.*
ex navi egredi, *to disembark.*
ex usu Galliae, *of advantage to Gaul.*
ex vestigio, *on the spot.*
e vinculis, *in chains.*
soror ex matre, *sister on the mother's side.*
unus e filiis, *one of the sons.*
in Caesaris fidem venire, *to put one's self under the protection of Caesar*
in dies, *daily.*
in flumine pontem facere, *to build a bridge across the river.*
in fugam dare, *to put to flight.*
in itinere, *on the march.*
in perpetuum, *forever.*
in praesentia, *for the present.*
in reliquum tempus, *for the future.*
in vicem, *in turn.*
habere in animo, *to intend.*
inter se cohortati, *exhorting one another*
inter se dare, *to exchange.*
inter se differunt, *they differ from one another.*
pro beneficiis, *in return for favors.*
pro multitudine, *in proportion to the large body.*
pro perfuga, *as a deserter.*
sub corona vendere, *to sell as slaves.*

ADJECTIVAL.

ad extremum, *at last.*
adverso colle, *up the hill.*
adverso flumine, *up-stream.*
aequo animo, *with contented mind.*
alienum aes, *debt.*
alienum tempus, *an unfavorable time.*
alii aliam in partem, *some in one direction, others in another*
aversi ab hosti circumventi, *surrounded by the enemy on the rear.*
certiorem eum facere, *to inform him.*
certior fieri, *to be informed.*
de improviso, *suddenly.*
extremo oppido, *at the end of the town.*
in arido, *on dry land.*
in perpetuum, *forever.*
loco suo, *in a favorable place.*
medio in colle, *on the middle of the hill*
multa lingua Gallica uti, *to speak the Gallic language fluently.*
multa nocte, *late at night.*
multo die, *late in the day.*
primo vere, *at the beginning of spring.*
quisque nobilissimus, *all the nobles.*
rari pugnabant, *here and there men were fighting.*

ADVERBIAL.

alias — alias, *at one time — at another.*
contra atque, *different than.*
cum primum, *as soon as.*
graviter ferre, *to be annoyed.*
largiter posse, *to have great influence.*
multum valere, *to have great power.*
quam maximus, *the greatest possible.*
quam primum, *as soon as.*

PARTICIPIAL.

ante exactam hiemem, *before the winter had passed.*
confectus vulneribus, *weakened by wounds.*
sol oriens, *the East.*

VERBAL.

accedit ut, *moreover.*
adficere supplicio, *to punish.*
adfici beneficio, *to receive favors.*
agere gratias, *to thank.*
capere consilium, *to form a plan.*
capere portum, *to reach a harbor.*
castra movere, *to break camp.*
castra ponere, *to pitch camp.*
causam dicere, *to plead a case.*
causam inferre, *to allege a reason.*
conlocare nuptum, *to give in marriage.*
consciscere sibi mortem, *to commit suicide.*
consilium inire, *to form a plan.*
convertere signa, *to face about.*
dare manus, *to yield.*
dare operam, *to take pains.*
defendere bellum, *to ward off war.*
ducere bellum, *to prolong a war.*
ducere uxorem, *to marry.*
facere iter, *to march.*
ferre signa, *to advance.*
gerere bellum, *to wage war.*
gratiam habere, *to be grateful.*
gratias referre, *to requite.*
habere eodem loco, *to consider in the same light.*
habere id compertum, *to have learned.*
habere sibi persuasum, *to be persuaded.*

inferre bellum, *to make war.*
inferre signa conversa, *to face about and charge.*
laxare manipulos, *to open the ranks.*
memoriam deponere, *to forget.*
naves armare, *to fit out ships.*
naves deducere, *to launch ships.*
naves solvere, *to weigh anchor.*
naves subducere, *to beach, to draw up ships.*
praestare virtutem, *to show courage.*
recusare mortem, *to shrink from death.*
referre pedem, *to retreat.*
repetere poenas, *to inflict punishment.*
sententia desistere, *to give up a plan.*
sumere supplicium de eo, *to punish him.*
vertere terga, *to flee.*
vim facere, *to use violence.*

NOMINAL.

aliquid consilii, *some new plan.*
Caesare consule, *in the consulship of Caesar.*
celerius opinione, *sooner than any one supposed.*
inita aestate, *at the beginning of summer.*
minus dubitationis, *less doubt.*
nihil reliqui, *nothing left.*
nihil vini, *no wine.*
plus doloris, *more pain.*
quantum boni, *how much advantage.*
quid negotii, *what business.*
quod navium, *what ships.*

NOTES.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

omnis, except the Roman province. See Geographical Index. *Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts.*

aliam, *another.*

tertiam, qui — appellantur, (those inhabit) *the third, who in their own language are called Celts; in ours, Gauls.* The full expression would be, (ii) **qui appellantur Celtae ipsorum lingua, Galli nostra (lingua, incolunt) tertiam (partem).**

lingua, institutis, legibus. Observe the Latin usage in regard to the conjunction. The conjunction is either omitted entirely, as here, or connects each individual word; e. g. **lingua et institutis et legibus.**

inter se, *from one another;* literally, *among themselves.*

flumen. Supply **dividit. Matrona et Sequana** take the singular verb **dividit,** since the two rivers make only one boundary.

cultu, *civilization,* as shown by manner of life. **humanitate,** *refinement,* i. e., mental culture.

minime saepe commeant, *very seldom penetrate;* literally, *least often go back and forth.*

ad effeminandos animos, *toward the weakening of their minds.*

qui trans Rhenum incolunt. The verb is here used intransitively. Compare chap. 5, **Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerunt**; also chap. 54, **qui proximi Rhenum incolunt.** Usually the verb governs a direct object; e. g., **unam incolunt** above.

quoque, *also,* always follows the emphatic word, *because they* (just as the Belgians) *dwell near the Germans.*

reliquos, *the rest of.* Observe the Latin idiom; cf. i. 24, **in colle medio,** *on the middle of the hill.* It was not until a later period that these adjectives, becoming hardened into neuter substantives, admitted of a partitive genitive, e. g., in **medio urbis** (Tac. An.). The adjectival construction is the classical one; and the student must bear this in mind, especially in translating English into Latin.

qua de causa, *and for this reason.* The relative in both English and Latin is equivalent to a conjunction and a demonstrative. The Romans, being fond of connecting their sentences together like the links of a chain, often used a relative at the beginning of a sentence where in English we usually have the demonstrative alone.

fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, *they contend in almost daily battles with the Germans.* The ablative of accompaniment regularly takes the preposition **cum**, both in a friendly and in a hostile sense.

eorum refers back to **hi omnes**, the people being put for the country, — *one part of these, which it has been said the Gauls occupy.* What word is translated *occupy?* Note that this word is not translated by its English derivative.

continetur, *it is bounded;* literally, *it is held together.*

ab Sequanis, *on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii.*

vergit, *it tends, inclines,* or *slopes toward the north.*

ab extremis Galliae finibus, *from the extreme frontier of Gaul* (i.e. Celtic Gaul).

spectat inter, etc. Translate by one compound English word all that follows **spectat** in this sentence.

CHAPTER II.

perfacile esse, (saying) *that it was very easy, since they excelled all in valor, to get the power of the whole of Gaul.* What is the subject of **esse**?

id hoc facilius eis persuasit, *he persuaded them the more easily to this:* literally, *he persuaded this to them,* — **hoc**, ablative of cause, referring to the clause beginning with **quod**.

loci natura Helvetii continentur, *are confined by the character of the country.*

flumine Rheno, qui. The relative is in agreement with **Rheno**.

his rebus fiebat, *from these circumstances it happened.* The subject of **fiebat** is the clause **ut — possent**.

pro multitudine, *considering the number of inhabitants;* literally, *in proportion to.* Cf. chap. 29, where the estimate of the Helvetians is given.

milia passuum. The **passus** was 4 feet 10 inches; hence a thousand paces or the Roman mile was 4,854 feet. How many feet less than our mile? The English word "mile" is derived from this expression, the **passuum** having dropped out.

CHAPTER III.

his rebus adducti, *induced by these considerations.*

comparare — confirmare, infinitives after **constituerunt**, *to buy as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons, to make as extensive sowings as possible.*

in tertium annum, etc, *they fix their departure by decree for the third year.*

is — suscepit, *he took on himself the embassy.*

amicos. Distinguished honor given by the Roman Senate.

ut — occuparet. A secondary tense, because **persuadet** is historical present.

perfacile factu esse, *he proves to them that to accomplish their attempts was a very easy thing to do.* The student meets for the first time the so-called supine. This term is a comparatively recent one to apply to this formation alone. In the Latin grammarians the word included both "gerunds" and "supines." The student should bear in mind that the supine is nothing more than a verbal noun. The work done by this can be done by verbal nouns of any declension. The cases in common use are the accusative and ablative, although the dative appears rarely; e. g. **istaec lepida sunt memoratui** (Plautus, Bacchides, l. 60). Like other verbal nouns, it may have an active or passive notion; e. g. **factu**, *to do* or *be done*. To say that the form in **u** is passive only is erroneous, as shown from Varro, De Re Rustica, 2, 2, **cum redierunt ad stabula a pastu**, and Cato, R. R. v, **primus cubitu surgat.**

Galliae potiri, *to obtain possession of Gaul.* The genitive after this verb is best explained as a genitive depending on the noun idea contained in **potior**; **potior** = **dominus sum.** In the same way **βασιλεύω** in Greek admits of the genitive construction. This genitive is called adnominal genitive.

CHAPTER IV.

ea res — enuntiata, *when this design was disclosed.* No word in Latin admits of such a variety of meanings as **res.** The student must always determine by the context the most suitable word to employ in translating. By what words has it already been translated in these notes? Why is *design* more appropriate in this place than either of the other words would have been?

ex vinculis causam dicere, *to plead his cause in chains;* literally, *out of his chains.* A Latin idiom suggesting the direction from which the action proceeds. Cf. chap. 43, **ex equis ut conloquerentur.**

damnatum — cremaretur. **poenam** is the subject of **sequi**, and **Orgetorigem**, supplied from the preceding sentence, its object; the whole clause of which **sequi** is the verb, is the subject of the impersonal verb **oportebat** (cf. **flebat ut — possent**, chap. 3), and the clause **ut — cremaretur** is in apposition with **poenam.** With what must **damnatum** agree? Give the exact literal translation of the sentence, following the above suggestions. Now express the idea of this awkward literal sentence in good English. The English sentence *United, we stand* more fully stated means *If united* or *if we are united, we stand.* Use this hint in translating **damnatum** What idea is, then, often conveyed by a participle both in English and Latin? This was the usual method of punishing traitors among the Gauls and other barbarous peoples.

omnem suam familiam, *all his vassals,* i. e, all employed in his private affairs.

ad — decem. **ad** with numerals denotes an approach to the number, *to the number of;* hence *about.* It is sometimes used as a preposition in this way, and sometimes as an adverb. Here one cannot tell, for **milia** may be either the accusative after **ad,** or in apposition with **familiam.** A good example, however, of **ad** having the noun independent is in ii 33, **occisis ad millibus quattuor.**

quin ipse — consciverit, *that he determined on death for himself.* Observe that **ipse** is in agreement with the subject.

CHAPTER V.

eius = Orgetorigis. The clause ut — **exeant** is in apposition with **id.** **facere,** cf. **eos — conari,** chap. 7.

oppida sua omnia. Plutarch refers to this incident (Vit. Caes., c. 18). The **oppida** are strongholds, while the **vici** are groups of houses. **vicus** is the word for the street of a city, referring to the rows of houses on either side.

ad duodecim. See chap. 4, **ad milia.**

numero, ablative of specification.

reliqua aedificia. See chap. 1, **reliquos Gallos.**

incendunt, *set fire to.* **comburunt,** *burn.*

domum reditionis, *hope of a return home.* **domum** is the accusative of limit of motion after the verbal noun **reditionis.** These nouns in **tio** in early Latin governed a direct object through the influence of the verbal notion; e. g. **quid tibi hunc receptio ad test meum virum?** (Pl. Asin. 919); **manus** (probably accusative) **iniectio esto.** (Laws of Twelve Tables, III.) The "gerund" and "supine" are simple verbal nouns. There is no difference between **reditionis spe** and **redeundi spe.**

vicisque exustis. The Latin language was deficient in a perfect active participle. The means employed to compensate for this part of the verb are: (1) The perfect participle of a deponent verb; e. g. **eodem usi concilio.** (2) The ablative absolute, as here. (3) A temporal clause.

Boios. This tribe gave its name to the modern Bohemia and Bavaria. See Geographical Index. Of what is this word the object, and what words limit it?

CHAPTER VI.

omnino, *in all.* **quibus itineribus,** *by which ways.* The antecedent is repeated for the sake of clearness. What part of speech is **quibus?**

unum and **alterum** are in partitive apposition with **itinera.**

singuli carri, *wagons one by one, in single file.*

ducerentur. Relative clause of characteristic, the relative adverb **qua** being equivalent to the conjunction **ut** and the demonstrative adverb **ibi**; cf. note on **qua de causa**, chap. 1.

transitur = **transiri potest**, *it can be crossed by means of a ford.*

Allobrogum. They had been subdued by C. Pomptinus, 61 B. C., and earlier (121 B. C.) by Fabius Maximus. See Geographical Index.

Allobrogibus — viderentur, vel — paterentur. Indirect discourse after **existimabant.** Observe the omission of the object after **coacturos.** Cf. vii. 81, **dat tuba signum suis atque ex oppido educit**; v. 17, **nostri, in eos impetu facto, repulerunt.**

bono animo, *of a friendly mind*, i. e. well disposed.

a. d. v. Kal. Apr., = **die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles**, *on the fifth day before the Kalends of April.* The Kalends being the first day of the month, this date would correspond to the 28th of March. The stereotyped expression, **ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles**, arose from the conversion of **die** into the accusative through the influence of the preposition. The phrase perhaps originally was as given above, **die quinto ante**, etc.; and when **ante** was put first, — **ante die quinto Kalendas**, — the fact that it governed **Kalendas** was lost sight of. Its influence was then extended to **die**, which became the accusative, thus leaving **Kalendas** with no grammatical construction. What part of speech is **Apriles**?

CHAPTER VII.

eos — conari, in apposition with **id.** What other clauses have been already used as nouns in the text?

ab urbe, i. e. Rome, which was called by way of distinction "the city." So the Athenians often designated their city, Athens, by ἄστυ alone.

quam — itineribus, *by as long marches as possible.* For the force of **quam**, see on **quam maximum**, chap. 3. The Greek paraphrast has ὡς ἠδύνατο τάχιστα.

in Galliam ulteriorem, *into farther Gaul.* For the location of Farther Gaul, see map. Remember that the Alps form a great natural boundary line, and that a Roman is here writing. To him the Gaul here referred to is *farther* than what? Nearer Gaul or **Gallia citerior** is nearer than what? In what modern country is the latter?

ad Genavam pervenit, *into the vicinity of Geneva.* Cf. vii. 41, **castra ad Gergoviam movit.** According to Plutarch, Caes., c. 17, he reached the Rhone in eight days.

provinciae toti, etc., *he orders as great a number of soldiers as possible from the whole province;* literally, *he imposes upon the whole province a demand for as great a number*, etc.

pontem — iubet rescindi. Observe the omission of the conjunction. For a like case of asyndeton, cf. i. 20, **Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet.**

pontem. The bridge across the Rhone.

ad Genavam. For meaning, cf. **ad Hispaniam**, chap. 1.

certiores facti sunt, *were informed.* What is the literal meaning?

cuius legationis = **quorum.** The **legatio,** comprehends the **legatos** preceding.

qui dicerent, a relative clause of purpose, literally, *who should say,* i. e., *to say.*

sibi esse in animo, *that they intended;* literally, *it was to them in mind.*

quod — nullum. Observe the emphatic position of **nullum.** Cf. i. 18, **quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo.**

rogare. The subject **se** is omitted; in same construction with **esse** above.

occisum, sc. **esse**; and so also after **pulsum, missum,** and **concedendum.** This defeat occurred in the vicinity of Lake Geneva, 107 B.C.

sub iugum. Under this yoke the conquered were compelled to pass without arms, as a sign of complete submission. The **iugum** consisted of two spears set upright in the ground, and a third one placed across them at the top (Livy, 3, 28, **tribus hastis iugum fit, humi fixis duabus, superque eas transversa una deligata**).

concedendum, sc. **id,** referring to **iter per provinciam facere.**

data facultate, *if an opportunity were to be given them.*

temperaturos, sc. **esse,** *would refrain from injury and mischief.*

dum — convenirent, *until the soldiers, whom he had ordered, should assemble.* **dum** (*until*) with the subjunctive refers to an event expected and purposed.

imperaverat. Cf. **provinciae toti — imperat.**

ad Id. Apr. See on **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**, chap. 6.

reverterentur. In the direct discourse the imperative was used; what was the form of the conditional sentence, **si quid vellent**?

CHAPTER VIII.

ea legione militibusque. Ablative of means.

qui — influit. Caesar asserts that the lake flowed into the river. He had in view the point at which the river made its egress from the lake, and where a portion of the waters would flow into the river. Some editors have changed the text to **quem in flumen Rhodanus influit,** "into which the river Rhone flows;" but this is unsatisfactory and artificial. Cf. vii. 57, **perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam.**

in altitudinem. For translation, cf. **in latitudinem,** chap. 2.

pedum. Partitive genitive.

castella communit, *he strongly fortifies the redoubts.* The force of **com** is intensive, *he fortifies completely.*

se invito, *against his will;* literally, *he (being) unwilling.*

si conarentur – possit. The historical present is here followed by both the imperfect and present. Cf. chap. 7, **quod aliud iter haberent nullum. rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat.**

negat se more – dare, *he says that he cannot;* literally, *he denies that he can give*, etc.

prohibiturum, sc. **se**. Notice the omission of the object **eos**. Cf. chap. 6, **vel vi coacturos**

ea spe deiecti, *disappointed in this hope;* literally, *cast down from this hope.*

si – possent. Indirect question introduced by **si**. Cf. ii. 9, **si nostri transirent, exspectabant.**

CHAPTER IX.

una – via, *only the way.* **qua,** cf. chap. 6, **vix qua singuli.**

sua sponte, *by their own means,* = **per se.** Cf. v. 28, **sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere.**

eo deprecatore, *by his mediation;* literally, *he (being) an intercessor.*

gratia – plurimum poterat, *on account of his popularity and liberality, had very great influence with the Sequani;* literally, *was able very much.*

novis – studebat, *was aiming at a revolution;* literally, *was eager for new things.*

in matrimonium duxerat, *had married.* The husband conducted his wife to his own house as a part of the marriage ceremony, hence the phrase **uxorem ducere.** The expression **nubere viro,** (for **nubere se viro**), "to veil herself for a husband," is used in speaking of the woman.

suo beneficio habere obstrictas, *to have attached to him by reason of his kindness.* This use of **habere** is an anticipation of the part the verb "to have" was to hold in verbal conjugation. The student will observe that **habere obstrictas** differs from **obstrinxisse** in the fact that the notion contained in the participle is looked upon as a possession. The transition is shown more clearly in chap 15, **quem ex omni provincia – coactum habebat** (nearly = **coegerat**).

CHAPTER X.

renuntiatur, *word is brought back,* i e. messengers who had been sent returned with the tidings.

Helvetiis esse in animo. See note on **sibi esse in animo,** chap. 7.

quae civitas, *which state;* referring to the Tolosates. The antecedent is inserted in the relative clause, — a common Latin idiom.

id si fieret – futurum, *if this be done, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to the province that it should have,* etc. The subject of **futurum** is the clause **ut haberet,** and the subject of **haberet** is **provincia,** to be supplied.

locis patentibus, *in open places*.

maximeque frumentariis. Adjectives in **us** preceded by a vowel form their comparison by means of the adverbs **magis** and **maxime**. Violations of this rule were undoubtedly common in the popular language. On one (sepulchral) inscription from Rome we read, **alvmno : pientissimorvm : piissimo : et : dvlcissimo.** Cicero in one of his Philippics speaks of the superlative of **pius**.

Titum Labienum. See Historical Index.

in Italiam, *into Italy*, i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

magnis itineribus, *by forced marches;* literally, *by great journeys*. Cf. chap. 7, **quam maximis potest itineribus.**

Aquileiam. See Geographical Index.

qua proximum iter, *where the route was shortest;* literally, *where the route was nearest.*

compluribus — pulsis. In these four words the student has an ablative absolute and an ablative of means limited by an adjective. In translating remember the context.

extremum, sc. **oppidum.**

CHAPTER XI.

per angustias. Cf. chap. 6, **angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum**; and chap. 9, **propter angustias.**

se suaque, literally, *themselves and their possessions;* **sua** being the neuter plural.

rogatum. This so-called supine is a simple verbal noun in the accusative, to express limit of motion; cf. **factu,** chap. 3. The future passive infinitive is built up by means of this verbal noun, e.g. **milites occisum iri dicit. iri** is the impersonal use of eo, "to go;" **occisum,** the limit of motion; **milites,** the object of **occisum,** which can govern an accusative as other verbal nouns. Cf. note on **reditionis,** chap. 5.

ita se — meritos esse, *that they had at all times so deserved of the Roman people that*, etc. Indirect discourse after the idea of saying contained in **rogatum.**

agri debuerint, *their fields ought not to have been laid waste*, etc. Since the English verb *ought* has no past tense while the Latin **debeo** has, the force of the tense in **debuerint** is thus brought out. **debeo** implies a legal or moral obligation. In Lucretius, however, the word often is synonymous with **oportet** and **necesse est**; e.g. De Re Nat., i. 433, **esse aliquid debebit id ipsum.**

solum. Noun; *except the soil of their land.*

reliqui. Depends on **nihil.**

non exspectandum esse, *he must not wait;* literally, *it must not be waited.* **sibi** is the so-called dative of agent. This dative is nothing more than the simple dative of possession. The gerund being a verbal noun, the origin of this construction may have been as follows: **legendum mihi est,** "**a reading is to me,**" **legendum** being subject of **est** (cf. Lucretius, De Re Nat., i. 110, **poenas in**

morte timendum est), i. e. "I have a reading;" hence "I must read." The gerundive construction is perhaps a conversion of the verbal noun into a verbal adjective; e. g. **librum legendum mihi est**, "reading a book is to me," becoming **liber legendus mihi est**, "a book to which the quality of reading belongs is to me;" hence "I must read a book." (Cf. the influence of **ante** in Roman Calendar, note on **a. d. v. Kal.**, chap. 6.) Whether the gerundive originally had a passive signification is uncertain. Cf. **secundus**, = "following:" hence "second."

CHAPTER XII.

quod. The antecedent is **flumen.**

incredibili lenitate, *with wonderful smoothness.*

partes – flumen – traduxisse. **partes** is object of **duxisse**, and the preposition governs **flumen.**

cum legionibus. Ablative of accompaniment. For **cum** in hostile sense, see **cum Germanis**, chap. 1.

eos – aggressus – partem eorum concidit. An object used with both participle and verb. Cf. chap. 54, **hos adorti, magnum eorum numerum interficiunt**; also ii. 10, **hostes – nostri – aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt.** On use of these participles, cf. note on **vicis exustis**, chap. 5.

mandarunt = **mandaverunt.** This contract form shows that there must have been a time in Latin when the accent went farther back than the penult, even if that was long. If the word had always been accented **mandavérunt**, the contraction would never have taken place, since it is the accented syllable of a word that is permanent.

hic pagus unus. Cf. chap 13, **unum pagum adortus esset.**

quae pars – ea – persolvit = **ea pars – quae – intulerat – persolvit.**

princeps persolvit, *was the first to pay the penalty.*

quod – interfecerant, *because in the same battle in which they had slain Cassius, they had slain also his lieutenant Lucius.* **Cassium**, object of **interfecerant**, to be supplied.

CHAPTER XIII.

pontem – faciendum curat, literally, *cares for a bridge to be built, cares for the building of a bridge.* Cf. note on gerundive, chap. 11. Observe the idiom **in Arare**, "over the Arar;" **trans** could not be used.

cum – intellegerent, *when they perceived that he had done in one day that which they themselves had accomplished with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, namely, the crossing of the river.* **ut flumen transirent** is in apposition with **id**, the object of **fecisse.** Cf. chap. 5, **id facere – ut – exeant.**

bello Cassiano, *in the Cassian war*, i. e., in the war with Cassius

si pacem, etc. Indirect discourse to end of chapter. In the direct narrative **faceret** would be future; **ituros,** future; **constituisset,** future perfect. Cf. A. & G. 339, for the direct form of the whole chapter.

sin perseveraret, sc. **Caesar.**

reminisceretur. Subjunctive for the imperative. Cf. **tribueret.**

despiceret, committeret. Why in the imperfect tense?

ne ob eam rem — tribueret, *on that account;* literally, *on account of that thing, he should not ascribe it* (i. e. the victory) *too much to his own valor.*

didicisse, *they had so learned,* i. e., been trained.

CHAPTER XIV.

his, *to them,* i. e., the legati. Cf. chap. 34, **ei legationi respondit.** For the neuter see chap. 36, **ad haec Ariovistus respondit.**

eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, *less doubt was given him on this account.* The clause **quod teneret** gives the reason.

eo gravius ferre — accidissent, *and he felt the more indignant in proportion as it had happened without the desert of the Roman people.*

qui si — fuisset (the antecedent of **qui** is **populus Romanus**), *if they had been conscious to themselves of having done any injury,* etc.

cavere. Subject of **fuisse.**

deceptum, sc. **se esse.**

quare timeret. quare = propter quod, the antecedent of the **quod** being the omitted subject of **commissum.**

quod — vellet, *but if he should consent to forget their former insult.*

eo invito. Cf. **se invito,** chap. 8.

quod — gloriarentur, *the fact that they boasted so insolently of their victory.*

eodem pertinere, *amount to the same thing;* literally, *tend to the same place.* The subject of **pertinere** is the preceding clauses.

quo — doleant, *that men may grieve the more heavily from a change of circumstances.*

quos — velint. The relative clause is put first. The antecedent of **quos** is **his** in line below.

facturos (esse), sc. **eos** as subject.

Haeduis (dative after **satisfaciant**), literally, *do enough for them,* i. e., satisfy.

eius rei. See note on **ea res — enuntiata,** chap. 4.

CHAPTER XV.

movent, sc. **Helvetii.**

quem — coactum habebat. See note on **habere obstrictas,** chap. 9.

qui videant. The antecedent of **qui** is the collective idea contained in **equitatum,** as if **equites** had been used. Cf. chap. 2, **civitati persuasit, ut — exirent.**

quas — faciant. Indirect question.

cupidius, *too eagerly.* **novissimum agmen,** the part of the line that is "newest," i. e. the rear.

alieno loco = iniquo loco, *in an unfavorable place;* literally, *in a place belonging to another;* in contrast with **suo loco,** *in a favorable place.*

pauci de nostris, *few of our soldiers.* **de nostris,** = **nostrorum.** This use of the preposition is an anticipation of the part **de** was to play in noun inflection in the Romance languages. This preposition, we may say, exerted the strongest influence for the breakdown of the inflectional system.

in praesentia, *for the present.*

nostrum primum, sc. **agmen,** *our first line,* i. e., van.

CHAPTER XVI.

flagitare. The historical infinitive. In what case is its subject? **flagito** is to demand with earnestness and importunity.

essent polliciti. Subjunctive. The clause is represented as being the statement of another,—*which* (as Caesar said) *they had promised,* hence it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Or the subjunctive may be used because the clause is used to describe or characterize **frumentum** as well as to state that they had promised it. (Subjunctive of characteristic.)

frigora, *the cold weather.*

ut ante dictum est. Chap. 1.

diem ex die ducere Haedui, *the Haedui were putting him off from day to day, and were saying,* etc. For omission of the object, cf. chap. 6, **coacturos.** **ducere** and **dicere** are historical infinitives; cf. **flagitare.** These infinitives are as if the writer did not stop to concern himself about the proper mood and tense, but hurried on, leaving the verb indefinite.

metiri. See Introduction; Roman Art of War.

qui summo magistratui praeerat, *who held the chief magistracy.*

necessario tempore, *at so critical a time.*

quod — sublevetur. The cause on the authority of another; i. e. the subject of **accusat.** Cf. **quod sit destitutus.**

CHAPTER XVII.

privatim plus possint, *have more influence in a private capacity.*

ne conferant. Plural, because of the collective idea in **multitudinem.**

si iam — praeferre, *if they cannot any longer hold the leadership of Gaul, they prefer the dominion of the Gauls to that of the Romans.*

superaverint. For the future perfect of the direct discourse.

Haeduis. The dative for the ablative of separation. This dative, which occurs with certain compounds of **ab, de, ex,** is best explained as the dative of disadvantage, going with the whole idea of the sentence, and not merely with the verb; i. e., *as far as the Haedui were concerned, their freedom would be wrested away from them.*

ab iisdem, *by these same persons,* i. e., the **nonnullos** above.

a se, *by himself,* as chief magistrate.

quin etiam, *nay even, moreover.*

quam diu potuerit, *as long as he could.*

CHAPTER XVIII.

quod — nolebat, *because he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed in the presence of several.* **iactari,** frequentative of **iacto.**

Liscum retinet (observe the asyndeton; cf. note on **iubet rescindi,** chap. 7), *but detains Liscus.*

ex solo, *from him in private.*

summa audacia, sc. **virum,** *a man of the highest daring,* or better, *greatest daring.*

portoria (**porto,** "to carry"), *duties* on exports and imports.

vectigalia (**veho,** "to bring"), *whatever is brought in.* A name for taxes in general; revenues from any source, as from the public pastures, products of the land, etc.

vectigalia — redempta habere, *he had the purchased revenues, he had purchased the revenues,* etc. What single word with almost the same meaning as **redempta habere** might have been used? Cf. **quem coactum habebat.** The **publicani,** or farmers of the revenues, bought them of the government and collected them.

pretio, *at a small cost.* Ablative of price.

audeat nemo. Cf. note on **nullum,** chap. 7.

illo licente, (from **liceor**), *when he was bidding.* This is the first present participle which has been used in the text with its proper verbal force. About how many perfect passive participles have been used? In the English sentence, *The Centrones, seizing the higher places, try to keep the army from the march,* how is the English present participle *seizing* translated into Latin? Cf. the Latin for this sentence in chap 10. Why is the tense of the Latin participle **occupatis** more accurate than that of the English *seizing?* How is the English present participle *crossing* translated in *they were crossing?* Cf. the translation in chap. 12. Give two reasons why the present participle is more common in English than in Latin.

comparasse, for **comparavisse.** See note on **mandarunt,** chap. 12.

domi, *at home.*

ex Helvetiis uxorem habere. Cf. chap. 3, **eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.**

nuptum conlocasse, *had given in marriage.* **nuptum,** see note on **in matrimonium duxerat,** chap. 9.

favere — Helvetiis, *he favored and wished well to the Helvetians.*

suo nomine, *on his own account;* literally, *in his own name,*—an expression derived from mercantile life.

quod proelium equestre adversum — initium eius fugae factum, *as to the fact that an unsuccessful engagement of cavalry had taken place.* **quod** may be treated as a conjunction, cf. chap. 13, **quod adortus esset**; or it can be regarded as a relative, **proelium — adversum** being attracted into the relative clause, and its place being taken in the antecedent clause by **eius fugae,**—i. e., *the beginning of the flight in the unsuccessful cavalry battle, which battle,* etc.

CHAPTER XIX.

certissimae res accederent, *most undoubted facts were added.*

quod — traduxisset, quod — curasset, quod — fecisset. These clauses are in apposition with **res.** Cf. for the facts here stated chap. 9, **ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti dent, perficit.**

dandos, sc. esse.

iniussu suo et civitatis, *without his authority or that of the state.* What in the Latin is translated *without?*

inscientibus ipsis, *even without their knowledge.* **ipsis** refers to the Haedui.

in eum animadverteret, *why he should either punish him himself;* literally, *direct his attention against him.*

unum, *one consideration.* Explained by **quod.**

quod — cognoverat. The present **cognosco** is inceptive, *begin to know;* hence **cognovi** = *I have learned,* i. e., *I know.*

voluntatem, = *good will;* here used with meaning of **benevolentia.**

cotidianis — remotis, *when the ordinary interpreters had been withdrawn.*

cui — fidem habebat, *in whom he was accustomed to repose the highest confidence in all matters.* What is it literally?

apud se, *in his presence,* i. e., Caesar's.

CHAPTER XX.

multis cum lacrimis. cum with the ablative of manner conveys the notion of addition or unexpectedness. Cf. Introduction, "Inductive Studies," under the Ablative.

obsecrare coepit. The student will find this passage discussed in the "Inductive Studies," under Indirect Discourse.

quid gravius, *anything too severe,* i. e. no severe measure.

plus doloris. Be careful to make good English of this Latin idiom.

opibus ac nervis, *and this power and strength he used.* **nervis** = **potentia.** Cic. Phil., 15. 12, **experietur senatus nervos atque vires.**

si quid – accidisset, *if anything very severe should happen to him from Caesar.* **accidisset** = the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse.

futurum uti – averterentur, *it would happen that,* etc. The periphrastic form **futurum esse** with the subjunctive is used for the future infinitive of verbs which have no "supine stem," also for the future passive infinitive, which rarely occurs and frequently with verbs which have a future infinitive.

tanti – ostendit, *shows him that his influence with him* [Caesar] *is so great.* Illustrate by the use of the pronouns **eius** and **se** in this sentence the rule for the antecedents of these pronouns.

vocat, adhibet. For the asyndeton, see note on chap. 18, **Liscum retinet.**

praeterita, *things bygone,* i. e., the past.

CHAPTER XXI.

qualis esset, (indirect question after **cognoscerent**), *what was the nature of the mountain.* Part of speech and exact meaning of **qualis**?

qui cognoscerent, *to ascertain.*

pro praetore, *in-place-of a praetor, with praetorian powers.* Cf. primitive meaning of **pro** in chap. 48 and its meaning in chaps. 2 and 26.

quid consilii sui sit, *what his plan is,* = **quid decreverit.** Cf. vi. 7, **quid sui sit concilii**; and vii. 77, **quid ergo mei consilii est**?

CHAPTER XXII.

summus mons. See note on **reliquos**, chap. 1.

equo admisso, (*his*) *horse having been let go toward* (*his destination*), *at full speed* (with loose reins). **Mittere** often means *to let go,* as in the skipper's order **mitte rudentem,** *let go the rope,* and the colloquial **mitte me,** *let me alone.* The Greek paraphrast has *ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ.*

accurrit, dicit. Observe the omission of the conjunction. Cf. chap. 20.

insignibus. The decorations of the Gallic armor; i. e., devices on the helmets, etc. See Introduction; Description of Gaul; Illustrations in the text.

erat ei praeceptum. The subject is **ne – committeret,** etc.

multo die, *late in the day.* What literally? Cf. **prima luce,** *at daybreak.*

quo consuerat intervallo. Cf. chap. 15, **uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus interesset.**

CHAPTER XXIII.

postridie eius diei, *on the next day.*

metiri. See Introduction; Roman Art of War.

prospiciendum, sc. **esse**. Cf. note on **expectandum**, chap. 11.

fugitivos, *fugitive slaves, runaways.* The word is used in contempt for **transfugae**, the regular word for deserters. Cf. chap. 27, **obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos profugissent.**

quod — confiderent. Romanos, the subject of **discedere** preceding, is also the subject of **posse (intercludi)**.

CHAPTER XXIV.

id animum advertit, *when he observes this.* **animum advertit = animadvertit.**

in colle medio, *on the middle of the hill.* See note on **reliquos**, chap. 1.

triplicem aciem. See Introduction; Roman Art of War.

in summo iugo, *on the very summit.*

confertissima acie. Cf. Livy, x. 29, 6, **cum Galli structis ante se scutis conferti starent.**

CHAPTER XXV.

suo, sc. **equo remoto**, *having removed first his own horse, then those of all.* Plut. Caes., chap. 18: *ὡς ἵππος αὐτῷ προσήχθη τούτῳ μέν, ἔφη, νικήσας χρήσομαι πρὸς τὴν δίωξιν, νῦν δ' ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ πεζὸς ὁρμήσας ἐνέβαλε.*

impedimento, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.* What literally? Cf. ii. 25, **ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit.**

multi ut praeoptarent, *so that not a few chose.* Notice the emphatic position of **multi**.

nudo, *naked*, i. e., without a shield.

pedem referre, *to give way.* What literally?

agmen hostium claudebant, *closed the line of the enemy*, i. e., brought up the rear.

Romani conversa signa intulerunt, *the Romans, having faced about, advanced in two divisions;* literally, *bore in their standards reversed.*

CHAPTER XXVI.

ancipiti proelio, *in a doubtful battle*, = **d u b i o m a r t e**; or *in a double battle*, referring to the two different fronts on which the battle was fought.

ab hora septima, *from the seventh hour*, i. e., about one o'clock. The Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise.

aversum hostem, *the back of an enemy;* literally, *an enemy turned away.*

ad multam noctem, *till late at night.* Cf. **multo die**, chap. 22.

pro vallo, *as a rampart.*

captus est. Agrees with the nearest subject, **unus.** Plutarch (Vit. Caes., chap. 18) says that on this occasion even the women and children fought till they were cut down.

qui si iuvissent, *for if they should aid them.*

eodem – habiturum, *would regard them in the same light as the Helvetii.* **eodem loco – habere,** cf. chap. 28, **in hostium numero habuit.**

CHAPTER XXVII.

qui cum – convenissent. Note that qui stands first in its sentence because it is the word most closely connected with the preceding sentence. Cf. note on **qua de causa,** chap. 1. **convenissent** is usually intransitive in Caesar, but here transitive.

ad pedes, *at his feet.* Observe that the idiom is faithful to the idea of motion.

iussisset, sc. **Caesar** as subject.

ea, neuter. This includes the **obsides** and **servos** as well as the **arma.**

nocte intermissa, *a night having intervened.*

occultari – existimarent, *they supposed their flight could either be concealed or be entirely unnoticed.*

prima nocte, *in the early part of the night.* How does the context show that this cannot mean *in the first night?*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

resciit, *discovered.* **Resciscere,** according to Aulus Gellius, 2, 19, refers to knowledge in regard to anything which is unexpected or hidden.

quorum. The antecedent is **his** below.

sibi purgati, *blameless in his sight.* Cf. iv. 13, 5, **sui purgandi causa;** Cic. Fam., 12, 15, **quod te mihi purgas.** Derivation of **purgare?** Cf. "Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean," Ps. li. 7.

reductos – habuit, *he treated them, when brought back, as enemies;* i. e., they were put to death or sold as slaves.

quos incenderant, i. e., the particular towns in chap. 5; hence the indicative, expressing a fact stated by Caesar.

vacare, *to be empty;* cf. **patere,** *to lie open,* chap. 2; **licere,** *to be permitted,* chap. 7; **cavere,** *to be on one's guard,* chap. 14; **tacere,** *to be silent,* chap. 17. Do these verbs assert action or state? Are they transitive or intransitive? How many English words must be used to express the meaning of each one?

Boios. Object of conlocarent. **petentibus Haeduis,** dative after **concessit.**

parem atque ipsi erant, *same terms of freedom as they themselves had;* literally, *same terms and they themselves were* (on the same terms).

CHAPTER XXIX.

tabulae, *tablets.* The word is applied to any flat substance used for writing, usually wood covered with wax.

litteris Graecis confectae, *made out in Greek characters.* Some hold that **litteris Graecis** implies the Greek language, although such an interpretation is not necessary. The general opinion is that the Helvetii used the Greek alphabet merely, having become acquainted with it from the Greek colony at Marseilles, in the south of Gaul. Cf. v. 48, **hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit**; and vi. 14, **Graecis litteris utantur.** See Introduction; Description of Gaul.

ratio. Introducing the indirect question.

capitum, *souls,* i.e. Helvetii. Cf. English "head of cattle."

ad milia. See note on **ad milia,** chap. 4, near end.

fuerunt. Agreeing with the predicate noun **milia.**

ad is an adverb, and does not influence the construction. Cf. note on **ad milia.**

CHAPTER XXX.

totius fere Galliae, i.e. Celtic Gaul, the third of the three divisions. See chap. i. Cf. chap. 31, **Galliae totius factiones esse duas.**

Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani (two genitives; **Helvetiorum** is subjective, **populi Romani** objective), *injuries of the Helvetians toward the Romans.* Cf. vii. 26, **universae Galliae consensio libertatis vindicandae.**

ex usu terrae Galliae, *to the advantage of the land of Gaul.* **terrae** takes **Galliae** in apposition with it for **terrae Gallicae.** Cf. iii. 7, **mare Oceanum**; Bell. Afr., chap. 3, **terrae Africae**; Tac. Annal., i. 9, **mari Oceano**; Livy, 35, 7, **terra Italia**; Sallust, Fragm. Hist., 4, **duae Galliae mulieres.**

ex magna copia, *out of a great abundance.*

ex consensu, *in accordance with the common consent.*

nisi quibus, i.e. **nisi ii quibus,** *unless those (disclose it) to whom this duty should be assigned by the common council.*

CHAPTER XXXI.

idem = **iidem.**

qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem, *who had before been* (to him), *returned to Caesar.* With **fuerant,** sc. **apud eum.**

secreto in occulto, *apart from others in a secret place.* This is the reading of the common text. Some regard **in occulto** as a gloss, and reject it. Oudendorp defends the text by making **secreto** mean "without witnesses," and **occulto,** "in a secret place."

Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt, *threw themselves at Caesar's feet.* The dative taken with the whole idea of the clause, instead of the genitive in close union with **pedes.**

non minus — contendere, *they no less strove and labored.*

Galliae totius factiones esse duas (cf. vi. 12, **alterius factionis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani**), *there were two parties in the whole of Gaul.* **factiones** refers to the two political parties of Gaul. **factio** originally contained no bad notion like that in the English word "faction," but, according to Festus, is "**honestum vocabulum.**"

principatum tenere, *hold the leadership.*

factum esse, *it came to pass.*

adamassent, for **adamavissent.** See note on **mandarunt,** chap. 12.

clientes, *dependents,* i. e. the subject states. Cf. vi. 12, **summa auctoritas erat in Haeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae.**

senatum. Cf. ii. 5, **omnem senatum ad se convenire**

populi Romani hospitio, *by the hospitality of the Roman people.* The relation of hospitality existed between states as well as between individuals. It was this hospitium on the part of the Roman people that gave to the Haedui their power in Gaul. Cf. vi. 5, **cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat**; also vii. 75, **pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt.**

ad senatum — postulatum, *had gone to Rome to the senate to ask for aid.* Notice that after a verb of motion both nouns are in the accusative. This should be remembered, especially in translating English into Latin. In English we say "came to the senate at Rome." He did not succeed in his effort. Cf. vi. 12, **Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat.**

peius accidisse. So far as form is concerned, what two parts of speech are possible for **peius**?

paucis mensibus ante, *a few months before.*

quibus — pararentur, *for whom a place of abode was to be provided.* Subjunctive of purpose, = *that a place of abode might be provided for them.*

futurum esse uti, *it would result that.* See note on **futurum uti — averterentur,** chap. 20.

conferendum esse, *was not to be compared* (in respect to fertility) *with the German land.*

in eos — edere, *inflicted upon them all kinds of torments;* **exempla cruciatusque,** *all examples and torments,* being put by hendiadys for *all kinds of tortures.*

hominem — temerarium, *that he was a savage, quick-tempered, and rash man.*

nisi si. With same force as **nisi** alone. Cf. Cic. ad Fam., 14, 2, **nisi si quis ad me plura scripsit.**

idem. In apposition with **ut — emigrent.**

quin — sumat, *that he would inflict the severest punishment upon.*

CHAPTER XXXII.

oratione habita. What means *to make* or *deliver a speech*?

respondere. Historical infinitive. See note on **ducere Haedui,** chap. 16.

absentis, *even when absent.*

horrerent, with a direct object. The old signification of the word was to *bristle* or *become erect;* then the feeling derived from such action — e. g. in Lucretius, horror refers to the grating sound of a saw. It is connected with Sanskrit HṚṢ. In Latin the word applies always to disagreeable sensations, as fear, dread, etc., although the root originally admitted the idea of both pleasure and pain.

Sequanis. Dative of agent, with **essent perferendi**; for the literal translation of which, cf. note (on gerundive).

CHAPTER XXXIII.

sibi eam rem curae futuram, *he would attend to the matter;* literally, *the matter would be for a care to him.*

beneficio suo, *by his kindness,* i. e. by the kindness Caesar had done Ariovistus; referring to the title "king" and "friend" which had been given him. Cf. chap. 35, **cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus.**

secundum, *in harmony with;* literally, *following* (**sequor**). Cf. note on **secundus,** chap. 11. What part of speech here?

quare putaret, *by which thing he should think,* i. e. to think.

fratres consanguineosque. Cf. chap. 11, **necessarii et consanguinei.**

Germanos consuescere and **magnam — multitudinem venire** are the subjects of **esse** to be supplied. **periculosum** is in agreement with the two clauses.

sibi temperaturos — quin, *would restrain themselves from going forth into the province.* **ut — fecissent,** subjunctive, because in the indirect discourse. What two meanings has **ut** as a conjunction and with what difference of mode? Cf. **ut — arbitrantur,** chap. 4, and **ut — essent,** chap 5.

Teutonique, — in vii. 77 the plural nominative is **Teutones,** as shown from the genitive.

quibus — occurrendum, *and these things he thought he ought to meet as speedily as possible.*

tantos sibi spiritus — sumpserat. The Greek paraphrast has ὁ γὰρ Ἀριόβιστος οὕτως ὑπερεφρόνει. How does the English *to put on airs* illustrate the meaning of **spiritus** in this passage? How does **sumere** differ in meaning from **capere**? Cf. English *assumption.*

CHAPTER XXXIV.

qui ab eo postularent, *to demand of him.*

conloquio, *for a conference.* **locum medium utriusque,** *midway between both.* **utriusque** is the genitive with the adjective **medium.**

de re publica — agere, *to treat on the public weal,* i. e. public matters. **summis utriusque rebus,** *matters of the highest importance to both of them.*

si quid se — velit, *if he wanted anything of him*. **velle** takes two accusatives, after the analogy of a verb of asking. Cf. Ter. Phorm., i. 2, 101, **numquid aliud me vis**.

negotii (partitive genitive with **quid**), *what business*.

CHAPTER XXXV.

tanto — affectus, *treated with so great kindness by himself and the Roman people* Cf. chap. 33, **suo beneficio**. By what clause might the participle **affectus** be translated here? For use of participle with meaning of clause, see **damnatum**, chap. 4.

hanc gratiam referret, *made such a return as this*.

trans Rhenum traduceret. Observe the repetition of the preposition.

quos illi — illis. The antecedent of **quos** is the omitted object of **reddere**. What is the antecedent of **illi** and **illis**?

fecisset, impetraret. What moods and tenses would these verbs have been in if this were the direct discourse?

quod commodo — facere posset, *so far as he could do so consistently with the interests of the state*. **commodo**, ablative of specification.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

ut — imperarent, *that those who had conquered should rule those whom they had conquered in whatever way they chose*. **vicissent** for the future perfect of the direct discourse.

alterius praescriptum, *dictation of any one else*.

in suo iure impediri, *ought not to be obstructed in his right*.

sibi. Construe with **stipendiarios**.

qui — faceret, *because he was making his revenues less*.

quod convenisset, *which had been agreed upon*. Cf. ii. 19, **quod tempus inter eos convenerat**.

longe — afuturum, *name of brothers would not help them*; literally, *be a great way from them*. Cf. Verg. Aen. xii. 52, **longe illi dea mater erit**.

invicti Germani, *invincible Germans*; literally *unconquered*, hence not liable to be.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

eodem tempore — et, *at the same time — that*. See note on **parem — atque**, chap. 28.

questum. Sc. **veniebant**.

quod — popularentur. The reason of the complaint, stated on authority of the Haedui, — hence in indirect discourse when stated by Caesar, as it is here.

obsidibus datis, *even by giving hostages.*

pacem redimere potuisse, *able to purchase peace.* Cf. chap. 44, **amicitiam — redimere posset.**

resisti posset, sc. **Ariovisto,** impersonal construction, (*Ariovistus*) *might be less easily withstood.*

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

cum tridui viam processisset, *when he had proceeded three days' journey.*

quod. The relative refers to **Vesontionem,** but agrees with **oppidum.** Cf. ii. 1, **omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus.**

magnopere sibi praecavendum (esse), *that he ought to take the greatest precautions.*

summa — facultas, *an abundant supply.* Cf. Cic., De Offic., 1, 3, **facultates rerum.**

pedum. **amplius** may not influence the construction, since the comparatives **plus, amplius, minus,** etc., are often used in this way. The origin of this use is perhaps in the addition of a modifying statement, as if the writer had said, "which is of six hundred feet, — not more any way;" or the construction can be explained by supplying **spatio.** **ut circino,** *as by a pair of compasses.* Give the two uses of **ut** already noted. As the distance actually measures sixteen hundred feet, it is possible that an M. before the DC. has tumbled out through the carelessness of the copyist, since an M. had immediately preceded. Cf. Livy, xxi. 25. AD CECIDISSE is by a similar mistake for AD DC CECIDISSE.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

ne — oculorum. Show from the root meaning of **acies** how it may be used both of *a line of battle* and *the flash* of the eyes.

non mediocriter, *in no slight degree.*

alius alia causa inlata (observe the idiom), *and assigning, some one reason, some another.*

quam — diceret, *which they said was a necessary one for their departure.*

vultum fingere, *compose their faces,* i. e., look brave.

qui volebant. The antecedent is **ii,** to be supplied as subject of **dicebant.**

rem frumentariam (for **res frumentaria,** as subject of **posset**; the accusative of anticipation), *they feared, in regard to the supplies, that they could not be brought in readily.* Cf. Ter. Eun., v. 9, 5, **scin' me, in quibus sim gaudiis.** Cic. Fam., viii. 10, 3, **nosti Marcellum quam tardus sit.** Luke iv. 34, *οἶδά σε τίς εἶ,* "I know thee who thou art."

dicto audientes, *attentive* or *obedient to the word* (*of command*).

signa laturos, *advance.* What means *to retreat, to bring up the rear, to charge, to wheel about, to join* or *begin battle, to draw the sword* (see chap. 26), *to march.*

CHAPTER XL.

omniumque ordinum, *of all ranks.*

sibi quaerendum — putarent, *thought that it belonged to them to inquire or consider.* **putarent**, why in the subjunctive?

Ariovistum, etc. The indirect discourse depends on the idea of saying implied in **incusavit**. Explain the modes and the tenses to end of chapter.

se consule. Antecedent of **se**?

cur — quisquam — iudicaret, *why should any one judge.*

sibi persuaderi, *that he was persuaded.* Observe that **persuadeo** in the passive must be used impersonally. Why? Sometimes Latin writers use the passive of intransitive verbs personally, as if to bring an innovation into the language; e.g., **animus auditoris persuasus esse videtur** (Corn. i. 6). But such use is exceedingly unclassical, since the conception of an intransitive verb cannot admit of such a construction.

quid tandem, *what, pray.*

de ipsius diligentia. **ipsius** used for **sua**, referring to Caesar, to avoid confusion with **sua virtute**, which points to the subject of **desperarent**.

factum (esse) periculum, *trial had been made.*

cum — videbatur. See Introduction; Inductive Studies, under **cum**. This is the only case in the Gallic War of an imperfect indicative after **cum**. At this time we may say that the use of **cum** with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive had become fixed as a habit. The real cause which thrust the verb into the subjunctive had almost been lost sight of. Of course it was inevitable that the Romans should think there was something in the **cum** itself that required the subjunctive. A good example of this tendency is the use of **quamquam** among later writers. In Cicero **quamquam** never takes the subjunctive unless there be some outside reason, but Tacitus employs the word as if by its own influence it required the subjunctive.

quantum — boni constantia, *how much advantage resolution has.*

neque — fecisset, *nor had he given them an opportunity to fight with him;* literally, *no chance at him.*

desperantes, sc. **Gallos**.

cui rationi — posse (**rationi** is attracted into the relative clause), *by a stratagem, for which there had been room against savage and unskilled men,—by this stratagem* (I say) *not even he expected that our armies could be entrapped;* literally, **hac** (**ratione**), **cui rationi**, *by this stratagem, for which stratagem,* etc.

qui. The antecedent is **eos**, to be supplied as subject of **facere**.

in rei — simulationem, *to a pretended anxiety about provisions.*

de — desperare, *to despair of the commander's doing his duty.*

quod — dicantur, *as to the report that they would not be obedient to orders nor advance.* **signa laturi**, cf. chap. 39, **signa laturos**.

CHAPTER XLI.

se — existimavisse. Indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in **satisfacerent.** Cf. note on **Ariovistum, etc.,** chap. 40.

summa belli, *conduct of the war.*

suum — imperatoris. Predicate after **esse** understood.

satisfactione, *excuse.*

ut — duceret (a result clause after the ablative absolute **itinere exquisito**), *the road having been reconnoitred and found to be such that it would lead,* etc.

locis apertis, *through an open country.*

CHAPTER XLII.

per se, *with his consent.*

petenti, *to his request;* literally, *to him asking it.*

ultro polliceretur, *he actually promised.*

pro suis — beneficiis. Cf. chap. 33, **beneficio suo.**

fore uti desisteret, *that he would desist.*

ultro citroque, *hither and thither.*

alia ratione, *on any other terms.*

eo imponere, *upon them,* = **in eos.** Cf. chap. 53, **eo mulieres imposuerant.**

si quid — esset, *if there should be any need of action.*

ad equum rescribere, *he was transferring them to the cavalry.*

CHAPTER XLIII.

tumulus terrenus, *hill free from rocks.* Cf. Sall. Jug., 92, 5, **mons saxeus.**

aequo spatio aberat, *was at nearly an equal distance.* Cf. chap. 41, **Ariovisti — xx abesse.**

ex equis, *on horseback.* Cf. note on **ex vinculis,** chap. 4.

pro officiis, *in return for great services.*

aditum, *access.* Cf. v. 41, **aliquem sermonis aditum causamque.**

quam veteres — appetissent. Cf. chaps. 11 and 31.

sui nihil, *nothing of their own.*

at, *at least.*

amplius. See note on **pedum,** chap. 38.

CHAPTER XLIV.

rogatum et arcessitum. Agreeing with **sese.**

Gallis. The Arverni and Sequani.

ipsis. Sc. **Gallis.**

ac contra se castra habuisse, *had encamped against him.*

uno proelio. Cf chap. 31.

paratum esse decertare. Notice that the infinitive is used with **paratum**. Cf. ii. 3, **paratosque esse et obsides dare.** In chap. 5 **paratus** took the gerundive construction with **ad**: **paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda.**

pace uti velint, *wish to enjoy peace.*

amicitiam – esse. Subject of **oportere.**

idque, not **eamque,** because it refers to the idea contained in **amicitiam,** admitting of a more general meaning, —*that relation.*

defenderit (sc. **bellum** as object), *had warded it off.* Cf. ii. 29, **alias illatum defenderent**; also Civil War, ii. 2, **ignem defendere.**

nisi rogatus, *without being asked.*

hanc Galliam, *this part of Gaul;* literally, *this Gaul.*

ut oporteret, *as it would not be proper to pardon him if,* etc. Why is **concedi** in the impersonal construction?

imperitum rerum, *ignorant of affairs.*

debere – habere, *that he had a right to suspect that Caesar, inasmuch as he had an army in Gaul, kept it there, although under the pretence of friendship, for the sake of crushing him.* How does **debere** differ from **oportere**? See note on **debuerint,** chap. 11.

id compertum habere, *had ascertained.* See note on **obstrictas habere,** chap. 9.

CHAPTER XLV.

in eam sententiam, *to this effect; for the purpose of showing;* followed by **quare,** *why.* This use of the preposition is an anticipation of the force in was to have in the post-Ciceronian writers to denote result or purpose; e. g., **in libertatem pugnare,** Livy, xxiv. 2, 4. The phrase **in memoriam,** which has such a vogue among us to-day, makes the use of **in** to denote purpose seem by no means strange; but such a notion in the preposition is entirely unclassical.

Galliam = Celticam Galliam.

populus – ignovisset, *the Roman people had pardoned.*

CHAPTER XLVI.

propius tumulum accedere, *were approaching nearer the mound.* **tumulum** is the accusative with the adverb **propius,** after the analogy of the preposition **prope.** Cf. Sall. Jug. 49, **ipse propior montem suos conlocat**; also iii. 7, **proximus mare – hiemarat.**

periculo legionis, *danger to the legion.* Objective genitive.

committendum – posset, *he did not think that he ought to allow it to be said* The subject of **committendum (esse)** is **ut – posset.**

omni Gallia – interdixisset, *had forbidden the Romans all Gaul.*

CHAPTER XLVII.

biduo post, *two days after.*

quae — coeptae — perfectae, *which had begun to be discussed, but were not yet finished.* **coeptae essent,** the passive of **coepi** is regularly used with a passive infinitive.

retineri quin — conicerent, *be kept from hurling.*

civitate donatus erat, *had been presented with citizenship.*

qua multa — utebatur, *which he spoke freely.*

in — esset, *the Germans would have no reason for doing wrong in his case.*

CHAPTER XLVIII.

qui supportaretur, *which were being conveyed to him from the Sequani and Haedui.*

ei — deesset, *an opportunity might not be wanting to him.*

hoc erat, *was as follows.*

si quo — recipiendum, *if it was necessary to advance to any place farther than usual or to retreat more quickly.*

cursum adaequarent, *equalled their speed.*

CHAPTER XLIX.

castris idoneum, *fitted for a camp.*

castra munire, *to fortify the camp.*

hominum milia expedita, for **hominum milia expeditorum** (cf. ii. 4, **armata milia centum**), *(sixteen) thousand light-armed troops.*

quae copiae — perterrerent, *that this force might terrify our men.*

CHAPTER L.

instituto suo, *in accordance with his custom.* Cf. chap. 48, **ex eo die — aciem instructam habuit.**

tum demum, *then at length.*

acriter — pugnatum est. Diodorus (38, 48) says that Ariovistus almost succeeded in taking the camp of Caesar, and being elated, neglected the prophecies of the women to meet Caesar in battle.

solis occasu, *at sunset.* Cf. chap. 1, **inter occasum solis.**

matresfamiliae. Tacitus (Ger., chap. 8) states that the women among the Germans were supposed to have prophetic power.

sortibus et vaticinationibus, *from lots and divination.*

ex usu, *advantageous.*

CHAPTER LI.

alarios, *the auxiliaries.* So called because stationed on the **alae** or wings of the army.

minus — valebat, *was not strong in the number of legionary soldiers in comparison with the enemy.*

ad speciem, *for show.*

eo mulieres imposuerunt. See note on **eo imponere,** chap. 42.

passis manibus, *with outstretched hands;* **passis** being here from **pando,** not **pateor.** Cf. ii. 13, **passis manibus suo more;** and vii. 47, **passis manibus obtestabantur.**

CHAPTER LII.

singulis — quaestorem, *lieutenants and a quaestor over each legion.*

a dextro cornu, *on the right wing.*

minime firmam, *weakest.*

pila. The object of the gerund, **coniciendi.**

phalange facta. Cf. chap. 24, **reiecto nostro equitatu phalange facta.**

complures nostri milites, *very many of our soldiers.*

in phalangas, *upon the phalanxes.* For the Greek form of accusative, cf. **Allobrogas,** chap. 14.

a sinistro cornu. See **a dextro cornu** above.

expeditior erat, *was more disengaged.*

CHAPTER LIII.

viribus confisi, *relying on their strength.*

duae uxores. The Germans usually had one wife; but their nobles had more, as we learn from Tacitus (Ger. 18), **prope soli barbarorum singulis uxoribus contenti sunt, exceptis admodum paucis, qui — ob nobilitatem plurimis nuptiis ambiuntur.** See Introduction, no. 85.

duxerat, *had married.* See note on **in matrimonium duxerat,** chap. 9.

trinis catenis, *a triple chain.*

in ipsum Caesarem — incidit, *fell into the hands of Caesar himself.*

ter sortibus. Probably three was a sacred and mystical number with the Germans, as it was among several other ancient nations. We know from Tacitus (Ger. 10, **ter singulos tollit**) that they consulted the lot three times.

CHAPTER LIV.

perterritos insecuti magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt. For the object with the participle and verb, see note on **eos impeditos — aggressus — partem — concidit,** chap. 12.

in hiberna in Sequanos, *into winter-quarters among the Sequani.* Why could not Sequanos be in the ablative? See note on **Romam ad senatum,** chap. 31.

ad conventus agendos, *to hold courts.* The Roman governors of provinces held these conventus for regulating taxes and administrating of justice.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

in hibernis. Caesar perhaps had with him a small force, which had gone into winter quarters in Cisalpine Gaul.

crebri — adferebantur, *frequent reports were brought to him.* The imperfect denotes the repeated action suggested by **crebri.**

quam tertiam. For the attraction of the antecedent, see note on i. 38, **Vesontionem, quod est oppidum.**

dixeramus. See chap. 1.

omni pacata Gallia, *after* (Celtic) *Gaul was subdued.* **pacata,** cf. i. 6, **qui nuper pacati erant.**

partim qui — partim qui, *a part of whom — others of whom.* What is the literal translation?

inveterascere, *to settle, to gain a footing.*

novis imperiis, *a revolution.* Cf. **novis rebus.**

imperio nostro, *under our dominion.*

CHAPTER II.

inita aestate, *at the beginning of the summer.*

qui deduceret, *to conduct them.*

cum primum, *as soon as.*

dat negotium, *he employs.*

dubitandum — quin, *to hesitate to march.* The construction of **quin** with the subjunctive, after **dubitare** in this sense, is rare. Cf. Cic. pro Sull., chap. 2, **non dubitasse, quin defenderet.** The infinitive is the regular construction.

CHAPTER III.

de improviso, *unexpectedly;* literally, *from the unforeseen.*

celeriusque omni opinione, *and sooner than any one expected.*

proximi ex Belgis, *the nearest of the Belgae.*

se suaque omnia permittere, *surrender themselves and all their possessions.* For the omission of the subject of **permittere,** cf. ii. 31, **se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere.**

in fidem, *to the protection.*

paratos esse dare. Cf. i. 44, **paratum esse decertare.**

oppidis recipere, *to receive him into their towns.*

cis Rhenum, *on this side the Rhine.*

utantur — habeant. Observe the omission of the conjunction.

quin — consentirent, *from uniting with these.*

CHAPTER IV.

ab his, *from these,* i. e., the **legati.**

plerosque Belgas, *the greater part of the Belgians.*

Teutonos Cimbrosque. Cf. i. 33, **ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent.**

ingredi prohibuerint. **prohibere** always takes the infinitive in Caesar: but what is the usual construction after verbs of hindering?

magnosque spiritus. Cf. i. 33, **tantos sibi spiritus.**

omnia explorata. See note on **habere obstrictas,** i. 9.

quantam quisque, *how great a number each one had promised.*

armata milia centum, *one hundred thousand armed men.*

electa, *picked men.* For gender, cf. i. 49, **sedecim milia expedita.**

cum — tum, *not only — but also.*

belli summam, *direction of the war.*

CHAPTER V.

liberaliter prosecutus, *having addressed kindly.* Cf. iv. 18, **liberaliter respondit.**

ad diem, *promptly to the day.* Cf. v. 1, **ad certam diem.**

quanto opere — intersit, *how much it concerns the state and their common interest that, etc.*

distineri, *be kept apart.* **manus — distineri,** subject of **intersit.**

quae res — muniebat, *this position fortified, etc.*

post — essent, *the rear.* Literally, *what was behind him.*

CHAPTER VI.

ex itinere. Cf. i. 25, **ex itinere nostros aggressi.**

aegre — sustentatum est, *the attack was sustained with difficulty on that day* Observe the impersonal construction. Cf. v. 39, **aegre is dies sustentatur.**

oppugnatio, *mode of besieging.*

totis moenibus, ablative of place, *along the whole of the fortifications.* Cf. vii 72, **turres toto opere circumdedit.**

summa nobilitate, *of the highest rank.* Cf. i. 18, **summa audacia.**

CHAPTER VII.

isdem ducibus usus, *using the same persons as guides.*

potiundi oppidi. Cf. iii. 6, **potiundorum castrorum.**

vicis aedificiisque incensis, *when they had set fire to all the villages and buildings.* Cf. i. 5, **vicos — aedificia — incendunt.**

ab milibus — duobus, *less than two miles off.* For **amplius milibus,** cf. i. 15, **non amplius quinis — milibus.** **ab** is used adverbially, cf. ii. 30, **ab tanto spatio.**

CHAPTER VIII.

eximiam opinionem virtutis, *their uncommon reputation for courage.* Cf. ii. 24, **virtutis opinio est singularis.**

quid — auderent, periclitabatur, *he strove to ascertain what the enemy could do by their valor and what our men dared (to do).*

tantum — quantum loci, *spread over so much space as.*

ex utraque parte, *on each side.*

et frontem — redibat, *and gently sloping in front sank down gradually to the plain.* **frontem** is the acc. of spec. with **fastigatus.**

CHAPTER IX.

hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant, *the enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross this.* For **si,** cf. i. 8, **si perrumpere possent, conati.**

ut — aggrederentur, parati, *they stood ready* (for battle), *in order to attack them.* **ut — aggrederentur** is not dependent upon **parati.**

secundiore — nostris, *the engagement of the cavalry being more favorable for our soldiers.* For the ablative absolute, cf. chap. 8, **loco — opportuno.**

demonstratum est. See chap. 5.

si possent — si minus potuissent. Observe the distinction of tense.

CHAPTER X.

hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. For object with participle and verb, cf. i. 12, **eos impeditos aggressus — partem — concidit,** and i. 54, **perterritos insecuti — numerum occiderunt.**

neque nostros — viderunt, *and did not see our men advance to worse ground for the purpose of fighting.*

optimum esse, *that it was best.*

his persuaderi — non poterat, *was not possible to persuade these to stay longer, etc.* Why must the impersonal construction be used with the passive of **persuadeo?**

CHAPTER XI.

cum sibi — peteret, *since each was seeking for himself the first place in the journey.*

speculatores, *spies.*

his, i. e., **equitibus,** which is suggested by **omnem equitatum.** Cf. i. 2, **civitati persuasit, ut — exirent.**

novissimos adorti, *attacking the rear.*

cum — consisterent, *while those in the rear, to whom our men had come up, were standing firm.*

priores, sc. **et,** *and those in advance.*

quantum — spatium, *as the length of the day allowed.*

sub occasum, *about sunset.* The same difference that **in** has with the accusative and ablative is observed by **sub.** With the accusative **sub** has a vagueness of meaning, e. g., Livy, xxi. 16, **sub idem tempus,** *about that same time* (either before or after). In Livy, xxi. 18, **sub hanc orationem, sub** = *after;* but in **xxi. 57, sub lucem, sub** = *before.*

CHAPTER XII.

ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, *recovered from their terror and flight.*

ex itinere, *on his march.* Cf. i. 25, **ex itinere nostros — aggressi**; and chap. 6, **id ex itinere — Belgae oppugnare coeperunt.**

paucis defendentibus, *though few were defending it.*

ex fuga. See Inductive Studies, under Ablative. The order of words is the same as in vii. 24, **omnis ex castris multitudo concurreret.**

CHAPTER XIII.

obsidibus acceptis primis, *having received as hostages the first men of the state*

sese in eius fidem — venire. Cf. vi. 3, **in deditionem venire.**

passis manibus. Cf. i. 51, **passis manibus flentes implorabant.**

CHAPTER XIV.

pro his — facit verba, *Divitiacus speaks for these.*

in fide — fuisse, *have been on (terms of) confidence and friendship.*

civitatis Haeduae, *with the Haeduan state.* Objective genitive.

qui — fuissent, *those who had been the movers of that plot.* The **antecedent** of **qui** is **eos** to be supplied as subject of **profugisse.**

consilii principes = **consilii auctores.** Cf. v. 54, **principes belli inferendi**; vi. 4, **qui princeps eius consilii fuerat**; vii. 37, **vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur.**

sua clementia, *his* (accustomed) *clemency.*

quorum — consuerint, *by whose aid and resources they have been accustomed to sustain themselves, whatever wars occurred.* **sustentare,** in sense of **sustentatum est,** chap. 6, without object; or with object **bella** taken out of **si qua bella inciderint.**

CHAPTER XV.

honoris causa, *out of respect to.*

magna — auctoritate, *of great influence.* For the distinction between genitive and ablative of quality, see Inductive Studies.

nullum — mercatoribus, *merchants had no access to them.*

nihil pati vini, *they suffered no wine,* etc.

homines feros magnaeque virtutis, *savage men and of great bravery.* The genitive of quality limiting **homines** in conjunction with the adjective, **feros.** Cf. v. 35, **Balventio, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis**; and v. 54, **civitas imprimis firma et magnae — auctoritatis.**

CHAPTER XVI.

consedisse, *had encamped.*

cum Atrebatis. Elsewhere this word is treated as a noun of the third declension, e. g. **Atrebates,** chap. 4 and 23; **Atrebas,** iii. 27 and 35; **Atrebatibus,** iv. 21; **Atrebatum,** v. 46; **Atrebatem,** v. 22, vi. 6; **Atrebatibus,** vii. 75; **Atrebati,** vii. 76.

CHAPTER XVII.

eorum dierum — exercitus perspecta, *having perceived our army's mode of marching in those days.* **eorum dierum** limits **itineris.** For the accumulation of genitives, cf. vii. 76, **universae Galliae consensio libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae.**

inter singulas legiones, *between the several legions.*

magnum numerum, *a great quantity.*

neque — negotii, *and there would be no difficulty.*

quod Nervii, etc., subject of **adiuvabat.**

teneris arboribus — posset, *by cutting into and bending down young trees and (allowing) their numerous branches to shoot forth laterally* (**in latitudinem enatis**), *and by placing among them brambles and thorns, they had caused these hedges to present a fortification like a wall, so (dense) that it was impossible either to go into it or even to see through it.* **enatis,** from **enascor.** **quo** = **ut eo,** and introduces a result clause.

CHAPTER XVIII.

haec, *as follows*. Cf. i. 48, **genus hoc erat pugnae**.

quem locum. Cf. i. 16, **quibus itineribus**.

aequaliter declivis, *with even slope*.

adversus huic et contrarius, etc., *facing this and opposite, clear at its base for about two hundred paces*.

secundum flumen, etc., *along the river a few pickets of cavalry were seen*.

CHAPTER XIX.

aliter se habebat ac, *was otherwise than*.

consuetudine sua. Cf. chap. 17, **consuetudine itineris — perspecta**.

legiones expeditas, *unencumbered*, i. e., without the hindrance of baggage.

proxime conscriptae, *which had been last levied*. The MSS. give both spellings, **proxime** and **proxume**. In Cicero's time scholars were in doubt whether to write **imus** or **umus**. A character ⊢ was invented in the time of Claudius and employed for a short season to represent the intermediate sound between **i** and **u**. Cicero preferred **umus**, Caesar **imus**; and **imus** became the fixed form for the superlative.

in silvas. The plural denotes the different portions of the forest.

quem ad finem = **ad finem ad quem**.

quod tempus — convenerat, *which had been agreed on*. Cf. i. 36, **quod convenisset**.

adverso colle, *up the hill*. What is the literal translation? Is the expression an ablative of place or an ablative absolute; and where does the idea of *up* come in?

CHAPTER XX.

paulo longius, *a little too far*.

aggeris petendi causa, *for the purpose of seeking* (material for) *the rampart*.

successus, *approach*.

his difficultatibus — subsidio, *two things were of advantage under these difficulties*.

scientia atque usus. Cf. iv. 1, **ratio atque usus**.

CHAPTER XXI.

quam partem — obtulit, *whatever division chance presented to him*. What is the translation of the reading **quam in partem**?

milites — quam uti, etc., *having encouraged the soldiers in a speech not longer than* (was required to bid them) *remember*, etc.

quam quo telum adici posset, *than* (the distance) *to which a missile could be cast*. Cf. iii. 13, **neque propter altitudinem facile telum adiciebatur**.

CHAPTER XXII.

cum diversis legionibus — resisterent, *since the legions were separated, and some were resisting the enemy in one place, and others in another.*

in tanta rerum iniquitate, *in such an unfavorable state of affairs.*

CHAPTER XXIII.

cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos, *out of breath from running and weariness,* i. e., *from their exhausting run.*

diversae duae legiones. Cf. chap. 22, **diversis legionibus.**

conantes insecuti, sc. **eos**, i. e., **Atrebates.**

nudatis castris, sc. **defensoribus.**

CHAPTER XXIV.

adversis — occurrebant, *met the enemy face to face.*

qui cum impedimentis veniebant. Cf. chap. 19, **impedimenta collocarat.**

aliique aliam in partem, *some one way, others another.*

virtutis opinio. Cf. chap. 8, **propter eximiam opinionem virtutis.**

CHAPTER XXV.

Caesar, subject of **processit.**

ab decimae legionis cohortatione (*after encouraging the tenth legion*) = **ab decima legione, quam cohortatus erat.**

signisque — conlatis, *and since the standards were collected together.* Cf. Caesar's Civil War, i. 71, **quod collatis in unum locum signis neque ordines neque signa servarent.**

ad pugnam impedimento. Cf. i. 25, **magno ad pugnam erat impedimento.**

signo amisso. The loss of the standard was considered a great disgrace.

proelio excedere. Cf. v. 36, **pugna ut excedant**; iv. 12, **proelio excesserat**; vii. 80, **proelio excedebant**; viii. 19, **excedere proelio**; but iii. 4, **ex pugna excedendi**; iv. 33, **ex proelio excedunt.**

signa inferre, *to charge.*

manipulos laxare. The pupil will find an excellent translation of part of this chapter, as well as several interesting comments upon Caesar's life, in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

CHAPTER XXVI.

urgeri ab hoste, *was hard pressed by the enemy.*

aversi, (while) *turned away*, i. e., *in their rear.*

cursu incitato, *having quickened their pace.* Cf. chap. 11, **exaudito clamore — in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent.**

nihil — fecerunt, *made all the haste they could.* What is the literal translation?

CHAPTER XXVII.

quo — praeferrent, *in order that they might surpass the legionary soldiers.*
in extrema spe salutis. Cf. chap. 25, **in extremis suis rebus.**
virtutem praestiterunt, *displayed courage.*
ut ex tumulo, *as from a mound.*
non nequiquam, *not in vain.*
quae facilia — redegerat = quae facilia — reddiderat. Cf. iv. 3, **multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.**

CHAPTER XXVIII.

quos — dixeramus. Cf. chap. 16, **mulieres — in eum locum coniecisse.**
nihil impeditum, *nothing was a hindrance.*
vix ad quingentos, *to scarcely five hundred.*
ut — videretur. videretur in the sense of the true passive of **video,** not *seem,* but *be seen. In order that it might appear that Caesar used compassion toward,* etc.

CHAPTER XXIX.

de quibus supra scripsimus. Cf. chap. 16.
ex itinere. Cf. i. 25, **ex itinere nostros — aggressi.**
ex omnibus in circuitu partibus, *on all sides round about.*
ducentorum pedum qualifies **aditus.**
ex Cimbris Teutonisque. Cf. chap. 4.
prognati occurs rarely outside of the poets. Caesar uses the word again in vi. 18, **ab Dite patre prognatos.** Before this it occurs only in a letter of Coelius in Cic. Fam., 8, 15, 2 (Kr.).
agere ac portare, *drive and convey.* The regular expression for plunder is **agere et ferre;** cf. Greek **ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν.**
alias — alias, *at one time — at another.*
inlatum defenderent, *warded it off when brought against them.*

CHAPTER XXX.

ab tanto spatio, *so far away.* Cf. chap. 7, **ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt.**
Gallis contemptui, *contemptible to the Gauls.*

CHAPTER XXXI.

existimare, sc. **se.**
se suaque — permittere, sc. **se** as subject. Cf. chap. 3, **se suaque omnia in fidem — permittere.**
sibi praestare, *it was better for them.*

CHAPTER XXXII.

in Nerviis, *in the case of.* Cf. i. 47, **in eo peccandi causa non esset.**

ne quam – inferrent, *not to inflict any injury.*

pace usi sunt, *they enjoyed peace.*

CHAPTER XXXIII.

sub vesperum, *about evening.* See note on **sub occasum,** chap. 11.

deducturos, *would lead off.*

pellibus induxerant, *had covered with skins.*

eo concursum est, *they rushed thither.*

in extrema spe salutis. Cf. chap. 25, and chap. 27, **in extremis suis rebus.**

CHAPTER XXXIV.

cum legione una, i. e., the seventh. Cf. iii. 7, **cum legione septima.**

in dicionem potestatemque. Cf. i. 31, **dicione atque imperio.**

CHAPTER XXXV.

quae incolerent. incolere without object. Cf. i. 1, **qui trans Rhenum incolunt.**

imperata facere. Cf chap. 3, **obsides dare et imperata facere.**

inita proxima aestate, *at the beginning of the following summer.* Cf. chap. 2, **et inita aestate.**

quod – accidit nulli, *an honor which before that time had fallen to the lot of no one.* **quod** refers to the idea contained in the clause **dies – decreta est.** Observe the emphatic position of **nulli.** Note that **accidit** is used in a good sense, although the verb usually implies misfortune. Cf. **contigisse,** i. 43, and **peius accidisse,** i. 31.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

mittendi. Cf. **hiemandi** below, and ii. 1, **coniurandi.**

magno cum periculo. Observe the position of **cum** here and in **magnis cum portoriis.** Cf. i. 10.

iter, accusative. Subject of **patefieri,** which depends on **volebat.**

ipse. Agrees with **Galba,** the subject of **constituit** to be supplied.

cum. Causal.

CHAPTER II.

id. Explained by the clause **ut — caperent.**

aliquot de causis. Particularized by (1) **primum,** *first;* (2) **tum etiam,** *secondly* (then also); (3) **accedebat,** *in the third place, finally* (it was added).

accedebat. The subject is **quod — habebant.**

sibi persuasum habebant, *they were persuaded;* literally, *they had it persuaded to themselves.*

persuasum agrees with the clause **Romanos — adiungere.**

CHAPTER III.

de frumento reliquoque commeatu. Cf. i. 39, first part of the chapter.

satis esse provisum. Impersonal use; literally, *had been sufficiently provided,* i. e., sufficient provision had been made.

neque subsidio veniri (posset), *neither could aid be brought;* literally, *neither could it be come for aid.*

ad extremum = ad extremum casum. Cf. chap. 5, also **summo,** ii. 18; **angusto,** ii. 25. In these cases we have the substantive use of the adjective.

CHAPTER IV.

iis rebus conlocandis atque administrandis. The dative of the gerundive construction to denote purpose.

decurrere (et) conicere. Asyndeton. These verbs are historical infinitives. Others are **repugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superari.**

ut, *as often as.*

hoc. Explained by the rest of the sentence, **quod** etc.

non modo = non modo non. The order is **ac non modo facultas (non) dabatur defesso** etc.

relinquendi agrees with **loci.**

CHAPTER V.

cum. Temporal. Explain the difference in tense in **deficerent** and **coepissent.**

milites certiores facit, *he directs* or *commands.* The meaning here is stronger than in "he informs his soldiers." Cf. Civil War, i. 64, **ut certior fieret, ne labori suo parceret.**

CHAPTER VI.

cognoscendi. The gerund depends on **facultatem** and has **quid fieret** for its object.

sui conligendi, *to recover themselves.* **sui** is best taken, not as the genitive of the personal pronoun, but as the neuter of the possessive adjective **suus.** **suum =** *one's own, one's interest, one's self.* This is shown by the fact that the same stereo-

typed expression is employed irrespective of gender. Or **sui** may be explained as the genitive of the reflexive pronoun limiting **conligendi**, *recovering of themselves.* The genitive dependent on the gerund we meet with rarely in Latin; e. g. **poenarum sit solvendi tempus**; Lucretius, v. 1225 (the only example in his works), **eius videndi**, "of seeing her;" Ter. Hec., 372. The former theory, as remarked above, seems more reasonable.

circumventos interficiunt = circumveniunt et interficiunt.

fusis and **exutis** are both in agreement with **copiis**. **armis** depends on **exutis**.

saepius, *too often.* The meaning of the clauses which immediately follow is that he had encountered things different from his expectation when he set out.

CHAPTER VII.

atque ita, *and accordingly.*

profectus esset. **cum** is to be taken as belonging to this clause as well as to the preceding; hence the subjunctive.

mare Oceanum, i. e. the Atlantic. The Mediterranean was **mare internum**, and by way of distinction this is called **mare Oceanum**. Cf. i. 30.

CHAPTER VIII.

et in magno impetu, etc. The meaning is, that by reason of the great and unbroken violence of the sea, only a few harbors being on the coast and these held by the Veneti, they are naturally the masters of all who trade in that part of the world.

retinendi, *of detaining*, i. e., by detaining. Others follow their example.

quos dedissent. See ii. 34.

ut sunt, etc., *since* or *because.* The **ut** is causal and explanatory.

acturos — laturos, sc. **se** as subject.

suos, *his.*

sibi, *to them.*

remittat. In direct discourse what mood was used?

CHAPTER IX.

longius, *too far.* Where was Caesar? See beginning of chap. 7.

naves longas, *ships of war.*

in se, *against themselves.*

legatos — retentos — coniectos. In apposition with **facinus**.

hoc, *with the greater hope on this account*, or *this (they do) with greater hope, because* etc.

pedestria itinera esse concisa and **navigationem impeditam**. Objects of **sciebant**.

nostros exercitus — posse. Object of **confidebant.**
diutius, *very long.*
iam ut, *even though.*
longe aliam — atque, *far different from.*
naves — quam plurimas possunt, *as many ships as possible.* Cf. i. 7, **quam maximis potest itineribus.**

CHAPTER X.

multa. Its appositives are **iniuriae, rebellio, defectio, coniuratio,** and the clause **ne — arbitrarentur.**
retentorum equitum, *in the detention of the knights.* The participle **retentorum** conveys the leading idea. This thrusting into a participle of the main idea of the clause obtained a great vogue in later Latin; e. g., **cum occisus Caesar — facinus videretur**; Tac. Ann., i. 8, "when the murder of Caesar seemed," etc.; **augebat metum gnarus Romanae seditionis et — invasurus hostis**; Tac. Ann., i. 36, "the fact that the enemy were acquainted with the sedition among the Romans and the fact that they would invade, etc., increased the fear."
equitum refers to Silvius, Velanius, and others, mentioned in chap. 8.

CHAPTER XI.

adeat. Observe the omission of **ut.**
qui curet, *to see to it.*
eo, i. e., among the Veneti.

CHAPTER XII.

posita. In agreement with **oppida** implied in **situs oppidorum.**
cum, *as often as.*
pedibus, *on foot,* i. e., by land.
se incitavisset, *had come in;* literally, *had roused itself.*
navibus, *by ships,* i. e., by sea.
adflictarentur, *stranded.*
his refers to **aggere et mollibus.**
cuius rei = quarum, i. e., **navium.**
eo, *for this reason;* referring to **quod — navigandi.**

CHAPTER XIII.

factae et armatae, *were built and equipped.*
planiores, *flatter.*
excipere, *to meet, to encounter.*

contumeliam, *violence, buffeting.*

quamvis, in agreement with **vim** and **contumeliam.**

transtra, etc., *cross-beams* (made) *of timber* (**trabibus**) *a foot in thickness* (**altitudinem**) *were joined together* (**confixa**) *by iron bolts of the thickness* (**crassitudine**) *of a thumb* (**digiti pollicis**).

pro, *instead of.*

alutae tenuiter confectae, *thinly dressed leather.*

posse. Its subjects are **tempestates, impetus, onera.** It has two complementary verbs, **sustineri** to be read with the first two subjects, and **regi** to be read with **onera** All depend on **arbitrabantur.**

praestaret, sc. **classis** as subject.

reliqua, *all other things.*

pro, *considering.* See i. 2, last sentence.

illis refers to the Gauls.

nostrae, sc. **naves.**

his and **iis** refer to the ships of the Gauls.

copulis, *by grappling hooks.*

accedebat The subject is **ut — timerent.**

cum governs the verbs **coepissent, dedissent.** The next three verbs depend on **ut.**

CHAPTER XIV.

frustra, *without result;* explained by the rest of the sentence.

neque iis noceri posse, *nor could they be injured.* What is the literal translation?

quae. Subject of **convenit** and **visa est**; its antecedent is **classem.**

paratissimae, *thoroughly equipped.*

ornatissimae, *finely provided.*

nostris, sc. **navibus.**

adversae. In agreement with **naves.**

neque satis Bruto — constabat, *nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus.* The subject of **constabat** is **quid agerent — insisterent.**

noceri non posse, *no injury could be inflicted.*

has, i. e., the **turres.**

neque — et. Cf. ii. 25.

missa, sc. **tela.**

gravius, *with more disastrous effect.*

falces. In apposition with **una res.**

falcium. Governed by **absimili.**

his, i. e., mural hooks.

cum, *as often as.* Used here with the indicative; but cf. chap. 12, first sentence.

atque eo magis Cf. i. 47, **et eo magis.**

nullum — factum, *no unusually brave deed;* literally, *no deed a little braver.*

CHAPTER XV.

cum, *as often as*. Cf. chaps. 12, 14.

binae ac ternae naves, *ships by twos and threes.*

singulas, *one by one.*

quod. Subject of **fieri** and refers to last part of previous sentence.

ferebat, *was bearing, was blowing.*

malacia ac tranquillitas, *calm and stillness.*

exstitit, *stood out, prevailed.*

quae res, *this circumstance*, i e., the calm.

cum, *since;* explanatory of **noctis interventu**.

CHAPTER XVI.

cum — tum, *not only — but also.* Cf. ii. 4, near the end.

navium quod ubique fuerat, *whatever vessels they had anywhere;* literally, *what of vessels had been anywhere.*

quibus, *these*, i. e., the vessels.

vindicandum (esse), etc. The meaning is, Caesar thought that the more severe punishment ought to be inflicted on these for this reason, that, etc.

sub corona, *under the crown*, i. e. as slaves. Prisoners of war, when about to be sold into slavery, were crowned with chaplets. So it has been said, but the real origin of the expression is unknown.

CHAPTER XVII.

quas — acceperat. See chap. 11.

auctores, *authors*, i. e., to sanction the war. What is the etymological meaning of the English word "author"? Cf. **augeo**.

idoneo agrees with **loco** and determines case of **castris**.

cum. Concessive. Cf. i. 14, **cum ea ita sint**.

pugnandi potestatem faceret. Cf. i. 40, near middle.

non solum — sed etiam. Cf. chap. 16, **cum — tum**.

in contemptionem veniret. Cf. i. 18, **in spem venire**.

opinionem, *impression.*

ea causa. Explained by rest of the sentence.

eo, i. e., Caesar.

CHAPTER XVIII.

quid fieri velit. Object of **edocet**.

pro perfuga, *as if he were a deserter.*

quibus — proficiscatur. Object of **docet**.

neque longius abesse quin, *it is not further off than the next night that Sabinus*, etc.

quod, *this*, i. e., the information given above.

amittendam esse — oportere. Asyndeton.

ad castra iri oportere, *they ought to go to the camp;* literally, *it ought to be gone to the camp.*

res. Its appositives are **cunctatio, confirmatio, inopia, spes,** and **quod — credunt**.

superiorum dierum Sabini. Double genitive. Cf. ii. 17, **eorum dierum**.

prius, with **quam** following, *before*.

ut explorata victoria, *as if victory were sure.* Cf. v. 43, **sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria**.

CHAPTER XIX.

imo. See note on **extremum**, chap. 3.

ac terga verterent, *but turned their backs*, i. e., fled. **ac** after a negative clause is best rendered by *but*. See note on **non potuerunt ac terga**, iv. 35.

quos, *these fugitives*. Notice how frequently Caesar uses the relative at the beginning of a sentence where we use the demonstrative.

paucos, *but few*. Object of **reliquerunt**.

Sabinus, sc. **certior factus est**.

animus, *disposition*.

mens, *mind*.

CHAPTER XX.

ex tertia parte, *as a third part.*

finitimae. In agreement with **civitates**.

paucis annis. Nothing is known of Valerius. The defeat of Mallius is usually assigned to 78 B. C. during the Sertorian war, in which some of the Gauls participated.

non mediocrem diligentiam. Cf. i. 39, **non mediocriter**.

quo plurimum valebant, *in which they were very powerful.* Cf. ii. 17, **nihil possent** and **pedestribus valent copiis**.

CHAPTER XXI.

nostri. Subject of **cuperent**.

perspici. The subject is the clause **quid — possent**.

vertere. The short form of the third person plural of the perfect, which is rarely used in Caesar (Civil War, i. 51, iii. 63).

alias — alias, *now — again, at one time — at another.* Cf. ii. 29.

aerariae secturae, *copper mines.*

CHAPTER XXII.

condicio, *manner of living.*

amicitiae. Indirect object of **dediderint**.

qui. Subject of **recusaret**.

condicione, *terms*.

CHAPTER XXIII

oppidum. Subject of **expugnatum esse.**

ventum erat, *they had come.* Impersonal construction.

quoqueversum, *in every direction.*

finitimae. In agreement with **quae.** *Which belong to* (are of) *hither Spain, nearest to Aquitania.*

cum after **magna.** Note its position. See note on iii. 1.

quod. Explained by the clause **suas — augeri.**

animadvertit. Its object is **quod,** which is explained by **copias diduci; hostem vagari, obsidere, relinquere; frumentum commeatumque supportari; numerum augeri.**

in dies, *daily.*

CHAPTER XXIV.

prima luce. See i. 22.

esse. Its subject is **potiri.**

infirmiore animo. This ablative of quality is equivalent to an adjective. Cf. Afr. War, 78, **integros recentioribusque viribus equites.** For a like adjective phrase, see note on **ex essedis,** iv. 33.

exspectari — iretur, *they should hesitate no longer to go to the camp.*

CHAPTER XXV.

cum — cum. The first **cum** determines the mood of **complerent, depellerent,** and **praeberent;** the second **cum,** the mood of **pugnaretur** and **acciderent.**

ad pugnam, *for fighting.*

pugnaretur. Impersonal.

CHAPTER XXVI.

quid fieri velit. Object of **ostendit.**

erat imperatum. Impersonal.

intritae, from **in,** negative and **terere,** *to rub.* **Explain the use of this word;** that of the Eng. *trite.*

prius — quam, *before.*

videri. Complement of **possent** understood.

quid — gereretur. Subject of **posset.**

multa nocte, *late at night.* Cf. **multo die,** i. 22.

CHAPTER XXVII.

ultro, *besides.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

longe ac — Galli, *in a far different way from the rest of the Gauls.*

continentes silvas, *unbroken forests.* Explain the exact force of **continentes** from its composition.

longius, *too far.*

CHAPTER XXIX.

deinceps = almost an adjective **continuis,** *successively, one after another.* Cf. v. 40, **reliquis deinceps diebus,** and Civil War, iii. 56, **omnibus deinceps diebus.** The adverb is inserted between the adjective and the noun as if in imitation of the Greek idiom *οἱ τότε ἄνθρωποι, the men of that time.* For this adjective force of the adverb in an English derivative, see the word *peninsula* (**paene + insula**). **paeninsula** occurs first in Latin in poem XXXI. of Catullus.

materiam, *timber.*

ab latere, *on the flank.*

sub pellibus, *under skins,* i. e., in tents which were covered with skins.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

qui fuit — consulibus. This clause establishes the date. Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship on the first of January in the year 55 B. C.

Gnaeo – Crasso. Observe the omission of the conjunction, as in i. 35, **M. Messala — consulibus.**

magna cum multitudine. For the position of the preposition, cf. i. 10, **magno cum periculo.**

exagitati, *having been harassed.* Cf. ii. 29, **a finitimis exagitati.**

anno post, *the year after.*

ratio atque usus belli, *the art and practice of war.* Cf. ii. 20, **scientia atque usus militum.**

longius anno = **diutius anno,** *longer than one year.* Cf. vii. 9, **longius triduo.** Does **longe** usually refer to place or time? Cf. **longe** and **longius** iii. 28, **longius** i. 22, **longissime** i. 1.

maximam partem, *for the most part.*

lacte atque pecore vivunt. Cf. v. 14, **lacte et carne vivunt.**

sunt in venationibus. Cf. vi. 21, **vita omnis in venationibus — consistit.**

quae res, *and this fact.*

nullo officio — adsuefacti, *having been accustomed to no service nor discipline.*
locis frigidissimis, *though their country is very cold.*
vestitus, partitive genitive with **quicquam.**

CHAPTER II.

ut, quae — habeant, *so that they have (persons) to whom they may sell those things which they have taken in war.*
quam quo — desiderent, *than because they desire,* etc.
impenso parant pretio, *procure at a great price.* Exact meaning of **impenso**?
haec — efficiunt, *by daily exercise they make these capable of great labor.*
cum usus est, *when there is need.* For this meaning of **usus,** cf. vi. 15, **hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit, omnes in bello versantur.**
vinum — arbitrantur. Cf. ii. 15, **nihil pati vini — inferri.**

CHAPTER III.

publice — laudem, *they consider it the greatest praise as a community.* Cf. vi. 23, **civitatibus maxima laus est, quam,** etc.
una — a Suebis, *in one direction from the Suebi.*
ut est captus Germanorum, *as is the capacity* (**captus** being a noun) *of the Germans, considering the mode of life among the Germans.*
redegerunt = reddiderunt. Cf. ii. 27, **magnitudo redegerat.**

CHAPTER IV.

in eadem causa, *in the same condition.*
ad extremum tamen, *at last however.*
ad utramque ripam, *on each bank.*
transire prohibebant. For the construction with **prohibere** in this sense, cf. ii. 4, **ingredi prohibuerint.**

CHAPTER V.

infirmitatem, *fickleness.*
nihil his committendum existimavit, *thought that no confidence should be placed in them.*
est — consuetudinis, *this belongs to Gallic custom,* i. e., is a Gallic custom.
vulgus circumsistat — cogant. Notice the change in number caused by the collective idea in **vulgus.** Cf. i. 2, **civitati persuasit, ut — exirent.**
his rebus — permoti. Cf. i. 37, **quibus rebus — commotus.**
quorum — necesse est, *of which they must repent on the spot.* Cf. iv. 2.
rumoribus serviant, *are slaves to idle reports.* Cf. vii. 34, **bello servire.**

CHAPTER VI.

ne graviori — occurreret, *that he might not encounter too serious a war.*

occurreret. Cf iii. 6, in bellum incideret.

uti — discederent, *to withdraw from the Rhine,* i. e., to go farther into Gaul.

qua spe adducti, *influenced by the hope of this;* literally, *by which hope.* qua spe = huius rei spe, as in i. 9, ea civitate = ex eorum civitate, and i. 10, quae civitas = quorum civitas, and v. 19, hoc metu = huius rei metu.

constituit, *made known his resolve.*

CHAPTER VII.

quibus in locis. Cf. i. 6, quibus itineribus.

a quibus refers to ea loca.

resistere, sc. iis as antecedent of quicumque.

posse, sc. se.

possederint, *come into possession of.* For possidere in sense of potiri, cf. aer omne necessest — possidat inane, Lucret. i. 386.

concedere, *are inferior.*

neminem. Observe the emphatic position. Cf. i. 3, quod aliud iter — nullum.

CHAPTER VIII.

quae visum est, *what seemed proper.* quae object of respondere to be supplied.

verum, *reasonable, just.* Cf. Cic. Tusc. 3, 29, 73, rectum et verum est, ut amemus.

CHAPTER IX.

post diem tertium, *the third day after.*

ne propius — moveret, *that he should not advance nearer them.*

hos — equites, *they were waiting for this cavalry;* literally, *this cavalry was being waited for.*

CHAPTER X.

ex monte Vosego = ex ea parte montis; monte means here a long mountain-chain; see map. This reference is not in point considering the whole context in chap. 1.

parte quadam, *a tributary.*

neque longius milibus. Cf. i. 15, amplius — senis milibus; also i. 22, non longius — quingentis passibus.

citatus, *with a rapid current.*

sunt qui, *there are some who.*

existimantur, not the subjunctive, because sunt qui is simply equivalent to nonnulli.

capitibus, *mouths;* elsewhere the word usually signifies *sources.*

CHAPTER XI.

ut — constitutum. See chap. 9. Cf. i. 22, ut erat praeceptum.

in itinere congressi = congressi cum eo, qui in itinere erat.

praemitteret, *to send on.* Observe the omission of the object.

sibi — faceret, *that he would grant them permission.*

fecisset. For two subjects with singular verb, cf. ii. 26, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur. Many editions have fecissent. In the MSS. the nasal was indicated by a curved mark over the vowel; hence confusions were very easy; e. g. FECISSET and FECISSĒT.

eodem illo pertinere. Cf. i. 14, eodem pertinere.

CHAPTER XII.

ubi primum = cum primum or simul ac.

amplius — equites, *more than eight hundred cavalry.* What other construction after amplius? See chap. 10.

rursus resistentibus, *while our men in their turn made a stand.* Supply nostris.

subfossis, from subfodere, *stabbed underneath.*

ita perterritos egerunt. Note the force of per in perterritos. Cf. v. 17, praecipites hostes egerunt.

amicus — appellatus. Cf. i. 3, a senatu — amicus appellatus.

CHAPTER XIII.

per dolum atque insidias. Cf. i. 42, ne per insidias — circumveniretur.

exspectare; subject of esse.

cognita — infirmitate, *knowing the fickleness of the Gauls.* For this meaning of infirmitas, cf. chap. 5, et infirmitatem Gallorum.

postridie eius diei. Cf. i. 23.

Germani frequentes. Cf. chap. 1, magna cum multitudine.

sui purgandi causa, *to acquit themselves.* For the construction sui purgandi, see note on sui colligendi, iii. 6.

contra atque esset dictum, *contrary to what had been said.*

de indutiis — impetrarent, *might obtain their request for a truce by deceiving (him).* Cf. v. 36, de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse.

CHAPTER XIV.

quid ageretur, *what was going on.*

discessu suorum, *by the absence of their chiefs.*

perturbantur. The word is used in a pregnant sense. It is equivalent to *they are so confounded as to be in doubt.*

praestaret. Impersonal.

quo loco, *in this place.*

ad quos consectandos, *to pursue them.* Caesar's conduct in this matter is a specimen of the barbarity of his age. It shows the little value set upon human life when ambition was to be gratified. Plutarch tells us that this act was severely censured at Rome.

CHAPTER XV.

clamore audito, *hearing the outcry,* i. e. of their women and children, who were being slain.

suos interfici, *that their own families were being massacred.*

ad confluentem, *at the confluence.* The word is properly a participle, agreeing originally with some word which has dropped out. Cf. **continens (terra)**, continent.

ad unum omnes, *all to the last man.*

ex timore, *after the alarm.*

capitum. Cf. i. 29, **capitum Helvetiorum.**

CHAPTER XVI.

Germanico — confecto. Cf. i. 30, **bello Helvetiorum confecto.**

quarum illa fuit iustissima. *of these the following was the most important.*

suis quoque — voluit, *he desired that they should fear for their own possessions.*

accessit — quod, *moreover;* literally, *it was added also that,* etc

supra commemoravi. See chap. 9, **magnam — missam.**

eos — dederent, *to surrender those who,* etc. Observe the omission of **ut.** Cf. iii. 5, **certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent,** etc.

cur — postularet, *why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?*

occupationibus rei publicae, *by the business of the state.*

opinionem, *reputation.*

CHAPTER XVII.

neque — statuebat, *nor considered that it was consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people.*

proponebatur, *was manifest;* literally, *was presented to him.*

rationem — instituit, *he determined upon this plan of a bridge.*

tigna, *posts* or *piles.* **bina,** *in pairs.* **sesquipedalia,** *a foot and a half thick.* **ab imo praeacuta,** *sharpened at the lower end.* **dimensa ad altitudinem,** *proportioned to the depth.*

haec cum machinationibus — adegerat, *when he had sunk* (**immissa**) *these into the river by means of engines and secured them there* (**defixerat**), *and had then driven them down* (**adegerat**) *with rammers.*

sublicae modo, *like a pile.*

ut — procumberent, *so as to incline according to the current.*

contra -- conversa, *turned against the force and current of the river.*

haec utraque — distinebantur, *these (two) pairs were kept apart by timbers, two feet thick, laid on above (for two feet was the distance between the piles) with two ties at each end.*

quibus — revinctis, *these being kept apart and secured at opposite ends.*

hoc artius, *so much the more closely.*

haec contexebantur, *these were covered with timbers laid over them lengthwise.*

ac nihilo setius, *and besides all this.*

et, *also.*

pro ariete, *as a buttress.*

aliae, sc. **sublicae.**

deiciendi operis, *for the purpose of throwing down the work.* The genitive expresses purpose as if **causa** or **gratia** had been employed. Such a genitive of the gerundive is best explained as the genitive of quality. This construction is especially common in late Latin. Cf. Tac. Ann. ii. 59, **Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis.**

CHAPTER XVIII.

diebus decem, quibus, *within ten days.* Cf. iii. 23, **paucis diebus, quibus.**

firmo praesidio, *strong guard.* Cf. i. 3, **per tres — firmissimos populos.**

liberaliter respondit. Cf ii. 5, **liberaliterque oratione prosecutus.**

institui coeptus est. Why is **coeptus** passive?

CHAPTER XIX.

vicis aedificiisque. Cf. i. 5, **vicos — aedificia incendunt.**

hunc esse — medium, *this had been selected near the centre.* **medium** agrees directly with **hunc.** Cf. vi. 13, **regio totius Galliae media.**

rebus is explained by the clauses **ut — iniceret, ut — ulcisceretur**, etc.

CHAPTER XX.

exigua — reliqua. Ablative absolute. Cf. iii. 29, **reliquis item civitatibus.**

tamen in Britanniam — contendit. See description of Britain in Introduction.

omnibus — intellegebat, *because he discovered that help had been furnished to our enemy from that country in nearly all the wars with the Gauls.*

si tempus — tamen, *even if time should fail, yet*, etc.

Gallis — incognita, i. e. except the Veneti. Cf. iii. 8, **Veneti in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.** According to ii. 4, Divitiacus once had the government, — **tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit.**

iis ipsis, i. e. **mercatoribus**.

contra Gallias, *opposite to Gaul*. The plural refers to the several divisions.

quem usum, *what skill*.

CHAPTER XXI.

Volusenum. See iii. 5; vi. 41; viii. 48.

idoneum, *a suitable person*.

navi longa, *war-ship*.

ad Veneticum bellum. See iii. 9.

qui polliceantur — dare. The present infinitive for the future **se daturos esse** is a rare construction after **polliceor**. In chap. 22 the regular tense is employed, **facturos pollicerentur**.

Atrebatibus superatis, i. e. in the battle of the Sambre. See ii. 23.

ibi = apud Atrebates.

magni habebatur, *was estimated highly*.

fidem sequantur, *to embrace the alliance*. Cf. v. 20, **secutos fidem**.

seque — venturum, *that he* (Caesar) *would come*. For **se** referring to subject of preceding verb, cf. ii. 35, **ab nationibus — mitterentur — qui se — imperata facturas pollicerentur**.

CHAPTER XXII.

superioris temporis consilio, *for their former* (*hostile*) *purpose*.

anni tempus. Cf. chap. 20, **si tempus anni**.

has tantularum rerum occupationes, *attention to such trifling matters as these*. Cf. chap. 16, **occupationibus rei publicae**.

navium longarum. See chap. 21. Cf. Greek **μακρὰ πλοῖα**.

ducendum dedit, *gave to lead*. **ducendum** is in agreement with **exercitum**. This use of the gerundive to express purpose is common. An early construction, and perhaps the original (cf. note on i. 11), is the gerund as direct object of a verb and itself taking a direct object; e. g. on an old Latin inscription, **portas, turreis, moiros, turreisque aequas qum moiro faciundum coiraverunt**.

CHAPTER XXIII.

solvit, *sets sail*. Supply **naves**. For the omission of this object, cf. chap. 28, **naves** (nom.) — **leni vento solverunt**. In chap. 35 the object is expressed, **ipse — naves solvit**.

hora quarta, about 8.30 o'clock in the morning. Cf. iii. 15.

dum — convenirent, *until the rest of the ships should come there*.

ut — administrarentur, *as military science and especially the management of ships require* (*since these have a rapid and uncertain movement*) *that all things should be performed by them promptly*. Note the omission of **ut** with **administrarentur**,

and that **postularent** following **ut**, *as*, would be the indicative in direct discourse. Cf. **ut — ratio — postulabat** ii. 22.

sublatis ancoris, *the anchors having been weighed.*

CHAPTER XXIV.

quo genere = **quibus.**

egredi prohibebant. See note on **suos ingredi prohibuerint, ii. 4.** Notice the force of the imperfect.

ignotis locis. Cf. **locis frigidissimis**, chap. 1.

militibus — desiliendum, *the soldiers had to leap down.*

simul et — et — et, etc. Observe the repetition of the conjunctions (Polysyndeton).

insuefactos, *trained to this.*

CHAPTER XXV.

motus — expeditior. Cf. iii. 13, **ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret.**

naves — removeri, *to be withdrawn a little.* Obj. of **iussit.**

quae res, *this manœuvre.*

atque, *and now.*

qui — aquilam ferebat = **aquilifer.** The omitted antecedent of **qui** is the subject of **inquit.**

contestatus, *calling upon.*

ea res, *his act*, i. e., what he was about to do.

praestitero, *I shall have discharged.* The future perfect expresses here the promptness of the action.

cohortati inter se, *exhorting one another.* For **inter se** taking the place of the direct object, cf. vi. 8, **cum Galli cohortati inter se**; and vi. 40, **itaque inter se cohortati.**

ex proximis — navibus = **ii, qui in proximis navibus erant, ex iis** (i. e. **navibus**) **cum conspexissent.** The subject of **appropinquarunt** is **ii** implied in **ex proximis**, (*those*) *from the nearest.*

CHAPTER XXVI.

ab utrisque, *on both sides;* literally, *by those on both sides.*

ordines servare, *keep their ranks.*

alius alia ex navi, *one from one vessel, another from another.*

quibus signis — se aggregabat, *assembled about whatever standards he met.*

singulares, *one by one.*

in universos, *upon our collected forces.* See **universi — desiluerunt, chap. 25.**

scaphas longarum navium, *the boats belonging to the ships of war.*

simul = **simul atque**, *as soon as.*

in arido. Cf. chap. 24, **aut ex arido.**

CHAPTER XXVII.

simul atque — receperunt. Cf. ii. 12, **priusquam — reciperent.**

miserunt — polliciti sunt. Notice the asyndeton.

supra demonstraveram. See chap. 21.

oratoris modo, *in the character of ambassador.*

ut ignosceretur, *that pardon might be granted.*

in continentem. See note on **confluentem,** chap. 16.

remigrare in agros, *to retire to their country.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

supra demonstratum est. See chaps. 22 and 23.

ex superiore portu. Cf. chap. 23, **in ulteriorem portum.**

solverunt. See note on **solvit,** chap. 23.

aliae — aliae, *some — others.*

quae — solis occasum. Note the use of the adverb **propius** and the meaning of **solis occasum.** For the latter, cf. i. 1.

CHAPTER XXIX.

luna plena. Astronomical calculation fixes this time of full moon on the night of the 30th of August, 55 B. C.

qui dies, *which period* (of full moon). Cf. chap. 36, **die aequinoctii.**

aestus maximos, *spring tides.*

transportandum curaverat. See note on **ducendum dedit,** chap. 22.

id quod, *a thing which.* **id** is in apposition with the clause **magna — facta.**

quod omnibus constabat, *because it was evident to all.*

CHAPTER XXX.

principes, subject of **duxerunt.**

convenerant. See chap. 27, **principesque undique convenire — coeperunt.**

quae hoc — angustiora, *which was smaller on this account.* See below.

factu. See note on **perfacile factu,** i. 3.

ex — discēdere. Cf. chap. 27, **remigrare in agros.**

CHAPTER XXXI.

ex eventu navium, *from the fate of the ships.* Cf. viii. 23, **quae Bellovacorum speculabantur eventum.**

ex eo quod, *from the fact that.*

ad omnes casus, *against every emergency.*

quae — naves, earum, *of those ships which,* etc.

quae — usui, *whatever was of use.*

reliquis ut — effecit, *he brought it about that the voyage could be made well enough with the rest.*

CHAPTER XXXII.

frumentatum, supine.

neque ulla – interposita, *no suspicion of war having arisen as yet.*

hominum, i. e., the Britons.

ventitaret, *kept coming again and again*. Note that the tense and the derivative ending combine to make this a double imperfect.

quam consuetudo ferret, *than usual;* literally, *than custom brought.*

id, quod erat, *that which was really the case.*

aliquid – consilii. In apposition with **id.**

armari, *to arm themselves.* The verb has a middle or reflexive force. The passive voice is a development of the middle, denoting the action upon the subject. A verb of this kind shows the easy transition to the passive. A survival of the middle voice is met with in the deponent verbs **utor, fruor, etc.,** and the ablative after them is explained as an ablative of means; e. g. **vescor carne,** *I eat meat;* literally, *I support myself by means of meat.*

aegre sustinere, *to stand their ground with difficulty.* For **sustinere** used absolutely, cf. ii. 6, **sustinere non posse,** and chap. 11, at end.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

genus hoc – pugnae, *their method of fighting from chariots is as follows.* **ex essedis** is a prepositional phrase which is taken with **pugnae** almost in the sense of an adjective. **ex essedis pugnae**, *chariot fighting*. Cf. v. 13, **omnes ex Gallia naves = omnes Gallicae naves.**

cum se – insinuaverunt, *when they have worked themselves in among the troops of cavalry.*

ita mobilitatem – praestant, *thus they display the speed of horse and the firmness of foot in battles.*

per temonem percurrere, *run along the pole.*

CHAPTER XXXIV.

eius adventu. Cf. iii. 23, **quorum adventu.**

hostes constiterunt, nostri – receperunt. For the asyndeton, cf. i. 18, **concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet.**

ad lacessendum. Observe the omission of the object.

alienum tempus, *an unfavorable time.*

quae – prohiberent, *so as to keep our men in camp and hinder the enemy from fighting.*

sui liberandi, *of freeing themselves.* What part of speech is **sui**? See note on **sui colligendi**, iii. 6.

quanta – daretur. Indirect question after **demonstraverunt.**

CHAPTER XXXV.

idem — fore, *the same thing would occur which,* etc.

ut — effugerent. In apposition with **idem.**

de quo ante dictum est. See chap. 21.

ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt, *were not able to bear, but turned their backs.* For this use of **ac, et,** and **que** after a negative clause, cf. chap. 36 **non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt;** also iii. 19, **ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent;** and vii. 4, **non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum.** Our idiom requires the adversative conjunction.

tanto spatio — quantum, *as far as;* literally, *over as much space as.*

CHAPTER XXXVI.

legati — de pace venerunt. Cf. i. 27, **Helvetii — legatos de deditione — miserunt;** ii. 6, **qui legati de pace — venerant;** chap. 27, **legatos de pace miserunt.**

die aequinoctii, *the time of the equinox.*

hiemi navigationem subiciendam, *that the voyage should be exposed to foul weather.*

portus capere, *to reach the port.* Cf. chap. 26, **cursum tenere atque insulam capere**

et — delatae sunt. See note on **ac,** chap. 35, **ac terga verterunt.**

CHAPTER XXXVII.

quibus ex navibus, i. e. the two transports mentioned in chap. 36, **onerariae duae.**

non ita magno, *not very large.*

circumsteterunt, *surrounded them.* For the omission of an object, cf. i. 48, **si qui — deciderat, circumsistebant.**

ad clamorem, *at the cry.*

postea — quam = posteaquam by tmesis. A fragment of Ennius shows an excessive case of tmesis which is a curiosity, — **saxo cere comminuit brum = saxo cerebrum comminuit,** *he crushed his head with a stone.*

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

qui cum, *since they.*

siccitates. The plural of the abstract noun is explained by the plural **paludum.** Cf. vi. 30, **silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates.**

superiore anno. See iii. 28 and 29.

quo — reciperent, *whither they could betake themselves.*

supplicatio. Cf. ii. 35, **dies quindecim supplicatio.**

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION.

The numerals indicate the chapters in the Text upon which the Vocabulary of the Exercise is based.

I. 2.

H. 431, 4; A. & G 255; G. 409. H. 416, N. 1; A. & G. 245, *b*; G. 408, N. 2. H. 424; A. & G. 253; G. 397. H. 421, 1; A. & G. 249; G. 407. H. 491; A. & G. 286; G. 510.

Of the Helvetians, Orgetorix was by far the most wealthy. When Messala was consul, the nobility was incited by his desire for sovereignty to form a conspiracy. He persuades the state to go forth from the territory. [1]"Will it not be very easy, O Helvetians, since you excel all in valor, to get the power of the whole of Gaul? To this I can persuade you the more easily, because the character of the country confines you on every side; on the one side, the Rhine, a very deep river, separates our land from the Germans; on the other side Mt. Jura is between us and the Sequani." These circumstances caused the Helvetians to range less widely and less easily make war upon all persons. Hence it resulted that the men were affected with great sorrow, since they were fond of war. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso these Helvetians thought that considering their renown for bravery their territory was too narrow, although it extends 240 miles.

[1] Introduce by **nonne**.

I. 3.

H. 542, III; A. & G. 300; G. 432. H. 497, II; A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1. H. 544, 1; A. & G. 296; G. 427. H. 547, N. 1; A. & G. 303, R.; G. 436.

By these facts Orgetorix induced them to provide such things as were necessary for their departure. [1]It was necessary that they should buy up as great a number

[1] **oportere.**

as possible of beasts of burden, make as large sowings as possible, in order that plenty of grain might be on hand, and establish peace with their neighbors. Two years are sufficient to execute their designs. The third year was fixed by them for their departure. Orgetorix, [2] having taken upon himself the embassy to the states, persuades Casticus to seize the power in his own state. Dumnorix was much beloved by the people, and attempts the same, since the daughter of Orgetorix had been given him in marriage. It was a very easy thing for the Helvetians to accomplish their attempts, because Orgetorix could obtain the sovereignty of his own state, and there was no doubt that they were the most powerful of Gaul. "I assure you," [3] says Orgetorix, "that I shall get the power with my own army." The Helvetians, incited by this speech, and [2] giving a pledge to one another, hope that they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.

[2] Ablative absolute. [3] inquit.

I. 5, 6.

H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250; G. 403. H. 380, II, 2; A. & G. 258; G. 337. H. 497, II; A. & G. 317; G. 545, 1. H. 503, I; A. & G. 320; G. 631, 1. H. 642–644; A. & G. 376; G. app.

After the death of Orgetorix the Helvetians attempted to do that which had been resolved upon, namely, to go forth from their territory. Thinking that they were ready for this undertaking, they set fire to their towns, about twelve in number. All the grain is burned, except what can be carried with them. The Helvetians take away the hope of a return home, and are ready to undergo all dangers. [1] Each one should carry forth from home for himself provisions for three months. [2] The Rauraci are persuaded to adopt the same plan. [3] And so the Rauraci burn down their towns and set out with the Helvetians, who had united to themselves the Boii, dwelling on the other side of the Rhine. Of the two routes by which it was possible to go forth from the country, one was so narrow that scarcely the wagons could be drawn in single file, over which a very high mountain hangs. [4] Hence they fear that a very few might hinder them; the other was much easier, and the Helvetians thought that they could persuade the Allobroges to allow them to pass through their territory. A day was appointed on which they all should meet at the Rhone. This day was not the 18th of April, but [5] without doubt they must meet on the 28th of March.

[1] cuique cibaria efferenda. [2] Rauracis persuadetur. [3] itaque. [4] hac de causa vereri ne. [5] sine dubio.

I. 9, 10.

H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585. H. 385; A. & G. 227; G. 346. H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. H. 386; A. & G. 228; G. 347.

If the Sequani were unwilling, the Helvetians could not pass by the way which was left. They send Dumnorix to persuade them, since his popularity had great influence among the Sequani, and since Dumnorix himself was anxious for a revolution and wished to have as many states as possible attached to him. Therefore, [1] having undertaken the affair, he persuaded the Sequani not to hinder the Helvetians in their march, but allow them to pass without harm. When it was reported to Caesar that the Helvetians were intending to march through the territory of the Sequani, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to have warlike men in an open country. For these reasons Titus Labienus is appointed to the command of the fortifications [2] which had been made. By forced marches Caesar proceeded to Italy in order to levy two legions and march with them by the nearest route across the Alpes into Further Gaul. After having routed the Centrones, who attempted to hinder his army on the march, and [3] having arrived in the territory of the Vocontii, he led his army among the Segusiani, who were the first beyond the Province.

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] Participle. [3] Introduce by a cum clause.

I. 12.

H. 529, II; A. & G. 334; G. 467. H. 500, II; A. & G. 319; G. 552. H. 443, N. 1; A. & G. 191; G. 325, R. 6.

The Saône flows through the territories of the Haedui with such incredible slowness that the eye cannot determine in which direction it flows. When spies informed Caesar that the Helvetians were crossing this river by rafts joined together, he sets out from the camp with three legions about the third watch, and comes up with a part of their forces, because all of them had not yet crossed the stream. This division [1] was encumbered with baggage and did not expect that Caesar would attack them. A great part of them was cut to pieces; the rest [2] betaking themselves to flight concealed themselves in the nearest woods. Of the four cantons into which the Helvetian state is divided, this one is called Tigurinus, [3] a canton which having left their home, and [4] having slain Lucius Cassius the

[1] Participle. [2] Introduce by cum clause. [3] Omit. [4] Ablative absolute.

consul, sent the Roman army under the yoke. Caesar [5]was uncertain whether [6]it happened by the design of the immortal gods [5]or not that the part of the Helvetian state which had brought calamity upon the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty. Because Lucius Piso had been slain by the Tigurini, Caesar could avenge not only the public but also his private wrongs.

[5] **nescire utrum — necne.** [6] **fieri.**

I. 14.

H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216; G. 372. H. 351, 1, N. 3; A. & G. 210, 6; G. 456. H. 533, III; A. & G. 219; G. 376. H. 234; A. & G. 129; G. 251. H. 388; A. & G. 232; G. 355. H. 507, III; A. & G. 508; G. 597.

"I feel less hesitation," [1]says Caesar, "because I remember those things which you have mentioned; and I feel the more indignant in proportion as they have happened to us undeservedly. We are not conscious of having done any wrong, for if we were conscious, it would not be difficult to be on guard. But we are not aware that we have done anything on account of which we should fear; and [2]should we fear without cause? But even if I were willing to forget your former wrongs, can I also lay aside the remembrance of recent outrages? You attempted a march through the Province against my will, and you molested the Haedui. [3]Do you insolently boast of your victory and wonder that you have committed wrongs for so long a time with impunity? But remember that the gods are wont to grant to persons a greater prosperity in order that they may suffer the more severely from a reverse of circumstances. Although these things are so, yet, if you give hostages to me in order that I may know that you will do what you [4]promise, I will make peace with you."

[1] **inquit.** [2] Introduce by **num**, implying what answer? [3] Introduce by **ne** enclitic. [4] Future perfect.

I. 18.

H. 419, II; A. & G. 251; G. 400. H. 426, 2; A. & G. 258, *d*; G. 411, R. 2. H. 546, 1; A. & G. 302; G. 435. H. 390, II; A. & G. 233; G. 356.

Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was indicated by the speech of Liscus. But very many were present, and Caesar, [1]being unwilling that these matters should be discussed, [2]dismissing the council, detained Liscus. When Caesar inquired from him about those things which he had said, Liscus spoke boldly.

[1] Introduce by a **quod** clause. [2] Ablative absolute or a temporal clause.

"Dumnorix, O Caesar, is a man of great favor with the people on account of his liberality, and there is no [3]doubt that he is eager for a revolution. For many years no one dared to bid against him when he bid. By these means he increased his own property in order that he might maintain constantly, at his own expense, a great number of cavalry. This man Dumnorix had great influence at home and among the neighbouring states, [4]for he had given his mother in marriage to a most noble man among the Bituriges, and himself had taken a wife from the Helvetians, [5]having given his sister in marriage into other states. Since he favors the Helvetians on account of this connection, he hates the Romans, O Caesar, because by their arrival they [6]caused his power to become weak, and restored his brother, Divitiacus, to his former position of influence. If anything happens to the Romans, he will entertain the highest hope of gaining the power, but under the rule of the Romans he will despair of royalty."

[3] **dubium quin.** [4] **namque.** [5] **Ablative absolute or a temporal clause.** [6] **facere ut.**

I. 22, 23.

H. 440, 2, N. 1; A. & G. 193; G. 291, R. 2. H. 417; A. & G. 247; G. 398. H. 521, II, 2; A. & G. 325; G. 585. H. 379; A. & G. 257; G. 335. H. 398, 5; A. & G. 214, *g*; G. 369.

At day-break, when Labienus had possession of the summit of the mountain, and the enemy's camp was not farther off than a mile and a half, nor had the enemy discovered the arrival of Labienus, Considius at full speed comes up to him. "The mountain," he says, "which you, O Caesar, wished should be seized by Labienus, is in possession of the enemy." Caesar, [1]leading his forces to the next hill, draws them up in line of battle. He had ordered Labienus not to engage in battle unless he saw his forces near the enemy's camp, in order that they might make the attack upon the enemy at the same time; but, having taken possession of the mountain, to wait for our men, and refrain from battle. Late in the day Caesar learns that our men have possession of the mountain, and following the enemy, he pitches his camp three miles from theirs. On the next day he was not more than eighteen miles from Bibracte, the largest town of the Haedui, and since he must serve out grain to his army within two days, he advances to Bibracte in order to provide for a supply of grain. Caesar does not know [2]whether the Helvetians thought that he, filled with terror, was retreating, or believed that they could cut him off from provisions.

[1] **Introduce by a temporal clause. Why cannot the present participle be used?**
[2] **utrum — an.**

I. 26.

H. 301; A. & G. 146, *c*; G. 208. H. 515, III; A. & G. 326; G. 587. H. 379; A. & G. 256; G. 336.

The battle was fought vigorously. When the Helvetians could not withstand the attack of the Romans, they betook themselves, the one party to the mountain, the other to the baggage. Although no one could see a retreating enemy, yet [1]the battle had lasted until evening. The Helvetians fought also at the baggage till late at night, because their wagons had been placed as a rampart. The Romans were wounded by the weapons thrown from the higher ground against them. Late at night [2]they got possession of the camp of the Helvetians and captured the daughter of Orgetorix. After that battle the enemy marched during the whole of the night, and arriving in the territory of the Lingones delayed there. Caesar had to send messengers to the Lingones because our men were not able to follow them on account of the wounds of the soldiers. If the Lingones had assisted them with grain, Caesar would have regarded them in the same light as the Helvetians.

[1] Impersonal construction. [2] Sink into a participial construction.

I. 31.

H. 497, II, 2; A. & G. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2. H. 503, II, 1; A. & G. 320, *b*; G. 631, 1. H. 546; A. & G. 302; G. 435. H. 429; A. & G. 256; G. 393.

There are two parties in Gaul, the power of which the Haedui and Arverni hold. The Arverni and the Sequani call upon the Germans, because these two parties have been struggling with one another for many years. The Germans, about 15,000, having crossed the Rhine, fell in love with the refinement of the Gauls. The Haedui, broken by engagements and calamities, were compelled to give as hostages to the Sequani the nobles of their state. They [1]promised that they would not demand hostages in return, nor refuse to be under their rule. Divitiacus fled from his state and came to the senate [2]at Rome to ask aid. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, has settled among the Sequani, and has seized upon a portion of their land, and is providing room and settlement for the Harudes, who have come a few months before. In a few years all the Germans will cross the Rhine, for the land of Gaul must not be compared with the land of the Germans. Moreover, Ariovistus, having defeated the forces of the Gauls, demands hostages; for he is a savage and his commands ought not to be borne. Unless

[1] polliceri. [2] Romam; why?

there be some aid in Caesar, the Gauls must seek another dwelling-place, remote from the Germans. Divitiacus does not doubt that if these things should be disclosed to Ariovistus, he would punish all the hostages. Moreover, Caesar himself, either by his own influence or the recent victory, can prevent a greater number of Germans from being brought over the Rhine.

I. 35, 36.

H. 517; A. & G. 320, *e*; G. 633. H. 507, II; A. & G. 307; G. 596, 1. H. 507, III; A. & G. 308; G. 597. H. 507, I; A. & G. 306; G. 595.

If Ariovistus had been treated with great kindness by Caesar, [1] why should he make this return? If he should be invited to a conference, he would not think that he ought to say anything in regard to the common interests. Caesar demands of him that he should not bring any body of men across the Rhine. He [2] commands him to restore the hostages which he has from the Haedui. The Roman people will entertain a feeling of friendship toward him, if he will do this. But if Caesar does not obtain these desires, he will not overlook the wrongs of the Haedui, because the senate had decreed that whoever should hold the province of Gaul, as far as it could be done in the interest of the republic, should defend the friends of the Roman people. But it is the right of war that if the Germans had conquered the Haedui they should govern them in whatever manner they pleased. Because Ariovistus did not dictate to the Roman people as to the manner in which they should use their right, he ought not to be obstructed by the Romans in his right. The Haedui [3] have tried the fortune of war, have engaged in arms, and have been conquered. Caesar is doing a great wrong, because he is making the revenues of Ariovistus less valuable to him. Ariovistus said that no one ever came into an encounter with him without ruin to himself. If Caesar should come into an engagement with him, he would know what the invincible Germans could achieve, for they are trained to arms above all others.

[1] cur. [2] iubeo. [3] Use only one principal clause.

I. 40.

H. 516, II; A. & G. 341, *d*; G. 628. H. 384, II, 5; A. & G. 230; G. 217. H. 390, I; A. & G. 233; G. 356. H. 353; A. & G. 211; G. 458.

It is not the duty of centurions to inquire in what direction Caesar is marching. Why [1] should any one judge that Ariovistus, having sought the friendship

[1] Present subjunctive, deliberative question.

of the Romans in the consulship of Caesar, would depart from his duty? Caesar is persuaded that he will not reject the favor of the Roman people. If the Romans should have to make war upon him, since he is driven on by madness, they ought not to despair of their own valor because they have made a trial of the same enemy within the memory of their fathers. These same men the Helvetians conquered, and in the unsuccessful battle of the Gauls Ariovistus fell upon them tired out by the long duration of the war; for he gave them no [2]opportunity for an encounter, but gained the victory more by stratagem than valor. What, therefore, should the Romans fear? It is Caesar's concern that the Sequani furnish grain in order that they who ascribe their fear to a pretence in regard to provisions may not distrust him. If the soldiers were not obedient to the command of their general, Caesar would go with only the tenth legion.

[2] sui potestatem.

II. 4.

H. 501. I, 1; A. & G. 319; G. 553, 3. H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. H. 449, I; A. & G. 196; G. 309.

The Belgae sprang from the Germans. They crossed the Rhine at an early date and settled there, driving out the Gauls who inhabited[1] that region. They are the only people who prevented the Teutones from entering their territory. The result is that from the remembrance of those events they assume great haughtiness. The Remi say that they have known everything regarding their number, because they are united to them by alliances; [2]and therefore they know what number each state of the Belgae has promised for that war. The Bellovaci are the most powerful of them in valor. These promised [3]to muster 100,000 armed men, demanding the command of the war. The Suessiones are their neighbors, who possess a very fertile country. Divitiacus, who was their king, is the most powerful man of all Gaul. and held the government of a great part of Britain. But their king now is Galba, upon whom they have conferred the direction of the whole war.

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] quam ob rem. [3] Future infinitive.

II. 19, 20.

H. 554, I, 2, N.; A. & G. 156, *a*; G. 643. H. 524; A. & G. 336; G. 650. H. 523, III; A. & G. 339; G. 652.

Caesar, having sent on his cavalry, follows with all his forces. The plan of march is different from that which the Belgae had reported. The enemy from

time to time betaking themselves into the woods, and again making an attack upon the Romans, [1] caused them to [2] fear to follow them in their retreat. The six legions having arrived measured out the work in order to fortify the camp. Having seen the first part of the baggage-train of the Romans, after they had arranged their line of battle and encouraged one another, rushing out suddenly with all their troops, they make an attack upon our cavalry. Caesar tells us that he had to do everything at one time; that he [3] gave orders to his soldiers that they should display the standard which is the sign when it is necessary to run to arms; that the signal had to be given by the trumpet; that the soldiers had to be summoned who had proceeded some distance in order to seek materials for the rampart; that the line of battle had to be formed; that he had to encourage the soldiers; that the watchword had to be given. The sudden approach of the enemy prevented a great part of these arrangements, but Caesar said let the soldiers wait for no command from him, but do whatever seemed proper.

[1] **facere ut.** [2] **vereri ne.** [3] **impero.**

III. 9, 10.

H. 529, I; A. & G. 334; G. 467. H. 529, II; A. & G. 342; G. 629. H. 503, I; A. & G. 320; G. 631, 1.

Caesar says that he was informed of these things by Crassus, although he was far away. He orders ships of war to be built, and sailors to be provided for them. These are matters which can be quickly executed. Caesar hastens to the army as soon as the season of the year permitted. The Veneti, because they knew they had committed a great crime in that they had thrown into prison the ambassadors, a name which among all nations had always been sacred, prepared for war. They relied greatly on the character of their country, for they knew that the marches by land were cut off by estuaries. The Romans are not acquainted with the harbors of those localities where they would carry on the war, for navigation is very different in a narrow sea from what it is in the open ocean. Caesar is informed that they are fortifying their towns and conveying grain from the country. There is [1] no doubt that many things were urging Caesar to that war, for if he should overlook this part, the other nations would think that the same thing was permitted them. He thought that he ought to divide his army in order that more states might not unite in the conspiracy.

[1] **non dubium quin.**

III. 24, 25, 26.

H. 523–531; A. & G. 336–339; G. 648–661.

Put in indirect discourse after **Crassus dicit**:

At the break of day he drew up all his forces and marshalled them in a double line. The auxiliaries he stationed in the centre, and waited to see what plan the enemy would adopt. Although they supposed they might fight safely, yet they thought it safer to gain the victory without a wound by cutting off the provisions. If the Romans should begin to retreat, they intended to attack them, since they would be encumbered in their march. They approved of this plan, and although the leaders led forth the Romans, yet they kept themselves in their camp. When Crassus observed this, he marched to the camp of the enemy to the great satisfaction of all his soldiers, for the enemy by their delay had made the Roman soldiers more eager for fight, who thought that delay ought to be made no longer in going to the camp. Some fill the ditch, and others throwing many darts drive the defenders from the fortifications. Crassus did not rely much on the auxiliaries, yet they were supplying stones and presented the appearance of men engaged in battle. The weapons of the enemy did not fall upon the Romans without effect, because they were fighting from their higher position. The cavalry went around the camp of the enemy and reported to Crassus that it had an easy approach at the ducuman gate. Crassus urges the commanders of the cavalry to arouse the men with promises of reward, and shows what he desires to be done. [1] They were commanded to lead forth the cohorts, which had been left as a guard for the camp, by a longer way, in order that the enemy might see them. With these cohorts which I have mentioned they arrived at the fortifications. The Romans hearing a shout began to fight more vigorously. The enemy were surrounded on all sides, and tried to seek safety in flight. The cavalry pursued these, and returned to the camp late at night.

[1] **impero,** impersonal construction. Why?

IV. 13, 14, 15.

H. 491–496; A. & G. 285–287; G. 509–519.

Put in indirect discourse after **Caesar dixit**:

After this battle Caesar thought that he ought not to hear the ambassadors nor accept conditions from those who had sued for peace and made war by treachery. The forces of the enemy will be increased, and the cavalry will return. Would it not be the greatest madness to wait? Caesar knows the fickleness of the Gauls,

and feels how much influence the enemy have gained among them. A very opportune event occurred, namely, that a large body of Germans came to the camp practising the same treachery, but as they pretended, [1] for the sake of acquitting themselves for having engaged in battle the day before. Caesar was glad that they had come into his power and detains them. Leading all his forces out of the camp, he commanded the cavalry to follow the line which was in a state of fear in consequence of the late battle. Having completed a march of eight miles, he arrived at the camp of the enemy before the Germans could perceive what was taking place. By all these circumstances they are alarmed and are perplexed as to whether it would be better to defend the camp or seek safety by flight. The soldiers burst into the camp, aroused by the treachery of the preceding day. Those of the enemy who could get their arms withstood the Romans and engaged in battle among the wagons. The women and boys who had departed from home and crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. Caesar sent his cavalry to pursue these. The Germans, hearing the noise behind them, saw that their own families were being killed, and throwing away their arms fled out of camp. When they arrived at the Rhine, they despaired of future escape, because a great number of them had been killed. Accordingly they threw themselves into the river and perished, for they were overcome by the violence of the stream. The Roman soldiers returned to the camp all safe to a man, and with very few wounded. Caesar gave an opportunity of departing to those whom he had detained in the camp. But they feared torture from the Gauls, and expressed a desire to remain with Caesar.

[1] **sui purgandi causa.** **What part of speech is sui?**

IV. 33, 34.

The student should be especially careful to avoid a wrong use of the present participle in this lesson.

The Britons have the following mode of fighting with the chariots. First, after having ridden in all directions, they throw their weapons in order that they may disturb the ranks of the enemy, for oftentimes the very fear of their horses is able to do this. Then after they have worked them in between the troops of cavalry, leaping from their horses, they fight on foot. The charioteers, having withdrawn a little distance, so place the chariots that, if the Britons be overcome by the enemy, they may have an easy retreat. They have acquired so much skill by daily practice that they can check their horses even on a steep place, and are accustomed to guide them at full speed. Running along the pole they quickly return to their chariots. The Romans were disturbed by these circumstances, and Caesar brought

aid to them at a seasonable time, for although the enemy were provoking them, they would not engage in battle. Caesar thinking that he ought to hold his soldiers in his own quarter led back the legions to the camp, after a little time had intervened. The rest of the Britons departed. For many days in succession storms confined our men to the camp, but did not prevent the enemy from sending messengers to all parts [1]to report how good an opportunity was afforded of freeing themselves forever, if the Romans could be driven from the camp. Collecting a great force of cavalry they came upon the Roman camp.

[1] Relative clause of purpose.

VII. 20.

Vercingetorix is accused of treason, because he [1]moved his camp nearer the Romans, because he went away with all the cavalry, because he left so great forces under no command, because the Romans came with such haste after his departure. All these circumstances could not happen by chance. He preferred to hold the sovereignty of Gaul by the permission of Caesar rather than by their favor. Vercingetorix, being accused in such a way, replies as follows to these charges: "I moved the camp on account of a want of provisions, and you yourselves urged me to do this. I approached nearer the Romans because I was persuaded by the favorable location which could defend us. Moreover, the service of the cavalry will be more useful than in marshy ground. When I departed I gave the command to no one designedly, lest he should be driven by the desire of the multitude to an engagement with the Romans. You should give thanks to fortune, if the Romans have come by chance, and if any one has invited them, you should feel grateful to him, because you can see the smallness of their number. I do not desire power from Caesar, because I can have it by victory, for victory is assured to us. Listen to the Roman soldiers in order that you may know that I speak these words truly." Some slaves are brought forward whom Vercingetorix, having captured while they were on a foraging expedition, had tortured by hunger, in order that they might say that they, being legionary soldiers, had gone forth from camp to find some grain in the fields, that the whole army did not have strength to bear the labor of work, and that the general had decided to lead off his army. "These are the benefits," says Vercingetorix, "that you receive from me." He said moreover that he had made provision that no state should receive the army in its flight within its territory.

[1] Subjunctive. Why?

De Bello Civili, III. 41.

As soon as Caesar knew that Pompey was at Asparagium, setting out [1] for that place with his army, and having captured the town of the Parthinians on his march, in which Pompey had a [2] garrison, he [3] reached Pompey on the third day, and pitched his camp near him. On the next day, leading forth all his forces, he gave Pompey an opportunity of an engagement. But when he perceived that he [4] kept within [5] his own quarter, leading back his army he thought that he must adopt some other plan. And so on the next day he set out with all his troops through a narrow road to Dyrrachium, [6] hoping that Pompey would be compelled to go to Dyrrachium. It happened that Pompey was [7] cut off from communication with that town, because he thought Caesar was compelled to depart through the scarcity of provisions. When he was informed by scouts in regard to the plan of Caesar, he moved his camp, hoping [8] to meet him [9] by taking a shorter road. Caesar, suspecting that this might happen, arrived in [10] the morning at Dyrrachium and encamped there.

[1] **eodem.** [2] **praesidium.** [3] **pervenire ad.** [4] **tenere se.** [5] **suis locis.** [6] **sperare.** [7] **intercludi ab.** [8] **occurrere posse.** [9] **breviore itinere.** [10] **mane.**

WORD LISTS.

I. — *Verbs which occur over* 100 *times.*

1. cognosco.
2. dico.
3. facio.
4. habeo.
5. iubeo.
6. mitto.
7. possum.
8. relinquo.
9. sum.
10. venio.
11. video.

II. — *Verbs which occur from* 75–100 *times.*

12 constituo.
13. contendo.
14. do.
15. existimo.
16. interficio.
17. proficiscor.
18. recipio.

III. — *Verbs which occur from* 50–75 *times.*

19. accipio.
20. capio.
21. coepi.
22. cogo.
23. contineo.
24. convenio.
25. discedo.
26. fero.
27. gero.
28. impero.
29. pervenio.
30. peto.
31. pugno.
32. teneo.
33. transeo.
34. volo.
35. utor.

IV. — *Verbs which occur from* 40–50 *times.*

36. absum.
37. accido.
38. adduco.
39. arbitror.
40. conficio.
41. consisto.
42. infero.
43. instituo.
44. intellego.
45. pono.
46. prohibeo.

V. — *Verbs which occur from* 30–40 *times.*

47. ago
48. appello.
49. audio.
50. committo.
51. confirmo.
52. conicio.
53. conloco
54. conor.
55. consuesco.
56. deduco.
57. demonstro.
58. dimitto.
59. duco.
60. efficio.
61. exspecto.
62. impedio.
63. intermitto.
64. munio
65. paro.
66. perterreo.
67. reverto.
68. sequor.
69. traduco.

VI. — *Verbs which occur from* 20–30 *times.*

70. accedo.
71. adeo.
72. administro.
73. amitto.
74. animadverto.
75. audeo.
76. circumvenio.
77. cohortor.
78. comparo
79. compleo.
80. confero.
81. confido.
82. consido.
83 defendo.
84. defero.
85. deligo.
86. despero.
87. educo.
88. egredior.
89. eo.
90. incendo.
91. ineo.
92. moror.
93. nascor.
94. nuntio.
95. occupo.
96. oppugno.
97. obtineo.
98. orior.
99. ostendo.
100. pello.
101. perfero.
102. perspicio.
103. persuadeo.
104. pertineo.
105. polliceor.
106. postulo.
107. praeficio.
108. praesum.
109. premo.
110. progredior.
111. puto.
112. reduco.
113. reperio.
114. resisto.
115. tollo.
116 trado.
117. vereor.

VII. — *Verbs which occur from* 10–20 *times.*

118. abdo.
119. adfero.
120. adficio
121. adiungo.
122. adorior.
123. appropinquo.
124. adsum.
125. arcesso.
126. armo.
127. attingo.
128. augeo.
129. cedo.
130. circumsisto.
131. cogito.
132. communico.
133. concedo.
134. concurro.
135. coniungo.
136. conloquor.
137. comprehendo.
138. consequor.
139. conspicio.
140. conspicor.
141. consto.
142. consulo.
143. consumo.
144. convoco.
145. curo.
146. debeo.
147. dedo.
148. deficio.
149. deicio.
150. desero.
151. desisto.
152. desum.
153. dimico
154. diripio.
155. dispono.
156 distribuo.
157. divido.
158. dubito.
159. eripio.
160. evoco.
161. excedo.
162. excipio.
163. excito.
164. exeo.
165. expedio.
166. expello.
167. experior.
168. exploro.
169. expugno.
170. fugio.
171. hiemo.
172. hortor.
173. impetro.
174. incito.
175. incolo.
176. inquit.
177. insequor.
178. instruo.
179 intercludo.
180. iudico.
181. laboro.
182 lacesso.
183. licet.
184. maneo.
185. moveo.
186. nanciscor.
187. neglego.
188. noceo.
189. nosco.
190. occido.
191. occulto.
192. occurro.
193. offero.
194. oportet.
195. opprimo.

196. oro.
197. pateo.
198. patior.
199. perduco.
200. perficio.
201. permaneo.
202. permitto.
203. permoveo.
204. perturbo.
205. potior
206. praemitto.
207. probo.
208. procedo.
209. produco.
210. profugio.
211. proicio.
212. pronuntio.
213. propono.
214. provideo.
215. quaero.
216. queror.
217. reddo.
218. redeo.
219. redigo.
220. refero.
221. reficio.
222. remaneo.
223. remitto.
224. renuntio.
225. repello.
226. respondeo.
227. retineo.
228. scio.
229. sentio.
230. servo.
231. spero.
232. statuo.
233 studeo.
234. subsequor.
235. succedo.
236. tempto.
237. timeo.
238. transporto.
239. valeo.
240. vasto.
241. verso.
242. vulnero.

VIII. —*Nouns which occur over* 100 *times.*

1. bellum.
2. castra.
3 causa.
4. civitas.
5. consilium.
6. copia.
7. dies.
8. eques.
9. equitatus.
10. exercitus.
11. finis.
12. flumen.
13. hostis.
14. legatus.
15. legio.
16. locus.
17. miles.
18. navis.
19. numerus.
20. oppidum.
21. pars.
22. proelium.
23. res.
24. tempus.

IX. —*Nouns which occur from* 75–100 *times.*

25. arma.
26. homo.
27. multitudo.
28. populus.

X. —*Nouns which occur from* 50–75 *times.*

29. ager.
30. animus.
31. annus.
32. auxilium.
33. frumentum.
34. fuga.
35. imperium.
36. munitio.
37. obses.
38. passus.
39. periculum.
40. praesidium
41. princeps.
42. silva.
43. spes.

XI. —*Nouns which occur from* 40–50 *times.*

44. acies.
45. adventus.
46. cohors.
47. hiberna.
48. impedimentum.
49 impetus.
50. manus.
51. murus.
52. nihil.
53. nox.
54. opus.
55 pes.
56. provincia.
57. ratio.
58. regio.
59. salus.
60. signum.

XII. — *Nouns which occur from* 30–40 *times.*

61. agmen.
62. amicitia.
63. barbarus.
64. collis.
65. concilium.
66. consuetudo.
67. domus.
68. fides.
69. fortuna.
70. iniuria.
71. ius.
72. labor.
73. mons.
74. natura.
75. nuntius.
76. pons.
77. porta.
78. pugna.
79. victoria.
80. usus.

XIII. — *Nouns which occur from* 20–30 *times.*

81. aditus.
82. agger.
83. altitudo.
84. auctoritas.
85. captivus.
86. casus.
87. celeritas.
88. centurio.
89. clamor.
90. commeatus.
91. dux.
92. equus.
93. eruptio.
94. explorator.
95. facultas.
96. fossa.
97. frater.
98. inopia.
99. latus.
100. littera.
101. magistratus.
102. magnitudo.
103. modus.
104. mors.
105. opinio.
106. oratio.
107. ordo.
108. palus.
109. pax.
110. potestas.
111. senatus.
112. subsidium.
113. tribunus.
114. turris.
115. via.
116. vulnus.

XIV. — *Nouns which occur from* 10–20 *times.*

117. adulescens
118. aedificium.
119. aestas.
120. aestus.
121. aetas.
122. amicus.
123. aqua.
124. beneficium.
125. caedes.
126. calamitas.
127. caput.
128. castellum.
129. circuitus.
130. cliens.
131. condicio.
132. conloquium.
133. conspectus.
134. controversia.
135. cursus.
136. defectio.
137. difficultas.
138. diligentia.
139. discessus.
140. dolor.
141. essedarii.
142. fama.
143. filius.
144. gladium.
145. hiems.
146. hora.
147. ignis.
148. imperator.
149 incommodum.
150 intervallum.
151 iugum.
152. laus.
153. legatio.
154. liberi.
155. libertas.
156. longitudo.
157. mare.
158. mercator.
159 mos.
160. motus
161. natio.
162. noctu.
163. nomen.
164. oceanus.
165. officium.
166. opera.
167. oppugnatio
168. pagus.
169. pater.
170. pecunia.
171. pecus.
172. pedes.
173. peditatus.
174. pilum.
175. poena.
176. portus.

177. **praeda.**
178. **praemium.**
179. **principatus.**
180. **profectio.**
181. **regnum.**
182. **rex.**
183. **ripa.**
184. **scutum.**
185. **sententia.**
186. **servitus.**
187. **silentium.**
188. **socius.**
189. **sol.**
190. **species.**
191. **statio.**
192. **studium.**
193. **summa.**
194. **supplicium.**
195. **suspicio.**
196. **tempestas.**
197. **tergum.**
198. **terra.**
199. **triduum.**
200. **vadum.**
201. **ventus.**
202. **vigilia.**
203. **vir.**
204. **vita.**
205. **voluntas.**
206. **vox.**

TRANSLATION.

I. — Verbs which occur over 100 times.

1. *know.*
2. *say.*
3. *do.*
4. *have.*
5. *command.*
6. *send.*
7. *be able.*
8. *leave.*
9. *be.*
10. *come.*
11. *see.*

II. — Verbs which occur from 75–100 times.

12. *arrange.*
13. *strain.*
14. *give.*
15. *suppose.*
16. *kill.*
17. *set out.*
13. *recover.*

III. — Verbs which occur from 50–75 times.

19. *receive.*
20. *take.*
21. *begin.*
22. *compel.*
23. *hold together.*
24. *come together.*
25. *depart.*
26. *bear.*
27. *carry.*
28. *command.*
29. *arrive.*
30. *seek.*
31. *fight.*
32. *hold.*
33. *go across.*
34. *wish.*
35. *use.*

IV. — Verbs which occur from 40–50 times.

36. *be away.*
37. *fall upon.*
38. *lead to.*
39. *think.*
40. *accomplish.*
41. *take a stand.*
42. *bring in.*
43. *set in order.*
44. *know.*
45. *place.*
46. *hold off.*

V. — Verbs which occur from 30–40 times.

47. *drive.*
48. *call.*
49. *hear.*
50. *join together.*
51. *strengthen.*
52. *throw together.*
53. *place together.*
54. *attempt.*
55. *become accustomed.*

56. *lead down.*
57. *show.*
58. *let go away.*
59. *lead.*
60. *make out.*
61. *wait for.*
62. *entangle.*
63. *stop.*
64. *fortify.*
65. *prepare.*
66. *terrify.*
67. *return.*
68. *follow.*
69. *lead across.*

VI. — **Verbs which occur from 20–30 times.**

70. *approach.*
71. *go to.*
72. *perform.*
73. *let slip.*
74. *attend to.*
75. *dare.*
76. *surround.*
77. *encourage.*
78. *get ready.*
79. *fill.*
80. *bring together.*
81. *trust.*
82. *settle.*
83. *defend.*
84. *carry down.*
85. *select.*
86. *despair.*
87. *lead out.*
88. *march out.*
89. *go.*
90. *burn.*
91. *go in.*
92. *delay.*
93. *be born.*
94. *report.*
95. *seize.*
96. *attack.*
97. *hold.*
98. *arise.*
99. *show.*
100. *drive.*
101. *carry through.*
102. *see through.*
103. *persuade.*
104. *tend.*
105. *promise.*
106. *demand.*
107. *put before.*
108. *be before.*
109. *press.*
110. *advance.*
111. *think.*
112. *lead back.*
113. *find.*
114. *resist.*
115. *raise.*
116. *hand over.*
117. *fear.*

VII. — **Verbs which occur from 10–20 times.**

118. *put away.*
119. *bring to.*
120. *affect.*
121. *join to.*
122. *assail.*
123. *approach.*
124. *be near.*
125. *summon.*
126. *equip.*
127. *touch upon.*
128. *increase.*
129. *make way.*
130. *stand around.*
131. *consider.*
132. *communicate.*
133. *allow.*
134. *run together.*
135. *join together.*
136. *speak together.*
137. *grasp together.*
138. *follow.*
139. *espy.*
140. *see.*
141. *stand together.*
142. *take counsel.*
143. *destroy.*
144. *call together.*
145. *take care.*
146. *owe.*
147. *give over.*
148. *fail.*
149. *cast down.*
150. *abandon.*
151. *stand off.*
152. *be lacking.*
153. *fight.*
154. *seize.*
155. *place about.*
156. *assign.*
157. *divide.*
158. *doubt.*
159. *snatch away.*
160. *call out.*
161. *go out.*
162. *take out.*
163. *rouse.*
164. *go out.*
165. *disentangle.*
166. *drive out.*
167. *experience.*
168. *examine.*
169. *attack.*
170. *fly.*
171. *pass the winter.*
172. *encourage.*
173. *obtain.*
174. *urge on.*
175. *dwell.*
176. *say.*
177. *follow up.*

178. *fit up.*
179. *cut off.*
180. *decide.*
181. *toil.*
182. *provoke.*
183. *it is allowed.*
184. *remain.*
185. *move.*
186. *get.*
187. *disregard.*
188. *injure.*
189. *learn.*
190. *kill.*
191. *conceal.*
192. *run to.*
193. *offer.*
194. *it behooves.*
195. *overwhelm.*
196. *pray.*
197. *lie open.*
198. *suffer.*
199. *lead through.*
200. *complete.*
201. *remain.*
202. *grant.*
203. *influence.*
204. *disturb.*
205. *become master of.*
206 *send forward.*
207. *approve.*
208. *go forward.*
209. *lead forward.*
210. *flee forth.*
211. *cast forth.*
212. *publish forth.*
213. *place before.*
214. *foresee.*
215. *search for.*
216. *complain.*
217. *give back.*
218. *go back.*
219. *reduce.*
220. *bring back.*
221. *repair.*
222. *remain behind*
223. *send back.*
224. *report.*
225. *drive back.*
226. *reply.*
227. *hold back.*
228. *know.*
229. *perceive.*
230. *guard.*
231. *hope.*
232. *establish.*
233. *be eager for.*
234. *follow on.*
235. *come up.*
236. *try.*
237. *fear.*
238. *bring over.*
239. *be strong.*
240. *lay waste.*
241. *turn.*
242. *wound.*

VIII. — Nouns which occur over 100 times.

1. *war.*
2. *camp.*
3. *cause.*
4. *citizenship.*
5. *deliberation.*
6. *abundance.*
7. *day.*
8. *horseman.*
9. *cavalry.*
10. *army.*
11. *end.*
12. *river.*
13. *enemy.*
14. *ambassador.*
15. *legion.*
16. *place.*
17. *soldier.*
18. *ship.*
19. *number.*
20. *stronghold.*
21. *part.*
22. *battle.*
23 *thing.*
24. *time.*

IX. — Nouns which occur from 75–100 times.

25. *arms.*
26. *human being.*
27 *multitude.*
28. *people.*

X. — Nouns which occur from 50–75 times.

29. *land.*
30. *spirit.*
31. *year.*
32. *aid.*
33. *grain.*
34. *flight.*
35. *command.*
36. *fortification.*
37. *hostage.*
38. *pace.*
39. *danger.*
40. *garrison.*
41. *chief.*
42. *forest.*
43. *hope.*

XI. — Nouns which occur from 40–50 times.

44. *line.*
45. *arrival.*
46. *cohort.*
47. *winter quarters.*
48. *hindrance.*
49. *attack.*
50. *hand.*
51. *wall.*
52. *nothing.*
53. *night.*
54. *work.*
55. *foot.*
56. *province.*
57. *reckoning.*
58. *direction.*
59. *health.*
60. *sign.*

XII. — Nouns which occur from 30–40 times.

61. *army.*
62. *friendship.*
63. *foreigner.*
64. *hill.*
65. *meeting.*
66. *custom.*
67. *house.*
68. *faith.*
69. *fortune.*
70. *injustice.*
71. *justice.*
72. *toil.*
73. *mountain.*
74. *nature.*
75. *messenger.*
76. *bridge.*
77. *gate.*
78. *fight.*
79. *victory.*
80. *use.*

XIII. — Nouns which occur from 20–30 times.

81. *approach.*
82. *mound.*
83. *height.*
84. *prestige.*
85. *captive.*
86. *accident.*
87. *swiftness.*
88. *centurion.*
89. *shout.*
90. *passage.*
91. *leader.*
92. *horse.*
93. *sally.*
94. *scout.*
95. *ease.*
96. *ditch.*
97. *brother.*
98. *want.*
99. *side.*
100. *letter.*
101. *magistracy.*
102. *greatness.*
103. *measure.*
104. *death.*
105. *notion.*
106. *speech.*
107. *series.*
108. *marsh.*
109. *peace.*
110. *power.*
111. *senate.*
112. *reserve.*
113. *tribune.*
114. *tower.*
115. *way.*
116. *wound.*

XIV. — Nouns which occur from 10–20 times.

117. *youth.*
118. *building.*
119. *summer.*
120. *heat.*
121. *age*
122. *friend.*
123. *water.*
124. *well-doing.*
125. *massacre.*
126. *disaster.*
127. *head.*
128. *fortress.*
129. *circuit*
130. *vassal.*
131. *condition.*
132. *conference.*
133. *sight.*
134. *dispute.*
135. *running.*
136. *defection.*
137. *difficulty.*
138. *care.*
139. *departure.*
140. *pain.*
141. *charioteers.*
142. *report.*
143. *son.*
144. *sword.*
145. *winter.*
146. *hour.*
147. *fire.*
148. *commander.*
149. *disadvantage*
150. *interval.*
151. *yoke.*
152. *praise.*

153. *embassy.*
154. *children.*
155. *freedom.*
156. *length.*
157. *sea.*
158. *trader.*
159. *custom.*
160. *movement.*
161. *race.*
162. *at night.*
163. *name.*
164. *ocean.*
165. *service.*
166. *work.*
167. *siege.*
168. *district.*
169. *father.*
170. *money.*
171. *cattle.*
172. *footman.*
173. *infantry.*
174. *javelin.*
175. *penalty.*
176. *harbor.*
177. *booty.*
178. *reward.*
179. *first place.*
180. *departure.*
181. *kingdom.*
182. *king.*
183. *bank.*
184. *shield.*
185. *opinion.*
186. *slavery.*
187. *silence.*
188. *companion.*
189. *sun.*
190. *appearance.*
191. *position.*
192. *zeal.*
193. *sum.*
194. *punishment.*
195. *suspicion.*
196. *season.*
197. *back.*
198. *earth.*
199. *three days.*
200. *ford.*
201. *wind.*
202. *watch.*
203. *man.*
204. *life.*
205. *willingness.*
206. *voice.*

CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. **abundo.**
2. **accelero.**
3. **accommodo.**
4. **accuso.**
5. **adaequo.**
6. **adamo.**
7. **adequito.**
8. **adflicto.**
9. **adhortor.**
10. **adiudico.**
11. **adiuvo.**
12. **admaturo.**
13. **administro.**
14. **admiror.**
15. **advoco.**
16. **advolo.**
17. **aedificio.**
18. **aequo.**
19. **aestimo.**
20. **aggrego.**
21. **agito.**
22. **alieno.**
23. **amplifico.**
24. **apparo.**
25. **appello.**
26. **applico.**
27. **apporto.**
28. **approbo.**
29. **appropinquo.**
30. **arbitror.**
31. **armo.**
32. **castigo.**
33. **celo.**
34. **certo.**
35. **circumdo.**
36. **circumsto.**
37. **circumvallo.**
38. **clamito.**
39. **clamo.**
40. **coacervo.**
41. **coagmento.**
42. **coarcto.**
43. **cogito.**
44. **cohortor.**
45. **comitor.**
46. **commemoro.**
47. **commendo.**
48. **commeo.**
49. **commoror.**
50. **communico.**
51. **commuto.**
52. **comparo.**
53. **comporto.**
54. **comprobo.**

55. concerto.
56. concilio.
57. concito.
58. conclamo.
59. concrepo.
60. concurso.
61. condemno.
62. condono.
63. confirmo.
64. conflagro.
65. conflicto.
66. coniuro.
67. conlaudo.
68. conligo.
69. conloco.
70. conor.
71. consecro.
72. consector.
73. conservo.
74. consolor.
75. conspicor.
76. conspiro.
77. consterno.
78. constipo.
79. consto.
80. consulto.
81. contabulo.
82. contionor.
83. convoco.
84. cremo.
85. creo.
86. cunctor.
87. curo.
88. damno.
89. decerto.
90. declaro.
91 defatigo.
92 delecto.
93. delibero.
94. delibro.
95. deligo.
96. demigro.
97. demonstro
98. demoror.
99. denego.
100. denuncio.
101. depopulor.
102. deporto.
103. depravo.
104. deprecor.
105. depugno.
106. derivo.
107. derogo.
108. deseco.
109. desidero.
110. designo.
111. despero.
112. destino.
113. despolio.
114. detestor.
115. detracto.
116. deturbo.
117. devoco.
118. dico.
119. diiudico.
120. dimico.
121. discepto.
122. disparo.
123. disputo.
124. dissimulo.
125. dissipo.
126. disto.
127. disturbo.
128. divulgo.
129. do.
130. dominor.
131. dono.
132. dubito.
133. duplico.
134. duro.
135. effemino.
136. emigro.
137. enumero.
138. enuntio.
139. erro.
140. evoco.
141. evolo.
142. exaequo.
143. exagito.
144. exanimo.
145. examino.
146. excepto.
147. excito.
148. excogito.
149. excrucio.
150. excubo.
151. exculco.
152. excuso.
153. exercito.
154. existimo.
155. expio.
156. exploro.
157. expugno.
158. exspecto.
159. exsto.
160. fastigo.
161. firmo.
162. flagito.
163. flo.
164. fraudo.
165. frumentor.
166. fugo.
167. fumo.
168. glorior.
169. gratulor.
170. gravo.
171. gusto.
172. habito.
173. haesito.
174. hiemo.
175. hortor.
176. ignoro.
177. imitor.
178. immolo.
179. impero.
180. impetro.
181. implico.
182. imploro.
183. importo.
184. impugno.
185. incito.
186. increpito.
187. increpo.
188. incuso.
189. indico.

190. indignor.
191. insidior.
192. insimulo.
193. insinuo.
194. inspecto.
195. instigo.
196. insto.
197. interpello.
198. interpretor.
199. interrogo.
200. intro.
201. invito.
202. iacto.
203. iudico.
204. iuro.
205. iuvo.
206. laboro.
207. lacrimo.
208. laudo.
209. lavo.
210. laxo.
211. levo.
212. libero.
213. mando.
214. materior.
215. maturo.
216. minor.
217. miror.
218. miseror.
219. moderor.
220. moror.
221. multo.
222. navigo.
223. navo.
224. neco.
225. nego.
226. negotior.
227. nomino.
228. nudo.
229. nuntio.
230. nuncupo.
231. obsecro.
232. observo.
233. obsigno
234. obtempero.
235. obtestor.
236. occulto.
237. occupo.
238. occurso.
239. onero.
240. oppugno.
241. orno.
242. oro.
243. ostento.
244. paco.
245. papulor.
246. parento.
247. paro.
248. pecco.
249. perequito.
250. periclitor.
251. persevero.
252. persto.
253 perturbo.
254. pervagor.
255. placo.
256. populor.
257. porto.
258. postulo.
259. praecipito.
260. praecor.
261. praedico.
262. praedor
263 praeoccupo.
264 praeopto.
265 praeparo.
266. probo.
267. proclino.
268. procuro.
269 proelior.
270. profligo.
271 pronuntio.
272. propero.
273. propulso.
274. proturbo.
275. provolo.
276. publico.
277. pugno.
278. purgo.
279. puto.
280 recito.
281. reclino.
282 recupero.
283. recuso.
284. redintegro
285. regno.
286. relego.
287. remigo.
288. remigro.
289. remunero.
290. renuntio.
291. reporto.
292. repudio.
293. repugno.
294. reservo.
295. revoco.
296. rogo.
297. sano.
298. seco.
299. sector.
300. separo.
301. servo.
302. sevoco.
303. significo.
304. simulo.
305. sollicito.
306. sono.
307. specto.
308. speculor.
309. spero.
310. spolio.
311. sto.
312. sublevo.
313. subministro
314. supero.
315. supporto.
316 suspicor.
317. sustento.
318. tempero.
319. tempto.
320. territo.
321. tolero.
322. transnato.
323. transporto.
324. trepido.

325. **tumultuo.**
326. **vaco.**
327. **vagor.**
328. **vasto.**
329. **ventito.**
330. **verso.**
331. **versor.**
332. **veto.**
333. **vexo.**
334. **vindico.**
335. **violo.**
336. **vito.**
337. **voco.**
338. **vulgo.**
339. **vulnero.**

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. **abstineo.**
2. **adaugeo.**
3. **adhibeo.**
4. **adiaceo.**
5. **admoneo.**
6. **ardeo.**
7. **audeo.**
8. **augeo.**
9. **careo.**
10. **caveo.**
11. **censeo.**
12. **coerceo.**
13. **commoveo.**
14. **compleo.**
15. **confiteor.**
16. **contineo.**
17. **debeo.**
18. **deleo.**
19. **demoveo.**
20. **deterreo.**
21. **detineo.**
22. **devoveo.**
23. **dissuadeo.**
24. **distineo.**
25. **doceo.**
26. **doleo.**
27. **edoceo.**
28. **egeo.**
29. **emineo.**
30. **exerceo.**
31. **expleo.**
32. **exterreo.**
33. **extorqueo.**
34. **faveo.**
35. **ferveo.**
36. **fleo.**
37. **gaudeo.**
38. **habeo.**
39. **horreo.**
40. **impendeo.**
41. **indigeo.**
42. **indulgeo.**
43. **inrideo.**
44. **intueor.**
45. **invideo.**
46. **iaceo.**
47. **iubeo.**
48. **lateo.**
49. **liceor.**
50. **maneo.**
51. **medeor.**
52. **mereor.**
53. **moneo.**
54. **moveo.**
55. **noceo.**
56. **obsideo.**
57. **obtineo.**
58. **oportet.**
59. **pareo.**
60. **pateo.**
61. **permaneo**
62. **permisceo.**
63. **permoveo.**
64. **persuadeo.**
65. **perterreo.**
66. **pertineo.**
67. **placeo.**
68. **paenitet.**
69. **polliceor.**
70. **possideo.**
71. **posthabeo.**
72. **praebeo.**
73. **praecaveo.**
74. **profiteor.**
75. **prohibeo.**
76. **promineo.**
77. **promoveo.**
78. **proterreo.**
79. **provideo.**
80. **pudet.**
81. **recenseo.**
82. **remaneo.**
83. **removeo.**
84. **repleo.**
85. **resideo.**
86. **respondeo.**
87. **retineo.**
88. **soleo.**
89. **studeo.**
90. **submoveo.**
91. **subsideo.**
92. **supersedeo.**
93. **sustineo.**
94. **taceo.**
95. **teneo.**
96. **terreo.**
97. **timeo.**
98. **torreo.**
99. **tueor.**
100. **urgeo.**
101. **valeo.**
102. **vereor.**
103. **video.**
104. **voveo.**

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. abdo.
2. abduco.
3. abicio.
4. abiungo.
5. abripio.
6. abscido.
7. abscindo.
8. absisto.
9. abstraho.
10. accedo.
11. accĭdo.
12. accīdo.
13. accipio.
14. accurro.
15. acquiro.
16. addico.
17. addo.
18. adduco.
19. adficio.
20. adfigo.
21. adfingo.
22. adfligo.
23. adhaeresco.
24. adicio.
25. adigo.
26. adimo.
27. adipiscor.
28. adiungo.
29. adlicio.
30. adligo.
31. admitto.
32. adolesco.
33. adsisto.
34. adsuefacio.
35. adsuesco.
36. adverto.
37. ago.
38. alo.
39. amitto.
40. animadverto.
41. antecedo.
42. antepono.
43. anteverto.
44. appello.
45. appeto.
46. arcesso.
47. ascendo.
48. ascisco.
49. attexo.
50. attingo.
51. attribuo.
52. averto.
53. caedo.
54. cano.
55. capio.
56. carpo.
57. cedo.
58. cerno.
59. cingo.
60. circumcīdo.
61. circumcludo.
62. circumduco.
63. circumfundo.
64. circumicio.
65. circummitto.
66. circumplector.
67. circumsisto.
68. circumspicio.
69. circumvenio.
70. claudo.
71. coëmo.
72. cognosco.
73. cogo.
74. colo.
75. comburo.
76. committo.
77. commonefacio.
78. compello.
79. complector.
80. compono.
81. comprehendo.
82. concedo.
83. concĭdo.
84. concīdo.
85. concipio.
86. concludo.
87. concurro.
88. conduco.
89. conficio.
90. confido.
91. configo.
92. confligo.
93. confluo.
94. confugio.
95. confundo.
96. congero.
97. congredior.
98. conicio.
99. coniungo.
100. conligo.
101. conloquor.
102. conquiesco.
103. conquiro.
104. conscendo.
105. conscisco.
106. conscribo.
107. consequor.
108. consido.
109. consisto.
110. conspicio.
111. consterno.
112. constituo.
113. consuesco.
114. consulo.
115. consumo.
116. consurgo.
117. contigo.
118. contemno.
119. contendo.
120. contexo.
121. contingo.
122. contraho.
123. convalesco.
124. conveho.
125. converto.
126. ccrripio.

127. corrumpo.
128. credo.
129. cresco.
130. cupio.
131. curro.
132. decedo.
133. decerno.
134. decīdo.
135. decipio.
136. decurro.
137. dedo.
138. deduco.
139. defendo.
140. deficio.
141. defigo.
142. defugio.
143. deicio.
144. deligo.
145. delitesco.
146. demeto.
147. deminuo.
148. demitto.
149. demo.
150. depello.
151. dependo.
152. deperdo.
153. depono.
154. deposco.
155. deprehendo.
156. deprimo.
157. derelinquo.
158. derivo.
159. descendo.
160. desino.
161. desisto.
162. despicio.
163. destituo.
164. destringo.
165. detraho.
166. deuro.
167. deveho.
168. devinco.
169. dico.
170. diduco.
171. diffido.
172. diffluo.
173. diffundo.
174. diligo.
175. diminuo.
176. dimitto.
177. dirigo.
178. dirimo.
179. diripio.
180. discedo.
181. discerno.
182. edico.
183. edisco.
184. edo.
185. educo.
186. efficio.
187. effodio.
188. effugio.
189. effundo.
190 egredior.
191. eicio.
192. elicio.
193. eligo
194. eloquor.
195. emitto.
196. emo.
197. enitor.
198. erigo.
199. eripio.
200. erumpo.
201. evado.
202. evello.
203. evinco.
204. exardesco.
205. excedo.
206. excello.
207. excīdo.
208. excipio.
209. excludo.
210. exigo.
211. expello.
212. expono.
213. exposco.
214. exprimo.
215. exquiro
216. exsequor.
217. exsero.
218. exsisto.
219. exstinguo.
220. exstruo.
221. extendo.
222. extimesco.
223. extollo.
224. extraho.
225. extrudo.
226. exuo.
227. exuro.
228. facio.
229. fallo.
230. fingo.
231. fio.
232. flecto.
233. fodio.
234. frango.
235. fruor.
236. fugio.
237. fundo.
238. fungor.
239. gero.
240. ignosco.
241. immitto.
242. impello.
243. impono.
244. incedo.
245. incīdo.
246. incīdo.
247. incipio.
248. includo.
249. incolo.
250. incumbo.
251. indico.
252. induco.
253. induo.
254. inficio.
255. infigo.
256. inflecto.
257. influo.
258. infodio.
259. ingredior.
260. inicio.
261. iniungo.

262. innascor.
263. innitor.
264. inrumpo.
265. insequor.
266. insero.
267. insisto.
268. instituo.
269. instruo.
270. insuefacio.
271. intego.
272. intelligo.
273. intendo.
274. intercedo.
275. intercipio.
276. intercludo.
277. interdico.
278. interficio.
279. intericio.
280. intermitto.
281. interpono.
282. interrumpo.
283. interscindo.
284. intexo.
285. introduco.
286. intromitto.
287. introrumpo.
288. invado.
289. inveterasco.
290. iacio.
291. iungo
292. labor.
293. lacesso.
294. laedo.
295. lego.
296. loquor.
297. mansuefio.
298. maturesco.
299. meto.
300. minuo.
301. mitto.
302. molo.
303. morior.
304. nanciscor.
305. nascor.
306. neglego.
307. nitor.
308. nosco.
309. nubo.
310. obduco.
311. obicio.
312. obliviscor.
313. obsisto.
314. obstringo.
315. obstruo.
316. occīdo.
317. occīdo.
318. occurro.
319. offendo.
320. omitto.
321. oppono.
322. opprimo.
323. ostendo.
324. pando.
325. parco.
326. pario.
327. pasco.
328. patefacio.
329. patefio.
330. patior.
331. pello.
332. pendo.
333. perago.
334. percipio.
335. percurro.
336. percutio.
337. perdisco.
338. perdo.
339. perduco.
340. perficio.
341. perfringo.
342. perfugio.
343. pergo.
344. perlego.
345. perluo.
346. permitto.
347. perpetior.
348. perquiro.
349. perrumpo.
350. perscribo.
351. persequor.
352. persolvo.
353. perspicio.
354. perveho.
355. peto.
356. pono.
357. porrigo.
358. posco.
359. postpono.
360. praecedo.
361. praecipio.
362. praecludo.
363. praecurro.
364. praeduco.
365. praeficio.
366. praefigo.
367. praemetuo.
368. praemitto.
369. praepono.
370. praerumpo.
371. praescribo.
372. praetermitto
373. praeterveho.
374. praeuro.
375. praeverto.
376. prehendo.
377. premo.
378. procedo.
379. procumbo.
380. procurro.
381. prodo.
382. produco.
383. proficio.
384. proficiscor.
385. profluo.
386. profugio.
387. profundo.
388. progredior.
389. proicio.
390. promitto.
391. propello.
392. propono.
393. proripio.
394. proruo.
395. prosequor.
396. prospicio.

397. prosterno.
398. protego.
399. proveho.
400. quaero.
401. queror.
402. rado.
403. recedo.
404. recido.
405. recipio.
406. reddo.
407. redigo.
408 redimo.
409. reduco.
410. reficio.
411. refringo.
412. refugio.
413. rego.
414. regredior.
415. reicio.
416. relanguesco.
417. relinquo.
418. reminiscor.
419. remitto.
420. remollesco.
421. repello.
422. repeto.
423. reposco.
424. reprehendo.
425. reprimo.
426. requiro.
427. rescindo.
428. rescisco.
429. rescribo.
430. resido.
431. resisto.
432. respicio.
433. respuo.
434. restinguo.
435. restituo.
436. retraho.
437. revello.
438. reverto.
439. sapio.
440. satisfacio.
441. scindo.
442. scribo.
443. secludo.
444. sequor.
445. sero.
446. sino.
447. solvo.
448. statuo.
449. stringo.
450. struo.
451. subduco.
452. subigo.
453. subicio.
454. subluo.
455. submitto.
456. subruo.
457. subsequor.
458. subsido.
459. subsisto.
460. subtraho.
461. subveho.
462. succedo.
463. succendo.
464. succumbo.
465. succurro.
466. sufficio.
467. suffodio.
468. sumo.
469. suppeto.
470. suscipio.
471. suspicio.
472. sustollo.
473. tango.
474. tego.
475. tendo.
476. tollo.
477. trado.
478. traho.
479. traicio.
480. transcendo.
481. transfigo.
482. transfodio.
483. transgredior.
484. transicio.
485. transmitto.
486. transveho.
487. tribuo.
488. ulciscor.
489. vendo.
490. vergo.
491. verto.
492. vinco.
493. vivo.

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. adorior.
2. aperio.
3 audio.
4. circumvenio.
5. communio.
6. comperio.
7. consentio.
8. convenio.
9. coorior.
10. definio.
11. desilio.
12. devenio.
13. devincio.
14. dimetior.
15. dissentio.
16. evenio.
17. exaudio.
18. exorior.
19. expedio.
20. experior.
21. finio.
22. impedio.
23. insilio.
24. intervenio.

25. **invenio.**
26. **largior.**
27. **metior.**
28. **mollio.**
29. **munio.**
30. **obvenio.**
31. **orior.**
32. **patior.**
33. **pervenio.**
34. **potior.**
35. **praesentio.**
36. **praesepio.**
37. **provenio.**
38. **reperio.**
39. **revincio.**
40. **saevio.**
41. **sancio.**
42. **sarcio.**
43. **scio.**
44. **sentio.**
45. **servio.**
46. **subvenio.**
47. **venio.**
48. **vestio.**

IRREGULAR VERBS.

(**sum, fero, volo, fio, eo,** and their compounds.)

1. **abeo.**
2. **absum.**
3. **adeo.**
4. **adfero.**
5. **adsum.**
6. **antefero.**
7. **circumeo.**
8. **coeo.**
9. **confero.**
10. **defero.**
11. **desum.**
12. **differo.**
13. **effero.**
14. **eo.**
15. **exeo.**
16. **fero.**
17. **fio.**
18. **ineo.**
19. **infero.**
20. **intereo.**
21. **intersum.**
22. **introeo.**
23. **malo.**
24. **nolo.**
25. **offero.**
26. **patefio.**
27. **pereo.**
28. **perfero.**
29. **possum.**
30. **praetereo.**
31. **prodeo.**
32. **profero.**
33. **prosum.**
34. **redeo.**
35. **refero.**
36. **subeo.**
37. **transfero.**
38. **volo.**

FORMATION.

VERBAL DERIVATIVES.

Nouns derived from Verbs, with the terminations **or, ium, tio, tus, tura,** forming abstracts; **men** and **mentum** expressing the means or subject of an action; **tor** denoting the agent.

1. **aditus.**
2. **adiūtor.**
3. **adventus.**
4. **aedificium.**
5. **aestimatio.**
6. **agmen.**
7. **anfractus.**
8. **antecursor.**
9. **aquatio.**
10. **armamentum.**
11. **armatura.**
12. **aspectus.**
13. **auctor.**
14. **auditio.**
15. **auxilium.**
16. **beneficium.**
17. **certamen.**
18. **circuitus.**
19. **clamor.**
20. **cogitatio.**
21. **cognatio.**

22. cohortatio.
23. comitium.
24. commeatus.
25. commissura.
26. commutatio.
27. compendium.
28. complexus.
29. concessus.
30. concursus.
31. conditio.
32. confirmatio.
33. coniectura.
34. coniuratio.
35. conloquium.
36. consensio
37. consensus.
38. conspectus.
39. contabulatio.
40. contemptio.
41. contemptus.
42. contentio.
43. continuatio.
44. conventus.
45. cruciatus.
46. cultus.
47. cunctatio.
48. cursus.
49. decessus.
50. deditio
51. defatigatio.
52. defectio.
53. defensio.
54. deiectus.
55. delectus.
56. deprecator.
57. despectus.
58. desperatio.
59. detrimentum.
60. devexus.
61. dictio.
62. dimicatio.
63. disceptator.
64. discessus.
65. discrimen.
66. disputatio.
67. discensio
68. documentum.
69. dominatio.
70. dubitatio.
71. ductus.
72. egressus.
73. eruptio.
74. eventus.
75. excursio.
76. excusatio.
77. exercitatio
78. exercitus
79. existimatio.
80. exitus.
81. explorator.
82. expugnatio.
83. factio.
84. flumen.
85. fremitus.
86. frumentatio.
87. frumentum.
88. gratulatio
89. gubernator.
90. impedimentum.
91. imperator.
92. imperium.
93. impulsus.
94. incendium.
95. incursio.
96. incursus.
97. initium.
98. inruptio.
99. instrumentum.
100. interitus.
101. interventus.
102. introitus.
103. inventor.
104. iactura.
105. iunctura.
106. laetatio.
107. languor.
108. largitio.
109. legatio.
110. lignatio.
111. lignator.
112. machinatio.
113. maleficium.
114. mentio.
115. mercator.
116. mercatura.
117. molimentum.
118. momentum.
119. motus.
120. munimentum.
121. munitio.
122. natura.
123. navigatio.
124. navigium.
125. negotium.
126. nomen.
127. numen.
128. obitus.
129. obsessio.
130. occasio.
131. occasus.
132. occultatio.
133. occupatio.
134. offensio.
135. officium.
136. oppugnatio.
137. oratio.
138. ornamentum.
139. ostentatio.
140. pabulatio.
141. pabulator.
142. perfugium.
143. perturbatio.
144. pollicitatio.
145. populatio.
146. possessio.
147. procurator.
148. proditio
149. proditor.
150. profectio.
151. propugnator
152. prospectus.
153. proventus.
154. pudor.
155. quaestio.
156. quaestor.

157. **quaestus.**
158. **questus.**
159. **ratio.**
160. **receptus.**
161. **recessus.**
162. **reditio.**
163. **reditus.**
164. **remedium.**
165. **satisfactio.**
166. **sectio.**
167. **seditio.**
168. **sepultura.**
169. **significatio.**
170. **simulatio.**
171. **statio.**
172. **statura.**
173. **status.**
174. **stramentum.**
175. **subductio.**
176. **subsidium.**
177. **subvectio.**
178. **successus.**
179. **sudor.**
180. **suffragium.**
181. **suggestus.**
182 **sumptus.**
183. **supplementum.**
184. **supplicatio.**
185. **tabulatio.**
186. **tegimentum.**
187. **testamentum.**
188. **timor.**
189. **tormentum.**
190. **tractus.**
191. **transiectus.**
192. **transmissus.**
193. **ululatus.**
194. **usus.**
195. **vacatio.**
196. **vaticinatio.**
197. **venatio.**
198. **venator.**
199. **vultus.**

ADJECTIVAL DERIVATIVES.

Nouns derived from Adjectives, with the terminations **ĭtas** (etas, No. 90; tas, No. 30), **ia** (itia, No. 9; ities, No. 91), **itudo** (udo, No. 22), **itus,** denoting the quality possessed by the adjective.

1. **acclīvitas.**
2. **acerbitas.**
3. **adfinitas.**
4. **adolescentia.**
5. **adrogantia.**
6. **aequitas.**
7. **alacritas.**
8. **altitūdo.**
9. **amentia.**
10. **amicitia.**
11. **amplitudo.**
12. **angustiae.**
13. **audācia.**
14. **avaritia.**
15. **benevolentia.**
16. **bonitas.**
17. **brevitas.**
18. **celeritas.**
19. **clementia.**
20. **conscientia.**
21. **constantia.**
22. **consuetudo.**
23. **continentia.**
24. **controversia.**
25. **crassitudo.**
26. **crudelitas.**
27. **cupiditas.**
28. **declivitas.**
29. **dementia.**
30. **difficultas.**
31. **dignitas.**
32. **diligentia.**
33. **diuturnitas.**
34. **duritia.**
35. **exiguitas.**
36. **facultas.**
37. **felicitas.**
38. **fertilitas.**
39. **firmitudo.**
40. **fortitudo.**
41. **gravitas.**
42. **humanitas.**
43. **humilitas.**
44. **imbecillitas.**
45. **immunitas.**
46. **imprudentia.**
47. **impunitas.**
48. **indignitas.**
49. **indiligentia.**
50. **indulgentia.**
51. **infamia.**
52. **infirmitas.**
53. **inimicitia.**
54. **iniquitas.**
55. **innocentia.**
56. **inopia.**
57. **inscientia.**
58. **invidia.**
59. **iracundia.**
60. **iustitia.**
61. **laetitia.**
62. **lassitudo.**
63. **latitudo.**
64. **lenitas.**
65. **levitas.**
66. **liberalitas.**
67. **libertas.**
68. **licentia.**
69. **longitudo.**

70. **magnitudo.**
71. **maiestas.**
72. **mansuetudo.**
73. **memoria.**
74. **misericordia.**
75. **mobilitas.**
76. **modestia.**
77. **mollities.**
78. **multitudo.**
79. **necessitas.**
80. **necessitudo.**
81. **nobilitas.**
82. **notitia.**
83. **obsequentia.**
84. **opportunitas.**
85. **patientia.**
86. **paucitas.**
87. **perfidia.**
88. **pernicitas.**
89. **pertinacia.**
90. **pietas.**
91. **planities.**
92. **potentia.**
93. **praesentia.**
94. **propinquitas.**
95. **prudentia.**
96. **rapiditas.**
97. **sanitas.**
98. **scientia.**
99. **sententia.**
100. **servitus.**
101. **severitas.**
102. **siccitas.**
103. **similitudo.**
104. **societas.**
105. **solertia.**
106. **solitudo.**
107. **sollicitudo.**
108. **stabilitas.**
109. **stultitia.**
110. **temeritas.**
111. **temperantia.**
112. **tenuitas.**
113. **tranquillitas.**
114. **tristitia.**
115. **turpitudo.**
116. **utilitas.**
117. **velocitas.**
118. **vicinitas.**
119. **voluntas.**
120. **voluptas.**

VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

1. The Arabic numeral after a definition indicates the number of times the Latin word occurs in the text of the first seven books: e. g. **ab** occurs **366** times.

2. In the case of words occurring not over three times, references to all the places of occurrence are given: e. g. **abies** occurs only in v. 12 (Bk. v. chap. 12).

3. The times of occurrence of many derivatives (especially participial and adverbial) are included under their primitives, and are not therefore affixed: e. g. **abditus** is included in the times of occurrence of **abdo**.

A.

A. (1) An abbreviation for praenomen Aulus. (2) a. d., ante diem. i. 6.

ā, ab, abs, prep., with the ablat. **ā** is used before consonants, **ab** before vowels and consonants, **abs** before te. — *from, by, on account of, on, among, on the side of;* **ā dextrō cornū,** *on the right wing.* **ā, 172; ab, 366; abs,** v. 30.

abditus, partic., (**abdō**), *concealed, hidden, secret, remote.*

abdō, ere, didī, ditus, (ab + dō), *to put away; to hide, conceal.* **11.**

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (ab + dūcō), *to lead away, withdraw, take by force.* i. 11.

abeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus, (ab + eō),** *to go away, depart.* vi. 43, vii. 50.

abiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (ab + iaciō), *to throw away, cast.* **5.**

abiēs, etis, f., *a fir-tree.* v. 12.

abiungo, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, (ab + iungō), *to separate, loose from the yoke, remove.* vii. 56.

abripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, (ab + rapiō), *to carry off, tear away, snatch.* v. 33.

abscīdō, ere, —, scīsus, (abs + caedō), *to cut off, cut.* iii. 14, vii. 73.

abscīsus. See **abscīdō.**

absēns, entis, adj., (**absum**), *absent, remote.* **5.**

absimilis, e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar.* iii. 14.

absistō, ere, stitī, —, *to keep away from, withdraw.* v. 17.

abstineō, ēre, uī, tentus, (abs + teneō), *to abstain from, keep aloof from, decline.* i. 22, vii. 47.

abstrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to drag away, carry away.* iii. 2, vii. 14, 42.

absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *to be absent, distant; to take no part in; to stand aloof.* **43.**

abundō, āre, āvī, —, (ab + unda), *to overflow, abound, be rich in.* vii. 14, 64.

āc, conj., *and.* (After **aliter, simul,** etc., *than, as.*) **190.**

accēdō, ere, cessī, —, (ad + cēdō), *to approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added;* **accēdēbat,** *it was added.* **27.**

accelerō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + celerō), *to hasten, make haste.* vii. 87.

acceptus, a, um, adj., **(accipiō),** *accepted, agreeable, welcome.* i. 3.

accidō, ere, cidī, —, (ad + cadō), *to fall; to happen; to come to pass;* **accidit,** *it happens.* **43.**

accīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (ad + caedō), *to cut off, cut down; to fell.* vi. 27.

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (ad + capiō), *to receive, take, hear, acquire, suffer, endure.* **59.**

acclīvis, e, adj., **(ad + clīvus),** *ascending, rising, steep.* ii. 29, iii. 19, vii. 19.

acclīvitās, ātis, f., *an ascent, acclivity, a rising.* ii. 18.

Accō, ōnis, m., chieftain of the Senonēs, and head of their conspiracy. vi. 4, 44; vii. 1.

accommodātus, a, um, adj., **(accommodō),** *suitable, adapted.* iii. 13 (twice).

accommodō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + commodō), *to adjust, adapt, suit, accommodate.* ii. 21.

accūrātē, adv., **(ad+cūra),** *carefully, attentively, exactly;* comp. **accūrātius,** vi. 22.

accurrō, ere, currī and **cucurrī, cursus, (ad + currō),** *to run to, hasten to.* i. 22, iii. 5.

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + causa), *to accuse, blame, censure.* i. 16, i. 19, vii. 20.

ācer, cris, cre, adj., *sharp, pungent, violent, severe.* **18.**

acerbē, adv., *harshly, sharply, bitterly, keenly;* comp. **acerbius,** sup. **acerbissimē,** vii. 17.

acerbitās, ātis, f., *harshness, sharpness, bitterness, severity.* vii. 17.

acerbus, a, um, adj., **(ācer),** *sour, sharp, fierce, severe.* vii. 14.

ācerrimē, adv., sup. of **ācriter.**

acervus, ī, m., *a heap, store, pile.* ii. 32.

aciēs, ēī, f., *a sharp edge; an army in line of battle, a line of battle;* **in aciē,** *in line of battle.* **42.**

ācriter, adv., **(ācer),** *sharply, vehemently, courageously, eagerly;* comp. **ācrius,** sup. **ācerrimē.**

āctuārius, a, um, adj., **(agō),** *easily moved, light.* v. 1.

āctus, a, um. See **agō.**

acūtus, a, um, adj, **(acuō),** *sharp, pointed.* v. 18, vii. 73.

ad, prep. with the acc., *to, towards, in, among, near, about* (with numerals), *after, according to.* **702.**

adāctus, a, um. See **adigō.**

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to equal, make equal.* **6.**

adamō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to love greatly, desire greatly, take pleasure in.* i. 31.

addō, ere, didī, ditus, (ad + dō), *to add, mingle with, join.* **9.**

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to bring, convey to, conduct, induce, draw towards.* **41.**

ademptus, a, um. See **adimō.**

adeō, adv., **(ad + is),** *so, so far, to such a degree.* **4.**

adeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus,** *to go to, approach, encounter.* **20.**

adeptus, a, um. See **adipīscor.**

adequitō, āre, āvī, —, *to ride up to* or *towards.* i. 46.

adferō, ferre, attulī, adlātus, irr., **(ad + ferō),** *to bring to, offer, present; to afford, produce.* **16.**

adficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (ad + faciō), *to do to, influence, move; to show, treat, visit.* **11.**

adfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, (ad + fīgō), *to fix to, fasten to, attach to.* iii 14.

adfingō, ere, finxī, fictus, (ad + fingō), *to make to, devise, invent; to add falsely.* vii. 1.

adfīnitās, ātis, f., **(adfīnis),** *relationship by marriage, connection.* i. 18, ii. 4.

adfīrmātiō, ōnis, f., **(adfīrmō),** *affirmation, declaration, assertion.* vii. 30.

adfīxus, a, um. See **adfīgō.**
adflīctō, āre, āvī, ātus, (adflīgō), *to agitate, toss, vex, torment.* iii. 12, iv. 29.
adflīctus, a, um. See **adflīgō.**
adflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctus, (ad + flīgō), *to strike, beat* or *dash against; to shatter, destroy.* **4.**
adfore, adfutūrus, adforem. See **adsum.**
adhaereō, ēre, —, —, *to adhere, cleave to, stick.* v. 48.
adhibeō, ēre, uī, itus, (ad + habeō), *to bring in, receive, call in, admit, use.* **7.**
adhortor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to exhort, encourage.* **5.**
adhūc, adv., *until now, thus far, still, as yet.* iii. 22.
adiaceō, ēre, cuī, —, *to lie adjacent, border upon, be near.* vi. 33.
Adiatunnus, ī, m., chieftain of the Sontiātēs. iii. 22.
adiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (ad + iaciō), *to cast, add* or *join to.* **6.**
adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (ad + agō), *to drive in, impel, force, compel.* **8.**
adimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, (ad + emō), *to take away, deprive of, remove.* v. 6, vii. 18.
adipīscor, ī, adeptus, dep., **(ad + apīscor),** *to obtain, acquire, attain.* v. 39.
aditus, ūs, m., **(adeō),** *approach, entrance, access.* **20.**
adiūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to adjudge, assign, award.* vi. 37.
adiungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to join, unite to, annex.* **10.**
adiūtor, ōris, m., **(adiuvō),** *a helper, an assistant.* v. 38, 41.
adiuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to assist, help, succor, aid.* **5.**
adlātus, a, um. See **adferō.**
adliciō, ere, lēxī, lectus, (ad + laciō), *to allure, entice, attract.* v. 55, vii. 31.
admātūrō, āre, —, —, *to mature, quicken, ripen.* vii. 54.
administer, trī, m., **(ad + manus),** *a servant, attendant, assistant.* vi. 16.
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to serve, attend, wait upon, manage, guide.* **23.**
admīror, ārī, ātus, dep., *to admire, wonder at, be surprised.* **5.**
admittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to admit, allow, receive;* **equō admissō,** *with horse at full speed.* **6.**
admodum, adv., **(ad + modus),** *with measure, very;* with numerals, *about, at least.* **8.**
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, *to admonish, warn, advise, suggest, put in mind.* v. 49.
adolēscō, ere, olēvī, ultus, (ad + olēscō), *to grow up, mature, increase.* vi. 18.
adorior, īrī, ortus, dep., **(ad + orior),** *to attack, assail; to begin, attempt.* **17.**
adquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, (ad + quaerō), *to acquire, obtain, procure.* vii. 59.
adripiō, ere, uī, reptus, (ad + rapiō), *to seize, lay hold of, appropriate.* v. 33.
adroganter, adv., **(adrogāns),** *arrogantly, proudly, haughtily.* i. 40.
adrogantia, ae, f., *arrogance, insolence, presumption, pride.* i. 33, 46; vii. 52.
adsiduus, a, um, adj., **(adsideō),** *continual, incessant, diligent.* vi. 22, vii. 24, 41.
adsistō, ere, stitī, —, *to stand by, be present, appear.* vi. 18.
adsuēfaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (adsuētus + faciō), *to accustom.* **4.**
adsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus, (ad + suescō), *to accustom one's self, habituate, be accustomed.* vi. 28.
adsum, esse, fuī, —, irreg., *to be present* or *at hand, be near; to aid.* **12.**
Aduātuca, ae, f., a stronghold in the territory of the Eburōnēs, perhaps near the modern Limburg. vi. 32, 36–40.
Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Germanic origin on the left side of the river Maas. They were later called Tongrī.

ii. 4, 16, 29, 31; v. 27, 38 *seq.*, 56; vi. 2, 33. **Aduātucōrum oppidum,** ii. 29, 2 (different from Aduātuca), situated (according to Göler) on the hill which bears now the name Falhize, opposite the modern town Huy, — according to Napoléon, at the modern Namur.

adulēscēns, entis, m. and f., *a youth, a young man* or *woman.* **18.**

adulēscentia, ae, f., *youth.* **i. 20.**

adulēscentulus, ī, m., *a young man.* iii. 21.

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, a coming, an approach.* **46.**

adversārius, a, um, adj., *facing another, hostile.* **adversārius, ī,** m., *an opponent, enemy.* vii. 4.

adversus, a, um, adj., (**advertō**), *opposite, facing, fronting, opposed, hostile;* **adversō flūmine,** *up stream.* **12.**

adversus, prep. with the acc., *against, adverse, toward, opposite to.* **iv. 14.**

advertō, ere, ī, versus, (**ad** + **vertō**), *to turn to* or *towards,* with **animum,** *to turn one's mind to, observe, notice.* **i. 24,** v. 18.

advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call to, summon.* vii. 52.

advolō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to fly to, hasten to, rush upon, run to.* v. 17, 39, vii. 72.

aedificium, ī, n., (**aedificō**), *an edifice, a building.* **18.**

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**aedēs** + **faciō**), *to build, construct, erect.* iii. 9, v. 1, vi. 22.

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *sick, aching, faint, weary.* v. 40, vi. 36, 38.

aegrē, adv., (**aeger**), *hardly, with difficulty, scarcely;* comp. **aegrius,** sup. **aegerrimē.** **8.**

Aemilius, ī, m., *L.*, commander of a decuria of Gallic cavalry. i. 23.

aequāliter, adv., (**aequālis**), *equally, uniformly.* ii. 18.

aequinoctium, ī, n., (**aequus** + **nox**), *the equinox,* i. e. when the day and night are of equal length. **iv. 36.**

aequitās, ātis, f., *equality, justice, evenness;* **animī aequitās,** *evenness of temper, peace of mind.* i. 40, vi. 22.

aequō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make equal; to level.* i. 25, vi. 22.

aequus, a, um, adj., *even, level, favorable, just, right.* **16.**

aerārius, a, um, adj., (**aes**), *of copper, brass,* or *bronze.* iii. 21.

aereus, a, um, adj., (**aes**), *of copper, copper.* v. 12.

aes, aeris, n., *brass, copper, money, bronze;* **aes aliēnum,** *debt.* iv. 31, v. 12, vi. 13.

aestās, ātis, f. *summer.* **11.**

aestimātiō, ōnis, f., *valuation, estimate.* vi. 19.

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**aes**), *to estimate, value, regard, determine, esteem.* **4.**

aestīvus, a, um, adj., (**aestās**), *of summer.* vi. 4.

aestuārium, ī, n., (**aestus**), *an estuary, inlet.* ii. 28, iii. 9.

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; the tide.* **14.**

aetās, ātis, f., *age; life.* **11.**

aeternus, a, um, adj., *eternal, perpetual.* vii. 77.

Āfricus, ī, m., (sc. **ventus**), *the southwest wind.* v. 8.

Agedincum, ī., n., capital of the Senonēs in Celtic Gaul, the modern *Sens* in the Champagne. (The *modern* name of the *city* corresponds to the *old* name of the *tribe.* See **Ambiānī, Avaricum, Bellovacī, Cadurcī, Cūriosolītēs, Dūrocortorum, Lemovīcēs, Lexoviī, Lingonēs, Lutētia, Namnētēs, Noviodūnum** (1), **Petrocoriī, Redonēs, Rēmī, Rutēnī, Samarobrīva, Santonēs, Sedūnī, Segnī, Senonēs, Suessiōnēs, Tarusātēs, Turonēs.**) vi. 44, vii. 10, 57, 59, 62.

ager, grī, m., *a field, land, territory, country.* **64.**

agger, eris, m., **(ad + gerō),** *a mound, rampart.* See p. 48. **25.**

aggredior, ī, gressus, dep., **(ad + gradior),** *to go to, go against; to attack.* **4.**

aggregō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + grex), *to bring together, join, attach, ally.* iv. 26, vi. 12.

agitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (agō), *to toss; to drive; to debate, discuss, deliberate.* vii. 2.

āgmen, inis, n., **(agō),** *an army on the march, a column, troop;* **prīmum āgmen,** *the van, front;* **novissimum āgmen,** *the rear.* **33.**

agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *to drive, conduct, lead, carry off; to do, live, treat, plead;* **grātiās agere,** *to thank, return thanks.* **38.**

agricultūra, ae, f., **(ager + colō),** *agriculture.* **6.**

alacer, cris, cre, adj., *lively, brisk, cheerful, animated, joyous.* **4.**

alacritās, ātis, f., *liveliness, alacrity, ardor.* i. 41, 46, iv. 24.

ālāriī, ōrum, m. pl., *the auxiliaries* who were stationed on the wings.

ālārius, a, um, adj., **(āla),** *of a wing, stationed on the wings.* i. 51 (*twice*).

albus, a, um, adj., *white.* v. 12.

alcēs, is, f., *the elk.* vi. 27.

Alēsia, ae, f., a fortified town of the Mandubiī, the modern St. Reine d'Alise, near Semur, between the two rivers Loze (Oze) and Ozerain. vii. 68, seq.; viii. 14, 34.

Alexandrīa, ae, f., a city in northern Ægypt. Under the Ptolemies capital of the land. viii. praef.

aliās, adv., **(alius),** *at another time, otherwise;* **aliās — aliās,** *at one time — at another time,* or *sometimes — sometimes.* **4.**

aliēnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (aliēnus), *to alienate, estrange.* vi 41, vii. 10.

aliēnus, a, um, adj., **(alius),** *of another, another's; unfavorable; foreign.* **8.**

aliō, adv., **(alius),** *in another place, elsewhere.* vi. 22.

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time.* i. 40, v. 23.

aliquandō, adv., *at some time, sometimes; at length.* vii. 27, 77.

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat; a little.* iii. 13.

aliquantus, a, um, adj., **(alius + quantus),** *somewhat, a little, some.* v. 10.

aliquis, qua, quod or **quid,** indef. pron., **(alius + quis),** *some one, any one, some, any, something.* **26.**

aliquot, indef. num. adj., **(alius + quot),** *some, several, a few.* iii. 1, 2; iv. 9.

aliter, adv., **(alius),** *otherwise, differently;* **aliter āc,** *otherwise than.* **7.**

alius, a, ud, gen., **alīus,** adj., *another, other;* **alius — alius,** *one — another;* **aliī — aliī,** *some — others.* **85.**

Allobrogēs (sing. **Allobrox**), **um.,** m. pl., acc. **Allobrogas,** a strong Celtic tribe between Rhodanus (Rhone), Isara (Isère), and Lacus Lemannus (Lake Geneva) in the modern Dauphinée and Savoy. Subdued in 121 B. C. by Q. Fabius Maximus. i. 6, 10, 11, 14, 28; iii. 1, 6; vii. 64, 65. Capital: **Vienna,** *q. v.*

alō, ere, uī, itus or **tus,** *to nourish, support, sustain, maintain.* **9.**

Alpēs, ium, f. pl., *the Alps.* i. 10, iii. 1, 2, 7; iv. 10. **6.**

alter, era, erum, gen., **alterīus,** adj., *one of two, the other, the second;* **alter — alter,** *the one — the other.* **55.**

alternus, a, um, adj., *one after another, mutual, alternate.* vii. 23.

altitūdō, inis, f., *height, depth.* **24.**

altum, ī, n., (*sc.* **mare**), *the deep, the sea.* iii. 12, iv. 24, 28.

altus, a, um, adj., **(alō),** *high, tall, lofty; deep.* **15.**

alūta, ae, f., *soft leather.* iii. 13.

ambactus, ī, m., *a vassal.* vi. 15.

Ambarrī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, on the banks of the Arar (Saône). i. 11 (**necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum**), 14.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe near the sea-coast, inhabiting the modern Département de Somme. Their capital: **Samarobrīva** (the modern *Amiens* [cf. note to **Agedincum**]). ii. 4, 15; vii. 75; viii. 7.

Ambibariī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Normandie, where a town Ambières still exists; belonged to the **cīvitātes Aremoricae**. vii. 75.

Ambiliātī, ōrum, m. pl., a small Celtic tribe, on the banks of the Samara (Somme). iii. 9 (perhaps not different from the preceding).

Ambiorix, igis, m., chieftain of the Eburōnēs. v. 24, 26, 27, 32–37, 38; vi. 2, 5, 9, 30, 31, 33, 43; viii. 24, 25.

Ambivaretī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, **Haeduōrum clientēs**. vii. 75, 90.

Ambivarītī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, on the left side of the river Maas, near the modern Breda. iv. 9.

ambō, ae, ō, num. adj., *both*. v. 44.

āmentia, ae, f., (**ā + mēns**), *madness, folly*. i. 40, v. 7.

āmentum, ī, n., *a strap* or *thong*, by means of which javelins or spears were thrown with greater impulse. v. 48.

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship, alliance*. 30.

amīcus, a, um, adj., (**amō**), *friendly*. 13.

amīcus, ī, m., *a friend, ally*.

āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, (**ā + mittō**), *to send away, dismiss; to lose*. 20.

amor, ōris, m., *love, affection*. i. 20.

amplē, adv., (**amplus**), *amply, abundantly, largely*. 23.

amplificō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**amplus + faciō**), *to enlarge, increase, extend*. ii. 14, vi. 12.

amplitūdō, inis, f., *greatness, bulk, grandeur*. iv. 3, vi. 28, vii. 54.

amplius (comp. of **amplus**), *more*. 20.

amplus, a, um, adj., *large, great, ample, extensive*. 8.

an, conj., *or, whether*. It usually introduces the second member of an alternative question. 9.

Anartēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Dacia, at the banks of the Tibiscus (modern Theiss) in the modern Siebenbürgen. vi. 25.

Ancalitēs, um, m. pl., a Britannic tribe, in the modern Oxford. v. 21.

anceps, ipitis, adj., (**am + caput**), *double, two-fold; doubtful, dangerous*. i. 26, vii. 76.

ancora, ae, f., *an anchor*. 8.

Andecumborius, ī, m., an ambassador of the Remī. ii. 3.

Andēs, ium, or **Andī, ōrum**, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Anjou, northward from the modern Loire. Capital: **Iuliomagus** (modern *Angers sur la Mayenne*). **Andēs**, ii. 35; iii. 7; viii. 26. **Andī**, vii. 3. Chieftain: **Dumnacus**.

ānfrāctus, ūs, m., (**am + frangō**), *a turning* or *winding of a way, circuit, circuitous route*. vii. 46.

angulus, ī, m., *a corner, an angle*. v. 13.

angustē, adv., *closely, narrowly; sparingly*. v. 23.

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *narrowness, narrow defile; straits, perplexity*. 7.

angustus, a, um, adj., (**angō**), *narrow, close, contracted; steep*. 13.

anima, ae, f., *air, breath; life, soul, spirit*. vi. 14.

animadvertō, ere, ī, versus, (**animus + ad + vertō**), *to turn the mind to; to notice; to punish*. 22.

animal, ālis, n., (**anima**), *an animal*. vi. 17, 19.

animus, ī, m., *the mind, the soul, life, consciousness; will, design, intention; courage, heart*. 66.

annōtinus, a, um, adj., (**annus**), *of a year, a year old*. v. 8.

annus, ī, m., *a year*. 52.

annuus, a, um, adj., *yearly, annual*. i. 16.

ānser, eris, m., *a goose*. v. 12.

ante, prep. with the acc., *before, beyond, above.* **35.**

ante, adv., *before, previously.* **30.**

anteā, adv., *before, aforetime, formerly.* **8.**

antecēdō, ere, cessī, —, *to go before, outdo, precede; to excel, surpass.* **9.**

antecursor, ōris, m., *a forerunner, advanced guard, pioneer.* v. 47.

anteferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear before, set before, place before.* v. 44 (twice).

antemna, ae, f., *a sail-yard.* iii. 14, (twice), 15.

antepōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to place before, present, prefer.* iv. 22.

antevertō, ere, ī, —, *to precede, anticipate, place before, prefer, forestate.* vii. 7.

antīquitus, adv., *anciently, of old time, formerly.* **6.**

antīquus, a, um, adj., (**ante**), *old, ancient, antique.* i. 18, 45; vii. 32.

Antistius, ī, m., *C. Antistius Reginus,* one of Caesar's legates. vi. 1; vii. 83, 90.

Antōnius, ī, m., *M.*, one of Caesar's legates. vii. 31; viii. 2, 24, 36, 48, 50.

aperiō, īre, uī, tus, (**ab + pariō**), *to open, uncover, reveal, disclose.* **24.**

apertē, adv., *openly, publicly.* vi. 21, vii. 59.

apertus, a, um, adj., (**aperiō**), *uncovered, unprotected, open, exposed, naked, lying open.*

Apollō, inis, m., son of Jupiter and Latona, and god of music, poetry, archery, and healing. vi. 17 (twice).

apparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ad + parō**), *to prepare, place in order, furnish, equip, procure.* vii. 17, 26, 41.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ad + pellō**), *to call, name; to accost, entitle, accuse.* **38.**

appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, (**ad + pellō**), *to drive to, steer to, approach, bring to, direct.* vii. 60.

appetō, ere, īvī or **iī, ītus,** (**ad + petō**), *to seek for, strive for, covet, catch at, aim at.* i. 43, vii. 4.

applicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ad + plicō**), *to join, attach; to apply, bring in contact with.* vi. 27.

apportō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ad + portō**), *to carry, conduct, convey.* v. 1.

approbō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ad + probō**), *to approve, applaud, praise, commend.* vii. 21.

appropīnquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to approach, draw nigh, come on.* **16.**

appulsus, a, um. See **appellō.**

Aprīlis, e, adj., (**aperiō**), *of April;* **Aprīlis, is,** m., *the month of April.* i. 6, 7.

aptus, a, um, adj., *suitable, proper, fitted, adapted.* iii. 13, v. 16, vii. 22.

apud, prep. with acc., *at, with, near, before, among, in the presence of.* **43.**

aqua, ae, f., *water.* **10.**

aquātiō, ōnis, f., *watering, the act of getting water.* iv. 11.

aquila, ae, f., *an eagle:* the Roman ensign. **4.**

Aquilēia, ae, f., town in Gallia Transpadāna, bearing its old name to the present day. i. 10.

aquilifer, erī, m., (**aquila + ferō**), *a standard-bearer.* v. 37.

Aquitānia, ae, f., one of the three main parts of Gaul between Garumna (Garonne) and the Pyrenees. i. 1; iii. 11, 20, 27; vii. 31; viii. 46. See **Gallia** (*b.* 1), **Auscī, Bigerriōnēs, Cocosātēs, Elusātēs, Garumnī, Gatēs, Nitiobrogēs, Ptiānii** (?), **Sibuzātēs, Sontiātēs, Tarbellī, Tarusātēs, Vocātēs.**

Aquitānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the inhabitants of Aquitania.* i. 1; iii. 21.

Aquītānus, a, um, adj., *Aquitanian.* **4.**

Arar, aris (acc. **im**), m., (later name *Sauconna*, modern name *Saône*), a river flowing through the land of the Sēquanī and Haeduī. Empties into the Rhodanus (Rhone).

arbiter, trī, m., *an arbitrator, a judge, an umpire.* v. 1.

arbitrium, ī, n., *the decision of an arbitrator, a determination, a decision; pleasure, will.* i. 36, vi. 11, vii. 75.

arbitror, ārī, ātus, dep., **(arbiter),** *to think, judge, imagine, suppose.* **40.**

arbor and **arbos, oris,** f., *a tree.* **7.**

arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *to call, invite, send for.* **10.**

ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *to burn, blaze, be on fire; to be impatient; to be excited.* v. 29, 34.

Arduenna silva, f., a ridge of mountains from the Rhēnus (Rhine) to the Scaldis (Schelde), through the land of the Rēmī and Nerviī. v. 3; vi. 29, 31, 33. Modern name: *les Ardennes.*

arduus, a, um, adj., *high, steep, lofty, arduous, difficult to reach.* ii. 33, vii. 47.

Arecomicī, ōrum, m. pl., see **Volcae.**

Aremoricae cīvitātēs, f., the tribes which border on the sea-coast between Liger (Loire) and Sēquana (Seine) in the modern Bretagne and Normandie. A Celtic word composed of *are* = 'ad' and *mor* = 'mare.' v. 53; vii. 75; viii. 31. The nations which compose the **Aremoricae cīvitātēs** are given at ii. 34 without that name being added.

argentum, ī, n., *silver.* vi. 28, vii. 47.

argilla, ae, f., *white clay, argil, potter's clay.* v. 43.

āridus, a, um, adj., **(āreō),** *dry, arid, parched, thirsty;* **ex āridō,** *on dry land.* **4.**

ariēs, etis, m., *a ram, a battering-ram.* ii. 32, iv. 17, vii. 23.

Ariovistus, ī, m., king of the Suēbī. i. 31, 32, 34, 36, 38, 40, 41–47, 50, 52, 53; v. 29; vi. 12.

Aristius, ī, m., *M.*, one of Caesar's military tribunes. vii. 42.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms; war, warfare; rigging, tackling; the implements* for all uses. **80.**

armāmenta, ōrum, n. pl., *implements, utensils* for all purposes; *cordage, cables, rigging of a ship.* iii. 14, iv. 29.

armātūra, ae, f., *armor; soldiers, soldiery.* **4.**

armātus, a, um, partic. pass., **(armō),** *armed;* **armātus, ī,** m., *a soldier, an armed man.*

armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to arm, equip; to fortify, strengthen.* **17.**

Arpinēius, ī, m., *C.*, a Roman knight. v. 27, 28.

ars, artis, f., *art, method, quality; skill, contrivance, stratagem.* vi. 17.

artē, adv., **(artus),** *closely, tightly, strictly.* iv. 17, vii. 23.

articulus, ī, m., **(artus),** *a joint, knot, juncture.* vi. 27.

artificium, ī, n., **(artifex),** *art, workmanship, skill; craft, artifice.* vi. 17, vii. 29.

artus, a, um, adj., **(arceō),** *close, narrow, confined, dense.* vii. 18.

Arvernī, ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Celtic tribe in the modern Auvergne; city: **Gergovia.** They claimed to have descended from the Trojans (Lucan., i. 427: **Arvernīque ausī Lātiō sē fingere frātrēs sanguine ab Īliacō populī**). i. 31, 45. vii. 3, 4, 5 *seq.*, 34 *seq.*, 64 *seq.*, 75, 89 *seq.*; viii. 44, 46 (**Arvernus** sing.). See **Vercassivellaunus, Vercingetorix, Celtillus, Gobannitio, Epasnactus, Critognātus.**

arx, arcis, f., *a height, lofty place, citadel, stronghold.* i. 38, vii. 84.

ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, (ad + scandō), *to ascend, mount, go up.* **8.**

ascēnsus, ūs, m., *an ascent, acclivity.* **9.**

ascīscō, ere, scīvī, scītus, (ad + scīscō), *to approve, receive, admit, join.* i. 5, iii. 9.

aspectus, ūs, m., **(aspiciō),** *a seeing, beholding; appearance, looks, aspect.* v. 14, vii. 56, 76.

asper, era, erum, adj., *rough; severe, harsh, wild, cruel.* v. 45.

at, conj., *but, yet.* **31.**

Atius, ī, m., *Q. Varius,* a prefect of horse. viii. 28.

atque, conj., *and, as, than.* **427.**

Atrebatēs, um, m. pl., a Belgian tribe. Capital: **Nemetocenna** (the modern Arras in the province of Artois); sing., **Atrebas,** iv. 35; vi. 6; viii. 6, 47. Nom. plur., **Atrebatēs,** ii. 4, 23; iv. 21; vii. 75. Dat. plur., **Atrebatīs,** ii. 16. Acc. plur., **Atrebatas,** viii. 7. Chieftain: **Commius.**

Atrius, ī, m., *Q.*, naval praefect, admiral. v. 9.

attexō, ere, —, tus, (**ad** + **texō**), *to weave on, unite, add, join.* v. 40.

attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, (**ad** + **tangō**), *to touch, border on, come in contact with; to arrive at, reach.* **10.**

attribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, (**ad** + **tribuō**), *to assign, bestow, give, impute, ascribe.* **8.**

attulī. See **adferō.**

auctor, ōris, m., (**augeō**), *an author, originator, a maker, an adviser, a director.* **4.**

auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority, influence, power, reputation.* **29.**

auctus, a, um, partic. pass., (**augeō**), *increased.* i. 43.

audācia, ae, f., (**audāx**), *boldness, presumption.* i. 18, vi. 34, vii. 5.

audācter and **audāciter,** adj., *boldly, audaciously, confidently, courageously.* **7.**

audeō, ēre, ausus, intr. semi-dep., *to dare, attempt.* **28.**

audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to hear, listen, perceive, obey.* **30.**

audītiō, ōnis, f., *hearing; report, rumor.* iv. 5, vii. 42.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, improve, advance, command.* **14.**

Aulercī, ōrum, m., a great Celtic tribe; vii. 57. Divided into four parts: (*a*) *Aulercī Brannovīces* between Saône and Loire; vii. 75. (*b*) *Aulercī Diablintēs* in the modern province la Maine; iii. 9. (*c*) *Aulercī Cenomānī* in the Département de Sarthe; vii. 4, 75; viii. 7. (*d*) *Aulercī Eburovīcēs* in the modern Normandie; capital: **Mediolanum** (modern *Evreux*); ii. 34; iii. 17; vii. 75. Chieftain: **Camulogēnus.**

Aulus, ī, m., a praenomen. i. 6.

aurīga, ae, m., *a charioteer.* iv. 33.

auris, is, f., *the ear.* vi. 26, vii. 4.

Aurunculēius, *L. Cotta,* one of Caesar's legates. ii. 11; iv. 22, 23–37.

Auscī, ōrum, m., a powerful tribe in Aquitania in the modern Département des Gers. Capital: **Climberrum** or **Augusta** (the modern *Auch*). iii. 27.

ausus, a, um. See **audeō.**

aut, conj., *or, or else, or at least.* **42.**

autem, conj., *but; moreover.* **29.**

autumnus, ī, m., (**augeō**), *autumn.* vii. 25.

auxī. See **augeō.**

auxiliāris, e, adj., *auxiliary, aiding.* iii. 25.

auxilior, ārī, ātus, dep., *to assist, help, aid.* iv. 29, vii. 25, 50.

auxilium, ī, n., (**augeō**), *assistance, aid, help; remedy, auxiliary force.* **71.**

Avāricēnsis, e, adj., (**Avāricum**), *of Avaricum.* vii. 47.

Avāricum, ī, n., (modern *Bourges*), a stronghold of the Biturigī on the banks of the Avara (modern Eore). vii. 13, 15, 18, 29 *ff.*, 47, 52. [For the modern name *Bourges* = **Biturigī** see note to **Agedincum.**]

avāritia, ae, f., (**avārus**), *avarice, greedy desire, covetousness.* i. 40, vii. 42.

āvehō, ere, vēxī, vēctus, *to carry* or *convey away.* vii. 55.

āversus, a, um, partic. pass., (**āvertō**), *turned away, put to flight.* i. 26, ii. 26.

āvertō, ere, ī, versus, (**ā** + **vertō**), *to turn away, remove, alienate.* **6.**

avis, is, f., *a bird.* iv. 10.

avus, ī, m., *a grandfather.* i. 12, iv. 12.

Axona, ae, f., (modern Aisne), a river in Belgic Gaul, which empties into the Isara (modern Oise). ii. 5, 9.

B.

Bacēnis silva, f., the western part of the modern Thüringer Wald (forming a part of the **Hercynia silva**), divides the land of the Cheruscī and Suēbī. vi. 10.

Baculus, ī, m. See **Sextius** (2).

Balbus, ī, m. See **Cornelius.**

Baleārēs, ium, f. pl., *inhabitants of the Balearic Islands* in the Mediterranean sea, near the Spanish coast. Skilful slingers (**funditōrēs**). ii. 7.

Baleāris, e, adj., *Balearic.* ii. 7.

balteus, ī, m., *a belt, a sword belt.* v. 44.

Balventius, ī, m., *T.*, a Roman centurion. v 35.

barbarus, a, um, adj., *barbarous, wild, uncultivated, savage.* 31.

Basilus, ī, m. See **Minucius.**

Batāvōrum īnsula, f., "the island of the Batāvi," formed by the Vacanus (the northern hill of the Rhine) and the North Sea, the modern Buturve or Betau in Geldern. iv. 10.

Belgae, ārum, m. pl., the inhabitants of northern Gaul between Sēquana (Seine), Mātrona (Marne), and Rhēnus (Rhine), of chiefly Germanic origin. i. 1; ii. 1 *seq.*, 14 *seq.*, 38; iii. 7, 11; iv. 38; v. 24; viii. 6, 38, 54. See **Ambiānī, Ambivarītī, Atrebatēs, Bellovacī, Caeroesī, Caletī, Ceutrōnēs, Condrūsī, Eburōnēs, Geidumnī, Grudiī, Lēvācī, Menapiī, Morinī, Nerviī, Paemānī, Pleumoxiī, Rēmī, Segnī, Suessiōnēs, Viromanduī.** It seems as if **Belgae** was also the name of a *tribe* (v. 12, 1).

Belgium, ī, n., *the land of the Belgae.* v. 12, 24, 25; viii. 46, 49, 54.

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike.* i. 10, 33; iv. 1.

bellicus, a, um, adj., *of war, warlike.* vi. 24.

bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to wage war, carry on war.* 4.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between Sēquana (Seine), Samara (Somme), and **Isara** (Oise). The modern city Beauvais derives its name from it. Their town Bratuspantium (ii. 13) is the ruin Bratuspante near the modern Breteuil. ii. 4, 5, 10, 13, 14; v. 56; vii. 59, 75; viii. 6, 7, 12, 14 *seq.*, 20, 38. Chieftain: **Correus.**

bellum, ī, n., *war.* 171.

bene, adv., *well, prosperously, happily;* comp. **melius,** sup. **optimē.** iii. 18, v. 57, vii. 44.

beneficium, ī, n., (**bene** + **faciō**), *a kindness, benefit, favor, service.* 15.

benevolentia, ae, f., (**bene** + **volō**), *benevolence, good will, kindness.* v. 25, vii. 43.

Bibracte, is, n., capital of the Haeduī, situated between Arar (Aisne) and Liger (Loire), the modern Autun in Bourgogne. (Locative: **Bibractī,** vii. 55, **Bibracte,** vii. 90.) i. 23; vii. 55, 63, 90; viii. 2, 4. Later name: **Augustodūnum.**

Bibrax, actis, f., a town of the Rēmī, either the modern Beaurieux, or situated on the top of the modern hill Vieux Laon. ii. 6.

Bibrocī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the south-eastern part of Britain (modern **Bray**?). v. 21.

biduum, ī, n., (**bis** + **diēs**), *two days.* 8.

biennium, ī, n., (**bis** + **annus**), *two years.* i. 3.

Bigerriōnēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia. Modern Bigorre near the Pyrenees on the banks of the Adour. iii. 27.

bīnī, ae, a, distr. num. adj., (**bis**), *two by two, two.* 5.

bipartītō, adv., (**bis** + **partiō**), *in two divisions* or *lines.* i. 25, v. 32.

bipedālis, e, adj., (**bis** + **pes**), *two feet long, wide,* or *thick.* iv. 17.

bis, num. adv., *twice.* v. 55, 65; vii. 73.

Biturigēs, um, m., a Celtic tribe. (1) *Biturigēs Vibiscī* on the banks of the Garumna (Garonne), in the modern Medoc. Capital: **Burdigala** (*Bordeaux*). (2) *Biturigēs Cubi* in the modern Berry, Bourbonnais, and Touraine. Towns: **Noviodūnum** (*Nouan*), and **Avāricum** (*Bourges*). i. 18; vii. 5, 8, 9, 15; viii. 2 *seq.*, 11.

Boduōgnātus, ī, m., chieftain of the Nervii. ii. 23.

Boia, ae, f., *the land of the Boiī.* vii. 14.

Boiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, which emigrated from Gaul into Germany (Bohemia). A part of them associated themselves with the Helvētii. i. 5, 25, 28, 29; vii. 9, 10, 17, 57. Capital: **Gorgobina,** vii. 9

bonitās, ātis, f., *goodness, advantage, favor, excellence.* i. 28.

bonus, a, um, adj., *good, friendly, well-disposed;* comp. **melior,** sup. **optimus; bonum, ī,** n., *an advantage, a good;* **bona, ōrum,** n. pl., *property, effects, goods.* **9.**

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *an ox* or *cow.* vi. 26, 28.

bracchium, ī, n., *the arm.* i. 25, vii. 56.

Brannovīcēs, um, m. pl., see **Aulercī.**

Brannoviī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, clients of the Haedui. vii. 75.

Bratuspantium, ī, n., a town of the **Bellovacī,** *q. v.* ii. 13.

brevis, e, adj., *short, transitory, brief.* **8.**

brevitās, ātis, f., *shortness.* ii. 20, 30.

breviter, adv., *shortly, briefly, summarily.* vii. 54.

Britannī, ōrum, m. pl., *the inhabitants of Britannia.* iv. 21; v. 11, 14, 21.

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain* (England and Scotland inhabited by Celts and an aboriginal tribe, Calēdonēs). iii. 9; iv. 20 *seq.;* v. 8, 12; vi. 13. See **Ancalītēs, Bibrocī, Cassī, Cenīmagnī, Segontiacī, Trīnobantēs.** River: **Tamesis.** Chieftains: **Taximagulus, Segovax, Mandubrācius, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Cassivelaunus.** See **Lugotorix.** District: **Cantium.**

Britannicus, a, um, adj., (**Britannia**), *of Britain.* v. 4.

brūma, ae, f., (**brevis**), *the winter solstice; winter.* v. 13.

Brūtus, i, m., *C.*, commander of Caesar's fleet. iii. 11, 14; vii. 9, 87.

C.

C., for *Gaius.* **4.**

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a town of the Haedui, modern *Chalons-sur-Saône* (*Arar*). vii. 42, 90.

Cabūrus. See **Valerius.**

cacūmen, inis, n., *the top, extremity, point.* vii. 73.

cadāver, eris, n., (**cadō**), *a dead body, a corpse.* ii. 27, vii. 77.

cadō, ere, cecidī, casūrus, *to fall, perish, die.* **5.**

Cadurcī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in Aquitānia (in the modern Quercy). The modern Cahors is very likely identical with their old town. See **Lucterius, Divona.** vii. 4, 64, 75; viii 30, 32, 34. Town: **Uxellodūnum.**

caedēs, is, f., (**caedō**), *a cutting, murder, slaughter.* **12.**

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus, *to cut down, cut, fell; to beat, destroy, kill.* iii. 29 (twice).

caelestis, e, adj., *heavenly;* plur., *the gods.* vi. 17.

caerimōnia, ae, f., *a religious ceremony, sacred rites.* vii. 2.

Caeroesī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, near the modern Luxemburg or Lüttich. ii. 4.

caeruleus, a, um, adj., *blue, azure, dark blue.* v. 14.

Caesar, aris, m. (1) *C. Iulius,* the author of the Commentārii, cf. Introduction. (2) *L.*, relative of (1) and his legate. vii. 65.

caesus, a, um. See **caedō.**

calamitās, ātis, f., *calamity, injury, loss.* **13.**

calendae, ārum, f. pl., *the first day of each month, the Calends.* i. 6.

Calēnus, ī, m. See **Fufius.**

Caletī, ōrum, or **Calētēs, um,** m. pl., a Belgic tribe in the modern Normandie on both sides of the **Sēquana** (Seine), which belonged to the **cīvitātēs Aremoricae,** *q. v.* **Caletī,** ii. 4; viii. 7. **Calētēs,** vii. 75.

callidus, a, um, adj., (**calleō**), *skilful, cunning, shrewd, experienced* iii. 18.

cālo, ōnis, m., *a soldier's servant.* **8.**

campester, tris, tre, adj., (**campus**), *of a plain; level, flat.* **4.**

campus, ī, m., *a plain, field.* iii. 26, vii. 79

Camulogēnus, ī, m., chieftain of the Aulerci. vii. 57, 59, 62.

Canīnius Rebilus, m., one of Caesar's legates. vii. 83, 90, viii. 24, 27, 30, 33.

canō, ere, cecinī, —, *to sing, play* upon an instrument; *to sound, foretell.* vii 47.

Cantabrī, ōrum, m pl., a tribe in Hispania Terraconnensis, in the modern Biscaya. Subdued by Augustus in a war from 25 to 19 B. C. iii. 26.

Cantium, ī, n., the modern *Kent* in Britain. v. 13, 14, 22.

apillus, ī, m., *the hair.* v. 14, vii. 48.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *to take; to seize, captivate, take prisoner; to choose, select;* **cōnsilium capere,** *to adopt a plan.* **64.**

capra, ae, f., *a she-goat, a roe.* vi. 27.

captīvus, a, um, adj., (**capiō**), *captive, taken prisoner, enslaved.* **22**

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, understanding, notion.* iii. 3.

captus, a, um. See **capiō.**

caput, itis, n., *the head; person, man; mouth of a river, fountain, source.* **11.**

careō, ēre, uī, —, *to be without, in want, free from; to be deprived of.* vi. 38, vii. 17.

carīna, ae, f., *the keel of a ship.* iii. 13.

Carnūtēs, um, m. pl., a tribe on both sides of the Liger (Loire), in the modern Orléans and Chartrain Capital: **Cenabum** (later **cīvitās Aurelianārum,** hence the modern name *Orléans*). ii. 35; v. 25, 29, 56, vi 2 *seq.*, 13, 44; vii. 2, 3, 11, 75; viii. 4, 5, 31, 38, 46. Their chieftains: **Tasgētius, Gutruātus, Conconnetodumnus.**

carō, carnis, f., *flesh.* v. 14, vi. 22.

carpō, ere, sī, tus, *to pull, pluck; to blame, upbraid, slander, revile.* iii. 17.

carrus, ī, m., **carrum, ī,** n., *a wagon.* **9.**

cārus, a, um, adj., *dear, beloved.* v. 33, vii 19.

Carvilius, ī, m, a king of the Britons v. 22.

casa, ae, f., *a hut, a cabin of turf* or *straw.* v. 43.

cāseus, ī, m., *cheese* vi. 22.

Cassī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the southeast of Britain (modern *Caishon?*)

Cassiānus, a, um, adj., (**Cassius**), *with Cassius.* i. 13

cassis, idis, f., *a helmet.* vii. 45.

Cassius, ī, m., *L Cassius Longinus,* Roman consul, defeated in 107 B. C in an expedition against the Helvetii. i. 7, 12.

Cassivellaunus, ī, m, a chieftain of the Britons. v. 11, 18–22.

castellum, ī, n., (**castrum**), *a castle, fort, redoubt.* **13.**

Casticus, ī, m., a noble Sequanan. i. 3.

castīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to punish, reprove, correct, chastise.* ii. 8.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., (**castrum**), *a camp, an encampment.* **273.**

cāsus, ūs, m, (**cadō**), *a fall; accident, misfortune, chance; danger, extremity.* **23.**

Catamantaloedēs, is, m., a chieftain of the Sēquanī. i. 3.

catēna, ae, f., *a chain; fetter.* **4.**

Caturigēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Gallia Provincia, in the modern Dauphiné (now Département des Hautes Alpes). i. 10.

Catuvolcus, ī, m., chieftain of the Eburōnēs. v. 24, 26; vi. 31.

causa, ae, f., *a cause, reason; pretext, pretence; situation, condition;* **causā,** *for the sake, on account.* **147.**

cautē, adv., (**caveō**), *cautiously, prudently, warily.* v. 49.

cautēs, is, f., *a cliff, a rock.* iii. 13.

cautus, a, um, partic. pass., (**caveō**), *cautious, wary, careful.*

Cavarillus, ī, m., chieftain of the Haeduī. vii. 67.

Cavarīnus, ī, m., chieftain of the Senonēs. v. 54; vi. 5.

caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautus, *to be on one's guard, take care; to take security.* i. 14, vi. 2, vii. 2.

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to yield, withdraw, retreat, retire.* **12.**

celer, eris, ere, adj., *swift, speedy.* iv. 23, vii. 47.

celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness, speed, celerity.* **28.**

celeriter, adv., *swiftly, rapidly, quickly.* **65.**

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to conceal, keep secret, hide.* ii. 32, 33; vii. 80.

Celtae, ārum, m. pl., the inhabitants of Gaul between Sēquana (Seine) and Garumna (Garonne). i. 1. See Introduction.

Celtillus, ī, m., father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.

Cenabēnsēs, ium, m. pl., *the inhabitants of Cenabum, q. v.;* vii. 11.

Cenabum, ī, m., capital of the Carnūtēs, *q. v.*, the modern Orléans (according to Napoléon, however, the modern Gien). vii. 3, 11, 17, 28; viii. 5, 6.

Cenīmāgnī, ōrum, m. pl., a Britannic tribe in the modern Suffolk. v. 21.

Cenomānī, ōrum, m. pl., see **Aulercī.**

cēnseō, ēre, uī, sus, *to estimate, judge; to decree, ordain, determine.* **8.**

cēnsus, ūs, m., (**cēnseō**), *a census; tribute, tax.* i. 29.

Centrōnēs, um, m. pl. See **Ceutrōnēs** (2).

centum, num. adj., indecl., *a hundred.* **9.**

centuriō, ōnis, m., *a centurion.* **25.**

cēpī. See **capiō.**

cernō, ere, crēvī, certus, *to see, perceive; to understand; to decide, determine.* **7.**

certāmen, inis, n., (**certō**), *a contest, a battle, an engagement.* iii. 14, v. 44.

certē, adv., (**certus**), *certainly, assuredly; at least.* **5.**

certus, a, um, adj., (**cernō**), *certain, established, determined, trusty, definite.* **46.**

cervus, ī, m., *a stag; stakes* resembling stag's horns. vi. 26, vii. 72.

cēspes, itis, m., *a turf* or *sod.* iii. 25, v. 42, 51.

cēterus, a, um, adj., *the rest, residue, remainder.* **8.**

Ceutrōnes, um, m. pl. (1) A Belgic tribe in the western part of Flandern, near the modern Courtray or Brügge. v. 39. (2) A tribe in Gallia Provincia. Their capital: **Darantasia** (modern Ceutron in Savoy). i. 10.

Cevenna mōns, a mountain ridge in the southern part of Gaul, in the southwest connected with the Pyrenees, separating the lands of the Arvernī and Helviī. Modern name *les Cévennes.* vii. 8, 56.

Cheruscī, ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe between Weser, Elbe, Harz, and Aller, near the modern Hildesheim and Paderborn. vi. 10.

cibārius, a, um, adj., (**cibus**), *of* or *for food;* **cibāria, ōrum,** n. pl., *food, provisions.* i. 5, iii. 18, vi. 10.

cibus, ī, m., *food, victuals, provender.* iv. 1, vi. 38, vii. 78.

Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Q. Tullius*, one of Caesar's legates, the brother of M. Tullius Cicero, the orator. v. 24, 38 *seq.*; vi. 36; vii. 90.

Cimberius, ī, m., chieftain of the Suēbī. i. 37.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe, emigrating from their original seats in Jutland and on the shore of the North Sea. They were about to invade Italy, but were conquered by Marius (101 B. C.), near Vercellae. i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.

Cingetorix, igis, m. (1) A chieftain of the Trēverī. v. 3, 56; vi. 8. (2) A chieftain of the Britons. v. 22.

cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctus, *to gird, encompass, environ, surround.* **6.**

cippus, ī, m., *a sharp stake, a palisade.* vii. 73.

circinus, ī, m., *a pair of compasses.* i. 38.

circiter, adv., *about, near.* **57.**

circueō, īre. See **circumeō.**

circuitus, ūs, m., *a circuit, revolution; circumference; a way around.* **10.**

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about.* **10.**

circumcīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (circum + **caedō**), *to cut around.* v. 42, vii. 36.

circumcīsus, a, um, partic. pass., (**circumcīdō**), *cut around; steep, craggy.* vii. 36.

circumclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *to shut in, hem in, surround, invest.* vi. 28.

circumdō, dare, dedī, datus, *to place around: to encompass, draw around.* **6.**

circumdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead* or *draw around.* i. 38, iii. 26.

circumeō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus,** *to go around; to surround, encompass.* **4.**

circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour around; to encompass, surround;* (pass., *to collect, flock together*). **4.**

circumiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *to cast around; to compass.* ii. 6.

circummittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to send around.* v. 51, vii. 63.

circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to fortify all around.* ii. 30.

circumplector, ī, —, dep., *to embrace; to surround, clasp round.* vii. 83.

circumsistō, ere, stetī, —, *to stand around; to surround, besiege.* **10.**

circumspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, *to look around, weigh, ponder, consider.* v. 31, vi. 5, 43.

circumvāllō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to surround with a rampart, circumvallate; to besiege, invest.* **4.**

circumvehor, ī, vēctus, dep., *to be carried round; to ride around, sail around.* vii. 45.

circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come around, surround, invest; to encompass; to circumvent.* **27.**

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.* ii. 3, iv. 4.

Cisalpīna Gallia, f., vi. 1. See **Gallia.**

cisalpīnus, a, um, adj., *on this side of the Alps: cisalpine.* vi. 1.

Cisrhēnānī Germānī, m. pl., vi. 2.

cisrhēnānus, a, um, adj., (**Rhēnus**), *on this side of the Rhine.* vi. 2.

Cita, ae, m. See **Fūfius.**

citātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**citō**), *urged; rapid.* iv. 10.

citerior, us, gen **ōris,** adj., *hither, nearer.* **9.**

citō, adv., *quickly.* iv. 3.

citō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to rouse, excite; to hasten, summon.* iv. 10.

citrā, prep. with acc., (**cis**), *on this side of.* **6.**

citrō, adv., (**cis**), *hither;* **ūltrō citrōque,** *to and fro.* i. 42.

cīvis, is, m. and f., *a citizen.* **5.**

cīvitās, ātis, f., *a state, citizenship.* **182.**

clam, adv., *secretly, privily.* **6.**

clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**clāmō**), *to cry out, shout, exclaim.* v. 7, 29.

clāmor, ōris, m., *a loud cry, clamor, noise.* **24.**

clandestinus, a, um, adj., (**clam**), *secret, private, hidden.* vii. 1, 64.
clārus, a, um, adj., *clear, manifest, evident; illustrious; distinct, loud.* v. 30.
classis, is, f., *a fleet.* **5.**
Claudius, ī, m., *Appius,* consul in 54 B. C. v. 1.
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *to shut, encompass, conclude;* **āgmen claudere,** *to bring up the rear.* **6.**
clāvus, ī, m., *a nail.* iii. 13.
clēmentia, ae, f., *mildness, mercy, clemency.* ii. 14, 31.
cliēns, entis, m. and f., *a client, vassal, retainer.* **10.**
clientēla, ae, f., *clientship, protection, patronage.* **5.**
clīvus, ī, m., *an ascent, elevation, a steep.* vii. 46, 47.
Clōdius, ī, m., *P. Clodius Pulcher,* Cicero's enemy, assassinated by Milo in 52 B. C. vii. 1.
Cn. (= **Gnaeus**), m., a praenomen. **5.**
coacervō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + acervō**), *to heap up, accumulate, amass, pile up.* ii. 27, vii. 70.
coāctus, a, um. See **cōgō.**
coāctus, ūs, m., *compulsion.* v. 27.
coāgmentō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**cōgō**), *to join together, connect, construct.* vii. 23.
Cocosātēs, um, m., a tribe in Aquitānia in the modern Gascogne. iii. 27.
coēgī. See **cōgō.**
coëmō, ere, ēmī, emptus, (**con + emō**), *to buy up, purchase various articles.* i. 3, vii. 55.
coëō, īre, īvī or **iī, itus,** (**con + eō**), *to go* or *come together, meet, assemble, collect.* vi. 22.
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *I began, commenced.* **64.**
coeptus, a, um, from **coepī.**
coërceō, ēre, uī, itus, (**con + arceō**), *to embrace, confine; to surround, check, curb.* i. 17, v. 7.
cōgitātiō, ōnis, f., *a thinking, reflection, thought, design, project.* **vi. 22,** vii. 32.
cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + agitō**), *to think, reflect upon, ponder, meditate.* **10.**
cōgnātiō, ōnis, f., (**con + nāscor**), *relationship by blood, kindred, relatives.* vi. 22, vii. 32.
cōgnōscō, ere, ōvī, itus, (**con + nōscō**), *to ascertain, learn, investigate, discover.* **130.**
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, (**con + agō**), *to drive together, collect, assemble; to compel, force, urge.* **67.**
cohors, tis, f., *a cohort.* **45.**
cohortātiō, ōnis, f., *an exhortation, encouraging.* ii. 25.
cohortor, ārī, ātus, dep., (**con + hortor**), *to exhort, encourage.* **25.**
coīre. See **coeō.**
collis, is, m., *a hill, hillock, ascent.* **36.**
colō, ere, uī, cultus, *to cultivate, attend to; to honor, worship, reverence.* v. 12, vi. 17.
colōnia, ae, f., (**colōnus**), *a colony, settlement.* vi. 24.
color, ōris, m., *color, complexion, hue, tint.* v. 14, vi. 28, vii. 88.
combūrō, ere, bussī, būstus, (**con + ūrō**), *to burn up.* i. 5.
comes, itis, m. and f., (**con + eō**), *a companion, fellow, associate, comrade.* vi. 30.
comitia, ōrum, n. pl., *the comitia;* i. e. an assembly of the Roman people for electing magistrates. See below.
comitium, ī, n., (**con + eō**), a part of the Roman forum where voting was held. vii. 67.
comitor, ārī, ātus, dep., (**comes**), *to accompany, follow, attend, wait upon.* vi. 8.
commeātus, ūs, m., (**commeō**), *a passage; provisions, victuals, supplies; a furlough.* **21.**
commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + memorō**), *to call to mind, mention, remind; to relate.* **6.**

commendō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **mandō**), *to commit, intrust, commend.* iv. 27.
commeō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **meō**), *to go, come and go, resort, frequent.* i. 1, vii. 36.
comminus, adv., (**con** + **manus**), *hand to hand, in close combat.* i. 52, v. 44, vii. 50.
commissūra, ae, f., (**committō**), *a joining, joint, juncture.* vii. 72.
committō, ere, mīsī, missus, (**con** + **mittō**), *to join together; to intrust, commit; to risk, permit;* **committere proelium,** *to join* or *commence battle.* **35.**
Commius, ī, m., chieftain of the Atrebatēs. iv. 21, 27, 35; v. 22; vi. 6; vii. 75, 76; viii. 6, 7, 10, 21, 23, 47.
commodē, adv., (**commodus**), *fitly, suitably, conveniently.* **10.**
commodum, ī, n., (**commodus**), *advantage, convenience; profit, utility.* **8.**
commodus, a, um, adj., (**con** + **modus**), *convenient, suitable, advantageous; agreeable, favorable.* **5.**
commonefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (**con** + **moneō** + **faciō**), *to remind, admonish, warn.* i. 19.
commoror, ārī, ātus, dep., (**con** + **moror**), *to stop, pause, linger, stay.* v. 7, vii. 32.
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, (**con** + **moveō**), *to move, disturb, excite; to affect, influence.* **9.**
commūnicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**commūnis**), *to communicate, share, impart; to plan, concert.* **11.**
commūniō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** (**con** + **mūniō**), *to fortify, fence about, secure.* i. 8, v. 49, vi. 7.
commūnis, e, adj., (**con** + **mūnus**), *common, ordinary, general, belonging to the public.* **31.**
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *a change.* **8.**
commūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **mūtō**), *to change, exchange, alter.* **5.**
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**compār**), *to compare.* i. 31, vi. 24.
comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **parō**), *to prepare, provide, get ready; to acquire.* **19.**
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, (**con** + **pellō**), *to drive together, assemble, collect; to force, compel, constrain.* **7.**
compendium, ī, n., (**con** + **pendō**), *what is weighed together, gain.* vii. 43.
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, (**con** + **pariō**), *to learn, discover, ascertain.* **8.**
complector, ī, plexus, dep., (**con** + **plectō**), *to embrace, encircle, enclose.* i. 20, vii. 72, 74.
compleō, ēre, ēvī, —, (**con** + **pleō**), *to fill, finish, complete.* **20.**
complūrēs, a or **ia,** gen. **ium,** adj., (**con** + **plūs**), *several, many, a great many.* **39.**
comportō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **portō**), *to bring together, collect, bring.* **8.**
comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, (**con** + **prehendō**), *to seize, bring together, arrest; to include, embrace.* **11.**
comprobō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **probō**), *to approve, confirm, sanction, make good.* v. 58.
compulsus, a, um. See **compellō.**
cōnātum, ī, n., (**cōnor**), *an attempt, effort, endeavor.* i. 3.
cōnātus, ūs, m., (**cōnor**), *an attempt, endeavor, undertaking, effort.* i. 8.
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to retire; to grant, yield; to allow, permit.* **14.**
concertō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to contend, strive.* vi. 5.
concessus, ūs, m., (**concēdō**), *permission, leave, allowing.* vii. 20.
concīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (**con** + **caedō**), *to cut to pieces, destroy; to divide, slay.* i. 12, ii. 11, iii. 9.
concidō, ere, cidī, —, (**con** + **cadō**), *to fall, die, perish.* **8.**
conciliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to gain over, obtain, reconcile.* **4.**

concilium, **ī**, n., (**concieō**), *an assembly, a council, a meeting.* **35.**
concīsus, a, um. See **concīdō.**
concitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con** + **citō**), *to excite, stir up, rouse, provoke, urge.* **5.**
conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to cry out, proclaim, call out, shout.* **9.**
conclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *to shut up, enclose, confine.* iii. 9.
Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., chieftain of the Carnūtēs. vii. 3.
concrepō, āre, uī, itus, *to make a noise, rattle, ring, clash.* vii. 21.
concurrō, ere, currī or **cucurrī, cursus,** *to run* or *rush together, meet, charge, engage in fight; to concur, happen together.* **14.**
concursō, āre, —, —, *to rush together, run up and down.* v. 33, 50.
concursus, ūs, m., *a running together, an engagement, collision.* **8.**
condemnō, āre, āvi, ātus, (**con** + **damnō**), *to condemn, charge with.* vii. 19.
condiciō, ōnis, f., (**condīcō**), *condition, quality, state; terms, stipulation.* **17.**
condōnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to give up, forgive; to bestow.* i. 20 (twice).
Condrūsī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe on the right side of the Mosa (Maas), near Lüttich. ii. 4; iv. 6; vi. 32.
condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to bring together, assemble, conduct; to hire.* **6.**
cōnfectus, a, um. See **cōnficiō.**
cōnferciō, īre, —, fertus, (**con** + **farciō**), *to stuff, cram, press together, crowd.* **9.**
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bring together, gather; to compare; to ascribe, impute.* **26.**
cōnfertus, a, um, partic. pass., **cōnferciō**), *dense, crowded, full, thick, close.* **9.**
cōnfestim, adv., *immediately.* **7.**
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (**con** + **faciō**), *to accomplish, make, perform, compose, finish, execute; to weaken, exhaust; to collect, furnish.* **43.**
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus, semi-dep., *to confide in, trust, rely on.* **23.**
cōnfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, *to fasten together; to stab, pierce.* iii. 13.
cōnfīnis, e, adj., *contiguous, adjoining, bordering upon.* vi. 3.
cōnfīnium, ī, n., *a boundary, confine, border, limit, frontier.* v. 24.
cōnfīō, fierī, —, irr. pass. of **cōnficiō,** *to be accomplished, performed.* vii. 58.
cōnfīrmātiō, ōnis, f., *proof, assurance, confirmation.* iii. 18.
cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to strengthen, establish, confirm, encourage; to secure, affirm.* **32.**
cōnfīsus, a, um. See **cōnfīdō.**
cōnfiteor, ērī, fessus, dep., (**con** + **fateor**), *to acknowledge, confess, own, admit, grant, concede.* v. 27.
cōnfīxus, a, um. See **cōnfīgō.**
cōnflagrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to be on fire, burn.* v. 43.
cōnflīctō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**cōnflīgō**), *to strike* or *dash together; to trouble, distress.* v. 35.
cōnflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctus, *to strike* or *dash together, engage, fight.* **4.**
cōnfluēns, entis, m., *the confluence.* iv. 15.
Cōnfluēns Mosae et Rhēnī, m., see **Mosa.**
cōnfluō, ere, flūxī, —, *to flow together; to flock together.* vii. 44.
cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *to flee for succor, have recourse to.* vi. 5.
cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour together, blend, join, mix.* vii. 75.
congredior, ī, gressus, dep., (**con** + **gradior**), *to move with; to accost, meet; to contend, fight, engage.* **8.**
congressus, ūs, m., *a meeting.* iii. 13.
cōniciō, ere, coniēcī, coniectus, (**con** + **iaciō**), *to throw* or *hurl together, discharge, cast; to divine, conjecture.* **36.**
coniectūra, ae, f., (**cōniciō**), *conjecture, conclusion.* vii. 35.

coniūnctim, adv., (**coniungō**), *conjointly, together.* vi. 19.

coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to join together, associate, unite, connect.* **19.**

coniūnx, ugis, m. and f., (**coniungō**), *husband; wife.* vii. 14.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *a conspiracy, confederacy, combination.* **5.**

coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to conspire, swear together, plot, combine.* **5.**

conlātus, a, um. See **conferō.**

conlaudō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + laudō**), *to praise, extol, commend.* **4.**

conligō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + ligō**), *to bind together, connect.* i. 25.

conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, (**con + legō**), *to collect, gather together, assemble; to acquire, obtain.* **8.**

conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + locō**), *to put, place, erect, set up; to arrange.* **34.**

conloquium, ī, n., *conference, interview, conversation.* **15.**

conloquor, ī, locūtus, dep., (**con + loquor**), *to converse, speak with, confer.* **11.**

cōnor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to undertake, strive, attempt, endeavor.* **33.**

conquiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētus, *to repose, rest, be at rest.* vii. 46.

conquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, (**con + quaerō**), *to search for, seek after, collect, procure.* **6.**

conquīsītus, a, um. See **conquīrō.**

cōnsanguineus, a, um, adj., (**con + sanguis**), *kindred, related by blood.* **4.**

cōnsanguineus, ī, m., *a relation, a relative.* See above.

cōnscendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, (**con + scandō**), *to ascend, mount, embark.* iv. 23, v. 7, 39.

cōnscientia, ae, f., (**con + sciō**), *joint knowledge; conscience, consciousness, feeling.* v. 56.

cōnscīscō, ere, scīvī, scītus, *to determine, resolve on, decree, execute.* i. 4, iii. 24.

cōnscius, a, um, adj., (**con + sciō**), *conscious, privy to, witness of, accessory, accomplice.* i. 14.

cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write together, enlist, enroll, levy.* **9.**

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**con + sacrō**), *to make sacred, consecrate, hallow.* vi. 13, 17.

cōnsector, ārī, ātus, dep., *to follow after eagerly, pursue.* **6.**

cōnsecūtus, a, um. See **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, ōnis, f., *consent, agreement, unanimity.* vii. 76.

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *agreement, consent.* **7.**

cōnsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to agree, accord, be of the same opinion; to conspire, combine.* ii. 3 (twice), v. 29.

cōnsequor, ī, secūtus, dep., *to follow, overtake, pursue, acquire, obtain, attain.* **16.**

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to preserve, defend, protect, maintain; to observe; to save.* **8.**

Cōnsidius, ī, m., *P.*, a soldier in Caesar's army. i. 21, 22.

cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus, *to sit down, settle, encamp; to stop, delay.* **24.**

cōnsilium, ī, n., *deliberation, advice, counsel, wisdom, purpose, plan, design, judgment, determination; a council.* **123.**

cōnsimilis, e, adj., *very similar, like.* ii. 11, v. 12, vi. 27.

cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *to stand, halt, stop, stay, remain; to consist.* **46.**

cōnsōbrīnus, ī, m., *a cousin.* vii. 76.

cōnsōlor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to console, solace, comfort, encourage, cheer.* **5.**

cōnspectus, ūs, m., *look, sight, presence, view.* **17.**

cōnspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, (**con + speciō**), *to see, observe, behold, discern.* **17.**

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to see, descry, observe, discern.* **11.**

cōnspīrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to blow together; to agree, unite, conspire.* iii. 10.

cōnstanter, adv., *firmly, consistently, steadily.* ii. 2, iii. 25.
cōnstantia, ae, f., *firmness, consistency, resolution.* i. 40, vii. 77.
cōnsternō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to alarm, terrify, dismay.* vii. 30.
cōnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus, *to strew over, lay, spread over.* iv. 17, 23.
cōnstipō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to press* or *crowd together, thicken, pack, cram.* v. 43.
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, (con + statuō), *to place, put, set down, station; to appoint, determine, fix; to build, create, construct.* **89.**
cōnstō, āre, stitī, —, *to stand, exist, remain, continue; to persist, agree, depend upon;* **cōnstat,** *it is evident.* **14.**
cōnstrātus, a, um. See **cōnsternō.**
cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus, *to be accustomed, accustom one's self, be wont.* **38.**
cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., **(cōnsuēscō),** *custom, habit, use, intimacy.* **31.**
cōnsuētus, a, um. See **cōnsuēscō.**
cōnsul, ulis, m., *a consul.* **9.**
cōnsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship.* i. 35.
cōnsulō, ere, uī, ultus, *to consult, deliberate, take counsel, provide for; to respect.* **12.**
cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to consult, deliberate, take counsel.* v. 53, vii. 77.
cōnsultō, adv., **(cōnsultum),** *designedly, on purpose.* **5.**
cōnsultum, ī, n., **(cōnsulō),** *decree, deliberation, decision, statute.* i. 43.
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *to consume, eat up, waste, destroy; to spend.* **14.**
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, *to rise together, pay respect, rise up.* v. 31, vi. 23.
contabulō, āre, āvī, ātus, (con + tabula), *to cover with board, plank, floor.* v. 40, vii. 22.
contāgiō, ōnis, f., **(contingō),** *contact; contagion, infection.* vi. 13.
contāminō, āre, āvī, ātus, (con + tangō), *to pollute, stain, defile, contaminate.* vii. 43.
contegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover, conceal.* vii. 85.
contemnō, ere, tempsī, temptus, *to despise, slight, contemn.* v. 51.
contemptiō, ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn, disdain.* **4.**
contemptus, ūs, m., *contempt, disdain, scorn.* ii. 30.
contendō, ere, ī, tentus, (con + tendō), *to stretch, endeavor, draw, exert one's self; to maintain, contend; to go to, hasten.* For transfer of meaning cf. ἐλαύνω, *march* (Eng., *elastic*). **75.**
contentiō, ōnis, f., *straining, endeavor, contest, zeal, dispute.* **7.**
contentus, a, um, adj., **(contineō),** *content, satisfied.* vii. 64.
contestor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to call to witness, conjure, invoke.* iv. 25.
contexō, ere, uī, tus, *to weave, join together, connect, construct.* iv. 17, vi. 16, vii. 23.
contigī. See **contingō.**
continēns, entis, partic. pres., **(contineō),** *bordering upon, adjoining; uninterrupted, continual.*
continēns, entis, f., **(sc. terra),** *the continent.* **10.**
continenter, adv., **(contineō),** *continually, uninterruptedly.* i. 1, 26; iii. 5.
continentia, ae, f., *moderation, self-control.* vii. 52.
contineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (con + teneō), *to contain, hold together, restrain; to occupy, keep, hold.* **53.**
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, (con + tangō), *to touch, border on; to occur, happen.* **8.**
continuātiō, ōnis, f., **(continuō),** *continuance, connection, continuation.* iii. 29.
continuō, adv., **(continuus),** *at once, immediately.* vii. 42.
continuus, a, um, adj., **(contineō),** *continuous, successive.* **4.**

cōntiō, ōnis, f., (**conventiō, con + veniō**), *an assembly, a council, a meeting.* v. 52, vii. 52, 53.

cōntiōnor, ārī, ātus, dep., (**cōntiō**), *to harangue, address the people, make a speech.* vi. 47.

contrā, prep. with acc., *contrary to, against, opposite to.* **4.**

contrā, adv., *on the contrary, on the other hand.* **53.**

contrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to draw together, collect, unite, contract, draw in.* **5.**

contrārius, a, um, adj., (**contrā**), *contrary, opposite;* **ex contrāriō,** *on the contrary.* **4.**

contrōversia, ae, f., *contention, controversy, dispute, debate.* **14.**

cōntulī. See **cōnferō.**

contumēlia, ae, f., *disgrace, insult, violence, rudeness, outrage.* **7.**

convalēscō, ere, valuī, —, *to become strong; to gain strength, convalesce.* vi. 36.

convallis, is, f., *a valley inclosed on all sides.* iii. 20, v. 32.

convehō, ere, vēxī, vēctus, *to collect, bring together.* vii. 74.

conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to assemble, meet; to be agreed upon, suit; to flock;* **convenit,** *it is agreed upon; it is fit, right.* **61.**

conventus, ūs, m., *a court, assembly, meeting, assizes.* **7.**

convertō, ere, ī, versus, *to turn about, direct, alter, change.* **13.**

Convictolitāvis, is, (acc. **im**), m., a noble Haeduan. vii. 32, 33, 37, 42, 55, 67.

convincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *prove, overcome, convince.* i. 40.

convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to summon, call together, assemble.* **17.**

coorior, īrī, ortus, dep., (**con + orior**), *to rise, rise in mutiny, break out, appear; to intervene, come to pass, occur.* **5.**

cōpia, ae, f., (**con + ops**), *abundance, plenty, number, supply, resources; provisions;* **cōpiae,** f. pl., *troops, forces.* **148.**

cōpiōsus, a, um, adj., *copious, rich, well supplied.* i. 23.

cōpula, ae, f., *a grapnel.* iii. 13.

cor, cordis, n., *the heart;* **cordī esse,** *to be dear.* vi. 19.

cōram, adv., *in person, in presence of, before.* i. 32, vi. 8.

corium, ī, n., *skin* or *hide of a beast, leather.* vii. 22.

Cornēlius Balbus, m., an intimate friend of Caesar. viii. praef.

cornū, ūs, n., *a horn, trumpet, cornet; wing of an army.* **14.**

corōna, ae, f., *chaplet, crown, wreath.* iii. 16, vii. 72.

corpus, oris, n., *a body, person.* **13.**

Correus, ī, m., chieftain of the Bellovacī. viii. 6, 7, 17, *seq.*

corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, (**con + rumpō**), *to damage, injure, destroy, corrupt, waste.* vii. 55, 64.

cortex, icis, m. and f., *bark.* ii. 33.

Cōrus, ī, m., *the northwest wind.* v. 7.

cotīdiānus, a, um, adj., *every day, daily; usual.* **8.**

cotīdiē, adv., *every day, daily.* **11.**

Cotta, ae, m. See **Aurunculēius.**

Cotus, ī, m., a noble Haeduan. vii. 32, 33, 39, 67.

crassitūdō, inis, f., *thickness.* iii. 13, vii. 73.

Crassus, ī, m., (1) *M. Licinius,* triumvir, with Caesar and Pompēius, died 53 B.C. on expedition against the Parthae. i. 21; iv. 1; viii. 53. (2) *P. Licinius,* the son of (1), one of Caesar's legates. i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 20, *ff.;* viii. 46. (3) *M. Licinius,* son of (1) and brother of (2), Caesar's quaestor. v. 24, 46; vi. 6.

crātis, is, f., *a hurdle, fascine, wickerwork.* **8.**

crēber, bra, brum, adj., *repeated, frequent, crowded.* **14.**

crēbrō, adv., *often, frequently.* vii. 41.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus, (cf. Skt. **cras,** *confidence* + Skt. **dha,** *put*), *to trust, believe, suppose, imagine, give credit to, think; to commend.* **7.**

cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to burn.* i. 4, vi. 19.

creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make, produce, create, elect, appoint.* **5.**

Crēs, ētis, adj., *Cretan.* ii. 7.

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *to increase, grow, thrive, become greater, come forth; to rise in influence.* i. 20, vii. 55.

Crētes, (sing. **Crēs**), **um,** m. pl., *inhabitants of the island Creta,* skilful bowmen. (Acc. **Crētas**). ii. 7.

Critognātus, ī, m., a noble Arvernian. vii. 77.

cruciātus, ūs, m., *torture, torment, distress.* **9.**

crūdēlitās, ātis, f., *cruelty.* i. 32, vii. 77.

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.* i. 31, vii. 38.

crūs, crūris, n., *the leg.* vi. 27.

cubīle, is, n., *a couch, a bed.* vi. 27.

culmen, inis, n., *the summit, top of a thing.* iii. 2.

culpa, ae, f., *an offence, fault.* iv. 27, v. 32.

cultus, ūs, m., (**colō**), *refinement, culture, cultivation, dress, mode of living.* **4.**

cum, prep. with the ablat., *with, among, along with.* **250.**

cum, conj., *since, when, because, although.* **289.**

cunctātiō, ōnis, f., *lingering, delay, hesitation.* iii. 18, 24.

cunctor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to linger, delay; to doubt, hesitate.* iii. 23, iv. 25.

cūnctus, a, um, adj., *all together, all, entire, the whole.* ii. 29, vii. 10, 11.

cuneātim, adv., *in form of a wedge.* vii. 28.

cuneus, ī, m., *a wedge.* vi. 40.

cuniculus, ī, m., *a rabbit; mine, burrow.* **5.**

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.* **4.**

cupiditās, ātis, f., *eagerness, desire, avarice, cupidity.* **6.**

cupidus, a, um, adj., *eager, desirous, fond.* **5.**

cupiō, ere, īvī, ītus, *to wish, desire, long for; to favor, wish well to; to covet.* **5.**

cūr, adv., *why, wherefore.* **5.**

cūra, ae, f., *attention, diligence, care.* i. 32, 40; vii. 65.

Curiō, ōnis, m., *C. Scribonius,* a tribune of the plebs. viii. 52.

Cūriosolītēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in the modern Bretagne near Corseult (near St. Malo). vii. 75. Acc. **Cūriosilītas.** ii. 34; iii. 7 (**cīvitās Aremorica**).

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attend to, take care, care for; to regard.* **12.**

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus, *to run, flow.* vii. 24.

currus, ūs, m., *a chariot, car, wagon.* iv. 33.

cursus, ūs, m., *a running, speed, race, course, voyage.* **13.**

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, custody, charge, care, the act of keeping.* **5.**

custōdiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to watch, keep, guard, observe.* vi. 4.

custōs, ōdis, m. and f., *a keeper, watch, guard, preserver, spy.* **5.**

D.

Dācī, ōrum, m. pl., a Thracian tribe in Dacia (modern Hungaria, Siebenbürgen, Bukowina, Galizien, southern part). Roman province since 105 B. C. vi. 25.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to sentence, condemn, doom.* i. 4, v. 55.

damnum, ī, n., *damage, loss, injury.* vi. 44.

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube (Donau).* vi. 25.

dē, prep. with the ablat., *from, concerning, after, in regard to, on account of, for, by, in, during, of.* **205.** See page 57 e.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, (**dē** + **habeō**), *to owe, be in debt;* **dēbet,** *ought;* pass., *to be due.* **13.**

dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to go away, depart, retire, withdraw.* **5.**

decem, num. adj. indecl., *ten.* **11.**

dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *to decide, judge, determine, resolve, decree, deliberate; to fight, contend, engage.* **8.**

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to strive, contend for, fight.* **6.**

dēcessus, ūs, m., (**dēcēdō**), *a going away, departure, withdrawal.* iii. 13.

Decetia, ae, f., a town of the Haeduī on the Liger (Loire), the modern *Decize.* vii. 33.

dēcidō, ere, idī, —, (**dē** + **cadō**), *to fall from, fall down.* i. 48.

decimus, a, um, num. adj., *the tenth.* **15.**

dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (**dē** + **capiō**), *to ensnare, catch, deceive, beguile.* i. 14.

dēclārō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**dē** + **clārō**), *to proclaim, declare, manifest, evince.* i. 50.

dēclīvis, e, adj. (**dē** + **clīvus**), *descending, sloping.* **4.**

dēclīvitās, ātis, f., *a declivity, a descent.* vii. 85.

dēcrētum, ī, n., (**dēcernō**), *a resolution, decree, decision.* vi. 13 (twice), vii. 34.

dēcrētus, a, um. See **dēcernō.**

decumānus, a, um, adj. (**decem**), *of* or *belonging to the tenth.* ii. 24, iii. 25, vi. 37.

decuriō, ōnis, m., *the commander of a* **decuria** or *ten horsemen; a decurion.* i. 23.

dēcurrō, ere, cucurrī or **currī, cursus,** *to run down, to hasten.* **4.**

dēdecus, oris, n., (**dē** + **decus**), *dishonor, disgrace, infamy, shameful action.* iv. 25.

dedī. See **dō.**

dēdidī. See **dēdō.**

dēditīcius, a um, adj., (**dēdō**), *having surrendered.* **4.**

dēditīcius, ī, m., *one who has surrendered, a prisoner.*

dēditiō, ōnis, f., (**dēdō**), *capitulation, surrender.* **19.**

dēditus. See **dēdō.**

dēdō, ere, didī, ditus, *to surrender, give up, deliver, devote, submit, give.* **16.**

dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to bring* or *pull down, conduct, remove, withdraw; to influence, induce, lead, move; to accompany, conduct,* e. g. a bride to her husband. **31.**

dēest. See **dēsum.**

dēfatīgātiō, ōnis, f., *exhaustion, weariness.* iii 19.

dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to fatigue, exhaust, weary.* **5.**

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., (**dēficiō**), *revolt, defection; failure, want.* **12.**

dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, *to keep off, ward off, repel; to protect, defend, keep.* **28.**

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., *defence.* ii. 7, vii. 23.

dēfēnsor, ōris, m., *a defender, protector; defence, advocate.* **8.**

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to carry* or *bring away, convey; to report, inform, confer, offer.* **26.**

dēfessus, a, um, adj., (**dēfetīscor**), *fatigued, wearied.* **6.**

dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (**dē** + **faciō**), *to be wanting, fail; to withdraw, revolt, forsake, leave;* **animō dēficere,** *to be disheartened.* **13.**

dēfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, *to drive down, fasten, plant, fix, thrust.* iv. 17, v. 18, 44.

dēfīniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to limit, define, determine, prescribe, resolve, explain.* vii. 83.

dēfīxus, a, um. See **dēfīgō.**

dēfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus, *to flow down, flow apart.* iv. 10.

dēfore = **dēfutūrum esse,** *to be about, to be wanting.* v. 5, 6.

dēfōrmis, e, adj., (**dē** + **fōrma**), *deformed, ugly, misshapen, unsightly.* iv. 2, vii. 23.

dēfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *to shun, flee, avoid.* vi. 13.

dēfuī. See **dēsum.**

dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (dē + iaciō), *to dislodge, throw down, overthrow, prostrate, kill, slay; to disappoint.* **12.**

dēiectus, ūs, m., **(dēiciō),** *a declivity, depression, steep place, descent.* ii. 8, 22, 29.

deinceps, adv., **(dein + capiō),** *successively, besides, next in succession, after that, moreover.* **6.**

deinde, adv., **(dē + inde),** *afterwards, then, next.* **7.**

dēlātus, a, um. See **dēferō.**

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + laciō), *to please, delight, allure.* iv. 2.

dēlēctus, ūs, m., **(dēligō),** *a levy, conscription.* vi. 1 (twice), vii. 1, 3.

dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *to efface, destroy, overthrow; to blot out.* **6.**

dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + lībra), *to deliberate, consider, advise, determine.* i. 7, iv. 9, vii. 15.

dēlibrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + liber), *to peel, take off the bark.* vii. 73.

dēlictum, ī, n., **(dēlinquō),** *an offence, crime, sin, fault.* vii. 4.

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + ligō), *to tie, fasten, bind.* **4.**

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, (dē + legō), *to select, choose, pick out, detach, cull.* **26.**

dēlitēscō, ere, lituī, —, (dē + latēscō), *to be concealed, lie hid, lurk.* iv. 32.

dēmentia, ae, f., **(dēmēns),** *folly, madness.* iv. 13.

dēmetō, ere, messuī, messus, *to cut down, reap.* iv. 32.

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to depart, migrate, remove.* iv. 4, 19; v. 43.

dēminuō, ere, ī, ūtus, *to lessen, diminish, abate, withdraw.* **6.**

dēmīssus, a, um, partic. pass., **(dēmittō),** *drooping, dejected.*

dēmittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *to send down, cast, sink, lower, let fall, thrust.* **9.**

dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, (dē + emō), *to remove, take off, take away.* v. 48.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to show, point out, demonstrate, declare, mention, name, state.* **37.**

dēmoror, ārī, ātus, *to detain, hinder, delay, stop, abide, remain.* iii. 6.

dēmum, adv., *finally, at length.* **4.**

dēnegō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to deny, refuse, not suffer.* i. 42.

dēnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *ten by ten, ten.* i. 43, v. 14.

dēnique, adv., *finally, at last, at least.* **5.**

dēnsus, a, um, adj., *dense, close, crowded, thick.* **7.**

dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to declare, announce; to denounce, threaten.* i. 36, v. 54, vi 10.

dēpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *to drive down, drive away, dislodge, avert, remove.* **4.**

dēperdō, ere, didī, ditus, *to lose.* i. 43, iii. 28, v. 54.

dēpereō, īre, iī, —, *to be lost, perish, be undone, go to ruin.* v. 23, vii. 31.

dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to lay aside, put down, place, station; to give up, lose.* **8.**

dēpopulor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to ravage, lay waste, plunder.* **6.**

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to convey away, carry, transfer* from one place to another. iii. 12.

dēpōscō, ere, poposcī, —, *to require demand, request earnestly.* vii. 1.

dēpositus, a, um. See **dēpōnō.**

dēprecātor, ōris, m., *an intercessor.* i. 9, vi. 4.

dēprecor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to avert by prayer, supplicate, beg, implore, deprecate, excuse.* **5.**

dēprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, *to seize, catch, detect, discover, surprise.* **5.**

dēpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to contend, fight it out.* vii. 28.

dēpulsus, a, um. See **dēpellō.**

dērīvō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**dē** + **rīvus**), *to derive, draw off.* vii. 72.
dērogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to diminish, detract from, take away.* vi. 23.
dēscendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, (**dē** + **scandō**), *to come down, descend.* **5.**
dēsecō, āre, uī, tus, *to cut off.* vii. 4.
dēserō, ere, uī, tus, *to abandon, desert, leave, forsake.* **10.**
dēsertor, ōris, m., *a deserter.* vi. 23.
dēsertus, a, um, partic. pass., (**dēserō**), *solitary, deserted, lonely, uninhabited.* ii. 29, v. 53.
dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to long for; to desire, miss, need, regret.* **7.**
dēsidia, ae, f., (**dēsideō**), *inactivity, idleness.* vi. 23.
dēsignō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to designate, mark out, specify, denote.* i. 18.
dēsiliō, īre, uī, ultus, (**dē** + **saliō**), *to leap down.* **8.**
dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *to discontinue, stand still, give over, cease, desist.* **13.**
dēspectus, ūs, m., (**dēspiciō**), *prospect, height, elevation.* **5.**
dēspērātiō, ōnis, f., (**dēspērō**), *desperation, despair.* v. 33.
dēspērātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**dēspērō**), *desperate.* **12.**
dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to despair.* **20.**
dēspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, (**dē** + **speciō**), *to despise, look down on, disregard, disdain.* **7.**
dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to deprive of, despoil, plunder, strip.* ii. 31.
dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make fast, fasten, design; to resolve, determine; to send, appoint.* iii. 14, vii. 22, 72.
dēstitī. See **dēsistō.**
dēstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, (**dē** + **statuō**), *to leave, forsake, abandon.* i. 16.
dēstringō, ere, inxī, ictus, *to tear off, pluck, strip, draw, unsheathe.* i. 25, vii. 12.
dēsum, esse, fuī, —, *to be wanting, fail.* **12.**

dēsuper, adv., *above, from above.* i. 52.
dēterior, us, adj. comp., *worse, inferior.* i. 36.
dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *to prevent, deter, hinder, frighten.* **5.**
dētestor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to imprecate, execrate, curse; to detest.* vi. 31.
dētineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (**dē** + **teneō**), *to detain, stay, stop, hinder.* iii. 12, vii. 37.
dētractō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to decline, refuse, avoid.* vii. 14.
dētractus, a, um. See **dētrahō.**
dētrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to take off, remove, withdraw.* **5.**
dētrīmentōsus, a, um, adj., *injurious, detrimental.* vii. 33.
dētrīmentum, ī, n., (**dēterō**), *damage, loss, harm.* **9.**
dētrūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsus, *to remove, thrust off.* ii. 21.
dētulī. See **dēferō.**
dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to drive* or *cast down, beat, overthrow, drive away, dislodge.* v. 43, vii. 86.
deūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstus, *to consume, burn up, set on fire.* vii. 25.
deus, ī, m., *a god, divinity, deity.* **10.**
deūstus, a, um. See **deūrō.**
dēvehō, ere, vēxī, vēctus, *to carry* or *bring down, convey, remove.* i. 43, v. 47, vii. 88.
dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *to come down* or *go down, reach, arrive at.* ii. 21.
dēvēxus, a, um, adj., (**dēvehō**), *inclining downward, sloping.* vii. 88.
dēvincō, ere, vīcī, vīctus, *to subdue, conquer completely.* vii. 34.
dēvocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call, call away.* vi. 7.
dēvōtus, a, um, partic. pass., (**dēvoveō**), *attached, devoted.* iii. 22.
dēvoveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *to devote, vow, promise; to doom.* iii. 22, vi. 7
dexter, era, erum, *and* **tra, trum,** adj., *right, on the right;* **dextra, ae,** f., (sc. **manus**), *the right hand.* **13.**

Diablintrēs, um, m. pl. See **Aulercī.**
diciō, ōnis, f., *dominion, power, authority, rule.* i. 31, 33; ii. 34.
dicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to consecrate, dedicate, offer, devote, vow.* vi. 12, 13.
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *speak, say, name, appoint, determine, agree to, promise, mention.* **107.**
dictiō, ōnis, f., *a pleading.* i. 4.
dictum, ī, n., *a word, command, saying.* v. 6.
dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to draw aside, separate, divide, disperse.* iii. 23, vi. 34.
diēs, ēī, m. and f., *a day, time, length of time;* in diēs, *daily;* diem ex diē, *day after day.* **186.**
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *to carry hither and thither, disperse, scatter; delay, protract; to differ, be different.* **9.**
difficilis, e, adj., (**dis** + **facilis**), *difficult.* **7.**
difficultās, ātis, f., *difficulty.* **14.**
difficulter, adv., *with difficulty.* vii. 58.
diffīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., (**dis** + **fīdō**), *to mistrust, distrust, despair, fear, despair of.* v. 41, vi. 36, 38.
diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, (**dis** + **fundō**), *to pour out, scatter, spread out, extend, diffuse.* vi. 26.
digitus, ī, m., *a finger.* iii. 13, vii. 73.
dignitās, ātis, f., *merit, dignity, worth, standing.* **13.**
dignus, a, um, adj., *worthy.* vii 25.
diī. See **deus.**
diiūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to decide, judge, distinguish, determine.* v. 44.
dīligenter, adv., *attentively, diligently, carefully, accurately.* **9.**
dīligentia, ae, f., *attention, diligence, carefulness, industry, caution.* **13.**
dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, (**dis** + **legō**), *to love.* vi. 19.
dīmētior, īrī, mēnsus, dep., *to measure off.* ii. 19, iv. 17.
dīmicātiō, ōnis, f., *a fight, contest, skirmish, struggle, risk.* vii. 86.
dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**dis** + **micō**), *to contend, fight.* **18.**
dīmidium, ī, n., *the half.* v. 13.
dīmidius, a, um, adj., (**dis** + **medius**), *half.* vi. 31.
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *to dismiss, send away, discharge, let go; to release, reject, leave, abandon, renounce.* **36.**
dīrēctē, (**dīrēctus**), adv., *straight.* iv. 17.
dīrēctus, a, um, partic. pass., (**dīrigō**), *direct, straight, level, upright, steep.* **4.**
dīrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, (**dis** + **regō**), *to arrange, direct, guide, dispose, steer, regulate.* vi. 8.
dirimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, (**dis** + **emō**), *to part, divide, separate, interrupt, break off.* i. 46.
diripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, (**dis** + **rapiō**), *to snatch different ways, tear asunder; to plunder, lay waste, ravage.* **10.**
Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto, the god of the lower world.* vi. 18.
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to withdraw, depart, go away.* **50.**
disceptātor, ōris, m., *an umpire, arbitrator, mediator, judge.* vii. 37.
discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *distinguish, discern, judge, determine; to separate.* vii. 75.
discessus, ūs, m., (**discēdō**), *separation, departure.* **11.**
disciplīna, ae, f., (**discō**), *learning, instruction, discipline, system.* **8.**
disclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *to divide, separate, keep apart.* iv. 17, vii. 8.
discō, ere, didicī, —, *to learn, study, understand.* **4.**
discrīmen, inis, n., (**discernō**), *separation, difference, distinction; danger, peril, hazard.* vi. 38.
discutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, (**dis** + **quatiō**), *to scatter, remove, disperse, shatter.* vii. 8.
disiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (**dis** + **iaciō**), *to disperse, rout, scatter.* i 25, iii. 15, 20

dispār, aris, adj., *unlike, unequal, different.* v. 16, vii. 39.

disparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to divide, separate.* vii. 28.

dispergō, ere, spersī, spersus, (dis+spargō), *to disperse, scatter, distribute.* **11.**

dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to arrange, distribute, dispose, station.* **17.**

disputātiō, ōnis, f., *dispute, discussion, debate.* v. 30, 31.

disputō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to debate, argue, discuss.* vi. 14.

dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement, discord, variance, strife.* **6.**

dissentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to dissent, disagree, differ in opinion* or *in sentiment.* v. 29, vii. 29.

disserō, ere, —, —, *to plant, sow, put into the ground.* vii. 73.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to conceal, disguise, dissemble.* iv. 6.

dissipō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to disperse, scatter, throw asunder.* ii. 24, v. 58, vi. 35.

dissuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *to dissuade.* vii. 15.

distineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (dis+teneō), *to keep separate, divide, keep apart, hinder, detain, prevent.* **6.**

distō, āre, —, *to stand apart, be distant.* **5.**

distrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to draw apart, divide, separate.* vii. 23.

distribuō, ere, ī, ūtus, *to divide, distribute.* **12.**

distulī. See **differō.**

dītissimus. See **dīves.**

diū, adv., *long, for a long time; by day.* **21.**

diurnus, a, um, adj., **(diēs),** *by day, daily, in the daytime.* **4.**

diūtinus, a, um, adj., **(diū),** *lasting, long.* v. 52.

diūturnitās, ātis, f., *long duration.* i. 40, iii. 4.

diūturnus, a, um, adj., **(diū),** *lasting long, of long duration.* i. 14.

dīversus, a, um, adj., **(dīvertō),** *separate, turned in different directions, remote, different.* **6.**

dīves, itis, adj., *rich;* comp. **dīvitior,** or **dītior,** sup. **dīvitissimus** or **dītissimus.** i. 2.

Dīvicō, ōnis, m., a noble Helvetian. i. 13, 14.

dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *to divide, separate.* **16.**

dīvīnus, a, um, adj., **(dīvus),** *divine.* ii. 31, vi. 13, 21.

Dīvitiacus, ī, m. (1) Chieftain of the Haeduī. i. 3, 16, 18, 20, 31, 41; ii. 5, 10, 14, *seq.*; vi. 12; vii 39. (2) Chieftain of the Suessiōnēs. ii. 4.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *to give, afford, grant, make, cause, occasion, perform, concede.* **95.**

doceō, ēre, uī, tus, *to instruct, teach, inform.* **22.**

documentum, ī, n., **(doceō),** *a lesson, example, warning, essay, trial.* vii. 4.

doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *to regret, grieve, be pained.* **4.**

dolor, ōris, m., *pain, grief, mortification, vexation, resentment.* **10.**

dolus, ī, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.* i. 13, iv. 13.

domesticus, a, um, adj., **(domus),** *private, domestic, of a house* or *family.* ii. 10, v. 9.

domicilium, ī, n., **(domus),** *a home, dwelling, abode.* **4.**

dominor, ārī, ātus, dep., **(dominus),** *to rule, govern.* ii. 31.

dominus, ī, m., **(domus),** *a master, lord, owner, proprietor.* vi. 13.

Domitius, ī, m., *L. Domitius Ahenobarbus,* consul in 54 B.C., general of Pompey the Great. v. 1.

domus, ūs, and **ī,** f., *a house, home, habitation;* **domī,** *at home;* **domum,** *homeward, home;* **domō,** *from home.* **33.**

Donnotaurus, ī, m. See **Valērius.**

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to give, confer, present; to pardon, forgive.* i. 47, vii. 11.
dōnum, ī, n., *a present, gift, reward.* vii. 31.
dorsum, ī, n., *the back;* **dorsum iugī,** *the slope* or *ridge of a hill.* vii. 44.
dōs, dōtis, f., (**dō**), *a dowry.* vi. 19 (twice).
Drappēs, is, m., chieftain of the Senonēs. viii. 30–37, 44.
Druidēs, um, m. pl., *the Druids, the priests of the Gauls.* See p. 29. **7.**
Dūbis, is, m., (modern *Doubs*), a river which empties into the Arar (Saône).
dubitātiō, ōnis, f., *uncertainty, doubt.* i. 14, v. 48, vii. 40.
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to hesitate, doubt.* **13.**
dubius, a, um, adj., (**duo**), *uncertain, doubtful, hesitating;* **dubium, ī, n.,** *doubt, uncertainty.* **4.**
ducentī, ae, a, num. adj., (**duo + centum**), *two hundred.* **7.**
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to draw, lead, convey, conduct; to think, consider, account; to construct, build.* **37.**
ductus, ūs, m., *lead, command, conduct.* vii. 62.
dum, adv., *while, until.* **27.**
Dumnacus, ī, m., chieftain of the Andēs. viii. 26–31.
Dumnorix, igis, m., brother of Divitiacus (1). i. 3, 9, 18, *seq.;* v. 6, 7.
duo, ae, o, num. adj., *two.* **77.**
duodecim, num. adj., *twelve.* i. 5, vi. 29.
duodecimus, a, um, num adj., *the twelfth.* ii. 23, 25; vii. 62.
duodēnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *twelve by twelve, twelve, twelve each.* v. 14, vii. 36, 75.
duodēvīgintī, num. adj , *eighteen.* **4.**
duplex, icis, adj., (**duo + plicō**), *twofold, double.* ii. 29, iii. 24, vii 36.
duplicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**duplex**), *to double.* iv. 36, vi. 1.
Duratius, ī, m., chieftain of the Pictonēs. viii. 26, 27.
dūritia, ae, f., *hardness, endurance, hardiness, roughness, severity.* vi. 21.
dūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to harden; to endure.* vi. 28.
Dūrocortorum, ī, n., capital of the Rēmi in Belgic Gaul, the modern *Rheims.* vi. 44.
dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard, severe, harsh.* **4.**
Dūrus, ī, m. See **Laberius.**
dux, ducis, m. and f., *a guide, a leader.* **27.**

E.

ē or **ex,** prep. with the ablat., *from, out of, after, on account of, among;* **ē** is used only before consonants, **ex** before vowels and consonants. **ē 20, ex 447.**
Eburōnēs, um, m pl., a Belgic tribe on the right side of the Maas between the modern Lüttich and Aachen. ii. 4; iv. 6; v. 24, 28, 39; vi. 5, 31, 34, 35, 43. See **Aduātuca.** Chieftains: **Catuvolcus, Ambiorix.**
Ebūrovīcēs, um, m. pl. See **Aulerci.**
ēdiscō, ere, didicī, —, *to commit to memory, learn by heart.* vi 14.
ēditus, a, um, partic. pass., (**ēdō**), *raised, high, lofty, elevated.* **4.**
ēdō, ere, didī, ditus, (**ē + dō**), *to utter, put forth, publish, make known, exhibit.* i. 31.
ēdoceō, ēre, uī, tus, *to instruct, inform, relate, teach.* **4.**
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to draw out, bring out, lead forth.* **22.**
effarciō, īre —, fertus, (**ex + farciō**), *to cram, stuff, fill.* vii. 23.
effēminō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ex + fēmina**), *to effeminate, enervate.* i 1, iv. 2.
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus, *to produce, bring forth, raise, lift up, elate; to proclaim, divulge.* **9.**

efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (ex + faciō), *to accomplish, effect, occasion, bring to pass, produce, render.* **32.**

effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, (ex + fodiō), *to tear out, dig out.* vii. 4.

effugiō, ere, fūgī, —, (ex + fugiō), *to flee away, avoid, shun, escape.* iv. 35, v. 58, vi. 30

egēns, entis, partic. adj., **(egeō),** *in want, needy, destitute.* vii. 4.

egeō, ēre, uī, —, *to be destitute, needy, in want.* vi. 11, vii. 4.

egestās, ātis, f., *poverty, need, want.* vi. 24.

ēgī. See **agō.**

ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.* **10.**

ēgredior, ī, gressus, dep., **(ē + gradior),** *to depart from, go out, go beyond, leave; to disembark.* **27.**

ēgregiē, adv., **(ēgregius),** *excellently, admirably, eminently.* **6.**

ēgregius, a, um, adj., **(ē + grex),** *excellent, eminent, remarkable, admirable, distinguished, surpassing.* **4.**

ēgressus, ūs, m., **(ēgredior),** *a landing, departure, going out, egress.* v. 8.

ēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (ē + iaciō), *to cast* or *drive out, banish, expel;* **sē ēicere,** *to rush out.* **9.**

ēiusmodī, adv., **(is + modus),** *of that nature, such.* **8.**

ēlābor, ī, lapsus, dep., *to slip away, escape, get off.* v. 37.

ēlātus, a, um. See **efferō.**

Elaver, Elaveris, n., (modern *Allier*), coming from the **mons Cevenna** (les Cévennes), and emptying into the Liger (Loire). vii. 34, 35, 53.

ēlēctus, a, um, partic. pass., **(ēligō),** *selected, picked, chosen.* ii. 4.

elephantus, ī, m., *an elephant.* vi. 28.

Eleutetī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul, subject to the Arvernī. vii. 75.

ēliciō, ere, uī, —, (ē + laciō), *to draw out, elicit, lure forth, entice.* v. 50, vi. 8, vii. 32.

ēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, (ē + legō), *to pick out, select.* ii. 4.

Elusātēs, ium, m.pl., a tribe in Aquitānia, in the northwest of the modern Département des Gers. Capital: **Elusa** (near the modern Eauze).

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, —, *to remove, emigrate, depart.* i. 31.

ēmineō, ēre, uī, —, *to stand out, project.* vii 72, 73 (twice).

ēminus, adv., **(ē + manus),** *from a distance, at a distance.* vii. 24.

ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to send out, let go, dismiss, throw, cast aside, hurl, discharge.* **7.**

emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *to buy, purchase.* i. 16, ii. 33.

ēnāscor, ī, nātus, dep., *to spring* or *grow up, sprout out, spring from.* ii. 17.

enim, conj., *for, now, indeed.* **19.**

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to disclose, divulge, reveal, declare.* **8.**

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itūrus,** *to go, proceed, pass.* **27.**

eō, adv., **(is),** *thither, there, to that place, to such an extent, on that account, therefore.* **67.**

eōdem, adv., **(idem),** *to the same place, to the same end.* **9.**

Epasnactus, ī, m., an Arvernian. viii. 44.

ephippiātus, a, um, adj., *using saddles.* iv. 2.

ephippium, ī, n., *a saddle, horse-cloth.* iv. 2.

epistula, ae, f., *a letter, epistle.* v. 48 (three times).

epulae, ārum, f. pl., *banquets, feasts.* vi. 28.

eques, itis, m., **(equus),** *a horseman, cavalry; knight,* a member of the order of knights, in rank between the patricians and plebeians. **119.**

equester, tris, tre, adj., **(eques),** *of the cavalry, equestrian.* **14.**

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.* **110.**

equus, ī, m., *a horse.* **28.**

Eratosthenēs, is, m., famous geographer and astronomer, born in Cȳrēnē, died in 194 B. C.; president of the library at Alexandria. vi. 24.

ērectus, a, um, partic. pass., (**ērigō**), *elevated, erect, high, upright.* iii. 13.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.* v. 54.

ergō, conj., *therefore, then.* vii. 77 (twice).

ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, (**ē + regō**), *to raise, elevate, erect.* iii. 13, vi. 27.

ēripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, (**ē + rapiō**), *to snatch away, tear* or *take away, wrest; to rescue, liberate.* **11.**

errō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to wander, err, be mistaken.* v. 41, vii. 29.

ērumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to burst forth, break out, sally forth, rush forth.* iii. 5.

ēruptiō, ōnis, f., (**ērumpō**), *a breaking, bursting forth, a sally, a sortie.* **23.**

essedārius, ī, m., *one who fought from a war-chariot.* **4.**

essedum, ī, n., *a war-chariot* of the Gauls and Britons. **6.**

Esubiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Normandie. ii. 34; iii. 7; v. 24.

et, conj., *and, even, also;* **et — et,** *both — and.* **890.**

etiam, conj., *also, likewise; yet, even, still.* **94.**

etsī, conj., *even if, although.* **18.**

ēvādō, ere, vāsī, vāsus, *to escape, come out, go out, go forth* or *from.* iii. 19.

ēvellō, ere, ī, vulsus, *to pluck* or *pull out.* i. 25.

ēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come out, happen, result.* iv. 25.

ēventus, ūs, m., (**ēveniō**), *an event, issue, occurrence.* **6.**

ēvocātī, ōrum, m. pl., old soldiers who after having served their time were *called out* as volunteers. See p. 36 e. vii. 65.

ēvocātus, a, um, part., (**ēvocō**), *called out.*

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call forth, challenge, summon, entice, invite.* **15.**

ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to fly out, sally out, rush forth.* iii. 28, vii. 27.

ex. See **ē.**

exāctus, a, um. See **exigō.**

exagitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to harass, disturb, persecute, vex, annoy.* ii. 29, iv. 1.

exāminō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**exāmen**), *to weigh, ponder, examine.* v. 12.

exanimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to exhaust, weaken; to destroy, kill.* **7.**

exārdēscō, ere, ārsī, ārsus, *to blaze out, kindle; to be excited, inflamed; to break out.* v. 4.

exaudiō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *to listen to, hear, regard.* **6.**

excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to depart, withdraw, go out, retire.* **16.**

excellō, ere, — , celsus, *to excel, surpass, be eminent.* v. 13.

excelsus, a, um, adj., (**excellō**), *lofty, high, elevated.* vi. 26.

exceptō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**excipiō**), *to pick* or *take up.* vii. 47.

excīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (**ex+caedō**), *to cut out, banish, remove, destroy, demolish.* vii. 50.

excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (**ex + capiō**), *to take out, incur, receive, sustain, meet; to succeed, follow after; to undergo.* **12.**

excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to arouse, excite, call forth, incite, impel, stimulate, spur on; to construct, raise, erect; to kindle.* **10.**

exclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *to exclude, shut out, cut off; to prevent, hinder.* **4.**

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to contrive, devise, consider.* v. 31.

excruciō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to torment, torture.* vi. 19, vii. 20, 38.

excubitor, ōris, m., *a sentinel, guard, watch.* vii. 69.

excubō, āre, uī, itus, *to lie out on guard, watch.* vii. 11, 24 (twice).

exculcō, āre, —, —, (ex + calcō), *to tread down.* vii. 73.

excursiō, ōnis, f., *an excursion, attack, sally, incursion.* ii. 30.

excūsātiō, ōnis, f., *an excuse, apology, defence.* vi. 4.

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to excuse, plead in excuse, defend.* iv. 22.

exemplum, ī, n., **(eximō),** *example, pattern, model; manner, way, kind; copy, sample, precedent; purport.* i. 8, 31; vii. 77.

exeō, īre, iī, itus, *to go out* or *away, depart, march out, leave.* 10.

exerceō, ēre, ui, itus, (ex + arceō), *to exercise, drive on, keep busy, occupy, employ, practise, train.* 5.

exercitātiō, ōnis, f., *exercise, practice.* 7.

exercitātus, a, um, partic. pass., **(exercitō),** *exercised, practised, versed, trained.* i 36, ii. 20.

exercitus, ūs, m., *an army.* 131.

exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustus, *to drain, draw out, remove.* v. 42.

exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (ex + agō), *to drive out; to complete, finish; to exact, demand; to spend, pass; to ponder, consider.* iii. 28, vi. 1.

exiguē, adv., *hardly, scarcely, briefly, slightly, shortly.* vii. 71.

exiguitās, ātis, f., *scantiness* in number or measure, *poverty, shortness, small number.* 5.

exiguus, a, um, adj., **(exigō),** *scanty* in number or measure, *short, mean, slight.* 5.

eximius, a, um, adj., **(eximō),** *distinguished, uncommon, extraordinary, excellent, select.* ii. 8.

exīstimātiō, ōnis, f., *judgment, opinion; reputation, good name.* i. 20, v. 44.

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + aestimō), *to reckon, consider, suppose, judge, esteem.* 78.

exitus, ūs, m., **(exeō),** *departure; outlet, passage; close, end, conclusion.* 8.

expediō, īre, īvī, ītus, (ex + pēs), *to extricate, free, liberate; to expedite, facilitate; to arrange, prepare, make ready; to procure.* 18.

expedītiō, ōnis, f., *an expedition.* v. 10.

expedītus, a, um, partic. pass., **(expediō),** *unimpeded, free, easy, ready at hand, light-armed.* 15.

expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *to drive away, banish, expel.* 13.

experior, īrī, pertus, dep., *to make trial of, try, prove, put to test, know by experience, wait.* 10.

expiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to make complete satisfaction, atone for, expiate, make good, make amends for.* v. 52.

expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *to fill up, complete, finish, satisfy, suit, appease, supply.* 6.

explōrātor, ōris, m., *an explorer, a spy, scout.* 23.

explōrātus, a, um, partic. pass., **(explōrō),** *certain, ascertained, sure.* 11.

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to search out, seek, discover, explore; to examine, investigate, ascertain; to reconnoitre, spy out.* 14.

expōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to expose; to land, disembark; to explain, expound, set forth; to draw up, marshal.* 9.

exportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to export, carry out, convey away.* iv. 18.

exposcō, ere, poposci, —, *to ask earnestly, beg, request, entreat.* vii 19.

exprimō, ere, pressi, pressus, (ex + premō), *to press* or *squeeze out, extort, wrest; to express, declare, represent; to raise up, elevate.* i. 32, vii. 22.

expūgnātiō, ōnis, f., *the storming of a place; storming, assault.* vi. 41, vii. 36.

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to take by assault, reduce, subdue, storm.* 12.

exquīrō, ere, quīsīvi, quīsītus, (ex + quaerō), *to search diligently; to make inquiry, ask, investigate, examine.* i. 41, iii 3.

exsequor, ī, cūtus, dep., *to follow, pursue, execute, perform, accomplish.* i. 4.

exserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *to thrust out; to bare, uncover.* vii. 50.

exsistō, ere, stitī, —, *to make come forth, step out, emerge; to spring up, arise, become, be, exist.* **5.**

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to watch for, await; to long for, desire, anticipate; to hope for; to wait to see.* **34.**

exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to spoil, strip, plunder.* vii. 77.

exstinguō, ere, nxī, nctus, *to extinguish, put out, extirpate, destroy, annihilate.* iv. 29.

exstō, āre, —, —, *to stand out* or *above; to appear, exist; to project.* v. 18.

exstruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus, *to pile* or *heap up thoroughly; to raise, build, erect, construct.* **5.**

exsul, ulis, m. and f., **(ex + solum),** *an exile.* v. 55.

exter or **exterus, a, um,** adj., *outward, external, outer, foreign;* comp **exterior,** sup. **extrēmus** or **extimus,** *extreme, outermost, last, farthest, most remote, end of.* **27.**

exterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *to dismay, terrify.* vii. 43, 77.

extimēscō, ere, timuī, —, *to dread, fear greatly.* iii 13

extorqueō, ēre, torsī, tortus, *to extort, wrest.* vii. 54.

extrā, prep. with the acc., *without, out of, outside of, besides, except, beyond.* **7.**

extrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to draw out* or *forth, withdraw, release, spend, waste.* v. 22.

extrēmus, a, um. See **exter.**

extrūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsus, *to thrust out, exclude, keep back.* iii 12.

extulī. See **efferō.**

exuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *to divest, deprive, despoil, strip off, draw out* or *off.* **4.**

exūro, ere, ūssi, ūstus, *to burn up.* i. 5.

exūtus, a, um. See exuō.

F.

faber, brī, m., *a workman in iron, artificer, smith.* v. 11.

Fabius, ī, m., *Q. Fabius Māximus Allobrogicus,* conquered in 121 B. C. the united forces of the Allobrogēs, Arvernī, and Rutēnī. i. 45.

Fabius, ī, m., *C.*, one of Caesar's legates. v. 24; vii. 90; viii. 6–24, 27, 31, 37, 54.

Fabius, ī, m., *L.*, centurion of the VIIIth Gallic legion. vii. 47, 50.

facile, adv., *readily, easily.* **39.**

facilis, e, adj., **(faciō),** *easy, ready, courteous, affable.* **7.**

facinus, oris, n., **(faciō),** *a deed, action, exploit, crime; daring deed.* **9.**

faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *to make, perform, do, bring to pass; to construct, prepare, render, cause; to give, furnish;* **castra facere,** *to pitch a camp.* **324.**

factiō, ōnis, f., **(faciō),** *a party, side, faction.* **5.**

factum, ī, n., *a deed, act, exploit.* **5.**

factus, a, um. See **fīō.**

facultās, ātis, f., **(facilis),** *ability, power, abundance, number, stock, resources, means, opportunity.* **27.**

fāgus, ī, f., *a beech-tree.* v. 12.

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, *to deceive, cheat, dupe, disappoint, escape notice, elude observation.* ii. 10, iv. 13, vii. 50.

falsus, a, um, adj., **(fallō),** *unfounded, false, deceitful.* vi. 20.

falx, falcis, f., *a sickle; a military implement* shaped like a sickle used in sieges to pull down walls. **6.**

fāma, ae, f., *report, fame, rumor; renown, reputation, character.* **12.**

famēs, is, f., *famine, hunger.* **6.**

familia, ae, f., *a household* including the slaves; *the slaves of a family.* **8.**

familiāris, e, adj., *of a family, private, familiar;* **rēs familiāris,** *family estate, private property.* **9.**

familiāris, is, m., *a friend.* **4.**

familiāritās, ātis, f., *familiarity, intimacy, friendship, intimate acquaintance.* v. 3.

fās, n. indecl., *divine law, the will of heaven; right, duty, justice.* **4.**

fastigātē, adv., *sloping.* iv. 17.

fastigātus, a, um, adj., **(fastigium),** *sloping to a point, descending, sloping.* ii. 8, iv. 17.

fastigium, ī, n., *summit, top, height, eminence, slope, descent, declivity.* vii. 69, 73, 85.

fātum, ī, n., **(farī),** *fate, destiny, an oracle.* i. 39.

Faustus, ī, m. See **Sulla.**

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *to favor, countenance.* i. 18, vi. 7.

fax, facis, f., *firebrand, torch.* vii. 24.

fēlīcitās, ātis, f., *happiness, felicity, good fortune, success.* i. 40, vi. 43.

fēlīciter, adv., *happily, successfully, auspiciously.* iv. 25.

fēmina, ae, f., *a female, a woman.* vi. 21, 26; vii. 73.

femur, oris, n., *the thigh.* v. 35.

fera, ae, f., *a wild beast.* vi. 25, 28.

ferāx, ācis, adj., **(ferō),** *fruitful, fertile, productive.* ii. 4.

ferē, adv., *within a little, nearly, about, for the most part, generally.* **45.**

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, carry, drive away; to yield, obtain, acquire; to suffer, tolerate, endure; to report, show, make known; to go, flee;* **fertur,** *it is said.* **66.**

ferrāmentum, ī, n., **(ferrum),** *a tool, implement.* v 42.

ferrāria, ae, f., **(ferrum),** *an iron mine.* vii. 22.

ferreus, a, um, adj., *of iron, iron.* **4.**

ferrum, ī, n., *iron; sword.* i. 25, v. 12, 30.

fertilis, e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.* vi. 24, vii. 13.

fertilitās, ātis, f., *fertility, fruitfulness.* ii. 4.

ferus, a, um, adj., *wild, rude, cruel, barbarous.* **5.**

fervefactus, partic. **(fervefaciō),** *made hot, melted, hot.* v. 43, vii. 22.

ferveō, ēre, —, —, *to be boiling* or *red hot, glow with heat.* v. 43.

fībula, ae, f., *a clasp, brace.* iv. 17.

fictus, a, um, partic. pass., **(fingō),** *formed, fictitious, false.* iv. 5.

fidēlis, e, adj., **(fidēs),** *faithful, trusty, sure.* iv. 21, vii. 76.

fidēs, eī, f., *trust in a person* or *thing, belief, protection, security; promise, engagement, good faith.* **35.**

fidūcia, ae, f., **(fīdō),** *confidence, reliance, assurance, courage.* vii. 19, 38, 76.

figūra, ae, f., **(fingō),** *form, shape; kind, quality, species, nature.* **5.**

fīlia, ae, f., *a daughter.* **4.**

fīlius, ī, m., *a son.* **13.**

fingō, ere, finxī, fictus, *to work in plastic material, frame, make; to contrive, devise, invent; to feign.* i. 39, iv. 5, vi. 37.

fīniō, īre, īvī, ītus, (fīnis), *to limit, bound, put within boundaries; to finish, terminate, compute.* iv. 16, vi. 18, 25.

fīnis, is, m. and f., *an end, limit; boundary, territory.* **126.**

fīnitimus, a, um, adj, **(fīnis),** *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring;* **fīnitimī, ōrum,** m. pl., *neighbors.* **40.**

fīō, fierī, factus, irreg. pass. of **faciō,** *to be made, done; to become, come to pass;* **certior fierī,** *to be informed;* **fit,** *it happens.* See **faciō.**

fīrmiter, adv., *firmly, resolutely.* iv. 26.

fīrmitūdō, inis, f., *firmness, strength, solidity.* iii. 13, iv. 17.

fīrmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make firm and fast, support, fortify; to encourage, animate.* vi. 29.

fīrmus, a, um, adj., *strong, steadfast, durable; brave, valiant.* **11.**

fistūca, ae, f., *a rammer, pile-driver.* iv. 17.

flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to demand earnestly, entreat, importune.* i. 16.

flamma, ae, f., *flame, blaze, glow.* v. 43 (twice), vi. 16.

flectō, ere, flēxī, flexus, *to bend, bow, turn; to prevail upon, guide, direct.* iv. 33, vi. 25.

fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *to weep, cry, lament.* **6.**

flētus, ūs, m., **(fleō),** *a weeping, lamentation.* i. 32, v. 33.

flō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to blow.* v. 7.

flōrens, entis, partic. pres., **(flōreō),** *flourishing, prosperous, fine, in the prime, influential.* i. 30, iv. 3, vii. 32.

flōs, flōris, m., *a flower.* vii. 73.

fluctus, ūs, m., **(fluō),** *a wave.* **4.**

flūmen, inis, n., **(fluō),** *a river, stream;* **flumine secundō,** *down stream;* **flumine adversō,** *up stream.* **102.**

fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxus, *to flow.* i. 6, 12.

fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, *to dig, dig up, dig out.* vii. 73.

foedus, eris, n., *a league, treaty, compact.* vi. 2.

forem = essem, fore = futūrus esse.

foris, adv., *without, abroad, outside, out of doors.* vii. 76.

fōrma, ae, f., *form, figure, shape; a model, pattern; beauty.* **4.**

fōrs, fortis, f., **(ferō),** *chance, luck, hazard, fortune;* **fōrte,** abl., *by chance.* **5.**

fortis, e, adj., *strong, brave.* **9.**

fortiter, adv., *bravely, firmly.* **13.**

fortitūdō, inis, f., **(fortis),** *courage, bravery, fortitude.* i. 2.

fōrtuītō, adv., **(fōrs),** *by chance, accidentally.* vii. 20.

fōrtūna, ae, f., **(fōrs),** *chance, fortune, fate, lot.* **39.**

fōrtūnātus, a, um, adj., *fortunate, prosperous, lucky.* vi. 35.

forum, ī, n., **(uncertain),** *a market-place, public place, forum.* vii. 28.

fossa, ae, f., **(fodiō),** *a trench, ditch, fosse.* **27.**

fovea, ae, f., *a pitfall, pit.* vi. 28.

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *to break, dash to pieces, crush, soften, discourage.* i. 31, iv. 29.

frāter, tris, m., *a brother.* **27.**

frāternus, a, um, adj., *brotherly, fraternal, of a brother.* i. 20, 36.

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, guile, fraud, treachery.* vii. 40.

fremitus, ūs, m., **(fremō),** *a murmuring, resounding noise, clamor.* ii. 24, iv. 14, v. 32.

frequēns, entis, adj., *frequent, repeated, numerous, crowded.* iv. 11, 13, vii. 63.

frētus, a, um, adj., *relying on, depending on.* iii. 21, vi. 5.

frīgidus, a, um, adj., *cold.* iv. 1.

frīgus, oris, n., *cold, coolness.* **4.**

frōns, frōntis, f., *the forehead, brow, front;* **ā frōnte,** *in front.* **6.**

fructuōsus, a, um, adj., *fruitful, fertile, productive.* i. 30.

frūctus, ūs, m., **(fruor),** *fruit, produce, profit, employment, result, effect.* **4.**

frūmentārius, a, um, adj., *of corn, fertile in corn;* **rēs frūmentāria,** *corn, a supply of corn, provisions.* **26.**

frūmentātiō, ōnis, f., *a procuring of corn, foraging.* vi. 39, vii. 16, 64.

frūmentor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to fetch corn, forage.* **7.**

frūmentum, ī, n., **(fruor),** *corn, grain.* **55.**

fruor, ī, frūctus, dep., *to enjoy.* iii. 22.

frūstrā, adv., *in a deceived manner, without effect, to no purpose, in vain.* **4.**

Fūfius, ī, m. (1) *Q. Fūfius Calēnus,* one of Caesar's legates. viii. 39. (2) *C. Fūfius Cita,* Roman knight. vii. 3.

fuga, ae, f., *flight.* **70.**

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *to flee; to take to flight, run away, flee from, avoid, shun.* **18.**

fugitīvus, a, um, adj., *fugitive;* **fugitīvus, ī,** m., *a deserter.* i. 23.

fugō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to cause to flee; to put to flight, rout.* vii. 68.
fūmō, āre, —, —, *to smoke.* vii. 24.
fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.* ii. 7, v. 48.
funda, ae, f., *a sling.* **5.**
funditor, ōris, m., *a slinger.* **4.**
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour, shed, cast; to found; to scatter, throw, rout, prostrate.* iii. 6, vii. 24.
fungor, ī, fūnctus, dep., *to perform, discharge, execute.* vii. 25.
fūnis, is, m., *a cable, rope.* **4.**
fūnus, eris, n., *a funeral, funeral rites.* vi. 19 (twice).
furor, ōris, m., *rage, madness.* i. 40, ii. 3, vii. 42.
fūrtum, ī, n., (fūr), *theft.* vi. 16.
fūsilis, e, adj., (fundō), *melted, liquid, pliant, molten.* v. 43.
futūrus, a, um, serves as future partic. to **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Gevaudan. vii. 7, 64, 75.
Gabīnius, ī, m., *A.*, consul in 58 B. C.
gaesum, ī, n., *a long heavy javelin* of the Gauls. iii. 4.
Galba, ae, m. (1) *Servius Sulpicius*, one of Caesar's legates in Gaul. iii. 1, 3, 5, 6; viii. 50. (2) A chieftain of the Suessiōnēs ii 2, 13.
galea, ae, f., *a helmet.* ii. 21.
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *inhabitants of Gaul.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*, divided into (*a*) *Gallia citerior* or *cisalpīna* or *togāta* (viii. 24, 52), (i. 24, 54; ii. 1; v. 1; viii. 23), the plain of the Po, in northern Italy. (*b*) *Gallia ultērior* or *transalpīna*, being the greatest part of the modern France, Switzerland, the Netherlands, and the part of Germany on the left side of the Rhine. Subdivisions: (1) *Aquitānia*, between Pyrenees, Garumna, the Ocean, and the Provincia, inhabited by Iberian tribes; only the Biturigēs were Celtic. Visited *once* by Caesar (viii. 46). (2) *Gallia Celtica* (sometimes, i. 1, 30, 31; ii. 3, called simply Gallia) (= *Gallia Lugdunensis*, later), between Garumna and Sēquana, between Ōceanus and Alpēs, inhabited by Celts. (3) *Gallia Belgica*, chiefly inhabited by Germans, from the Sēquana to the Rhine. (*c*) *Gallia provincia* (i. 19, 28, 35, 44), the modern Provence, including the land of the Allobrogēs; called also simply *provincia* (i. 1, 2, 6, 7, 33; ii 29; vii. 55), or *ultērior provincia*, i 10, (later) *Gallia Narbonensis*. See **Volcae, Vocontiī, Ceutrōnēs, Caturigēs.** See pp. 16–25. **160.**
Gallicus, a, um, adj., *Gallic.* **16.**
gallīna, ae, f., *a hen.* v. 12.
Gallus, ī, m. See **Trebius.**
Gallus, a, um, adj., *Gallic;* **Gallus, ī,** m., *a Gaul.* 101.
Garumna, ae, f., modern *Garonne* This river forms the boundary line between Aquitānia and Celtic Gaul. i. 1.
Garumnī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia. iii. 27.
Gatēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia in the modern Gaure. iii. 27.
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep., *to be glad, rejoice.* iv. 13.
gāvīsus, a, um. See **gaudeō**
Geidumnī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe. v. 39.
Genabēnsis, is, m., *an inhabitant of Genabum.* vii 11.
Genāva, ae, f., a town of the Allobrogēs on the shore of the lacus Lemannus, the modern Geneva. i. 6, 7.
gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.* v. 56.
generātim, adv., **(genus),** *by kinds, classes, species, nations; generally, in general.* i. 51, vii. 19.
gēns, gentis, f., *a tribe, nation, race, kind, class, clan.* **8.**

genus, eris, n., *birth, descent, origin, race, stock; offspring, sort, species, kind, style, child.* **33.**

Gergovia, ae, f., a town (perhaps capital) of the Arvernī, situated on a hill, not far from the river Elaver (Allier), with steep slopes towards the north and east, while it is gentle towards the south. Between this height and the modern brook Auzon there is a small hill, on which the smaller camp of Caesar was pitched. vii. 36, 49. The larger camp was situated east-southeast from Gergovia, near the modern village Orcet.

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany*, means with Caesar, the land between Rhine, Danube, Weichsel, and Ocean. Description of inhabitants, iv. 1; vi. 21, *ff.* See **Suēbi, Cheruscī, Ubiī, Sugambrī, Marcomannī, Usipetēs, Tencterī, Harūdēs, Nemētēs, Tribŏcēs, Vangionēs, Latovīcī, Tulingī, Sedusiī, Cimbrī, Teutonī.** See pp 26–28. **7.**

Germānicus, a, um, adj., *German, Germanic.* iv. 16

Germānus, a, um, adj., *German, of Germany.* **88.**

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *to carry with one; bear, rule, govern, carry on, accomplish; to wage, manage, conduct.* **69.**

gladius, ī, m., *a sword.* **10.**

glāns, glandis, f., *an acorn; an acorn-shaped ball, bullet.* v. 43, vii. 81.

glēba, ae, f., *a clod, lump, piece.* vii. 25.

glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame, renown.* **5.**

glōrior, ārī, ātus, dep., *to glory, boast, pride one's self.* i. 14.

Gobannitiō, ōnis, m., Vercingetorix's uncle. vii. 4.

Gorgobina, ae, f., a town of the Boiī, who with Caesar's permission had settled in the land of the Haeduī (according to Napoléon the modern St. Parize le-Châtel, according to Göler the modern Guerche). Also identified with the modern Charlieu or Gergeau, near Orléans. vii. 7.

Graecus, a, um, adj., *Greek.* i. 29, v. 48, vi. 14.

Graecus, ī, m., *a Greek.* vi. 24.

Grāiocelī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe somewhere around the Mons Cenis. i. 10. Town: **Ōcelum.**

grandis, e, adj., *great, large.* **4.**

grātia, ae, f., *favor, regard, love, friendship, courtesy, popularity, gratitude, acknowledgment;* **grātiā,** *for the sake of, on account of;* **grātiās agere,** *to thank;* **grātiam referre,** *to requite, return a favor.* **25.**

grātulātiō, ōnis, f., *a manifestation of joy; rejoicing, congratulation, joy.* i. 53, v. 53, vii. 79.

grātulor, ārī, ātus, dep., (**grātus**), *to manifest one's joy, congratulate, rejoice; to give thanks.* i. 30.

grātus, a, um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, thankful, grateful.* i. 44, vi. 16.

gravis, e, adj., *heavy, weighty, grave, important, dignified; grievous, severe, oppressive.* **17.**

gravitās, ātis, f., *weight, heaviness, dignity, severity, power, influence.* iv. 3, v. 16.

graviter, adv., *heavily, strongly, grievously, severely, unwillingly, with displeasure, ill.* **18.**

gravō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**gravis**), *to burden, weigh down, oppress;* pass., *to be burdened, feel vexed, be reluctant, hesitate.* i. 35.

Grudiī, ōrum, m. pl, a Belgic tribe in the east of Flandern. v. 39.

gubernātor, ōris, m., *a pilot.* iii. 9, v. 10.

gustō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to taste, partake of.* v. 12.

Gutruātus, ī, m., chieftain of the Carnūtēs. vii. 3, viii. 38.

H.

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *to have, possess, hold, cherish, use, regard;* **grātiam habēre,** *to feel grateful.* **176.**

Haeduī, ōrum, m. pl., a mighty Celtic tribe, between Liger (Loire) and Arar (Saône). They were allies of the Roman people. Their capital was Bibracte. Towns: **Cabillōnum, Decetia, Matiscō, Noviodūnum.** i. 10, 11, 16, 31, 32, 33, 43, 48; ii. 5, 14; v. 54; vi. 4, 12; vii 5, 17, 32, 33, 37, 40, 43, 54, 55, 63, 75, 89, 90; viii. 46. See also **Ambarrī.** Chieftains: **Divitiacus, Cavarillus.** Persons: **Viridomarus, Valetiacus, Cotus, Liscus, Litaviccus, Dumnorix, Convictolitāvis.**

Haeduus, a, um, adj., *Haeduan;* **Haeduus, ī,** m., *a Haeduan.* **122.**

haesitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**haereō**), *to remain fixed, stick fast, be rooted.* vii. 19.

hāmus, ī, m., *a hook.* vii. 73.

harpagō, ōnis, m., *a grappling hook, grapple, drag.* vii. 81.

Harūdēs, um, m. pl., a Germanic tribe, relic of the Cimbrian invasion, between the Rhine, Main, and Danube. i. 31, 37, 51

haud, adv., *not.* v. 54.

Helvēticus, a, um, adj., *Helvetian.* vii 9.

Helvētiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between Iūra, lacus Lemannus, Rhodanus, and Rhēnus, divided into four clans (pāgī), of which Caesar mentions two, (1) *pāgus Verbigēnus,* i. 27; (2) *pāgus Tigurīnus,* i. 12. See **Verucloetius, Nammēius, Orgetorix, Dīvicō.**

Helvētius, a, um, adj., *Helvetian.* **67.**

Helviī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Vivarez or Languedoc (Cévennes). vii 8, 64.

Hercynia silva, *the Hercynian forest,* a collective name for the German mountain ridges from the sources of the Danube to the frontiers of Dacia, comprising the modern Schwarzwald, Odenwald, Böhmerwald, Mahrische Berge, Karpathen. vi. 24, 25.

Hercynius, a, um, adj, *Hercynian.*

hērēditās, ātis, f., (**hērēs**), *heirship, inheritance.* vi. 13.

hīberna. See **hībernus.**

hībernāculum, ī, n., *winter tent, winter quarters.* ii 35.

Hībernia, ae, f., *Ireland.* v. 13.

hībernus, a, um, adj, (**hiems**), *of winter, winter;* **hīberna, ōrum,** n. pl., (sc. **castra**), *winter quarters.* **46.**

hic, haec, hōc, dem. adj. pron., *this, this one, this man, the latter, such, that;* **hōc,** *on this account;* **hōc** with comparatives, *the more, the.* **655.**

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.* **4.**

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātūrus. (**hiems**), *to pass the winter, winter.* **17.**

hiems, emis, f., *winter.* **17.**

hinc, adv., *hence, from this place.* vi. 25, 40.

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain,* divided by the Hibērus (Ebro), into *Hispānia citerior* (eastern part), and *ulterior* (western part). i. 1; iii. 23; v. 1, 13; vii. 55. **6.**

Hispānus, a, um, adj., *Spanish.* v. **26.**

homō, inis, m. and f., *a man, woman, human being.* **88.**

honestus, a, um, adj., (**honor**), *respectable, honorable, esteemed, distinguished, noble.* i. 53, v. 45, vii. 3.

honor, ōris, m., *honor, respect, esteem, official duty, post of honor,* **honōris causā,** *out of respect.* **8.**

honōrificus, a, um, adj., (**honor + faciō**), *honorable.* i. 43.

hōra, ae, f., *an hour.* **16.**

horreō, ēre, uī, —, *to dread, tremble at.* i. 32.

horribilis, e, adj., *to be dreaded, dreadful, horrible, terrible.* vii. 36.

horridus, a, um, adj., *horrid, dire rough, rugged.* v. 14.

hortor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to exhort, encourage, cheer, urge, move.* **18.**

hospes, itis, m. and f., *a stranger, guest, visitor, host.* i. 53, v. 6, vi. 23.

hospitium, ī, n., *hospitality, friendship.* **5.**

hostis, is, m. and f., *an enemy.* **285.**

hūc, adv., **(hīc),** *hither, to this place; thus far, to this.* **22.**

hūiusmodi, adv., **(hīc + modus),** *of such a nature, of this kind, such.* iii. 3, vii. 22.

hūmānitās, ātis, f., *humanity; culture, refinement.* i. 1, 47.

hūmānus, a, um, adj., **(homō),** *human, humane; civilized, polished.* iv. 3, v. 14.

humerus, ī, m., *the shoulder.* vii. 50, 56.

humilis, e, adj., **(humus),** *low, humble, poor, abject, base, vile.* **6.**

humilitās, ātis, f., *lowness, weakness, insignificance, meanness.* v. 1, 27.

I (vowel).

ibi, adv., *there, in that place; then.* **51.**

Iccius, ī, m., a Reman. ii. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, ūs, m., **(īcō),** *a blow, stroke.* i. 25, vii. 25.

idcircō, adv., *therefore, for this reason.* v. 3.

idem, eadem, idem, dem. adj. pron., **(is + dem),** *the same, at once, also.* **113.**

identidem, adv., **(idem + idem),** *repeatedly, at intervals, now and then.* ii. 19.

idōneus, a, um, adj., *suitable, fit, proper, worthy, capable.* **20.**

Īdūs, uum, f. pl., *the Ides:* the 13th day of the month, but the 15th of March, May, July, and October. i. 7.

īgnis, is, m., *fire.* **13.**

īgnōbilis, e, adj., **(in + nōbilis),** *unknown, obscure, humble, mean, of low birth.* v. 28.

īgnōminia, ae, f., **(in + nōmen),** *dishonor, disgrace, ignominy.* vii. 17 (twice), 80.

īgnōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *not to know, be ignorant of.* **5.**

īgnōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, (in + nōscō), *to forgive, pardon, excuse.* **4.**

īgnōtus, a, um, adj., **(in + nōtus),** *unknown.* iv 24.

ille, illa, illud, dem. adj. pron., *that, he, she, that man, that woman, that thing.* **120.**

illic, adv., *there, in that place.* i. 18, vii. 20.

illō, adv., *thither, to that place, to that thing* or *purpose.* vi. 13, vii. 45.

Illyricum, ī, n., a land in the southeast of Italy, bordering on the Adriatic Sea, belonging to Caesar's province. ii. 35; iii. 7; v. 1.

imbēcillitās, ātis, f., **(imbēcillus),** *feebleness, weakness, imbecility.* vii. 77.

imber, bris, m., *a shower, rain.* **4.**

imitor, ārī, ātus, dep., *imitate, copy after, resemble, counterfeit.* vi. 40, vii. 22.

immānis, e, adj., *enormous, immense; wild, savage, cruel.* iv. 1, vi. 16.

immineō, ēre, —, —, (in + mineō), *to hang over, project; to be near.* vi. 38.

immittō, ere, mīsī, missus, (in + mittō), *to send* or *let in; to hurl, cast, throw, let loose upon; to introduce.* **5.**

immolō, āre, āvī, ātus, (in + mola), *to sacrifice, immolate, offer.* vi. 16 (twice), 17.

immortālis, e, adj., *immortal.* **7.**

immūnis, e, adj., **(in + mūnus),** *exempt from public service* or *taxation; free from.* vii. 76.

immūnitās, ātis, f., *immunity, exemption from public service, freedom.* vi. 14.

imparātus, a, um, adj., *unprepared, not ready.* vi. 30.

impedīmentum, ī, n., **(impediō),** *impediment, hindrance, burden, obstacle;* plur., *baggage* of an army. **48.**

impediō, īre, īvī, ītus, (**in** + **pēs**), *to entangle, hamper, embarrass, perplex; to bind, tie; to obstruct, hinder, impede.* **39.**

impedītus, a, um, partic. pass., (**impediō**), *obstructed, difficult, troublesome.*

impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, (**in** + **pellō**), *to push, drive against, drive forward, set in motion, impel; to urge to, induce, incite.* **9.**

impendeō, ēre, —, —, (**in** + **pendeō**), *to hang over, overhang, impend, threaten.* i. 6, iii. 2.

impendō, ere, ī, pēnsus, (**in** + **pendō**), *to expend, employ.* iv. 2.

impēnsus, a, um, partic. pass., (**impendō**), *expensive, dear; large, great.* iv. 2.

imperātor, ōris, m., (**imperō**), *a commander-in-chief, general; a chief, leader.* **16.**

imperātum, ī, n., *order, command.* **9.**

imperfectus, a, um, adj., *imperfect, unfinished.* vi. 12.

imperītus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **perītus**), *inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant, unacquainted with.* **9.**

imperium, ī, n., *direction, command, government, power, order.* **57.**

imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**in** + **parō**), *to command, order, enjoin, require, demand, order to be provided.* **67.**

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**in** + **patrō**), *to accomplish, effect, procure, obtain.* **18.**

impetus, ūs, m., (**impetō**), *attack, assault, charge, onset; impetuosity, force.* **49.**

impius, a, um, adj., (**in** + **pius**), *irreverent, ungodly.* vi. 13.

implicō, āre, āvī, ātus, or **uī, itus,** (**in** + **plicō**), *to unfold; to involve, entangle, entwine, interlace.* vii. 73.

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**in** + **plōrō**), *to implore, entreat.* **4.**

impōnō, ere, posuī, positus, (**in** + **pōnō**), *to place upon, set over; to impose, impose upon; to embark.* **5.**

importō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**in** + **portō**), *to import.* **5.**

imprīmīs, adv., *among the first, especially.* (*Cf.* **in** and **prīmus.**)

improbus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **probus**), *shameless, wicked, unprincipled.* i. 17.

imprōvīsō, adv., (**imprōvīsus**), *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

imprōvīsus, a, um, adj., *unexpected, unforeseen, sudden.* **7.**

imprūdēns, tis, adj., *not foreseeing, imprudent, unaware, ignorant, unsuspecting.* iii. 29, v. 15.

imprūdentia, ae, f., *imprudence, inadvertence, want of foresight.* **iv. 27, v. 3.**

impūbēs, eris, adj., (**in** + **pūbēs**), *under age, youthful; unmarried; chaste, continent.* vi. 21.

impūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to assail, attack, oppose, charge, invade.* **i. 44, iii. 26.**

impulsus, a, um. See **impellō.**

impulsus, ūs, m., (**impellō**), *instigation, impulse.* v. 25.

impūne, adv., (**in** + **poena**), *with impunity, without punishment.* **i. 14.**

impūnitās, ātis, f., *impunity.* **i. 14.**

īmus, a, um. See **īnferus.**

in, prep. with acc. or ablat., *in, into, to, at, during; among, with; on, about, concerning; against, towards;* **in with ablat., 543; in with acc., 542.**

inānis, e, adj., *empty, void; useless, vain, idle.* v. 23, vii. 19.

incautē, adv., *unwarily, inconsiderately, incautiously.* vii. 27.

incautus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **caveō**), *unwary, heedless, inconsiderate, off one's guard.* vi. 30.

incendium, ī, n., (**incendō**), *a conflagration, fire.* **6.**

incendō, ere, dī, sus, (**in** + **candeō**), *to kindle, set on fire, burn; to inflame, excite.* **21.**

incertus, a, um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain, not sure, not to be relied upon.* **6.**

incidō, ere, cidī, —, (in + cadō), *to fall into* or *upon, fall among, meet; to fall out, occur, happen.* **5.**

incīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (in + caedō), *to cut into.* ii. 17.

incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (in + capiō), *to commence, take; to attempt, undertake.* 8

incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to incite, urge on, encourage, rouse.* **15.**

incōgnitus, a, um, adj, *unknown.* iv. 20, 29.

incolō, ere, coluī, —, *to abide* or *dwell in a place, inhabit.* **15.**

incolumis, e, adj., *safe, uninjured, unimpaired, sound, whole.* **19.**

incommodē, adv., *unfortunately.* v. 33.

incommodum, ī, n., *disadvantage, loss, defeat, harm.*

incommodus, a, um, adj., *inconvenient, unfortunate, troublesome, hurtful.* **14.**

incrēdibilis, e, adj., *incredible, wonderful, astonishing, strange.* **6.**

increpitō, āre, āvī, atus, (increpō), *to reprove, rebuke, taunt, blame.* ii. 15, 30.

incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus, *to recline* or *lean upon, to apply one's self to, attend to.* vii. 76.

incursiō, ōnis, f., *an incursion, invasion; an attack, assault, charge.* **4.**

incursus, ūs, m., *attack, onset, charge, assault.* vii. 36.

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, (in + causa), *to blame, complain of, accuse.* i. 40, ii. 15.

inde, adv., *thence, from that place; after that, next, then.* **15.**

indicium, ī, n., **(index),** *discovery, information, proof, token, mark.* **4.**

indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *to declare, disclose, reveal, show, tell.* **8.**

indictus, a, um, adj., **(in + dīcō),** *unsaid, unpleaded.* vii. 38.

indīgne, adv., *undeservedly, unworthily, basely.* vii. 38.

indīgnitās, ātis, f., *indignity, insult, unworthiness.* ii 4, vii. 56.

indīgnor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to scorn, disdain; to be enraged at, angry with, displeased.* vii. 19.

indīgnus, a, um, adj., *unworthy, dishonorable, shameful, unbecoming, base, indecent.* v. 35, vii. 17, 38.

indīligēns, tis, adj., *careless, negligent.* ii. 33, vii. 71.

indīligenter, adv., *carelessly, negligently.* ii. 33.

indīligentia, ae, f., *negligence, carelessness.* vii. 17.

indūciae, ārum, f. pl., **(induō),** *armistice, truce.* See **indūtiae.**

indūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, *to conduct, introduce; to induce, influence; to cover, draw on.* **4.**

indulgentia, ae, f., *favor, indulgence.* vii. 63.

indulgeō, ēre, dulsī, dultus, *to favor, indulge, gratify.* i. 40, vii. 40.

induō, ere, uī, ūtus, *to put on, clothe, furnish with;* **sē induere,** *to fall into* or *upon; to be entangled in.* vii. 73, 82.

industriē, adv., **(industrius),** *diligently, industriously.* vii 60.

indūtiae, ārum, f. pl., *armistice, truce.* iv. 12, 13.

Indutiomārus, ī, m., chieftain of the Treverī. v. 3, 4, 26, 53, 55, 57, 58.

ineō, īre, iī, itus, *to go into, enter; to begin, commence, enter upon, form.* **21.**

inermis, e, or **inermus, a, um,** adj., **(in + arma),** *unarmed, defenceless, without arms.* **4.**

iners, tis, adj., **(in + ars),** *sluggish, indolent, inactive, lazy, spiritless.* iv. 2.

īnfāmia, ae, f., **(in + fāma),** *dishonor, disgrace, infamy.* vi. 23, vii. 56.

īnfāns, antis, adj., **(in + fārī),** *that cannot speak.* See noun.

īnfāns, antis, m. and f., *an infant, child.* vii. 28, 47.

īnfectus, a, um, adj, **(in + faciō),** *unaccomplished, unfinished.* vii. 17.

inferō, ferre, intulī, inlātus, *to bring* or *carry into, bring on, inflict; to introduce, interpose;* **signa inferre,** *to attack; to advance the standards.* **19.**

inferus, a, um, adj., *below, underneath, low;* comp. **inferior,** *lower, inferior;* sup. **infimus** or **imus,** *the lowest, last, deepest, lowest part of.* **19.**

infestus, a, um, adj., *unsafe, insecure; hostile, dangerous; embittered.* vi. 8, 51.

inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (in + faciō), *to color, stain, dye.* v. 14.

infidēlis, e, adj., *unfaithful, treacherous, faithless.* vii. 59

infīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, *to fasten in, fix in.* vii. 73.

infimus, a, um. See **inferus.**

infīnītus, a, um, adj., *without bounds, limitless, vast, infinite.* v. 12, vi. 10, 43.

infīrmitās, ātis, f., *infirmity, weakness, feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness.* iv. 5, 13, vii. 26.

infīrmus, a, um, adj., *weak, inconstant, fickle, light-minded.* **5.**

inflectō, ere, flēxī, flexus, *to bend, curve; to change, alter.* i. 25, ii. 17.

influō, ere, flūxī, fluxus, *to empty into, flow into.* **8.**

infodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, *to dig in; to bury.* vii. 73.

infrā, prep. with acc., and adv., *under, below, underneath: smaller than.* **4.**

ingēns, entis, adj., *enormous, huge, vast.* i. 39, iv. 10, v. 3.

ingrātus, a, um, adj., *thankless, disagreeable, unthankful, ungrateful, unacceptable.* vii. 30.

ingredior, ī, gressus, (in + gradior), *to get into; to enter, advance; to engage in, commence.* ii 4, v. 9

iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (in + iaciō), *to cast into, inspire, bring into; to occasion, cause.* **5.**

imimīcitia, ae, f., **(inimīcus),** *enmity, hostility.* vi. 12.

inimīcus, a, um, adj., **(in + amīcus),** *unfriendly, hostile, inimical.* **7.**

inīquitās, ātis, f., *unevenness, unfavorable position, difficulty, injustice, unfairness.* **8.**

inīquus, a, um, adj., **(in + aequus),** *uneven, unequal; disadvantageous, unfavorable, unjust.* **16.**

initium, ī, n., **(ineō),** *commencement, beginning; element.* **23.**

iniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to attach, fasten on; to inflict, occasion, impose, bring upon.* vii. 77.

iniūria, ae, f., **(in + iūs),** *injustice, injury, damage, wrong.* **32.**

iniūssū, ablat., *without command.* i. 19, v. 28.

inlātus, a, um. See **inferō.**

inligō, āre, āvī, ātus, (in + ligō), *to bind on, fasten, connect.* **iv. 17, v. 45.**

inlūstris, e, adj., *light, clear, bright, luminous; plain, evident; illustrious.* vi. 19, vii. 3, 32.

innāscor, ī, nātus, dep., *to be born in; to grow, have its origin, spring in.* i. **41,** vii. 42.

innātus, a, um, partic pass., **(innāscor),** *innate, inborn, natural.* i. 41, vii. 42.

innītor, ī, nīxus, dep., *to lean* or *rest upon, to support one's self by.* ii. 27.

innocēns, entis, adj., *innocent, harmless.* vi. 9, 16.

innocentia, ae, f., *innocence; uprightness, integrity, blamelessness.* i. 40.

inopia, ae, f., **(inops),** *scarcity, poverty, want.* **24.**

inopīnāns, antis, adj., **(in + opīnor),** *not expecting, unawares, ignorant.* **8.**

inquam, def., *I say.* **13.**

inrideō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus, (in + rīdeō), *to laugh at, ridicule.* ii. 30.

inrīdiculē, adv., *unwittily.* i. 42.

inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to break into, rush into, invade; to storm, force one's way into.* **5.**

inruptiō, ōnis, f., *an invasion, attack, irruption.* vii. 70.

īnsciēns, entis, adj., (**in** + **sciō**), *unaware, ignorant, not knowing.* i. 19, v. 7.

īnscientia, ae, f., (**īnsciēns**), *inexperience, ignorance.* **4.**

īnscius, a, um, adj., (**in** + **sciō**), *not knowing, ignorant, unaware.* iv. 4, vii. 77.

īnsequor, ī, cūtus, dep., *to follow, pursue, harass.* **18.**

īnserō, ere, uī, tus, *to put in, insert, ingraft.* iii. 14.

īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., (**īnsideō**), *an ambush, ambuscade; artifice, stratagem, treachery.* **8.**

īnsidior, ārī, ātus, dep., *to wait for, watch for, lie in wait, form an ambuscade.* vi. 34.

īnsīgne, is, n., (**īnsīgnis**), *a distinctive mark, badge, decoration.* **4.**

īnsīgnis, e, adj., (**in** + **sīgnum**), *remarkable, distinguished, extraordinary.* i. 12, ii. 20, vii. 50.

īnsiliō, īre, uī, —, (**in** + **saliō**) *to leap* or *spring into; to leap upon, spring upon.* i. 52.

īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to charge, accuse, blame.* vii. 20 (twice), 38.

īnsinuō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to work one's way into: to arrive at, reach, come among.* iv. 33.

īnsistō, ere, stitī, —, *to set foot upon, stand; to begin, adopt, press hard upon.* **5.**

īnsolenter, adv., (**īnsolēns**), *in an unusual manner, haughtily, insolently, excessively.* i. 14.

īnspectō, āre, —, —, *to look at, view, behold.* vii. 25.

īnstabilis, e, adj., (**in** + **stō**), *variable, uncertain, unsteady.* iv. 23.

instar, n. indecl., *likeness, image.* ii. 17.

īnstīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to incite, stimulate.* v. 56.

īnstituō, ere, ī, ūtus, (**in** + **statuō**), *to put, set, place into, rear, construct, build, erect; to prepare, make ready, furnish, provide, arrange, institute, establish, appoint; to determine, resolve; to educate; to fix upon.* **49.**

īnstitūtum, ī, n., (**īnstituō**), *a plan, purpose, design; habit, custom; institution.* **9.**

īnstō, āre, stitī, statūrus, *to stand on* or *upon; to follow closely up, pursue; to be near at hand, present; to draw near, approach; to press on; to threaten.* **7.**

īnstrūmentum, ī, n., (**īnstruō**), *an implement, tool, utensil, instrument.* v. 31, vi. 30.

īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *to put into; to build into; to arrange, draw up; to furnish, equip, prepare; to erect.* **19.**

īnsuēfactus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **suēscō** + **faciō**), *accustomed, habituated, trained.* iv. 24.

īnsuētus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **suēscō**) *unaccustomed, unused, unwonted.* v. 6, vii. 30.

īnsula, ae, f., *an island.* **18.**

īnsuper, adv., *above, upon, besides, moreover.* iv. 17, vii. 23.

integer, gra, grum, adj., *fresh, new, vigorous: entire, whole, untouched, unimpaired.* **11.**

integō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover.* vii. 22, 73, 79.

intellego, ere, lēxi, lēctus, (**inter** + **legō**), *to perceive, discern, understand, perceive.* **45.**

intendo, ere, dī, tus, *to direct towards, stretch out, endeavor, strive.* **4.**

intentus, a, um, partic. pass., (**intendō**), *attentive, intent upon, on the alert, fixed upon, intent.* iii. 22, 26, vii. 80.

inter, prep. with the acc., *among, between, amid, with, during.* **81.**

intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to come between, intervene, intercede, plead for.* **10.**

intercipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (**inter** + **capiō**), *to seize, capture, intercept, obstruct.* **4.**
interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *to shut* or *cut off, prevent, hinder, debar.* **13.**
interdīcō, ere, xī, dictus, *to interdict, forbid, prohibit, exclude.* **7.**
interdiū, adv., *in the daytime; by day.* i. 8, vii. 69, 72.
interdum, adv., *sometimes.* i. 14, 39.
intereā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.* **9.**
intereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *to be lost, undone; to perish.* **8.**
interesse. See **intersum.**
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (**inter** + **faciō**), *to slay, kill, destroy.* **83.**
intericiō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (**inter** + **iaciō**), *to throw* or *put between;* pass., *to intervene.* **9.**
interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.* **31.**
interior, us, comp. adj., *inner, interior;* sup. **intimus. 6.**
interiōrēs, *those in the interior.*
interitus, ūs, m., (**intereō**), *destruction, ruin, annihilation, death.* v. 47.
intermittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to place between, interpose, interrupt, neglect, break off; to cease.* **33.**
interneciō, ōnis, f., (**inter** + **necō**), *a slaughter, massacre; destruction.* i. 13, ii. 28.
interpellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to disturb, interrupt, hinder, prevent.* i. 44.
interpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to interpose, place between, allege, adduce, propose, apply.* **8.**
interpres, etis, m. and f., *mediator, interpreter.* i. 19, v. 36.
interpretor, ārī, ātus, dep. *to expound, explain, interpret.* vi. 13.
interrogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to inquire, ask; to accuse.* vii. 20.
interrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to interrupt, break down.* vii. 19, 34.
interscindō, ere, idī, issus, *to tear down, destroy, cut down.* ii. 9, vii. 24.
intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *to be between; to be present; to take part in;* **interest,** imps., *it concerns; it is important.* **9.**
intervāllum, ī, n., (**inter** + **vāllus**), *distance, interval.* **10.**
interveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come between; to intervene, arrive, happen, occur.* vi. 37, vii. 20.
interventus, ūs, m., *interposition, intervention.* iii. 15.
intexō, ere, uī, tus, *to weave into; to cover, interlace.* ii. 33.
intoleranter, adv., (**in** + **tolerō**), *excessively, immoderately.* vii. 51.
intrā, prep. with acc., *in, within, during.* **19.**
intrītus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **terō**), *not exhausted; not worn out.* iii. 26.
intrō, adv., *within.*
intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to go into, enter, penetrate.* ii. 17, vii. 8, 73.
intrōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to introduce, lead into.* ii. 5, 10; iii. 20.
introeō, īre, īvī, —, *to enter, go into.* v. 43.
introitus, ūs, m., *access, entrance.* v. 9.
intrōmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, *to let in* or *send; to introduce.* **4.**
intrōrsus, adv., (**intrōversus**), *inwardly, within, into the interior, inland.* **5.**
intrōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to break* or *burst into; to enter by force; to break.* v. 51.
intueor, ērī, tuitus, dep., *to regard, behold, look at.* i. 32.
intus, adv., *on the inside, within.* v. 45, vi. 37.
inūsitātus, a, um, adj., *uncommon, unusual, unwonted, extraordinary, strange.* ii. 31, iv. 25 (twice).
inūtilis, e, adj., *unprofitable, useless.* **5.**
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come upon, find, meet with; to find out, discover, contrive.* **6.**

inventor, ōris, m., *author, inventor, originator.* vi. 17.

inveterāscō, ere, rāvī, —, *to grow old; to become established; to settle.* ii. 1, v. 41.

invicem, adv., **(in + vicis),** *one after another, by turns, mutually, alternately.* iv. 1, vii. 85.

invictus, a, um, adj., *unconquered, unvanquished, invincible.* i. 36.

invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to grudge; to envy.* ii. 31.

invidia, ae, f., *envy, jealousy, grudge, ill-will, hatred, malice.* vii. 77.

inviolātus, a, um, adj., **(in + violō),** *inviolate, inviolable.* iii. 9.

invītō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to allure, entice, invite.* **4.**

invītus, a, um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.* **7.**

ipse, a, um, intens. pers. pron., *himself, itself, herself;* adj. pron., *very, precisely, exactly.* **190.**

īrācundia, ae, f., *rage, anger, passion.* vi. 5, vii. 42.

īrācundus, a, um, adj., *passionate, angry, irascible.* i. 31.

is, ea, id, dem. adj. pron., *this, that, such;* **eō,** ablat., *on that account, for this reason;* **eā,** ablat., *in that way;* pers. pron., *he, she, it.* **962.**

iste, a, ud, dem. adj. pron., *this of yours; that, this, such;* pers. pron., *he, she, it.* vii. 77.

ita, adv., *in this way, thus, so, in such a manner.* **42.**

Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, conj., *therefore, so, thus, to such a degree.* **29.**

item, adv., *likewise, also, in like manner.* **28.**

iter, itineris, n., **(eō),** *a march, journey, way.* **112.**

iterum, adv., *again.* **4.**

Itius portus, m., a Gallic port in the land of the Morinī opposite the Britanic coast, perhaps the port of the modern Boulogne (*Gesoriacum*). If Caesar started from here also in his first expedition, we have to take Ambleteuse near Boulogne as *portus ulterior.* iv. 23, 1; or *superior.* iv. 27, 1.

itūrus, a, um. See **eō.**

I (consonant).

iaceō, ēre, uī, —, *to lie, lie down, lie dead; to extend.* ii. 27, vii. 25.

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, *to cast, throw, hurl, fling; to throw up, construct.* **7.**

iactō, āre, āvī, ātus, (iaciō), *to throw, fling, toss, cast, hurl; to speak* or *make mention of; to discuss, examine, talk about.* i. 18, 25, vii. 47.

iactūra, ae, f, **(iaciō),** *a throwing away; loss, damage, hurt, sacrifice.* vi. 12, vii. 26, 77.

iaculum, ī, n., *a dart, javelin.* v. 43, 45.

iam, adv., *already, now, soon.* **67.**

iuba, ae, f., *a mane.* i. 48.

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iūssus, *to order, command, bid.* **112.**

iūdicium, ī, n., *a judging, trial, judgment, decision, sentence, opinion.* **10.**

iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (iūs + dīcō), *to judge, determine, decide, declare; to deem, consider, think.* **19.**

iugum, ī, n., *a yoke; the yoke;* a symbol of submission. For description see note to I. 7, p. 330; *height, ridge, summit.* **13.**

iūmentum, ī, n., *a beast of burden, draught-animal, ox, horse,* etc. **7.**

iūnctūra, ae, f., **(iungō),** *a junction, joint, union* iv. 17.

iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to join, unite, bind, fasten.* **5.**

iūnior. See **iuvenis.** vii. 1.

Iūnius, ī, m., *Q.*, a Spaniard. v. 27 *f.*

Iūpiter, Iovis, m., son of Saturn, and king of the gods. vi. 17.

Iūra, ae, f., the modern *Jura*, mountain ridge from Rhone to Rhine, forming the boundary line between the Sēquani and the Helvētii.

iūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to swear.* i. 31, vi. 12.

iūs, iūris, n., *law, right, justice, power, authority.* 10.

iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, n., (**iūs** + **iūrō**), *an oath.* 21.

iūssū, ablat., *by command; by order.* viii. 3.

iūstitia, ae, f., *equity, justice, uprightness.* 4.

iūstus, a, um, adj., (**iūs**), *right, fair, just, customary, appropriate.* 7.

iuvenis, e, adj., *young;* **iuvenis, is,** m., *a youth;* comp., **iūnior.** vii. 1.

iuventūs, ūtis, f., *youth; young persons.* iii. 16, vi. 14, 23.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to aid, help, assist.* 5.

iūxtā, adv., *near by, close to, by, next to, near to, near.* ii. 26.

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. pl., the first day of the Roman month. i. 6.

L.

L., for *Lucius.*

Laberius, ī, m., *Q. Laberius Dūrus*, a military tribune. v. 15.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *T. Attius*, most prominent of Caesar's legates (he joined in the Civil War the party of Pompey, and fell in the battle of Munda). i. 10, 21, 54; v. 57; vi. 7; vii. 34; viii. 6, 23 *ff*, 45, 52.

lābor, ī, lapsus, dep., *to fall down, slip down; to err, commit a fault; to miss by falling.* v. 3, 55.

labor, ōris, m., *toil, labor, exertion, work; fatigue, hardship, trouble, distress.* 31.

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to toil, labor; to suffer, be distressed; to be in danger* or *difficulty.* 12.

labrum, ī, n., *a lip, the edge* or *rim.* v. 14, vi. 28, vii. 72.

lāc, lactis, n., *milk.* iv. 1, v. 14, vi. 22.

lacēssō, ere, īvī, ītus, (**laciō**), *to attack, assail, provoke, irritate, challenge.* 10.

lacrima, ae, f., *a tear.* i. 20, 39.

lacrimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to weep.* vii. 38.

lacus, ūs, m., *a lake.* i. 2, 8, iii. 1.

laedō, ere, laesī, laesus, *to strike, injure, violate, harm.* vi. 9.

laetātiō, ōnis, f., *gladness, joy.* v. 52.

laetitia, ae, f., *gladness, joy, exultation, delight.* v. 48, vii. 79.

laetus, a, um, adj., *glad, joyful.* iii. 18.

languidē, adv., *feebly, faintly, languidly.* vii. 27.

languidus, a, um, adj., *feeble, faint, sluggish, languid.* iii. 5.

languor, ōris, m., *faintness, languor, weariness, listlessness.* v. 31.

lapis, idis, m., *a stone.* 8.

laqueus, ī, m., *a snare, noose.* vii. 22.

largior, īrī, ītus, dep., *to give bountifully, bestow, distribute, supply, impart.* i. 18, vi. 24.

largiter, adv., *liberally, largely.* i. 18.

largītiō, ōnis, f., *liberal giving.* i. 9.

lassitūdō, inis, f., (**lassus**), *fatigue, weariness, lassitude.* ii. 23, iv. 15.

lātē, adv., *extensively, widely.* 8.

latebra, ae, f., *a lurking place, hiding place, retreat, covert.* vi. 43.

lateō, ēre, uī, —, *to skulk, lurk, lie hidden, concealed.* ii. 19, iii. 14.

lātitūdō, inis, f., *width, breadth, extent.* 9.

Latovīcī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe in the south of the modern Baden. i. 5, 28, 29.

latrō, ōnis, m., *a robber, bandit.* iii. 17, vii. 38.

latrōcinium, ī, n., *robbery.* vi. 16, 23, 35.
lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad, spacious, extensive.* **10.**
lātus, a, um. See **ferō.**
latus, eris, n., *the flank, side.* **25.**
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, (laus), *to commend, praise.* v. 8.
laus, laudis, f., *fame, praise, renown, merit.* **13.**
lavō, āre and ere, lāvī, lautus and lōtus, *to bathe, wash.* iv. 1.
laxō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to widen, open, loosen, extend.* ii. 25.
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *a deputation, legation, embassy.* **15.**
lēgātus, ī, m., **(lēgō),** *an ambassador, lieutenant, deputy, delegate.* **123.**
legiō, ōnis, f., **(legō),** *a legion.* **188.**
legiōnārius, a, um, adj., *of a legion, legionary.* **7.**
Lemannus, ī, m., **(lacus L.),** *the lake of Geneva, lake Leman.* i. 2, 8, iii. 1.
Lemonum, ī, n., a town of the Pictonēs, in Celtic Gaul, the modern Poitiers. viii. 26.
Lemovīcēs, um, m. pl , a Celtic tribe in the modern Département de la haute Vienne. Their capital, **Augustoritum,** = the modern *Limoges.* vii. 4, 75, 88; viii. 46. Chieftain: **Sedulius.**
lēnis, e, adj., *mild, easy, soft, smooth; gently rising, sloping.* **7.**
lēnitās, ātis, f., *smoothness, mildness, gentleness.* i. 12.
lēniter, adv., *mildly, gently.* **5.**
Lentulus, ī, m., *L. Cornēlius,* consul in 49 B. C. Caesar's adversary, who after the battle of Pharsālus fled to Egypt, where he was assassinated. viii. 50.
Lēpontiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the Alpēs, between St. Gotthart and Lago Maggiore. iv. 10.
lepus, oris, m., *a hare.* v. 12.
Leucī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the south of Laurraine. i. 40.
Lēvācī, ōrum, m. pl , a Belgic tribe near the modern Ghent. v. 39.
levis, e, adj., *light, trifling, trivial, slight, fickle.* **11.**
levitās, ātis, f., *fickleness, inconstancy, lightness.* ii. 1, vii. 43.
levō, āre, āvī, ātus, (levis), *to alleviate, relieve, aid, lighten.* v. 27.
lēx, lēgis, f., *a law.* **14.**
Lexoviī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the modern Normandie, near the mouth of the Sēquana (Seine). They belonged to the **cīvitātēs Aremoricae.** Their capital, **Noviomagus,** = the modern *Lisieux.* iii. 9, 11, 17, 29, vii. 75.
libenter, adv., **(libēns),** *cheerfully, willingly.* i. 44, iii. 18, vi. 4.
līber, era, erum, adj., *unrestrained, free.* **11.**
līberālitās, ātis, f., **(līberālis),** *liberality, generosity.* i. 18, 43.
līberāliter, adv., *liberally, graciously, kindly.* ii. 5, iv. 18, 21.
līberē, adv., **(līber),** *frankly, boldly, freely.* **4.**
līberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children.* **15.**
līberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to release, liberate, free.* **5.**
lībertās, ātis, f., **(līber),** *liberty, freedom.* **19.**
lībrīlis, e, adj., **(lībra),** *weighing a pound.* vii. 81.
licentia, ae, f., **(licet),** *license, freedom, liberty; boldness, lawlessness, presumption.* vii. 52.
liceor, ērī, licitus, dep., *to bid at auction.* i. 18 (twice).
licet, ēre, licuit or **licitum est,** impers., *it is allowed, it is permitted; one may* or *can.* **17.**
Liger, eris, m., the modern river Loire, forming the boundary line between the Haedui and Biturigēs. vii. 55. Acc., **Ligerem,** vii. 11, 56; **Ligerim,** vii. 5. Abl., **Ligere,** iii. 9; **Ligerī,** vii. 59; viii. 27.

lignātiō, ōnis, f., *procuring wood.* v. 39.
lignātor, ōris, m., *a woodman, wood-cutter.* v. 26.
līlium, ī, n., *a lily; a military work* in the form of a lily. vii. 73.
līnea, ae, f., *a string, a line.* vii. 23.
Lingonēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe near the sources of Maas and Marne; the Arar divides their land from that of the Sēquanī. Capital: **Andematunnum** = modern *Langres.* i. 40; iv. 40; vi. 44; vii 9, 66; viii. 11. Acc. **Lingonas.** i. 26.
lingua, ae, f., *the tongue; speech, language.* i. 1 (twice), 47.
lingula, ae, f., *a tongue of land.* iii. 12.
linter, tris, f., *a skiff, boat.* i. 12, 53, vii. 60.
līnum, ī, n., *linen, flax.* iii. 13.
līs, lītis, f., *dispute, strife, damages, lawsuit.* v. 1.
Liscus, ī, m., a noble Haeduan. i. 16, 17.
Litaviccus, ī, m., a Haeduan. vii. 37 *ff.*, 54, 55, 67.
littera, ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet;* pl., *an epistle, letter, document.* 22.
lītus, oris, n, *the bank, shore, coast, strand.* 6.
locus, ī, m. (pl. loca and locī), *a spot, place, position, condition, rank, station.* 277.
longē, adv., *at a distance, far.* 65.
longīnquus, a, um, adj, *remote, long, removed, of long duration, long continued.* 5.
longitūdō, inis, f, *length.* 11.
longurius, ī, m., *a long pole.* iii. 14, iv. 17, vii. 84.
Longus, ī, m. See **Considius.**
longus, a, um, adj., *long, distant.* 83.
loquor, ī, locūtus, dep., *to declare, say, speak.* 8.
lōrica, ae, f., *a coat of mail, corselet; breastwork, parapet.* v. 40, vii. 72, 86.
Lūcānius, ī, m., a centurion. v. 35.
Lucterius, ī, m., a Cadurcan vii. 5, 7, 8; viii. 30, 32, 34, 35, 39, 44.
Lugotorix, igis, m., a Briton. v. 22.
lūna, ae, f., *the moon.* i. 50, iv. 29, vi. 21.
Lutētia, ae, f., a town of the Parisiī, on an island of the Sēquana (Seine), the modern *Paris.* vi. 3; vii. 57, 58.
lūx, lūcis, f., *daylight, light.* 18.
lūxuria, ae, f., (lūxus), *luxury; extravagance, excess.* ii. 15.

M.

M., for *Marcus.*
māceria, ae, f., *an inclosure, a wall.* vii. 69, 70.
māchinātiō, ōnis, f., *a machine.* ii. 30, 31, iv. 17.
maestus, a, um, adj., *mournful, sad, sorrowful, dejected.* vii. 80.
Magetobria, ae, f, a town in Celtic Gaul. Situation unknown. i. 31.
magis, comp. adv., *rather, more;* sup. **māximē.** 15.
magistrātus, ūs, m., *a magistracy, officer, magistrate.* 21.
māgnificus, a, um, adj., (**māgnus** + **faciō**), *magnificent, splendid.* vi. 19.
māgnitūdō, inis, f., *size, magnitude, extent.* 28.
māgnopere, adv., (**māgnus** + **opus**), *very much, greatly, exceedingly, strongly.* 7.
māgnus, a, um, adj., *great, large, extensive, spacious; powerful, important;* comp **māior,** sup **māximus.** 353.
māiestās, ātis, (**māius**), *greatness, dignity, grandeur, splendor, majesty.* vii. 17.
māior, comp of **māgnus.**
māiōrēs, um, m. pl., (**māior**), *ancestors, forefathers.* 16
malacia, ae, f, *a calm at sea, dead calm.* iii. 15.
male, adv, *ill, badly, unfortunate, adversely, unsuccessfully;* comp. **pēius,** sup. **pessimē.** i. 40.

maleficium, ī, n., (**male + faciō**), *an offence, evil deed, damage, mischief, harm.* **4.**

Mallius, ī, m., proconsul of Gaul in 78 B. C. iii. 20.

mālō, mālle, māluī, (magis + volō), *to choose rather; to prefer, be more willing.* iii. 8, 20.

mālus, ī, m., *a pole, mast.* iii. 14, vii 22.

malus, a, um, adj., *evil, bad, injurious, mischievous, destructive;* comp. **pēior,** sup. **pessimus.** i. 40.

mandātum, ī, n., *order, commission, command, charge.* **7.**

mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, (manus + dō), *to commit to one's charge, commission, bid.* **19.**

Mandūbiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between the Haeduī and Lingonēs, in the modern Département Côte d'Or. Capital: **Alēsia.** vii. 68, 71, 78.

Mandubrācius, ī, m., chieftain of the Trīnobantēs in Britain. v. 20, 22.

māne, adv., *in the morning.* iv. 13, v. 10, vii. 18.

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *to stay, continue, remain.* **9.**

manipulāris, e, adj., *of* or *belonging to a company, manipular;* in plu. as noun, *soldiers* of same company. vii. 47, 50.

manipulus, ī, m., (**manus + plēnus**), *a bundle, handful; a company of soldiers.* ii. 25, vi. 34, 40.

mānsuēfīō, fierī, factus, irr. pass., (**manus + suētus + fīō**), *to be tamed.* vi. 28.

mānsuētūdō, inis, f., *gentleness, clemency, mildness.* ii. 14, 31.

manus, ūs, f., *a hand, an armed force, company, crowd; art, power.* **47.**

Mārcellus, ī, m. (1) *M. Claudius,* consul in 51 B. C. viii. 53. (2) *C. Claudius,* consul in 50 B. C. viii. 48. (3) *C. Claudius,* consul in 49 B. C. viii. 50. All three Caesar's adversaries.

Marcomannī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe on the upper Main. i. 51.

mare, is, n., *the sea.* **16.**

Mare nostrum, n., *the Mediterranean.* v. 1.

maritimus, a, um, adj., *maritime, of* or *on the sea.* **11.**

Marius, ī, m., *G.*, famous for his victories over the Cimbrī and Teutonēs. i. 40.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *the god of war; battle, war, strife.* vi. 17 (twice), vii. 19.

mās, maris, m., *a male.* vi. 26.

matara, ae, f., *a pike, javelin.* i. 26.

māter, tris, f., *a mother.* **6.**

māterfamiliae. See **māter** and **familia.**

māteria, ae, f., and **māteries, ēī,** f., (**māter**), *matter, material, wood, timber;* **māteria, 8; māteriēs,** vii. 24.

māterior, ārī, —, *to fell* or *procure timber.* vii. 73.

Matiscō, ōnis, f., a town of the Haeduī, on the Arar; modern *Mâçon.* vii. 90.

mātrimōnium, ī, n., *marriage.* i. 3, 9.

Mātrona, ae, f., modern *Marne,* has its source in the land of the Lingonēs, and empties into the Sēquana. i. 1.

mātūrē, adv., *early, seasonably; speedily, soon, quickly.* **5.**

mātūrēscō, ere, mātūruī, —, *to become ripe, ripen.* vi 29.

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make ripe; to hasten, make haste.* **4.**

mātūrus, a, um, adj., *ripe, mature; timely, seasonable, right, suitable, proper, fit.* **7.**

māximē, adv., *in the highest degree, very, most, especially.* vii. 68.

Māximus, ī, m. See **Fabius.**

māximus, a, um, sup. of **māgnus.**

medeor, ērī, dep., *to heal, cure, remedy; to correct, relieve, take care.* v. 24.

mediocris, e, adj., (**medius**) *ordinary, middling, moderate.* **7.**

mediocriter, adv., *ordinarily, in an ordinary degree, moderately.* i. 39.

Mediōmatricēs, ium, m. pl., iv. 10; or **Mediōmatricī, ōrum,** vii. 75. Celtic tribe on the upper Mosel. Capital: **Divodurum,** later *Metis*, modern *Metz*.

mediterrāneus, a, um, adj., (**medius** + **terra**), *inland, remote from the sea.* v. 12.

medius, a, um, adj., *in the middle, in the midst, middle, intermediate.* **29.**

Meldī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between the modern Meaux and Melun on both sides of the Mātrona. v. 5.

melior, us, comp. of **bonus.**

melius, comp. of **bene.**

Melodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Sēquanī, on an island of the Sēquana (Seine), modern *Melun*. vii. 58, 60, 61.

membrum, ī. n., *a limb, member.* iv. 24, vi. 16.

meminī, isse, defect., *to recollect, remember.* iii. 6, vii. 37.

memoria, ae, f, *recollection, memory.* **21.**

Menapiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between Maas and Schelde. The modern Cassel is the old **Castellum Menapiōrum.** ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 4, 22, 38; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 33.

mendācium, ī, n, *a falsehood.* vii. 38.

mēns, mentis, f., *the soul, mind; feelings, disposition, intellect, judgment, reason; heart, soul, courage.* **8.**

mēnsis, is, m., *a month.* **4.**

mēnsūra, ae, f., (**mētior**), *measurement, measure.* v. 13, vi. 25.

mentiō, ōnis, f., *mention.* vi. 38.

mercātor, ōris, m., (**mercor**), *a trader, merchant.* **11.**

mercātūra, ae, f., (**mercor**), *traffic, commerce, trade.* vi 17.

mercēs, ēdis, f., (**mereō**), *hire, pay, wages, salary, reward.* i. 31.

Mercurius, ī, m., *Mercury*, son of Jupiter and Maia, and messenger of the gods. vi. 17.

mereō, ēre, uī, itus, and **mereor, ērī, itus,** dep., *to be worthy of a thing, obtain; to deserve, merit, serve.* **15.**

merīdiānus, a, um, adj., *of midday, noon.* v. 8.

merīdiēs, ēī, m., (**medius** + **diēs**), *noon, midday, the south.* **7.**

meritō, adv., *justly, deservedly, according to desert.* **4.**

meritum, ī, n., *desert, merit, favor, kindness, service.* **5.**

Messāla, ae, m., *M. Valērius*, consul in 61 B. C. i 2, 35.

mētior, īrī, mēnsus, dep., *to measure out, measure, deal out.* i. 16, 23, vii. 71.

Metius, ī, m., a guest-friend of Ariovistus. i. 47, 53.

metō, ere, messuī, messus, *to mow, reap, gather in, harvest.* iv. 32.

metus, ūs, m., *dread, fear.* **8.**

meus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *my, of mine, mine.* **4.**

mīles, itis, m. and f., *a soldier.* **169.**

mīlia. See **mīlle.**

mīlitāris, e, adj., *warlike, military, soldierly.* **18.**

mīlitia, ae, f., *war, warfare, military service.* vi. 14, vii. 14.

mīlle, num. adj. and subs., *a thousand;* plu. **mīlia, ium. 115.**

minimē, adv., (sup. of **parum**), *least of all, least, by no means, not in the least, not at all.* **7.**

minimus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **parvus**), *the smallest, least.* **4.**

minor, us, adj., (comp. of **parvus**), *less, smaller, inferior.* **19.**

Minucius, ī, m., *L. Minucius Basilus*, general of Caesar's cavalry. vi. 29, vii. 90.

minuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *to diminish, impair; to remove, settle, put an end to; to weaken, grow small.* **10.**

minus, adv., (comp. of **parvum**), *less, not.* **33.**

mīror, ārī, ātus, dep., *to admire, wonder.* i. 32, v. 54, vii. 44.

mīrus, a, um, adj., *wonderful.* i. 34, 41.
miser, era, erum, adj., *unfortunate, pitiable, wretched, lamentable.* i. 32, ii. 28, vi. 35.
misericordia, ae, f., *compassion, pity, mercy.* **4.**
miseror, ārī, ātus, dep., *to lament, deplore, compassionate, commiserate.* i. 39, vii. 1.
missus, ūs, m., *a dispatching, sending.* v. 27, vi. 7.
mīte, adv., *gently, mildly.* vii. 43.
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to let go, send, dispatch, dismiss, break up, cast, hurl, throw, launch.* **160.**
mōbilis, e, adj., **(moveō),** *movable: fickle, changeable.* iv. 5.
mōbilitās, ātis, f., *changeableness; speed, rapidity.* ii. 1, iv. 33.
mōbiliter, adv., *quickly, rapidly, easily.* iii. 10.
moderor, ārī, ātus, dep., **(modus),** *to restrict, moderate, manage, direct, regulate, govern.* iv. 33, vii. 75.
modestia, ae, f., *modesty, unassuming conduct, moderation, discretion.* vii. 52.
modo, adv., **(modus),** *only, merely, but, just, even, lately:* **nōn modo,** *not only;* **modo — modo,** *sometimes — sometimes, now — now.* **23.**
modus, ī, m., *extent, measure, way, manner, mode.* **26.**
moenia, ium, n. pl., **(mūniō),** *defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defences, a walled town.* **4.**
mōlēs, is, f., *a huge mass; a mole, dam, dike.* iii. 12.
molestē, adv., *with trouble, in a troublesome way, annoyingly;* **molestē ferō,** *I take it ill, I am displeased.* ii. 1.
mōlīmentum, ī, n., *effort, exertion, endeavor.* i. 34.
molitus, a, um. See **molō.**
molliō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to make soft, soften; to make gentle; to lighten, ease.* vii. 46.
mollis, e, adj., *mild, gentle, soft, weak, feeble, sloping.* iii. 19, v. 9.
mollitia, ae, f., *weakness, effeminacy.* vii. 77.
mollitiēs, ēī, f., *irresolution, effeminacy, timidity, weakness.* vii. 20.
molō, ere, uī, itus, *to grind.* i. 5.
mōmentum, ī, n., *weight, influence, moment, importance.* vii. 39, 85.
Mona, ae, f., the island Anglesey between England and Ireland. v. 13.
moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *to warn, admonish, advise, instruct, teach, tell, inform.* **8.**
mōns, mōntis, m., *a mountain.* **33.**
mora, ae, f., *hindrance, delay, obstacle.* **4.**
morbus, ī, m., *sickness, disease.* vi. 16, 17.
Morinī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, near the shore between Schelde and Lys, in the modern Département Pas de Calais.
morior, ī, mortuus, dep., *to die.* i. 4, iii. 22, vi. 13.
Moritasgus, ī, m., chieftain of the Senonēs. v. 54.
moror, ārī, ātus, *to stay, tarry, delay, linger, hinder, detain.* **20.**
mors, mortis, f., *death.* **20.**
mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner, usage, character, practice.* **18.**
Mosa, ae, f., the modern river *Maas,* coming from the Vosges; it empties into the Vacalus (modern *Waal*), a kill of the Rhine, hence iv. 15, **cōnfluēns Mosae et Rhēnī.** iv. 9, 10, 12, 15; v. 24; vi. 33.
mōtus, ūs, m., *movement, motion, rising, rebellion, disturbance, commotion.* **14.**
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move, set in motion: to influence, affect: to excite, occasion, remove, break up.* **17.**
mulier, eris, f., *a woman, wife.* **8.**
mūliō, ōnis, m., *a muleteer.* vii. 45.
multitūdō, inis, f., *a great number, multitude, crowd, populace, the common people.* **83.**

multō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to fine, punish, deprive of, impose a fine.* vii. 54.
multō, adv., *by far, much.* **12.**
multum, adv., *greatly, much, far, especially.* **17.**
multus, a, um, adj., *many, much*: comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimus. 70.**
mūlus, ī, m., *a mule.* vii. 45.
Munātius, ī, m., one of Caesar's legates. v. 24, 25.
mundus, ī, m., *the universe; the heavens, world.* vi. 14.
mūnīmentum, ī, n., *a fortification, defence, rampart, bulwark.* ii. 17.
mūniō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *to fortify, protect, secure.* **37.**
mūnītiō, ōnis, f., *a rampart, defence, fortification.* **73.**
mūnītus, a, um, partic. pass., (**mūniō**), *secured, fortified.* **20.**
mūnus, eris, n., *a gift, present; function, office, charge.* i. 43, vi 18, vii. 25.
mūrālis, e, adj., *mural.* iii. 14, v. 40, vii. 82.
mūrus, ī, m., *a wall.* **48.**
mūsculus, ī, m., (**mūs**), *a little mouse; a warlike machine,* vii. 84.
mutilus, a, um, adj., *mutilated, maimed,* vi. 27.
mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to alter, change; to avoid; to improve.* vii. 45.

N.

nactus, a, um. See **nancīscor.**
nam or **namque,** conj., *for.* **nam, 40; namque, 5.**
Nammēius, ī, m., a noble Helvetian. i. 7.
Namnētēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe north of the Liger (Loire). Capital: Condivincum = modern *Nantes.* iii. 9.
nancīscor, ī, nactus, dep., *to meet with, acquire, find, obtain.* **17.**
Nantuātēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the Alpēs. iii. 1, 6, iv. 10.
Narbō, ōnis, m., a town of the Volcae Arecomicī in Gallia Provincia, the modern *Narbonne.* iii. 20. vii. 7, viii. 46.
nāscor, ī, nātus, dep., *to arise, proceed; to be born, be produced.* **20.**
Nasua, ae, m., a noble Treveran. i. 37.
nātālis, e, adj., *natal, of birth.* vi. 18.
nātiō, ōnis, (**nāscor**), f., *a people, nation, race.* **16.**
nātīvus, a, um, adj., *natural.* vi. 10.
nātū, m., abl. *by birth, in age*; **māiōrēs nātū,** *the older persons (ancestors).* ii. 13, 28, iv. 13.
nātūra, ae, f., (**nāscor**), *nature: character, disposition.* **30.**
nātus, a, um. See **nāscor.**
nauta, ae, m., *a sailor.* iii. 9, v. 10.
nauticus, a, um, adj., (**nauta**), *naval, nautical.* iii. 8.
nāvālis, e, adj., *naval.* iii. 19, v. 22.
nāvicula, ae, f., (**nāvis**), *a skiff, little boat.* i. 53.
nāvigātiō, ōnis, f., (**nāvigō**), *a sailing, navigation, voyage.* **6.**
nāvigium, ī, n., *a vessel.* iii. 14, iv. 26, v. 8.
nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**nāvis + agō**), *to steer* or *navigate a ship, navigate, sail over.* **7.**
nāvis, is, f., *a ship, bark, vessel;* **navis longa,** *a ship of war.* **115.**
nāvō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to perform vigorously* or *diligently.* ii. 25.
nē, conj., (originally an unrestricted negative, cf. Skt. NĀ, Gr. νη in νηλεής Eng. NOT, and this use became petrified in **ne — quidem, nemo, nego,** etc.) *that not, lest;* **ne — quidem,** *not even.* **153.**
ne, enclit. conj., *whether;* **ne — ne,** *whether — or* (in direct questions often omitted in translating). **10.**
nec, conj., *neither, nor, and not, but not;* **nec — nec,** or **neque — neque,** *neither — nor.* **nec, 31 ; neque, 263.**

necessāriō, adv., *necessarily, of necessity.* **15.**
necessārius, a, um, adj., *necessary, pressing.* **20.**
necessārius, ī, m., *a relative, friend, kinsman.* i. 11.
necesse, adj., indecl., *necessary.* **9.**
necessitās, ātis, f., *necessity.* **6.**
necessitūdō, inis, f., *necessity, need, want; relationship, intimacy, friendship.* i. 43.
necne, conj., (**nec** + **ne**), *or not.* i. 50.
necō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to kill, destroy, slay.* **6.**
necubi, adv., *lest anywhere, that nowhere.* vii. 35.
nefārius, a, um, adj., *wicked, impious, base, abominable.* vii. 38, 77.
nefās, n., indecl., *criminal, impious: a disgrace, impiety, abomination, villany.* vii. 40.
neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, (**nec** + **legō**), *to disregard, slight, neglect.* **12.**
negō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to refuse, deny, say no.* **5.**
negōtior, ārī, ātus, dep., *to trade, carry on a business, traffic.* vii. 3, 42, 55.
negōtium, ī, n., (**nec** + **ōtium**), *occupation, business; matter, affair, difficulty, fact.* **14.**
Nemētēs, um, m. pl., a Germanic tribe on the left side of the Rhine, near the modern city Speier. i. 51; vi. 25.
Nemetocenna, ae, f., capital of the Atrebatēs, the modern *Arras.* viii. 46, 52.
nēmō, inis, m. and f., (**nē** + **homō**), *no one, nobody, no man.* **14.**
nēquāquam, adv., *in no wise, by no means.* iv. 23, vii. 77.
neque, conj., (**nē** + **que**). See **nec**.
nēquīquam, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.* ii. 27.
nēquis is more properly written **ne quis**. See **quis**.
Nervicus, a, um, adj., *Nervian*, ii. 27.
Nervīī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde, in Namur and Hennegau. Capital: **Bagacum** (*Bavay*). ii. 4, 15 *ff.*; v. 24, 38 *ff.* Chieftain: **Boduōgnātus.**
nervus, ī, m., *a nerve, sinew; strength, vigor, force.* i. 20, vi. 21.
neu or **nēve**, conj., *and not, nor, neither.* **neu, 11**; **nēve, 4.**
neuter, tra, trum, adj., (**nē** + **uter**), *neither of two, neither.* ii. 9, vii. 63.
nex, necis, f., *death, murder, slaughter.* i. 16, vi. 19, 23.
nihil, n., indecl., *nothing, naught;* **nihilō setius**, *nevertheless;* **nihilō minus**, *nevertheless.* **54.**
nimis, adv., *very, too much, exceedingly.* vii. 36.
nimius, a, um, adj., *too much, too great, excessive, immoderate.* vii. 29.
nisi, conj., *if not, except, unless.* **24.**
Nitiobrogēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia, about the Garonne (Lat.: **Garumna**). Capital: **Aginum**, modern *Agen.* vii. 7, 31, 46, 75. King: **Teutomatus.**
nītor, ī, nīsus or **nīxus**, dep., *to endeavor, strive, exert one's self, attempt.* **4.**
nix, nivis, f., *snow.* vii. 8 (twice), 55.
nōbilis, e, adj., (**nōscō**), *noted, renowned, famous, illustrious, noble.* **10.**
nōbilitās, ātis, f., *reputation, renown, fame, worth, nobleness.* **7.**
nocēns, entis, partic. pres., *hurtful, pernicious, guilty, criminal.* vi. 9
noceō, ēre, uī, itus, *to hurt, injure, harm.* **12.**
noctū, adv., *by night.* **16.**
nocturnus, a, um, adj., *of night, nocturnal.* **10.**
nōdus, ī, m., *a joint; knot, tie, bond.* vi. 27.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, irr., (**nōn** + **volō**), *to be unwilling; to dislike, not to wish well to.* **11.**

nōmen, inis, n., (**nōscō**), *a name; reason, account, excuse, pretence.* **18.**
nōminātim, adv., (**nōminō**), *by name, expressly.* **4**
nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call by name; to appoint, nominate.* ii. 18, vii. 39, 73.
nōn (**nē** + **ūnum**, see under **nē**), adv., *not, no.* **313.**
nōnāgintā, num. adj., *ninety.* i. 29.
nōndum, adv., *not yet.* **9.**
nōnnihil, adv., *something, somewhat.* iii. 17.
nōnnūllus, a, um, adj., *some.* **24.**
nōnnumquam, adv., *sometimes.* **4.**
nōnus, a, um, num adj., *the ninth.* ii. 23, iv. 23, v. 53
Nōrēia, ae, f., a town of the Noricī, where in 113 B. C. the Roman consul, C. Carbo, was defeated by the Cimbrī, the modern Neumarkt in Steiermark. i. 5
Nōricus, a, um, adj., *Norican.* i. 5, 53.
Nōricus ager, m., the land of the Noricī. (**Noricī**, Latin. The Celtic name is **Tauriscī**.) At the time of Caesar a kingdom comprising the modern Kärnthen, Steiermark, and Austria. King: **Vocciō**, *q. v.*
nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, *to learn, become acquainted with, know.* **12.**
noster, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., *ours, of ours, our.* **233.**
nōtitia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance.* vi. 21, 24.
nōtus, a, um, partic. pass., (**nōscō**), *known, well known, noted.* **7.**
novem, num. adj., indecl., *nine.* **4.**
Noviodūnum, ī, n. (1) A town of the Suessiōnēs, on the Axona (Aisne), the modern Soissons. ii. 12. (2) A town of the Haeduī, on the left side of the Liger (Loire), the modern Nevers. vii. 55. (3) A town of the Biturigēs Cubī, west of the Liger (Loire), between Cenabum and Avaricum. It has been identified with the modern (*a*) Sancerre (Napoléon), (*b*) Nouan le Fuzélier (Göler).
novitās, ātis, f., *newness, novelty, strangeness.* iv. 34, vii. 58.
novus, a, um, adj., *new, strange, recent, unusual;* sup. **novissimus,** *the latest, last, newest;* **āgmen novissimum,** *the rear;* **novissimī,** *the rear, rear men.* **34.**
nox, noctis, f., *night.* **46.**
noxia, ae, f., (**noceō**), *crime, offence, fault.* vi. 16.
nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *to veil; to marry, be married.* i. 18.
nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to uncover, bare, strip, expose; to deprive.* **7.**
nūdus, a, um, adj., *naked, bare, unprotected, uncovered.* i. 25, vi. 21, vii. 47.
nūllus, a, um, adj., (**nē** + **ullus**), *none, no, not any.* **56.**
num, interrog. adv., *whether.* i. 14.
nūmen, inis, n., (**nuō**), *the will of the gods; command, deity, divinity.* vi. 16.
numerus, ī, m., *quantity, number, position, rank, estimation, account.* **105.**
Numidae, ārum, m. pl., a tribe of North Africa. They served as auxiliaries in Caesar's army. ii. 7, 24.
nummus, ī, m., *a piece of money, coin.* v. 12 (twice).
nunc, adv., *at present, now.* **8.**
numquam, adv., *never.* **4.**
nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to announce, bring news, report, inform, warn.* **28.**
nūntius, ī, m., *tidings, news, message, order; reporter, messenger, courier.* **34.**
nūper, adv., *recently, lately, not long ago.* **4.**
nusquam, (**nē** + **usquam**), adv., *nowhere, in no case.* vii. 17.
nūtus, ūs, m., (**nuō**), *a nod, beck, will; command, pleasure; gravity, weight.* i. 31, iv. 23, v. 43.

O.

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for, for the sake of.* **15.**
obaerātus, a, um, adj., (**ob** + **aes**), *involved in debt.* i. **4.**
obaerātus, ī, m., *a debtor.* i. 4.
obdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead against* or *to, draw forward, draw out; to construct.* ii. 8.
obeō, īre, īvī, itus, *to traverse, go through, come to, go against; to execute, perform, do.* v. 33.
obiectus, a, um, partic. pass., (**obiciō**), *lying before* or *opposite, open to, exposed, intervening.* vi. 10, 37, vii. 59.
obiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (**ob** + **iaciō**), *to throw before, throw up, expose, oppose; to present, offer.* **6.**
obitus, ūs, m., (**obeō**), *death.* ii. 29.
oblātus, a, um. See **offerō.**
oblīquē, adv., *obliquely.* iv. 17.
oblīquus, a, um, adj., *oblique, slanting, sidewise.* vii. 73.
oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus, dep., *to forget.* i. 14, vii. 34.
obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ob** + **sacrō**), *to implore, entreat, beseech.* i. 20, vii. 8, 38.
obsequentia, ae, f., (**obsequēns**), *obsequiousness, compliance.* vii. 29.
observō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to observe, watch, regard, notice; to obey.* **4.**
obses, idis, m. and f., (**ob** + **sedeō**), *a pledge, security, hostage.* **71.**
obsessiō, ōnis, f., (**obsideō**), *a siege.* vi. 36, vii. 36.
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, (**ob** + **sedeō**), *to besiege, blockade.* **6.**
obsidiō, ōnis, f., (**obsideō**), *a blockade, siege: imminent peril.* **7.**
obsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to seal, sign, execute, make.* i. 39.
obsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, *to resist, oppose, withstand, stop, hinder.* vii. 29.
obstinātē, adv., *firmly, resolutely.* v. 6.
obstringō, ere, inxī, ictus, *to tie, bind, fetter; to oblige, put under obligation.* i. 9, 31.
obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *to barricade, stop up, block up.* v. 50, 51, vii. 41.
obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to submit to, comply with, obey.* iv 12.
obtestor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to call solemnly to witness, protest; to supplicate, adjure, beseech.* **4.**
obtineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (**ob** + **teneō**), *to possess, hold, retain, obtain, accomplish, effect, preserve.* **25.**
obtulī. See **offerō.**
obveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to meet; to occur, happen, befall.* ii. 23, vii. 28, 81.
obviam, adv., (**obvius**), *in the way, against, towards.* vii. 12, 28.
occāsiō, ōnis, f., (**occidō**), *opportunity, occasion.* **6.**
occāsus, ūs, m., (**occidō**), *a setting, going down; the west; destruction, downfall, end.* **7.**
occidēns, entis, partic. pres., (**occidō**), *going down, setting.* v. 13.
occidō, ere, cidī, occāsus, (**ob** + **cadō**), *to perish, fall; to set, go down.* vi. 37.
occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (**ob** + **caedō**), *to kill, cut down, slay; to beat severely.* **18.**
occultātiō, ōnis, f., *concealment.* vi. 21.
occultē, adv., *secretly, privately.* vii. 83.
occultō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**occulō**), *to secrete, cover, conceal, hide.* **13.**
occultus, a, um, adj, (**occulō**), *concealed, hidden, secret.* **9.**
occupātiō, ōnis, f., (**occupō**), *a seizing, occupying; employment, occupation.* iv. 16, 22.
occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ob** + **capiō**), *to occupy, seize upon, attack, invade; to engross, employ.* **28.**
occurrō, ere, currī, cursus, (**ob** + **currō**), *to go, come* or *run to meet, fall in with; to resist, oppose; to occur, present itself.* **14.**

ōceanus, ī, m., *the ocean:* (1) *The Atlantic.* iii. 7, *mare Ōceanus.* (2) *North Sea.* i. 1; iii. 9; iv. 10; vi. 33. **16.**

Ōcelum, ī, n., a town of the Graioceli in the cisalpine Gaul, modern *Oulx* in Piedmont. i. 10.

octāvus, a, um, num. adj., *the eighth.* ii. 23, v. 35.

octingentī, ae, a, num. adj., (**octō + centum**), *eight hundred.* iv. 12, v. 8, 13.

octō, num. adj., *eight.* **7.**

octōdecim, num. adj., *eighteen.* **4.**

Octodūrus, ī, m., a town of the Veragri, modern *Martigny,* on the river Dranse, in Wallis. iii. 1.

octōgintā, num. adj., *eighty.* **7.**

octōnī, ae, a, distr. num. adj., *eight by eight, eight each, eight.* vii. 73, 75.

oculus, ī, m., *the eye.* **6.**

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defect., *I hate, detest.* i. 18, iii. 10.

odium, ī, n., *enmity, odium, hatred, ill-will, dislike, detestation.* vi 5, 9.

offendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, *to run* or *hit against; to offend, take offence; to blame, displease.* i. 19, vi. 36.

offēnsiō, ōnis, f., *harm, offence; aversion, dislike.* i. 19.

offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus, *to bring before, offer, give, present; to expose; to promise.* **10.**

officium, ī, n., (**officiō**), *a favor, service, kindness; honor, respect, deference; employment, office, charge, duty.* **16.**

omittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, (**ob + mittō**), *to omit, let go, lay aside: to postpone; to slight, cease, disregard.* ii. 17, vii. 34, 88.

omnīnō, adv., *entirely, wholly, altogether, utterly, only.* **21.**

omnis, e, adj., *every, all, the whole, of every kind.* **519.**

onerārius, a, um, adj., (**onus**), *fitted for burdens, transport;* **nāvis onerāria,** *a transport ship.* **4.**

onerō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to load, lade, fill.* v. 1.

onus, eris, n., *a load, burden; freight, cargo; trouble.* **5.**

opera, ae, f., *labor, work, pains; help, assistance;* **operam dare,** *to take pains.* **11.**

opīniō, ōnis, f., *belief, opinion, supposition; rumor, fame.* **25.**

oportet, ēre, uit, —, impers., *it is proper, it behooves, it ought, it must be, it is necessary.* **18.**

oppidānī, ōrum, m. pl., *citizens, townspeople.*

oppidānus, a, um, adj., *of a town.* **5.**

oppidum, ī, n., *a town.* **130.**

oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus, (**ob + pōnō**), *to place against* or *opposite, station, place.* vi. 36, vii. 56, 65.

opportūnē, adv., *seasonably, fitly, opportunely, suitably, properly, conveniently.* iv. 13, 22.

opportunitās, ātis, f., *fitness, convenience, advantage, favorableness, opportunity, the right chance.* **7.**

opportūnus, a, um, adj., (**ob + portus**), *suitable, convenient, fit, proper.* **10.**

oppositus, a, um, adj. See **oppōnō.**

opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, (**ob + premō**), *to suppress, press down; to overthrow, overpower, prostrate, fall upon suddenly, surprise.* **11.**

oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f., *assault, attack, siege, an assaulting.* **19.**

oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**ob + pūgnō**), *to attack, assail, beset, fight against.* **23.**

ōps, opis, f., *strength, power, assistance, aid, succor; interest, influence.* **9.**

optātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**optō**), *longed for, wished for, dear, desired, wished.* vi. 42.

optimē, adv., (sup. of **bene**), *most excellently, best.* i. 45, vii. 71.

optimus, a, um, (sup. of **bonus**), *most excellent, best, very good.* **4.**

opus, eris, n., *a work, labor, art, deed, business;* **tantō opere,** *so greatly;* **quantō opere,** *how much, how greatly.* 46.

opus, n., indecl., *necessity, need.* 8.

ōra, ae, f., *the margin, shore, edge, region.* 4.

ōrātiō, ōnis, f., (**ōrō**), *language, speech, oration, harangue.* 22.

ōrātor, ōris, m., (**ōrō**), *an orator, speaker.* iv. 27.

orbis, is, m., *a circle; a region of country; a rank* or *file of soldiers;* **orbis terrārum,** *the world, earth.* 4.

Orcynia silva, f., Greek name for **Hercynia silva.** vi. 24.

ōrdō, inis, m., *order, series, row; method, arrangement.* 27.

Orgetorix, igis, m., a noble Helvetian. i. 2 *ff*, 9, 26.

orior, īrī, ortus, dep., *to arise, begin, rise: to spring.* 21.

ōrnāmentum, ī, n., *ornament, embellishment, honor.* i. 44, vii. 15.

ōrnātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**ōrnō**), *furnished, equipped.* iii. 14.

ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to equip, furnish, ornament, adorn, honor.* iii. 14, vii. 33.

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to entreat, implore, beseech, ask.* 11.

ortus, ūs, (**orior**), *a rising.* vii. 41.

ōs, ōris, n., *the mouth, countenance, face.* v. 35, vi. 39.

Osismī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe belonging to the **cīvitātēs Aremoricae,** in the northwest of Gaul (modern Départément Finistère). ii. 34, iii. 9, vii. 75.

ostendō, ere, ī, tentus, (**ob + tendō**), *to display, show, manifest, disclose.* 20.

ostentātiō, ōnis, f., *display, show, pretence.* vii. 45, 53.

ostentō, āre, āvī, atus, (**ostendō**), *to display, show, manifest, exhibit.* 4.

ōtium, ī, n., *ease, quiet, leisure, rest, idleness.* vii. 66.

ōvum, ī, n., *an egg.* iv. 40.

P.

P., for *Publius.*

pābulātiō, ōnis, f., *a foraging.* 7.

pābulātor, ōris, m., *a forager.* v. 17.

pābulor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to forage.* v. 17, vii. 14, 18.

pābulum, ī, n., *forage, fodder.* 6.

pācātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**pācō**), *peaceful, pacified, quiet, calm, serene.* 10.

pācō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to tranquillize, subdue, conquer.* 11.

pactum, ī, n., (**pacīscor**), *a compact, agreement, rule, condition.* vii. 83.

Padus, ī, m., the river Po in upper Italy. v. 24.

Paemānī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe east of the river Maas, near the modern Lüttich. ii. 4.

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.* 17.

paenitet, ēre, uit, impers., *to repent, be sorry, regret;* **mē paenitet,** *I repent, am sorry.* iv. 5.

pāgus, ī, m., *a district, canton.* 11.

palam, adv., *publicly, openly.* v. 25, vi. 7, 18.

palma, ae, f., *the palm of the hand; the palm-tree; victory.* vi. 36.

palūs, ūdis, f., *a marsh, swamp, fen, bog.* 24.

paluster, tris, tre, adj., (**palūs**), *marshy, boggy, swampy.* vii. 20.

pandō, ere, ī, passus, *to open, throw open, spread out.* 4.

pār, paris, adj., *equal, like, even, similar, strong.* 18.

parātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**parō**), *prepared, ready, furnished, provided, fitted.* 13.

parcē, adv., *sparingly, moderately, frugally.* v. 71.

parcō, ere, pepercī or **parsī, parsus,** *to abstain, forbear, spare.* 7.

parēns, entis, m. and f., (**pariō**), *a parent, mother* or *father.* v. 14, vi. 14, vii. 66.

parentō, āre, —, ātus, (parēns), *to perform funeral rites of parents* or *near relatives; to avenge, appease.* vii. 17.

pāreō, ēre, uī, —, *to comply with, submit to, obey.* 6.

pariō, ere, peperī, partus, *to bring forth, produce; to gain, acquire.* v. 43, vi. 40.

Parisiī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul. Capital: **Lutētia,** modern *Paris.* vi. 3, vii. 4, 34, 57, 75.

pariter, adv., **(pār),** *equally.*

parō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to provide, order, dispose, procure, furnish, obtain, acquire.* 33.

pars, tis, f., *share, portion, part; party, side; region, place;* **ex parte,** *in part.* 244.

Parthicus, a, um, adj. from **Parthī,** a Scythian tribe in Asia in the modern Khorassan.

partim, adv., *partly, in part.* 6.

partiō, īre, īvī, ītus, partior, īrī, ītus, dep., *to divide, distribute.* 5.

partus, a, um. See **pariō.**

parum, adv., *too little, not enough, not much;* comp. **minus,** sup. **minimē.** iii. 18, vii. 66

parvulus, a, um, adj., (dim. **parvus**), *little, small, slight, puny, trifling.* 5.

parvus, a, um, adj., *small, little, slight;* comp. **minor,** sup. **minimus.** 5.

passim, adv., **(pandō),** *everywhere, here and there.* iv 14.

passus, ūs, m., **(pandō),** *a pace,* a measure of five Roman feet; **mīlle passuum,** a Roman mile See note to I. 2, p. 325. 62.

passus, a, um. See **pandō.**

passus, a, um. See **patior.**

patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (pateō + faciō), *to throw open; to discover, disclose, open.* ii. 32, vii. 8.

patefīō, fierī, factus, irreg. pass. of **patefaciō.** iii. 1.

patēns, entis, partic. pass., **(pateō),** *unobstructed, accessible, open.* i. 10, vii. 28.

pateō, ēre, uī, —, *to be open, accessible, extend; to be clear, evident* or *known.* 13.

pater, tris, m., *a father.* 14.

paterfamiliae. See **pater** and **familia.**

patienter, adv., **(patior),** *tamely, patiently.* vii. 77.

patientia, ae, f., *a suffering, enduring, patience.* vi. 24, 26.

patior, ī, passus, dep., *to endure, suffer, bear, to permit, allow.* 19.

patrius, a, um, adj., **(pater),** *paternal, fatherly, native.* ii. 15.

patrōnus, ī, m., **(pater),** *protector, patron, defender, advocate, champion.* vii. 40.

patruus, ī, m., **(pater),** *father's brother, uncle.* vii. 4.

paucī, ae, a, adj., *a few, few.* 38.

paucitās, ātis, f., *small number, fewness.* 9.

paulātim, adv., *by degrees, gradually.* 11.

paulisper, adv., *a short time, for a little while.* 7.

paulō. See **paulum.**

paululum, adv., *somewhat, a little.* ii. 8.

paulum, adv., *somewhat, a little;* **paulō,** ablat. of **paulus,** *a little.* 50.

Paulus, ī, m., *L. Aemilius,* consul in 50 B. C. viii. 48.

pāx, pācis, f, *peace.* 27.

peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to offend, err, injure, transgress, mistake.* i. 47.

pectus, oris, m., *the breast.* vii. 47.

pecūnia, ae, f., *money, wealth.* 12.

pecus, oris, n., *a herd, cattle.* 13.

pedālis, e, adj., **(pēs),** *of a foot, a foot long* or *broad.* iii. 13.

pedes, itis, m., **(pēs),** *a foot-soldier, infantry.* 10.

pedester, tris, tre, adj., **(pēs),** *infantry; on land; on foot, pedestrian.* 8.

peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.* 10.

Pedius, ī, m., *Q.,* Caesar's nephew (sister's son) and legate. ii. 2, 11.

pēior, us, adj., **(comp. of malus),** *worse; a worse thing.* i. 31.

pellis, is, f., *a hide, skin; tent.* **7.**

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *to expel, drive away, dispossess, discomfort, rout.* **20.**

pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus, *to weigh, consider, think upon; to pay; to undergo.* **6.**

penitus, adv., *inwardly, within.* vi. 10.

per, prep. with the acc., *through, through the midst of, throughout, during; over, along; on account of, for the sake of, for.* **103.**

peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *to accomplish, finish, end, carry through, complete.* **4.**

perangustus, a, um, adj., *very narrow.* vii. 15.

percipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (per + capiō), *to acquire, obtain; to learn, perceive, hear of.* **4.**

percontātiō, ōnis, f., *inquiry.* i. 39, v. 13.

percunctātiō. See **percontātiō.**

percurrō, ere, cucurrī or **currī, cursus,** *to traverse; to run through and over.* iv. 33.

percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, (per + quatiō), *to smite, kill, slay.* v. 44.

perdiscō, ere, didicī, —, *to learn by heart, learn thoroughly.* vi. 14.

perditus, a, um, partic. pass., **(perdō),** *profligate, abandoned.* iii. 17, vii. 4.

perdō, ere, didī, ditus, (per + dō), *to destroy, lose, ruin.* iii. 17, vii. 4.

perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to convey through, bring, lead; to persuade; to promote, advance; to protract, prolong.* **13.**

perendinus, a, um, adj., *after to-morrow.* v. 30.

pereō, īre, iī or **īvī, itūrus,** *to die, be lost, perish.* **4.**

perequitō, āre, āvī, —, *to ride around, ride through.* iv. 33, vii. 66.

perexiguus, a, um, adj., *very little, small.* v 15.

perfacilis, e, adj., *very easy.* i. 2, 3, vii. 64.

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear or carry through; to convey, bring; to suffer, support, undergo; to bring news, report.* **20.**

perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (per + faciō), *to accomplish, perform, finish, complete, cause.* **14.**

perfidia, ae, f., *treachery, perfidy.* **6.**

perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, (per + frangō), *to burst through, break through, rout, shatter; to infringe, violate.* i. 25, vii. 85.

perfuga, ae, m., *a deserter.* **6.**

perfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *to flee for succor, take refuge; to desert.* i. 27, v. 45.

perfugium, ī, n., *a shelter, refuge.* iv. 38.

pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, (per + regō), *to continue, go on, proceed.* iii. 18.

periclitor, ārī, ātus, dep., **(perīculum),** *to prove, try, essay; to be in danger, risk, hazard.* ii. 8, vi. 34, vii. 56.

perīculōsus, a, um, adj., *perilous, hazardous.* i. 33, vii. 8.

perīculum, ī, n., *experiment, trial; peril, hazard, danger, risk.* **55.**

perītus, a, um, adj., *acquainted with, experienced, skilled.* i. 21, iii. 21, vii. 83.

perlātus, a, um. See **perferō.**

perlegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to read through.* v. 48.

perluō, ere, ī, ūtus, *to wash, bathe.* vi. 21.

permāgnus, a, um, adj., *very great.* vii. 31.

permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *to continue, remain; to hold out, persist, endure.* **10.**

permisceō, ēre, cuī, ixtus, *to mingle, mix together, blend, confuse.* vii. 62.

permittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *to send through; to entrust, commit, allow, grant, suffer, permit.* **10.**

permīxtus, a, um. See **permisceō.**

permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move through, stir up well; to influence, induce; to arouse, excite.* **16.**

permulceō, ēre, sī, sus, *to appease, allay, soothe.* iv. 6.

perniciēs, ēī, f., (**perneco**), *ruin, destruction, disaster.* i. 20, 36.

perpaucī, ae, a, adj., *very few.* **7.**

perpendiculum, ī, n., (**per + pendō**), *a plumb-line, plummet.* iv. 17.

perpetior, ī, pessus, dep., (**per + patior**), *to suffer patiently, bear, endure.* vii. 10.

perpetuō, adv , *perpetually, continuously.* i. 31, vii. 41.

perpetuus, a, um, adj., (**per + petō**), *uninterrupted, continuous, perpetual.* **16.**

perquīrō, ere, —, quīsītus, (**per + quaerō**), *to search for, ask, inquire; to investigate.* vi. 9.

perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to break through, burst through, enter forcibly.* **8.**

perscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to describe, record, write out.* v. 47, 49.

persequor, ī, cūtus, dep., *to pursue, press upon, follow, avenge, revenge; to accomplish, perform.* **7.**

persevērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to continue, persevere, persist.* i. 13, v. 36.

persolvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *to discharge, release; to pay completely, pay;* **poenās persolvere,** *to suffer punishment.* i. 12.

perspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, (**per + speciō**), *to see through, look through, observe, perceive, examine, view.* **24.**

perstō, āre, stiti, stātūrus, *to persist, stand fast, continue, persevere.* vii. 26.

persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *to convince, persuade.* **20.**

perterreō, ēre, —, itus, *to terrify, frighten greatly.* **33.**

pertinācia, ae, f., *obstinacy, perversity, stubbornness, pertinacity.* i. 42, v. 31.

pertineō, ēre, uī, —, (**per + teneō**), *to extend, stretch out; to belong, pertain; to tend.* **22.**

pertulī. See **perferō.**

perturbātiō, ōnis, f., *confusion, disturbance, trouble.* iv. 29.

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to disturb greatly, confuse, trouble, embroil, embarrass.* **19.**

pervagor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to rove about, wander about.* vii. 9.

perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come to, arrive at, reach, come, arrive.* **58.**

pēs, pedis, m., *a foot, step;* **pedem referre,** *to draw back, retire.* **44.**

petō, ere, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *request, seek; to attack, assail; to covet; to repair to, travel to.* **66.**

Petrocoriī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul on the right side of the Garumna (Garonne). Capital: **Vesunna,** modern *Périgueux.* vii. 75.

Petrōnius, ī, m., a centurion. vii. 50.

Petrosīdius, ī, m., an aquilifer. v. 37.

phalanx, ngis, f., *a phalanx.* **4.**

Pictonēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe on the left side of the Liger (Loire) neighbors of the Santonēs, in the modern Poitou. iii. 11; vii. 4, 75; viii. 26. Town: **Lemonum.** Chieftain: **Duratius.**

pietās, ātis, f., *dutiful conduct, piety, devotion, performance of duty.* v. 27.

pīlum, ī, n., *dart, javelin.* **11.**

pīlus, ī, m., a company of the triāriī; a company of soldiers armed with the pīlum. iii. 5, v. 35, vi. 38.

pinna, ae, f., *a feather; parapet, pinnacle.* v. 40, vii. 72.

Pīrūstī, ōrum, m. pl., an Illyrian tribe v. 1.

piscis, is, m., *a fish.* iv. 10.

Pīsō, ōnis, m. (1) *L. Calpurnius Pīso Caesōnius,* Caesar's father-in-law, consul in 58 B. C. i. 6, 12. (2) *L. Calpurnius Pīso,* legate of Cassius in 107 B. C. i. 12. (3) *M. Pupius Pīso Calpurniānus,* consul 61 B. C. i. 2, 35. (4) An Aquitanian. iv. 12.

pix, picis, f , *pitch.* vii. 22, 24, 25.

placeō, ēre, uī, itus, *to be agreeable, please, satisfy, soothe, calm.* **7.**

placidē, adv., *quietly, calmly, mildly, gently*. vi. 8.

plācō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to calm, reconcile, appease* vi. 16.

plānē, adv., *clearly, plainly, distinctly, quite, entirely*. iii. 26, vi. 43.

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *a plain; a flat surface, level ground*. **9.**

plānus, a, um, adj., *level, plain, even, smooth*. iii. 13, iv. 23.

plēbes, eī, f., and **plēbs, plēbis**, f., *plebeians, the common people, populace*. **9.**

plēnē, adv., *entirely, fully*. iii. 3.

plēnus, a, um, adj., *full, entire, complete*. iii. 2, iv. 29, vii. 76.

plērumque, adv., *generally, commonly*. **15**

plērusque, aque, umque, adj, *the most, most*: pl., *very many, most*. **7.**

Pleumoxii, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe in the west of Flandern. v. 39

plumbum, ī, n., *lead*; **plumbum album**, *tin*. v. 12.

plūrimum, adv., (sup. of **multum**), *most of all, especially, exceedingly*. **11.**

plūrimus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **multus**), *most, very much*; pl., *very many, most*. **8.**

plūs, adv., (comp. of **multum**), *more*. **8**.

plūs, plūris, adj., (comp. of **multus**), *more*; **plūrēs**, *more, many, several*. **16.**

pluteus, ī, m., *a parapet, breastwork*. vii. 25, 41, 72.

pōculum, ī, n., *goblet, cup*. vi. 28.

poena, ae, f., *atonement, satisfaction, punishment, penalty*. **10.**

pollex, icis, m., *the thumb*. iii. 13.

polliceor, ērī, itus, dep., *to promise; to offer one's self for*. **26.**

pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., *a promise*. **5.**

Pompēius, ī, m., *Cn.* (1) Pompey (the Great). vi. 1 (see Introd.). (2) An interpreter of Titūrius. v. 36.

pondus, eris, n., *a burden, weight, load, heaviness*. **4.**

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to place, set; to build, erect; to lay aside, regard; to station, post*. **43.**

pōns, pōntis, m., *a bridge*. **32.**

poposcī. See **poscō**.

populātiō, ōnis, f., (**populor**), *a laying waste, ravaging, depopulating, plundering*. i. 15.

populor, ārī, ātus, dep., (**populus**), *to lay waste, ravage, pillage, spoil, plunder*. **5.**

populus, ī, m., *a nation, people, multitude*. **82**.

porrēctus, a, um. See **porrigō**.

porrigo, ere, rēxī, rēctus, (**prō + regō**), *to stretch, spread out, extend; hold out, offer*. ii. 19.

porrō, adv., *farther on, forward, besides*. v. 27.

porta, ae, f., *a gate*. **34.**

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to convey, carry, conduct, bear*. **5.**

portōrium, ī, n., (**portō**), *a duty, tax, impost*. i. 18, iii. 1.

portus, ūs, m., *a harbor, port; asylum, shelter*. **16.**

poscō, ere, poposcī, —, *to ask for, demand, call for*. **5**.

positus, a, um. See **pōnō**.

possessiō, ōnis, f., *a property, possession, estate*. **4.**

possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *to hold, occupy, own, possess*. **4**.

possum, posse, potuī, irr., (**potis + sum**), *to be able; to have power, avail, have influence*; **plūrimum posse**, *to be very powerful*. **306.**

post, adv., and prep. with the acc., *behind, since, after, below, beneath*. **41.**

posteā, adv., *afterwards*. **12.**

posteā quam, adv., *after*. **9.**

posterus, a, um, adj., *coming after, following, next, ensuing*; **posterī, ōrum**, m. pl., *descendants, posterity*; comp. **posterior**, sup. **postrēmus** and **postumus**. **29.**

postpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to value less; to postpone, neglect, disregard.* v. 7, vi. 3.
postquam, conj., *after, after that, as soon as.* 8.
postrēmō, adv., *finally, at last.* 4.
postrēmus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **posterus**), *the last, latest, hindmost.*
postrīdiē, adv., *the day after, on the following day.* 7.
postulātum, ī, n., (**postulō**), *a request, demand.* 4.
postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to require, demand, ask, beg.* 21.
potēns, entis, adj., (**possum**), *able, powerful, strong; rich.* 9.
potentātus, ūs, m., *dominion, power, rule.* i. 31.
potentia, ae, f., *power.* 7.
potestās, ātis, f., *power, ability; virtue, efficacy; rule, empire, dominion.* 27.
potior, īrī, ītus, dep., (**potis**), *to become master of; to gain, acquire, take, obtain.* 15.
potius, comp. adv., *sooner, rather;* sup. **potissimē** and **potissimum.** 6.
prae, prep. with the ablat., *for, through, by reason of, on account of.* ii. 30, vii. 44.
praeacūtus, a, um, adj., *pointed, sharpened, made sharp.* 6.
praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, (**prae + habeō**), *to offer, afford, furnish; to present; to exhibit, show.* 5.
praecaveō, ēre, cāvī, cautus, *to take precaution, be on one's guard against.* i. 38
praecēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to go before, precede; to surpass, excel, be superior to.* i. 1.
praeceps, cipitis, adj., (**prae + caput**), *rapid, headlong, hasty; sudden, steep, precipitous.* ii. 24, iv. 33, v. 17.
praeceptum, ī, n., *direction, instruction; precept, counsel.* 5.
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (**prae + capiō**), *to anticipate; to order, instruct, direct.* 8.
praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**praeceps**), *to precipitate, plunge, throw headlong.* iv. 15, vii. 50.
praecipuē, adv., *particularly, especially.* i. 40, vii. 40.
praecipuus, a, um, adj., *especial, particular, peculiar, remarkable.* v. 54.
praeclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, *to hinder, shut up, close.* v. 9.
praecō, ōnis, m., *a herald.* v. 51.
praecurrō, ere, cucurrī or **curri, —,** *to precede, run before; to surpass, excel, outstrip.* vi. 39, vii. 9, 37.
praeda, ae, f., *booty, plunder, spoil, prey.* 19.
praedicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to publish, declare, report, assert.* 4.
praedor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to pillage, ravage, spoil, rob.* 7.
praedūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to construct; to draw before.* vii. 46, 69.
praefectus, ī, m., (**praeficiō**), *a commander of cavalry; overseer.* 8.
praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, irr., *to prefer; to bear before.* i. 17, ii. 27, v. 54.
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (**prae + faciō**), *to set over, preside over, delegate, depute, constitute.* 26.
praefīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, *to set up in front, fasten before.* v. 18.
praefuī. See **praesum.**
praemetuō, ere, —, —, *to fear beforehand, fear.* vii. 49.
praemittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *to send in advance; to dispatch.* 15.
praemium, ī, n., *advantage, profit; recompense, reward.* 18.
praeoccupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to preoccupy, seize beforehand.* vi. 41, vii. 26.
praeoptō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**prae + optō**), *to choose rather, wish in preference.* i. 25.
praeparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to provide, prepare.* 4.

praepōnō, ere, posui, positus, *to appoint over, set over; to place first.* i. 54, vi. 40.
praerumpō, ere, —, ruptus, *to tear away, break off.* iii 14, vi. 7, vii. 86.
praeruptus, a, um, partic. pass., (**praerumpō**), *steep, abrupt.* vi. 7, vii. 86.
praescrībō, ere, psi, ptus, *to write before; to order, appoint, dictate.* **4.**
praescrīptum, ī, n., *direction, order, command.* i. 36.
praesēns, entis, adj., *present, in person, at hand.* **8.**
praesentia, ae, f., *the present, presence.* **5.**
praesentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to see beforehand, foresee, presage, foretell, foreknow.* v. 54, vii. 30.
praesēpiō, īre, psī, ptus, *to block up, barricade.* vii. 77.
praesertim, adv., *particularly, especially.* **11.**
praesidium, ī, n., (**prae + sedeō**), *protection, defence; guard, reserve, escort; post, station.* **64.**
praestō, āre, stitī, stitus, *to excel, surpass, be superior to; to afford, furnish; to exhibit, show.* **16.**
praestō, adv., *ready, present, at hand.* v. 26.
praesum, esse, fuī, —, irr., *to be over, rule over, have command over.* **26.**
praeter, prep. with the acc., *beyond, except, besides; against, contrary to.* **15.**
praetereā, adv., *moreover, besides.* **11.**
praetereō, īre, iī, itus, *to pass* or *go by, pass over, neglect, omit, leave out.* **4.**
praeteritus, a, um, partic. pass., (**praetereō**), *past.*
praetermittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *to pass over, omit, neglect, let pass by.* iv. 13, vi. 34, vii. 55.
praeterquam, adv., *besides, beyond, except.* i. 5, vii. 77.
praetor, ōris, m., *a praetor, leader, chief, commander, magistrate.* i. 21.
praetōrius, a, um, adj., *befitting a praetor, praetorian, belonging to a general.* i. 40, 42.
praeūstus, partic. (**prae + ūrō**), *burned at the end.* v. 40, vii. 22, 73.
praevertō, ere, ī, —, *to prevent; to prefer; to get the start of, anticipate.* vii. 33.
prāvus, a, um, adj., *crooked, distorted; bad, wrong, depraved, wicked.* vii. 39.
precēs. See **prex.**
prehendō or **prendō, ere, ī, prehēnsus,** *to lay hold of, seize, grasp.* i. 20.
premō, ere, pressi, pressus, *to press upon, press, strain, harass, pursue, urge.* **24.**
prendō. See **prehendō.**
pretium, ī, n., *value, worth, price.* i. 18, iv. 2.
prex, precis, f., *an entreaty, prayer; imprecation.* **8.**
pridiē, adv., *on the day before.* **5.**
prīmipīlus, m., (**prīmus + pīlus**), *the chief centurion.* **4.**
prīmō, adv., *at first.* **12.**
prīmum, adv., *first, in the beginning;* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.* **22.**
prīmus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **prior**), *first, foremost, principal, excellent, illustrious; in the van, in front.* **62.**
prīnceps, ipis, adj., (**prīmus + capiō**), *foremost, the first.* **11.**
prīncipātus, ūs, m., *pre-eminence, sovereignty, rule, dominion.* **11.**
prīncipēs, *rulers, chiefs, leaders.* **39.**
prior, us, gen. **ōris,** adj., *first, former, previous, foremost.* **4.**
prīstinus, a, um, adj., *old, former, ancient, original.* **9.**
prius, adv., *sooner, before.* vii. 47.
priusquam, adv., *before.* **30.**
prīvātim, adv., *privately, in private.* i. 17, v. 3, 55.
prīvātus, a, um, adj., *private.* **8.**
prīvātus, ī, m., *a private citizen.* **4.**

prō, prep. with the ablat., *before, in front of, right opposite to; on, in; according to, for; in place of, instead of, as.* **79.**

probō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to approve, be satisfied; to examine, try; to prove, show, demonstrate.* **16.**

procēdō, ere, cessi, —, *to advance, proceed, go forth.* **15.**

Procillus, i, m. See **Valerius.**

prōclīnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to bend forward, incline.* vii. 42.

prōcōnsul, ulis, m., *a proconsul.* iii. 20, vi. 1.

procul, adv., *far, far off, at a distance.* **11.**

prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus, *to fall forward, fall down, lean.* **5.**

prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to take care of, attend to, look after.* v. 13.

prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī or currī, cursus, *to rush forward, run forth.* **5.**

prōdeō, īre, iī, itus, *to advance, proceed, come forth, go out.* **4.**

prōditiō, ōnis, f., *treachery; discovery.* **4.**

prōditor, ōris, m., *a traitor.* vi. 23.

prōdō, ere, didī, ditus, *to give* or *bring forth, divulge, disclose, manifest; to report, relate, hand down; to betray, abandon.* **7.**

prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead forth, bring out; to draw out, lengthen, prolong.* **14.**

proelior, ārī, ātus, dep., *to combat, contend, fight.* **6.**

proelium, ī, n., *a battle.* **121.**

profectiō, ōnis, f., *a departure.* **10.**

prōfectus, a, um. See **prōficiō.**

profectus, a, um. See **proficīscor.**

prōferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bring forth, say, produce; to defer, put off; to enlarge, prolong.* vii. 48, 82, 84.

prōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (prō + faciō), *to advance, gain ground; to obtain, effect, accomplish, bring about.* **7.**

proficīscor, ī, fectus, dep., *to set out, go, travel, march, depart, begin.* **79.**

profiteor, ērī, fessus, dep., **(prō + fateor)**, *to declare publicly, acknowledge, confess, avow; to promise.* **4.**

prōflīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to throw* or *dash down; to overthrow, conquer, overcome, destroy.* ii. 23, vii. 13.

prōfluō, ere, flūxī, —, *to issue, flow forth.* iv. 10.

prōfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *to flee, flee from: to escape; to flee for refuge.* **12.**

prōfuī. See **prōsum.**

prōgnātus, a, um, adj., *descended, sprung from, born.* ii. 29, vi. 18.

prōgredior, ī, gressus, (prō + gradior), *to go forth, advance, proceed.* **27.**

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, (prō + habeō), *to hold back, keep in check, restrain, hinder, keep from; to preserve, keep, defend.* **43.**

prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (prō + iaciō), *to cast forth* or *forward; to throw away, fling down; to resign, renounce, reject; to abandon, forsake, neglect.* **10.**

proinde, adv., *therefore, then, hence.* **4.**

prōlātus, a, um. See **prōferō.**

prōmineō, ēre, uī, —, *to stand* or *jut out, overhang, project.* vii. 47.

prōmiscuē, adv., *promiscuously.* vi. 21.

prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to promise; to let down.* v. 14.

prōmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move forwards, advance, push away.* **4.**

prōmptus, a, um, adj., *quick, active, prompt.* iii. 19.

prōmunturium, ī, n., **(prō + mineō)**, *a headland, promontory.* iii. 12.

prōnē, adv., *in an inclined position, leaning forward.* iv. 17.

prōnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make known publicly, announce, proclaim, report, tell, narrate.* **15.**

prope, prep. with the acc. and adv., *near, nearly.* **23.**

prōpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *to drive before one's self, propel, impel, urge on; to put to flight, hurl.* **4.**

properō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to make haste, hasten, be quick.* ii. 11, 35, v. 33.
propīnquitās, ātis, f., *nearness, proximity; relationship.* **7.**
propīnquus, a, um, adj., *neighboring, near, not far off, related;* **propīnquus, ī,** m., *a kinsman, relative.* **18.**
propior, ius, gen. **ōris,** comp. adj., *nearer;* sup **proximus. 12.**
prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to put, place* or *set forth; to present, expose; to explain, represent; to make known, declare, say, relate.* **17.**
proprius, a, um, adj., *one's own, peculiar, special, particular.* vi. 22, 23.
propter, prep. with the acc., *by reason of; on account of: for, because of.* **58.**
proptereā, conj., *therefore, on that account.* **20.**
prōpūgnātor, ōris, m., *a defender.* vii. 25.
prōpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to go forth to fight; to defend; to make sorties; to defend one's self.* ii. 7, v. 9, vii. 86.
prōpulī. See **prōpellō.**
prōpulsō, āre, —, ātus, *to repel, repulse, drive back.* i. 49, vi. 15.
prōra, ae, f., *the prow.* iii. 13.
prōruō, ere, ī, tus, *to demolish, pull down.* iii. 26.
prōsequor, ī, secūtus, dep., *to follow, accompany; to pursue, attack, assail.* **4.**
prōspectus, ūs, m., *a sight, view, prospect.* ii. 22, v. 10, vii. 81.
prōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, (prō + speciō), *to look forward; to take care of, provide for.* i. 23, v. 7, vii. 50.
prōsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus, *to throw down, prostrate, overthrow.* vii. 77.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *to be of use, do good; to benefit, profit; to avail; to conduce.* vi. 40.
prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to shelter, protect, defend.* v. 44.
prōterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *to frighten away, terrify.* v. 58, vii. 81.
prōtinus, adv., *right on; continually, constantly; immediately, instantly.* **5.**
prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to repel, repulse, drive off.* ii. 19, vii. 81.
prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vēctus, *to carry forwards, convey away; to drive away;* **prōvehor** as dep., *to sail, ride, drive.* iv. 28, v. 8.
prōveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to appear, come forth; to turn out.* v. 24.
prōventus, ūs, m., *a fortunate issue; coming forth; success; result.* vii. 29, 80.
prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see before; to discern; to look out for, take care of; to foresee.* **19.**
prōvincia, ae, f., *a province; the Province.* See **Gallia. 47.**
prōvinciālis, e, adj., *provincial, of a province.* vii. 7.
prōvolō, āre, āvī, —, *to fly forth, hasten forth, rush out.* ii. 19.
proximē, adv., *last, lately.* **6.**
proximus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **propior**), *next, nearest, last.* **47.**
prūdentia, ae, f., *foresight, wisdom, prudence, discretion.* ii. 4.
Ptiānii, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia.
pūbēs and **pūber, eris,** adj., *adult, grown up;* **pūberēs, um,** m. pl., *adults, men.* v. 56.
pūblicē, adv., *publicly; by the state, in the name of the state.* **6.**
pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to confiscate, make public property.* v. 56, vii. 43.
pūblicus, a, um, adj., *public, common, of the state.* **27.**
pudet, ēre, uit or **puditum est,** impers., *to be ashamed;* **me pudet,** *I am ashamed.* vii. 42.
pudor, ōris, m., *modesty, shame; respect, regard; disgrace, ignominy.* i. 39, 40.
puer, erī, m., *a boy.* **5.**
puerīlis, e, adj., *boyish, childish, youthful.* vi. 18.
pūgna, ae, f., *fight, battle.* **34.**

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to combat, contend, fight.* 58.
pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *fair, beautiful; noble, glorious.* vii. 15, 77.
Puliō, ōnis, m., a centurion. v. 44.
pulsus, a, um. See **pellō.**
pulsus, ūs, m., *a stroke.* iii. 13.
pulvis, eris, m., *dust.* iv. 32.
puppis, is, f., *the stern.* iii. 13, 14.
purgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to cleanse, make clean; to excuse, exculpate, clear.* 4.
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to suppose, think; to count; to hold; to judge, decide.* 20.
Pyrēnaeus, a, um, adj., *Pyrenean.* **Pyrēnaeī mōntēs,** m. pl., the Pyrenees between France and Spain. i 1.

Q.

quā, adv., *in which place; where, wherever; how; on which side.* 9.
quadrāgēnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *forty each.* iv. 17, vii. 23.
quadrāgintā, num. adj., *forty.* 5.
Quadrātus, ī, m. See **Volusēnus.**
quadringentī, ae, a, num. adj., *four hundred.* i. 5, v. 46, vii. 72.
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *to seek, search for; to get, procure, obtain; to need, ask, require; to investigate, examine into.* 15.
quaestiō, ōnis, f., *inquiry, investigation, examination; question; trial.* 5.
quaestor, ōris, m., *a quaestor.* 8.
quaestus, ūs, m., (**quaerō**), *profit, gain, acquisition.* vi. 17.
quālis, e, adj., *of what nature, of what sort, what; as, such as.* i. 21 (twice).
quam, adv. and conj., *how, how much, in what manner; as, than*· with sup., *as possible;* **quam māximus,** *as large as possible.* 113.
quamdiū, adv., *as long as, how long.* i. 17.
quamobrem, conj., *wherefore.* 8.
quamvīs, adv., *as much as you will; as you will; however, although, though, very.* ii 31, iii 13, iv 2.
quandō, adv., *when;* **sī quandō,** *if ever.* iii. 12.
quantōpere, adv., (**quantus + opus**), *how much, how greatly.* ii. 5, vii. 52.
quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how much, so much;* **quantō — tantō,** *the — the.* 40.
quantusvīs, tavīs, tumvīs, adj., *as much as you will; however much, however great; any.* v. 28.
quārē, conj., *wherefore, why.* 8.
quartus, a, um, num. adj., *fourth.* 13.
quasi, conj., *as if, as it were, just as if; nearly.* vii 38
quattuor, num. adj., *four.* 20.
que, conj., *and;* **que — que,** or **que — et,** *both — and.* 892.
quemadmodum, adv., *after the manner of, just as, how, as.* See **quis** and **modus.**
queror, ī, questus, dep., *to lament, complain of, bewail.* 10.
quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., *who, which, what, that.* 1214.
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whosoever; all that, every, all.* 12.
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and **quiddam,** indef. pron., *a certain one, some one, some, something, somebody* 17.
quidem, adv., *truly, indeed, at least, assuredly, in truth;* **nē — quidem,** *not even.* 43.
quiēs, ētis, f., *quiet, rest, repose.* 5.
quiētus, a, um, adj., *at rest, calm, quiet, peaceful.* 4.
quīn, conj., (**quī + nē**), *but that; that not; that, but;* **quīn etiam,** *moreover, nay even.* 25.
quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, interrog. adj. pron., *who? which? what? what pray?* ii. 30, v 44.

quīncunx, uncis, m., (**quīnque + uncia,** *a twelfth*), *five twelfths;* the five spots on dice; **in quīncuncem,** after the manner of these spots, — ⁚·⁚ vii. 73.

quīndecim, num. adj., *fifteen.* **8.**

quīngentī, ae, a, num. adj., (**quīnque + centum**), *five hundred.* **5.**

quīnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *five each, five.* **4.**

quīnquāgintā, num. adj., *fifty.* **6.**

quīnque, num. adj., *five.* **10.**

quīntus, a, um, num. adj., *fifth.* **4.**

quis, quae, quid, interrog pron., *who? which? what?* **quid,** adv., *why? how?* indef. pron., *any one, one; somebody, something,* [especially after **nē, sī, nisi**] The fem. sing. is **qua,** as **nēqua,** etc., when used adjectively. **158.**

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, interrog. pron., *who, pray? which, pray? what, pray?* See **quīnam.**

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam or **quidpiam,** or **quippiam,** indef. pron., *some, any; some one, any one; something, anything.* v. 35, vi. 17.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or **quicquam,** indef. pron., *some, any, any one, anything.* **26.**

quisque, quaeque, quodque, or **quidque,** or **quicque,** indef. pron., *each, every, every one, all, everything.* **45.**

quisquis, quaequae, quodquod or **quidquid,** or **quicquid,** indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, each, all.* ii. 17, vii. 46.

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or **quidvis,** indef. pron., *any one you please: every one, any one: whoever; anything.* ii. 31, iii. 13, iv. 2

quō, adv. and conj.; as adv., old dat. of **quī,** *whither, where; to what place: after* **sī,** *to any place, anywhere.* **quō** as a conj. is the ablat. of **quī,** *that, in order that* (usually with comparatives). **42.**

quoad, adv., *as long as, as far as; till, until.* **4.**

quod, conj., *because, that, in that, in so far as;* **quodsī,** *and if, but if.* **299.**

quōminus, conj., (see **quō**), *that not, so that not.* iv. 22, vii. 19.

quoniam, conj., *because, since.* **15.**

quoque, conj., *too, also.* **10.**

quōqueversus, adv., *in every direction.* iii. 23.

quot, indecl. adj., *as, as many as; how many.* vii. 19.

quotannīs, adv., (**quot + annus**), *yearly, every year.* **4.**

quotiēns, adv., *as often as; how often.* i 43, v. 34.

R.

rādīx, īcis, f., *a root; the base of a mountain.* **5.**

rādō, ere, rāsī, rāsus, *to smooth, scrape, shave.* v. 14.

rāmus, ī, m., *a bough, branch.* **4.**

rapiditās, ātis, f., *velocity, swiftness, rapidity.* iv. 17.

rapīna, ae, f., (**rapiō**), *robbery, rapine, plundering.* i. 15.

rārus, a, um, adj., *far apart, scattered, thin, scanty, dispersed: single: few.* **6.**

ratiō, ōnis, f., *account, calculation, computation; transaction, affair: regard, respect, concern, care, consideration; judgment, understanding, reason; method, manner, fashion; motive; stratagem.* **41.**

ratis, is, f., *a raft.* i. 8, 12, vi. 35.

Rauricī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, neighbors of the Helvētiī from the mouth of the Arar to Basel. i. 5, 29, vi. 25, vii. 75.

rebelliō, ōnis, f., *a rebellion, revolt.* iii. 10, iv. 30, 38.

Rebilus, ī, m. See **Canīnius.**

recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *to retreat, withdraw, depart, retire.* v. 43.

recēns, entis, adj., *recent, fresh, new, vigorous.* **9.**
recēnseō, ēre, uī, —, *to reckon up, enumerate, review, count over.* vii. 76.
receptāculum, ī, n., *a shelter; a receptacle; a lurking place.* vii. 14.
receptus, a, um. See **recipiō.**
receptus, ūs, m., *a retreat, shelter, refuge.* iv. 33, vi. 9, vii. 47.
recessus, ūs, m., *a retreat.* v. 43.
recidō, ere, cidī, cāsūrus, (re + cadō), *to fall back, recoil; to occur, happen; to fall upon, light upon.* vii. 1.
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (re + capiō), *to receive, take back; to recover, get again; to take, capture; to engage, undertake;* **sē recipere,** *to withdraw, betake one's self.* **76.**
recitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to read aloud.* v. 48.
reclīnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to lean backwards, recline.* vi. 27 (twice).
rēctē, adv., *in a straight line; correctly, well.* vii. 6, 80.
rēctus, a, um, adj., *direct, exact, straight.* vi. 25, vii. 23, 46.
recuperō, āre, āvī, ātus, (re + capiō), *to recover, regain.* **4.**
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, (re + causa), *to object, refuse, decline, reject.* **9.**
rēda, ae, f., *a Gallic carriage.* i. 51, vi. 30.
redāctus, a, um. See **redigō.**
reddō, ere, didī, ditus, *to give back, return, restore; to yield, give up, surrender; to grant; to cause.* **11.**
redēmptus, a, um. See **redimō.**
redeō, īre, iī, itus, *to return, come back; to be reduced; to descend.* **10.**
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (re + agō), *to drive* or *bring back; to render; to reduce, diminish; to make, compel, force.* **10.**
redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, (re + emō), *to buy back; to release, redeem, ransom; to hire, procure, farm, acquire, purchase.* **i. 18, 37, 44.**
redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to restore, renew, revive, recruit.* **9.**
reditiō, ōnis, f., *a return.* i. 5.
reditus, ūs, m., *a return.* iv. 30, vi. 29, 36.
Rēdonēs, um, m pl., a Celtic tribe in the Bretagne, about the modern Rennes. ii. 34; vii. 75.
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to bring* or *conduct back, remove, draw back, withdraw.* **28.**
referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *to carry, bring, draw,* or *give back;* **referre pedem,** *to retreat.* **16.**
reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *to make anew, repair, restore, rebuild; to refresh, reinvigorate, reassure, recruit.* **11.**
refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus (re + frangō), *to break, break open; to destroy; to repress.* ii. 33, vii. 56.
refugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *to escape, flee away; to retreat, flee back.* v. 35, vii. 31.
Regīnus, ī, m. See **Antistius.**
regiō, ōnis, f., **(regō),** *course, direction; territory, region;* **e regiōne,** *opposite.* **41.**
rēgius, a, um, adj., **(rēx),** *kingly, royal, regal.* vii. 32.
rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to rule, reign, govern.* v. 25.
rēgnum, ī, n., *dominion, sovereignty; kingdom; royal power.* **19.**
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, *to govern, rule, direct, conduct.* iii. 13, vi. 17.
regredior, ī, gressus, dep., **(re + gradior),** *to return.* v. 44.
rēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (re + iaciō), *to hurl back, drive back, repel; to fling down, cast off, reject.* **6.**
relanguēscō, ere, languī, —, *to grow weak, languid; to become enfeebled.* **ii. 15.**
relātus, a, um. See **referō.**
relēgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to remove, send away.* v. 30.
relictus, a, um. See **relinquō.**

rēligiō, ōnis, f., *piety, religion, plighted faith; religious rites; superstition.* **5.**
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, (**re** + **linquō**), *to leave behind, abandon, leave.* **78.**
reliquus, a, um, adj., *remaining, the rest of; future, to come;* **reliquum, ī,** n., *the rest, remainder.* **173.**
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, —, *to continue, remain, last, endure.* **10.**
rēmex, igis, m., *a rower.* iii. 9.
Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between Mātrona (Marne) and Axona (Aisne). See **Iccius, Andecumborius.** Capital: **Durocortorum,** modern *Rheims.* ii. 3 *ff*, 6; iii. 11; v. 3, 24, 53 *f.*, 56; vi. 4, 12, 44; vii. 63, 90; viii. 6, 11. Their chieftain: **Vertiscus.**
rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**rēmus** + **agō**), *to row.* v. 8.
remigrō, āre, āvī, —, *to return, remove back.* iv. 4, 27.
reminīscor, ī, —, dep., *to remember.* i. 13.
remissus, a, um, partic. pass., (**remittō**), *remiss, relaxed, loose, slack.* v. 12.
remittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to hurl back, send back; to abate, slacken, relax, relieve.* **16.**
remollēscō, ere, —, —, *to become enervated.* iv. 2.
remōtus, a, um, partic. pass., (**removeō**), *distant, remote.* **4.**
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to withdraw, remove, take away.* **8.**
remūneror, ārī, ātus, dep., *to reward, remunerate.* i. 44.
rēmus, ī, m., *an oar.* **8.**
rēnō, ōnis, m., *a reindeer.* vi. 21.
renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to review, renew.* iii. 2, 20.
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to bring back word; to announce, report.* **9.**
repellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *to repel, repulse, drive back.* **10.**
repentē, adv., *suddenly.* **5.**
repentīnō, adv., *suddenly.* ii. 33.
repentīnus, a, um, adj., *unexpected, sudden.* **14.**
reperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *to discover, ascertain, find; to devise, invent.* **27.**
repetō, ere, īvī, ītus, *to claim, demand.* i. 30, 31.
repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *to furnish, refill, supply.* vii. 56.
reportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to carry* or *bring back, convey.* iv. 29, v. 23.
reposcō, ere, —, —, *to exact, demand back.* v. 30.
repraesentō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to perform immediately, do.* i. 40.
reprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, *to censure, rebuke, reprove.* **4.**
reprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, (**re** + **premō**), *to restrain, check, prevent.* iii. 14, vii. 8.
repudiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to refuse, reject, decline.* i. 40.
repūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to oppose, fight against, disagree with, be contrary to, be inconsistent; to stand opposed.* i. 19, iii. 4, vii. 42.
repulī. See **repellō.**
repulsus, a, um. See **repellō.**
requīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, (**re** + **quaerō**), *to seek again; to seek after, search for; to demand, require; to miss, look in vain for.* vi. 34, vii. 63.
rēs, reī, f., *a thing, affair, business, purpose, circumstance, event, fact.* **394.** **rēs pūblica,** *the republic, commonwealth, state; the public affairs.* **15.**
resarciō, īre, —, sartus, *to restore, repair.* vi. 1.
rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *to destroy, tear down.* **7.**
rescīscō, ere, īvī, ītus, *to learn, ascertain.* i. 28.
rescrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write again, transfer.* i. 42.
reservō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to retain, reserve, preserve.* **4.**

resideō, ēre, sēdi, —, (re + sedeō), *to rest, remain, abide; to be left.* vii. 77.
resīdō, ere, sēdī, —, (re + sīdō), *to settle, sit down, subside, grow calm.* vii. 64.
resistēns, entis, partic. pres., **(resistō),** *resolute, firm.* **4.**
resistō, ere, stitī, —, *to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain.* **21.**
respiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, (re + speciō), *to look back; to have a care for, be mindful of.* **4.**
respondeō, ēre, ī, spōnsus, *to reply, answer.* **16.**
respōnsum, ī, n., *a reply, answer.* **4.**
rēspūblica. See **rēs.**
respuō, ere, ī, —, *to spit out; to repel, reject, refuse.* i. 42.
restinguō, ere, stinxī, stinctus, *to quench, extinguish, put out.* vii. 24, 25.
restitī. See **resistō.**
restituō, ere, ī, ūtus, (re + statuō), *to replace, restore, reinstate; to deliver up, give up; to renew.* **7.**
retineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (re + teneō), *to keep back, detain, retain; to hinder, restrain, check, keep, hold fast, maintain.* **18.**
retrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *to draw* or *bring back; to recover.* v. 7.
retulī. See **referō.**
revellō, ere, vellī, vulsus, *to tear away, pluck away.* i. 52, vii. 73.
revertō, ere, tī, —, and **revertor, ī, sus,** dep. *to turn back, return.* **34.**
revinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctus, *to tie, fasten, bind.* **5.**
revocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to recall, call back.* **5.**
rēx, rēgis, m., *a king.* **14.**
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine,* the boundary line between Gallia and Germania; Caesar crossed it twice; (*a*) iv. 17, near the modern Neuwied; (*b*) vi. 9 *ff.*, near the modern Andernach. In the land of the Batavī it divides itself into *two* kills (multīs capitibus, iv. 10, 5, is wrong; Vergil Aen., viii. 727, calls the Rhēnus bicornis) of which the Vacalus (modern *Waal*), receives the Maas near the modern Workum. i. 1; ii. 4; iii. 11; iv. 10, 15; v. 3; vi. 9; vii. 65; viii. 13. **62.**
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone,* the boundary line between Allobrogēs and Helvētiī. i. 1, 2, 6, 8, 10 *ff.*, 33; iii. 1; vii. 65. **13.**
rīpa, ae, f., *the bank of a river.* **18.**
rīvus, ī, m., *a brook, stream.* v. 49, 50.
rōbur, oris, n., *hard oak; strength, power.* iii. 13.
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to ask, question; to request, solicit, inquire;* **rogāre mīlitēs sacramentō,** *to bind soldiers by an oath.* **9.**
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.* i. 31, vi. 12, vii. 90.
Rōmānus, a, um, adj., *Roman.* **172.**
Rōmānus, ī, m., *a Roman.*
Roscius, ī, m., *L.*, legate of Caesar, praetor urbānus in 49 B. C. v. 24, 50.
rōstrum, ī, n., *the beak* or *bill* of a bird; *the beak* of a ship. iii. 13, 14.
rota, ae, f., *a wheel.* i. 26, iv. 33.
rubus, ī, m., *a bramble-bush, bramble,* ii. 17.
Rūfus, ī, m. See **Sulpicius.**
rūmor, ōris, m., *report, rumor, talk.* **6.**
rūpēs, is, f., *a rock* or *cliff.* ii. 29.
rūrsus, adv., *again, anew; back, backwards.* **24.**
Rutēnī, ōrum, m., a tribe in Celtic Gaul. Capital: **Segodūnum** (modern *Rhodes*). i. 45, vii. 5, 75, 90.
Rutilus, ī, m. See **Semprōnius.**

S.

Sabīnus, ī, m. See **Titurius.**
Sabis, is, m., modern *Sambre,* empties into the Mosa. ii. 16, 18.

sacerdōs, ōtis, m. and f., *a priest* or *priestess.* vii. 33.
sacrāmentum, ī, n., *an oath.* vi. 1.
sacrificium, ī, n., *a sacrifice.* 5.
saepe, adv., *often, frequently.* 12.
saepenumerō, adv., *often, frequently, time and again.* 5.
saeviō, īre, iī, ītus, *to be cruel* or *fierce.* iii. 13.
sagitta, ae, f., *an arrow.* iv. 25, vii. 41, 81.
sagittārius, ī, m., *a bowman, archer.* 7.
sagulum, ī, n., *a small military cloak.* v. 42.
saltus, ūs, m., *a woodland pasture; a forest; a mountain-pass.* vi. 43, vii. 19.
salūs, ūtis, f., *security, safety; welfare, deliverance, prosperity.* 48.
Samarobrīva, ae, f., capital of the Ambiānī, *q. v.*, modern *Amiens.* v. 24, 47, 53.
senciō, īre, sānxī, sānctus, *to render sacred* or *inviolable; to appoint, establish, decree, ordain.* i. 30, vi. 20, vii. 2.
sānctus, a, um, adj., (**senciō**), *holy, sacred, inviolable.* iii. 9, vi. 23, vii. 66.
sanguis, inis, m., *blood.* vii. 20, 50.
sānitās, ātis, f., *health, soundness; good sense, discretion.* i. 42, vii. 42.
sānō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to cure, restore, heal, repair, allay; to obviate.* vii. 29.
Santonēs, um, Santonī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul on the north side of the Garumna. Capital: **Mediōlānum** = modern *Saintes.* i. 10, 11; iii. 11; vii. 75.
sānus, a, um, adj., *sensible, sound, sober, discreet.* v. 7.
sānxī. See **senciō.**
sapiō, ere, īvī, —, *to understand, know.* v. 30.
sarcina, ae, f., *a pack, bundle, load; baggage.* 4.
sarmentum, ī, n., *brushwood, twigs.* iii. 18.
satis, adv., *sufficiently, enough.* 24.
satisfaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; to apologize, ask pardon for.* 6.
satisfactiō, ōnis, f., *reparation, satisfaction, excuse, apology.* i. 41, vi. 9.
satus, a, um. See **serō.**
saucius, a, um, adj., *wounded.* iii. 4, v. 36.
saxum, i, n., *a rock, stone.* 7.
scāla, ae, f., *a scaling-ladder.* v. 43, vii. 81.
Scaldis, is, m., the modern *Schelde.* vi. 33. It is exceedingly probable that Caesar meant here the Sabis (modern *Sambre*), which empties into the Maas, near modern Namur.
scapha, ae, f., *a boat, skiff.* iv. 26.
scelerātus, a, um, adj., *accursed, impious, wicked, vicious.* vi. 13, 34.
scelus, eris, n., *an evil deed; crime, guilt, sin.* i. 14.
scienter, adv., *expertly, skilfully.* vii. 22.
scientia, ae, f., *skill, knowledge, science, experience.* 6.
scindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *to cut, tear, rend, split, divide; to destroy, demolish, break down.* iii. 5, v. 51.
sciō, īre, īvī or **iī, ītus,** *to know, understand, perceive.* 12.
scorpiō, ōnis, m., *a scorpion, a military engine* for throwing darts, stones, etc. vii. 25 (twice).
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scriptus, *to write.* 5.
scrobis, is, m. and f., *a ditch, pit, trench.* vii. 73 (twice), 82.
scūtum, ī, n., *a buckler, shield.* 10.
secō, āre, uī, tus, *to cut off, cut down; to mow.* vii. 14.
sēcrētō, adv., *apart, separately, secretly.* i. 18, 31.
sectiō, ōnis, f., *division, lot; spoils, booty.* ii. 33.
sector, ārī, ātus, dep., *to follow, pursue, hunt after, pursue eagerly.* vi. 35.
sectūra, ae, f., *a digging, cutting.* iii. 21.

secundum, prep with acc., *along, after, near; according to; close to, next.* **4.**
secundus, a, um, adj., (**sequor**), *next, following; successful, prosperous, favorable.* **18.**
secūris, is, f., (**secō**), *an axe.* vii. 77.
secus, adv., *otherwise, differently.* See **sētius.**
secūtus, a, um. See **sequor.**
sed, conj., *but, now.* **104.**
sēdecim, num. adj., *sixteen.* i. 18, 49.
sēdēs, is, f., *a seat; a home, dwelling-place, habitation.* **5.**
sēditiō, ōnis, f., *insurrection, sedition, dissension, civil discord.* vii. 28.
sēditiōsus, a, um, adj., *turbulent, seditious, factious.* i. 17.
Sedulius, ī, m., chieftain of the Lemovīcēs. vii. 88.
Sedūnī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the Alpēs, in the modern Wallis, where the town *Sitten* preserves the name. iii. 1, 2, 7.
Sedūsii, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe between Main and Neckar. i. 51.
seges, itis, f., *a cornfield; a crop.* vi. 36
Sēgnī, ōrum, m. pl, a Belgic tribe between Eburōnēs and Treverī. (Bourg-Sègne, a village near Givet, perhaps preserves the name.)
Segontiacī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the south of Britain (modern Hampshire and Berkshire).
Segovax, actis, m., a king of the Britons. v. 22.
Segūsiāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between Rhodanus (Rhone), Arar (Aisne), and Liger (Loire). Capital: **Lugdūnum** (modern *Lyon*), founded 44 B. C. i. 10; vii. 64, 75.
semel, num. adv., *once.* **i. 31.**
sementis, is, f., *a sowing.* i. 3.
sēmita, ae, f., *a footpath, path.* v. 19, vii. 8.
semper, adv., *ever, always.* **10.**
Semprōnius, ī, m., *M. Semprōnius Rutilus,* a general of Caesar's cavalry. vii. 90.
senātor, ōris, m., *a senator.* ii. 28.
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.* **3.**
senātūs cōnsultum, ī, n., *a decree of the senate.* i. 43.
senex, senis, adj., *old, aged.* **senex, senis**, m., *an old man.* i. 29.
sēnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *six each, six in six.* i. 15, vii. 75.
Senonēs, um, m. pl., a mighty and powerful tribe in Celtic Gaul between Loire and Marne. Town: **Vellaunodūnum.** Capital: **Agedincum** = modern *Sens.* ii. 2, v. 54, 56, vi. 2, *ff.*; vii. 4, 11, 34, 56, 58, 75, viii. 30. Their chieftains: **Moritasgus, Drappēs, Cavarīnus, Accō.**
sententia, ae, f., (**sentiō**), *a purpose, intention, design; a judgment, decision, sentence; a resolution.* **18.**
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to discern by the senses; to be sensible of, perceive, discover, observe; to imagine, suppose.* **12.**
sentis, is, m., *a bramble, briar.* ii. 17.
sēparātim, adv., *apart, separately.* i. 19, 29, vii. 36.
sēparātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**sēparō**), *distinct, separate.* iv. 1.
sēparō, āre, āvī, ātus, *separate, divide.* iv. 1, vii. 63.
sēpes, is, f., *a hedge, fence.* ii. 17, 22.
septem, num. adj., *seven.* iv. 23, v. 49.
septentriōnēs, um, m. pl., *the Great Bear, the Little Bear: Charles's Wain; the north; the North Pole.* **7.**
septimus, a, um, num. adj., *the seventh.* **14.**
septingentī, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* v. 13, vii. 51.
septuāgintā, num. adj., *seventy.* iv. 12.
sepultūra, ae, f., *the act of burying; a funeral, funeral rites, obsequies, burial.* i. 26.

Sēquana, ae, f., *the Seine.* i. 1, vii. 57, 58. **6.**

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul, between the Saône, Rhone, and Jura. Town: **Melodūnum.** Capital: **Vesontiō** = modern *Besançon.* i. 1 *ff.*, 3, 6, 8 *ff.*, 19, 31 *ff.*, 38, 40, 44, 48, 54; iv. 10; vi. 12; vii. 66 *f.*, 75, 90. See **Casticus.** Chieftain: **Catamantaloedēs.**

Sēquanus, a, um, adj., *Sequanian.* **40.**

sequor, ī, secūtus, dep., *to go, come,* or *follow after; to follow, attend, accompany; to pursue; to aim at, seek for.* **31.**

sermō, ōnis, m., *a discourse, talk, conversation.* v. 37, 41, vi. 13.

sērō, adv., *late, too late.* v. 29.

serō, ere, sēvī, satus, *to sow, plant.* v. 14.

Sertōrius, ī, m., *Q.*, propraetor in Spain in 82 B. C., assassinated 72 B. C. In the first Civil War he joined Marius' party. iii. 23.

servīlis, e, adj., *servile, of slaves.* i. 40, vi. 19.

serviō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to be a slave; to be subject to, devote one's self to, give heed to.* iv. 5, vii. 34.

servitūs, ūtis, f., *servitude, slavery.* **15.**

servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to keep, preserve, watch, guard; to observe.* **11.**

servus, ī, m., *a bondman, slave, servant.* **6.**

sēsquipedālis, e, adj., (**sesquī,** *half as much,* + **pēs**), *a foot and a half* in length, breadth, or diameter. iv. 17.

sētius, adv., (comp. of **secus**), *differently, less, otherwise.* **4.**

seu, conj., *whether.* **8.**

sevēritās, ātis, f., *severity, harshness, rigor.* vii. 4.

sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call off* or *aside; to draw aside.* v. 6.

sēvum, ī, n., *tallow, fat.* vii. 25.

sex, num. adj., *six.* **16.**

sexāgintā, num. adj., *sixty.* ii. 4.

sexcentī, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.* **8.**

sexdecim, num. adj., *sixteen.* vii. 16.

Sextius, ī, m. (1) *T.*, one of Caesar's legates, vi. 1; vii. 49, 51, 90; viii. 11. (2) *P. Sextius Baculus,* a centurion in Caesar's army. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38.

sī, conj., *whether; if.* **172.**

Sibuzātēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia, near the Pyrenees (modern *Saubusse,* between Dax and Bayonne).

sic, adv., *in this manner; thus.* **29.**

siccitās, ātis, f., *dryness, drought.* iv. 38, v. 24.

sīcut or **sīcutī,** adv., *as if, just as, as it were, like.* **sīcut, 6; sīcutī, 4.**

sīdus, eris, n., *star, constellation.* vi. 14.

signifer, erī, m., (**signum** + **ferō**), *a standard-bearer.* ii. 25.

significātiō, ōnis, f., *intimation, expression, declaration; sense, import.* **5.**

significō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**signum** + **faciō**), *to make a sign; to signify, indicate, show, intimate, declare.* **7.**

signum, ī, n., *a sign, mark; a watchword, signal; an ensign, a standard.* **46.**

Silānus, ī, m., *M.*, a legate of Caesar. vi. 1.

silentium, ī, n., *stillness, silence.* **10.**

Silius, ī, m., *T.*, a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.

silva, ae, f., *forest, wood.* **54.**

silvestris, e, adj., *wooded, woody.* **6.**

similis, e, adj., *resembling, like, similar.* **11.**

similitūdō, inis, f., *likeness, resemblance, affinity, similarity.* vii. 50, 53.

simul, adv., *together, at once, at the same time;* **simul — simul,** *partly — partly;* **simul āc,** *as soon as.* **22.**

simulācrum, ī, n., *a likeness* or *representation; a picture, image, effigy, figure.* vi. 16, 17.

simulātiō, ōnis, f., *pretence, disguise, counterfeiting, deceit, hypocrisy.* **7.**

simulō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to feign, pretend, counterfeit.* i. 44, iv. 4.
simultās, ātis, f., *enmity, hatred, jealousy, rivalry.* v. 44.
sin, conj., *but if; if however.* i. 13, v. 35.
sincērē, adv., *frankly, sincerely, candidly.* vii. 20.
sine, prep. with ablat., *without.* **41.**
singillātim, adv., *one by one, singly.* iii. 2, v. 4, 52.
singulāris, e, adj., *single, one only; extraordinary, excellent, remarkable, singular.* **8.**
singulī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *separate, single, individual, each, every.* **34.**
sinister, tra, trum, adj., *left, on the left; adverse, contrary; pernicious, bad.* **7.**
sinistrōrsus, adv., *towards the left hand; on the left.* v. 25.
sinō, ere, sīvī, situs, *to permit, allow, suffer; to give one leave.* iv. 2.
sīquandō, adv., *if ever.* iii. 12.
sīquis, sīqua. See **quis.**
sistō, ere, stitī, status, *to set, place; to stand still, stop.* See **circumsistō.**
situs, ūs, m., *position, situation, site.* **5.**
sīve, conj., *or, whether; if, either;* **sīve — sīve,** *whether — or.* **9.**
socer, erī, m., *a father-in-law.* i. 12.
societās, ātis, f., *a company, union, conjunction, alliance, league, confederacy.* vi. 12.
socius, a, um, *comrade, partner, associate.* **11.**
sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.* **14.**
sōlātium, ī, n., *comfort, consolation.* vii. 15.
soldūriī, ōrum, m. pl., *retainers* (Celtic word). iii. 22.
soleō, ēre, itus, semi-dep., *to be wont; to be accustomed.* vi. 15, vii. 35.
sōlitūdō, inis, f., *wilderness, desert; solitude.* iv. 18, vi. 23.
sollertia, ae, f., *adroitness, shrewdness; expertness, skill.* vii. 22.
sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to rouse, move, urge, induce, incite; to investigate.* **12.**
sollicitūdō, inis, f., *anxiety, disquiet, trouble, uneasiness.* v. 53, vii. 40.
solum, ī, n., *the soil, ground; foundation, bottom.* **4.**
sōlum, adv., *alone, only.* **12.**
sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone, only, single, sole.* **9.**
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *to untie, unbind, loose.* **5.**
sonitus, ūs, m., *a noise, sound.* vii. 60, 61.
Sontiātēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia (modern town *Sôs*, in the Département Lot et Garonne). iii. 20, 21. Chieftain: **Adiatunnus.**
sonus, ī, m., *noise, sound.* vii. 47.
soror, ōris, f., *a sister.* i. 18, 53.
sors, sortis, f., *chance, lot, fate, destiny.* i. 50, 53 (twice).
spatium, ī, n., *distance, space; an interval.* **43.**
speciēs, ēī, f., *a form, figure, fashion, shape, appearance; a spectacle, sight; pretence, semblance.* **12.**
spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to see, observe; to endeavor; to tend; to examine, prove; to look, face, lie towards; to expect, wait for.* **6.**
speculātor, ōris, m., *spy, scout.* ii. 11, v. 49.
speculātōrius, a, um, adj., *for scouting, of observation.* iv. 26.
speculor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to watch, observe, reconnoitre, wait for.* i. 47.
spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to trust, hope, expect.* **12.**
spēs, eī, f., *expectation, hope.* **52.**
spīritus, ūs, m., *spirit, breath; haughtiness, arrogance.* i. 33, ii. 4.
spoliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to spoil, strip, plunder, deprive.* v. 6, vii. 66.
sponte, ablat., *of one's own will, voluntarily.* **5.**
stabiliō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to fix, settle; to make firm.* vii. 73.

stabilitās, ātis, f., *stability, firmness, steadiness.* iv. 33.
statim, adv., *forthwith, immediately.* **9.**
statiō, ōnis, f., *a post, station; outpost, picket, guard, sentinel, sentry.* **11.**
statuō, ere, ī, ūtus, *to raise, erect, set up, place, station, establish; to decide, conclude.* **18.**
statūra, ae, f., *stature.* ii. 30, vi. 21.
status, ūs, m., *condition, state, posture.* vi. 12, vii. 54, 55.
stimulus, ī, m., *spur, goad; pointed stake.* vii. 73, 82.
stīpendiārius, a, um, adj., *tributary.* i. 30, 36, vii. 10.
stīpendium, ī, n., *tribute, tax.* **7.**
stīpes, itis, m., *post, log, stake.* vii. 73 (twice).
stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, stem, stalk, lineage.* vi. 34 (twice).
stō, āre, stetī, status, *to continue, stand; to persist, remain.* **4.**
strāmentum, ī, n., **(sternō),** *straw, thatch; covering, coverlet.* v. 43, vii. 45.
strepitus, ūs, m., *a din, noise, uproar, tumult.* ii. 11, iv. 33, vi. 7.
studeō, ēre, uī, —, *to pay attention to, cultivate, strive after, be eager for.* **16.**
studiōsē, adv., *zealously, eagerly, attentively.* vi. 28 (twice).
studium, ī, n., *zeal, eagerness; attachment, devotion; vocation; exertion.* **15.**
stultitia, ae, f., *foolishness, folly.* vii. 77.
sub, prep. with acc., *below, under, beneath; by, at the base of; about, towards, during, on, in; within.* **10.**
subāctus, a, um. See **subigō.**
subdolus, a, um, adj., *cunning, crafty.* vii. 31.
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *to withdraw, draw off, take away, remove; to draw up on the shore.* **6.**
subductiō, ōnis, f., *a hauling ashore, a drawing up.* v. 1.
subeō, īre, iī, itus, *to come* or *go under; to advance, proceed; to endure, encounter, undergo.* **7.**
subesse. See **subsum.**
subfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, *to dig under, undermine, dig below.* iv. 12.
subiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (sub + iaciō), *to throw under, place under, subject.* **8.**
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (sub + agō), *to force, compel, constrain, oblige; to drive; to subdue, reduce.* vii. 77.
subitō, adv., *quickly, suddenly.* **30.**
subitus, a, um, adj., **(subeō),** *unexpected, sudden.* iii 7, 8.
sublātus, a, um, partic. pass., **(tollō),** *proud, elated.* **11.**
sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to lift, support, lessen, diminish; to relieve, ease.* **9.**
sublica, ae, f., *a pile, stake.* iv. 17 (twice), vii. 35.
subluō, ere, —, lūtus, *to wash beneath; to flow near.* vii. 69.
subministrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to afford, furnish, supply.* i. 40, iii. 25, iv. 20.
submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to send after; to send, furnish, dispatch.* **9.**
submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to displace, remove, dislodge, drive back.* **5.**
subruō, ere, ī, tus, *to dig under, undermine; to pull down, demolish, overturn.* ii. 6, iv. 27.
subsequor, ī, secūtus, dep., *to follow after, follow immediately.* **15.**
subsidium, ī, n., *a reinforcement; help, defence, remedy.* **27.**
subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus, *to sink down, remain, stay behind.* vi. 36.
subsistō, ere, stitī, —, *to halt, stand still; to hold out, withstand.* i. 15, v. 10.
subsum, esse, —, —, *to be under; to be near.* **4.**
subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to remove, withdraw; to take away secretly.* i. 44, vii. 22.
subvēctiō, ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance.* vii. 10.

subvehō, ere, vēxi, vēctus, *to convey, carry* or *bring up.* i. 16.

subveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come up; to help, assist, aid, succor.* **4.**

succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, (sub + cēdō), *to go under; to go towards, approach; to come behind, follow after, succeed; to be successful; to prosper.* **14.**

succendō, ere, ī, cēnsus, *to kindle, set on fire, burn.* **5.**

successus, ūs, m., *approach, advance, success.* ii. 20

succīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (sub + caedō), *to cut off, mow, cut down.* iv. 19, 38, v. 9.

succumbō, ere, cubuī, —, (sub + cumbō), *to sink under, yield, surrender, succumb, be overcome.* vii. 86.

succurrō, ere, currī, cursus, (sub + currō), *to run to one's assistance; to help, aid, succor, assist.* v. 44, vii. 80.

sudis, is, f., *a pile, stake.* **4.**

sūdor, ōris, m., *toil, sweat.* vii. 8.

Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl., collective name for the Germanic tribes between Thüringerwald, Böhmerwald, and Schwarzwald, in the modern Sachsen-Meiningen, Coburg, Bavaria, and Würtemberg (modern name: English, *Suebia*; and German, *Schwaben*). i. 37, 51, 53, 54; iv. 1 *ff.*, 7, 8, 16, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29. Chieftains: **Cimberius, Ariovistus.**

Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between the modern Marne and Isère. Capital: **Noviodūnum** = modern *Soissons.* ii. 3 *f.*, 12 *f.*; viii. 6. Chieftains: **Galba, Divitiacus.**

sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (sub + faciō) *to give, supply; to be sufficient, supplied with; to hold out.* vii. 20.

suffrāgium, ī, n., **(sub + frangō),** *a vote, voice, suffrage.* vi. 13, vii. 63.

Sugambrī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe from the river Sieg to the river Lippe. iv. 16, 18; vi. 35.

suggestus, ūs, m., **(suggerō),** *a raised place; a stage, platform, tribunal.* vi. 3.

suī, sibi, sē, refl. pron., *of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.* **639.**

Sulla, ae, m., *L. Cornēlius,* Marius' adversary, Dictator, died 78 B. C. i. 21.

Sulpicius, ī, m. (1) *P. Sulpicius Rūfus,* a legate of Caesar. iv. 22; vii. 90. (2) *S. Sulpicius Galba,* see **Galba (1).**

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *to be, exist, remain, continue; to happen, take place.* **999.**

summa, ae, f., *the main thing, chief point; sum, amount, sum total, aggregate, whole.* **18.**

summus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **superus**), *the highest, greatest, very great; most important, consummate; the summit of, surface of.* **84.**

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *to take up* or *away; to arrogate, assume, claim, appropriate; to undertake, begin.* **8.**

sūmptuōsus, a, um, adj., *costly, expensive.* vi. 19.

sūmptus, ūs, m., **(sūmō),** *cost, expense, charge.* i. 18.

sūmptus, a, um. See **sūmō.**

superbē, adv., *haughtily, proudly, insolently, arrogantly.* i. 31.

superfuī. See **supersum.**

superior, us, adj., (comp. of **superus**), *higher, upper; superior, greater, stronger, more powerful; past, preceding.* **64.**

superō, āre, āvī, ātus, (superus), *to excel, surpass, overcome, outstrip, subdue, conquer; to remain, survive.* **26.**

supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *to abstain, forbear, restrain from; to omit, pass, desist from.* ii. 8.

supersum, esse, fuī, —, *to be left, remain, exist still, survive.* **7.**

superus, a, um, adj., *above, upper, over.* See **superior.**

suppetō, ere, īvī, ītus, (sub + petō), *to be present, be in store, be at hand.* **5.**

supplēmentum, ī, n., *a filling up, supply, recruiting, reinforcements, supplies.* vii. 7, 9, 57.
supplex, icis, adj., **(sub + plicō),** *humble, submissive, suppliant, supplicant.* ii. 28.
supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *a prayer, supplication; a thanksgiving; a day set apart for prayer.* ii. 35, iii. 38, vii. 90.
suppliciter, adv., *humbly, submissively, suppliantly.* i. 27.
supplicium, ī, n., **(supplex),** *penalty, punishment.* 12.
supportō, āre, āvī, —, (sub + portō), *to carry, bring, convey up* or *to.* 5.
suprā, prep. with acc., and adv., *over, on the top, above; formerly, before, previously.* 26.
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (sub + capiō), *to take up, lift up; to undertake, assume, enter upon; to undergo, suffer: to engage in, begin.* 11.
suspectus, a, um, partic. pass., **(suspiciō),** *mistrusted, suspected, suspicious.* v. 54.
suspicātus, a, um. See **suspicor.**
suspīciō, ōnis, f., *mistrust, distrust, suspicion.* 11.
suspicor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to mistrust; to surmise, suppose, believe, apprehend.* 6.
sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus, (sustineō), *to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer.* 4.
sustineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (sub + teneō), *to hold up, keep up, support, sustain, restrain, check: to undergo, withstand, endure, make a stand, hold out.* 38.
suus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *one's own; belonging* or *relating to him, her, it,* or *them.* 357.

T.

T., for *Titus.*
tabernāculum, ī, n., *a tent.* i. 39, vi. 38, vii. 46.
tabula, ae, f., *a plank, board; a picture, painting; a tablet, register.* i. 29.
tabulātum, ī, n., *a story in a building; a boarded floor.* vi. 29.
taceō, ēre, uī, itus, *to be silent, say nothing; to keep secret, disregard.* i. 17 (twice).
tacitus, a, um, adj., *silent.* i. 32.
tālea, ae, f., *staff, stick; rod, bar.* v. 12, vii. 73
tālis, e, adj., *such, of this* or *that kind, such like.* 5.
tam, adv., *so much, so very, so.* 14.
tamen, conj., *nevertheless, yet, however, at least.* 76.
Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames* in England. v. 11, 18.
tametsī, conj., **(tamen + etsī),** *though, although, notwithstanding.* 4.
tandem, adv., *at last, at length, finally, however, yet, still.* 6.
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus, *to border upon, touch.* v. 3.
tantopere, adv., *so greatly, so much.* i. 31.
tantulus, a, um, adj. dim., **(tantus),** *so little, so small, so trifling.* 4.
tantum, adv., *so far, so much; only, alone, merely;* **nōn tantum — sed etiam,** *not only — but also.* 5.
tantummodo, adv., *merely, only.* iii. 5.
tantundem, adv., *just as far, so far, just as much.* vii. 72.
tantus, a, um, adj., *so great, so much, such; so little, so small;* **quantō — tantō,** *the — the.* 92.
Tarbellī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia, between the Pyrenees and the river Aturis (*Adour*). iii. 27.
tardē, adv., *slowly, tardily.* iv. 23.
tardō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to hinder, retard, impede, delay.* 9.
tardus, a, um, adj., *tardy, slow.* ii. 25.
Tarusātēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia, in the modern Département des Landes. Name preserved in modern town *Tartas* on the Adour. iii. 23, 29.

Tasgĕtius, ī, m., chieftain of the Carnūtēs. v. 25, 29.
taurus, ī, m., *a bull.* vi. 28.
Taximagulus, ī, m., chieftain of the Britons. v. 22.
taxus, ī, f., *the yew-tree.* vi. 31.
Tectosagēs, um, m. pl. See **Volcae**.
tēctum, ī, n., (**tegō**), *the covering* or *roof of a house; a house, dwelling.* i. 36, vii. 66.
tēctus, a, um. See **tegō**.
tegimentum, ī, n., *a covering.* ii. 21, vi. 21.
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover, conceal, disguise; to protect, defend.* **5.**
tēlum, ī, n., *a weapon; a javelin, dart, spear.* **40.**
temerārius, a, um, adj., *inconsiderate, rash, imprudent.* i. 31, vi. 20.
temerē, adv., *without reason, thoughtlessly, at random; readily, easily.* **4.**
temeritās, ātis, f., *inconsiderateness, rashness, indiscretion.* **5.**
tēmō, ōnis, m., *the beam, pole,* or *tongue* of a carriage, etc. iv. 33.
temperantia, ae, f., *moderation, temperance, abstinence, self-control.* i. 19.
temperātus, a, um, partic. pass., (**temperō**), *temperate, moderate, sober, mild.* v. 12.
temperō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**tempus**), *to temper, moderate, restrain; to forbear, refrain from, abstain.* i. 7, 33.
tempestās, ātis, f., (**tempus**), *time; a period, season; weather; storm, tempest.* **18.**
temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to feel, examine; to try, attempt, put to the test, prove, tamper with, sound; to incite, urge.*
tempus, oris, n., *season; time.* **111.**
Tencterī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 1, 4, 16, 18, v. 55, vi. 35.
tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus or **tēnsus,** *to stretch, stretch out; to go, advance; to encamp, tent.* For transfer in meaning see under **contendō. 4.**
tenebrae, ārum, f. pl., *darkness.* vii. 81.
teneō, ēre, uī, —, *to hold, hold fast; to keep, have, occupy, possess; to continue, keep on; to defend; to keep back, detain.* **50.**
tener, era, erum, adj., *tender, soft; young.* ii. 17.
tenuis, e, adj., *slender, thin; mean, low, poor; feeble, delicate.* v. 40, vi. 35.
tenuitās, ātis, f., *fineness, thinness; poverty.* vii. 17.
tenuiter, adv., *thinly, slightly.* iii. 13.
ter, num. adv., *three times.* i. 53.
teres, etis, adj., (**terō**), *slender, smooth; rounded, long.* vii. 73.
Tergestīnī, ōrum, m. pl., *the inhabitants of Tergeste* (modern *Triest*). viii. 24.
tergum, ī, n., *the back* of men or animals; *the rear;* **ab tergō,** *in the rear;* **post tergum,** *in the rear.* **12.**
ternī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *three each, every three, three.* iii. 15, vii. 73, 75.
terra, ae, f., *the earth; ground, land, district; a region;* **orbis terrārum,** *the earth, the world.* **14.**
Terrasidius, ī, m., a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.
terrēnus, a, um, adj., (**terra**), *earthy, of the earth.* i. 43.
terreō, ēre, uī, itus, *to frighten, alarm, terrify; to deter.* **4.**
territō, āre, —, —, *to frighten, terrify, affright.* **4.**
terror, ōris, m., *fear, terror, affright.* **5.**
tertius, a, um, num. adj., (**ter**), *third, the third.* **34.**
testāmentum, ī, n., *a will.* i. 39.
testimōnium, ī, n., (**testis**), *testimony, proof, evidence.* **4.**
testis, is, m. and f., *a witness.* **4.**
testūdō, inis, *a tortoise; a wooden covering* or *shed,* under which the besiegers stood and applied the battering-ram; see p. 48; *a shelter of shields.* **6.**

Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobrogēs. vii. 31, 46.

Teutonī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe on the shores of the East Sea (Ost See), who united with the Cimbrī. They invaded Italy in 113 B. C., but were defeated by Marius in 102 B. C. near Aquae Sextiae. i. 33, 40, ii. 4, 29. Gen. plur. **Teutonum,** vii. 77.

tēxī. See **tegō.**

tignum, ī, n., *a log, stick, beam.* iv. 17 (twice).

Tigurīnī, ōrum, m. pl., one of the four Helvetian clans in the modern cantons Freiburg and Waadt. i. 12; **pāgus Tigurīnus,** i. 12.

timeō, ēre, uī, —, *to fear, be afraid of; to dread, fear for.* **16.**

timidē, adv., *fearfully, timidly.* iii. 25, v. 33.

timidus, a, um, adj., *fearful, cowardly, afraid, timid.* i. 39, iii. 24, vi. 40.

timor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* **34.**

Titūrius, ī, m., *Q. Titūrius Sabīnus,* one of Caesar's legates. ii. 5, 9, 10; iii. 11, 17 *ff.*; iv. 22, 38; v. 24, 26 *ff.*, 36 *ff.*; vi 1, 32, 37.

tolerō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to bear, bear patiently; to support, tolerate, endure; to nourish, maintain; to hold, keep.* **4.**

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *to raise, lift up, set up, send up; to carry off, remove; to kill, destroy, break off.* **20.**

Tolōsa, ae, f., capital of the Volcae Tectosagēs in Gallia Provincia, the modern *Toulouse.* iii. 20.

Tolōsātēs, ium, m. pl, *the inhabitants of Tolōsa, q. v.* i. 10, vii. 7.

tormentum, ī, n., (**torqueō**), *a hurling-engine* for throwing stones, darts, etc.; *a cord, rope; torture, torment.* **8.**

torreō, ēre, uī, tostus, *to dry, roast, scorch, bake, burn, parch.* v. 43.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.* **7.**

totidem, indecl. adj., *just as many, as many.* **7.**

tōtus, a, um, gen. **tōtius,** adj., *all, the whole, total, the entire.* **63.**

trabs, trabis, f., *rafter, beam.* **6.**

tractus, a, um. See **trahō.**

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, (**trāns + dō**), *to give, consign, deliver; to pass from hand to hand; to surrender; to transmit; to commend, intrust.* **28.**

trādūcō or **trānsdūco, ere, dūxī, ductus,** *to carry* or *bring over, transport, transfer, lead, convey.* **32.**

trāgula, ae, f., *a dart, javelin.* **4.**

trahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, *to drag along, drag away; to protract, put off, detain, spin out.* i. 53, vi. 38.

trāiciō. See **trānsiciō.**

trāiectus, ūs, m., (**trāiciō**), *crossing over; a passage.* iv. 21, v. 2.

trānō, āre, āvī, —, (**trāns + nō**), *to swim across* or *over.* i. 53.

tranquillitās, ātis, f., *a calm; stillness, calmness, rest, quiet, tranquillity.* iii. 15, v. 28.

trāns, prep. with acc, *across, over, beyond.* **23.**

trānsalpīnus, a, um, adj., *transalpine, beyond the Alps.* **trānsalpīna Gallia,** f., *transalpine Gaul.* vii. 1, 6.

trānscendō, ere, ī, —, (**trāns + scandō**), *to climb* or *mount over, pass, surmount, cross.* iii. 15, vii. 70.

trānseō, īre, iī or **īvī, itus,** *to go, cross,* or *pass over; to elapse, pass away.* **64.**

trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to carry* or *bring over; to transport, transfer.* vi. 3, 13; vii. 8.

trānsfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, *to pierce* or *thrust through; to pierce, transfix.* i. 25, v. 44, vii. 62.

trānsfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, *to thrust through, pierce, stab through; to transfix.* vii. 82.

trānsgredior, ī, gressus, dep., (**trāns + gradior**), *to go* or *pass over; to cross.* ii. 19, vii. 25, 46.

trānsitus, ūs, m., (**trānseō**), *a passing* or *going over; crossing, passage.* v. 55, vi. 7, vii. 57.

trānsiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (**trāns** + **iaciō**), *to throw* or *cast over; to transport across; to thrust* or *pierce through, transfix.* **4.**

trānslātus, a, um. See **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, a, um, adj, *beyond the sea; foreign; transmarine.* vi. 24.

trānsmissus, ūs, m., *a passage.* v. 2, 13.

trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *to send over, transmit.* vii. 61.

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to carry over, convey, transport.* 10.

trānsrhēnānus, a, um, adj., *across the Rhine.* iv. 16, v. 2, vi. 5. **trānsrhēnānī, ōrum,** m. pl., *the tribes on the left side of the Rhine.* iv. 16, vi. 5; **Trānsrhēnānī Germānī,** v. 2.

trānstrum, ī, n., *a cross-beam.* iii. 13.

trānsversus, a, um, adj., (**trāns** + **vertō**), *lying across, crosswise, athwart, oblique.* ii. 8.

Trebius, ī, m., *M. Trebius Gallus,* military tribune. iii. 7, 8.

Trebōnius, ī, m., *C.* (1) A Roman knight. vi. 40. (2) a legate of Caesar. v. 17, 24; vi. 33; vii. 11, 81; viii. 6, 11, 14, 46, 54.

trecentī, ae, a, num. adj., (**trēs** + **centum**), *three hundred.* iv. 37, v. 9, vi. 36.

tredecim, num. adj., *thirteen.* vii 51.

trepidō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to hurry with alarm; to be in a state of trepidation and alarm; to run up and down in fear and confusion; to hasten about; to be alarmed, agitated.* v. 33, vi. 37.

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.* **36.**

Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Germanic origin in Celtic Gaul on both sides of the Mosel. Capital: **Augusta Trēverōrum** = modern *Trier.* See **Nasua.** i. 37; iii. 11, iv. 6, 10; v 2 *ff.*, 24, 26, 47, 53; vi. 2 *f.*, 5 *ff.*, 29, 32, 44; vii. 63; viii. 25, 45, 52; **equitēs Trēverī,** ii. 24. Their chieftains: **Indutiomārus, Cingetorix.**

Trēvir, irī, m., *a Trevirian.* **38.**

Tribocī, ōrum, or **Tribocēs, um,** m. pl., a German tribe on both sides of the Rhine about the modern Strassburg. i. **51**; iv. 10.

tribūnus, ī, m., (**tribus**), *a tribune.* **tribūnus mīlitum,** *a tribune of the soldiers, an officer of the army;* **each** legion had six. **20.**

tribuō, ere, ī, ūtus, *to assign, distribute, give; to impute, attribute; to grant, allow.* 7.

tribūtum, ī, n., (**tribuō**), *tribute, impost, tax.* vi. 13, 14.

trīduum, ī, n., *three days.* **10.**

triennium, ī, n., *three years.* iv. 4.

trīgintā, num. adj., *thirty.* vi. 35.

trīnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *three each, every three, three.* **4.**

Trīnobantēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in the south of Britain. Capital: **Camalodūnum** = modern *Colchester.* v. 20 *ff.*

tripartītō, adv., *in three parts, in three divisions.* **4.**

triplex, icis, adj., (**trēs** + **plicō**), *triple, three, threefold.* **4.**

triquetrus, a, um, adj., *triangular, three-cornered.* v. 13.

tristis, e, adj., *sorrowful, sad.* i. 32.

trīstitia, ae, f., *sadness, sorrow.* i. 32.

truncus, ī, m., *the trunk* or *stock of a tree.* iv. 17, vii. 73.

tū, tuī, pers. pron., m. and f., *you, thou.* v. 30 (twice).

tuba, ae, f., *a trumpet.* ii. 20, vii. 47, 81.

tueor, ērī, tuitus, or **tūtus,** *to behold, look at, watch, guard, defend protect; to support, keep, maintain.* **8.**

tulī. See **ferō.**

Tulingī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe in the southern part of the modern Baden i. 5, 25, 28, 29.

Tullius, ī, m. See **Cicero.**

Tullus, ī, m. See **Volcatius**.
tum, adv., *at that time, then.* **48.**
tumultuor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to make a disturbance, raise a tumult; to be in confusion.* vii. 61.
tumultuōsē, adv., *tumultuously.* vii. 45.
tumultus, ūs, m., *a tumult, broil, disturbance, uproar; sedition, mutiny, insurrection.* **7.**
tumulus, ī, m., (**tumeō**), *a hillock, hill, mound.* **6.**
tunc, adv., *at that time, then.* v. 41.
turma, ae, f., *a squadron of thirty horsemen.* **5.**
Turonēs, um, or **Turonī, ōrum**, m. pl., a Celtic tribe on both sides of the Liger (Loire). Capital: **Caesarodūnum** = modern *Tours.*
turpis, e, adj., *ugly, deformed, unseemly: dishonorable, infamous, scandalous.* **6.**
turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, basely, shamefully.* vii. 20 (twice), 80.
turpitūdō, inis, f., *dishonor, shame, disgrace.* ii. 27.
turris, is, f., *a tower.* **29.**
tūtō, adv., *safely, securely, without danger.* iii. 13, 24, vii. 36.
tūtus, a, um, adj., (**tueor**), *secure, safe, out of danger, protected.* **9.**
tuus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *thy, thine, of thee; yours, your, of you.* **v. 44.**

U.

ubi, adv., *where, when.* **58.**
ubicumque, adv., *wherever.* vii. 3.
Ubiī, ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe on the right side of the Rhine; later under Augustus they emigrated to the left side. In 50 B. C. their capital received the name **Colōnia Agrippīna** = modern *Cöln.* i. 54; iv. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19; vi. 9 *f.*, 29.
ubīque, adv., *everywhere; wherever; anywhere.* iii. 16.
ulcīscor, ī, ultus, dep., *to avenge, revenge.* **5.**
ūllus, a, um, gen. **ūllīus**, adj., *any, any one.* **25.**
ūlterior, us, gen. **ōris**, comp. adj., *farther, on the farther side; more distant, more remote.* **8.**
ūltimus, a, um, adj., (sup. of **ūlterior**), *the most distant, last, the most remote, farthest.* **5.**
ūltrā, prep and adv., *beyond, past, farther.* i. 48, 49.
ūltrō, adv., *beyond; on both sides, to and fro; moreover, besides, further; actually, voluntarily, spontaneously.* **11.**
ultus, a, um. See **ulcīscor.**
ululātus, ūs, m., *a yelling, howling, shout.* v. 37, vii. 80.
umquam, adv., *ever, at any time.* **4.**
ūnā, adv., *together; at the same time, along with.* **31.**
unde, adv., *whence, from which, from whom.* **10.**
ūndecim, num. adj., *eleven.* vii. 69, 87.
ūndecimus, a, um, num. adj., *the eleventh.* ii. 23, v. 46.
undique, adv., *from all parts, from every part; on all sides, everywhere.* **26.**
Unellī, ōrum, m. pl. See **Venellī.**
ūniversus, a, um, adj., *whole, entire; all together.* **9.**
ūnus, a, um, gen. **ūnīus**, num. adj., *one, single, one alone, one only; the same, one and the same.* **115.**
urbānus, a, um, adj., *of a city; of the city* (Rome). vii. 1, 6.
urbs, urbis, f., *a city; the city* (Rome). **9.**
urgeō, ēre, ursī, —, *to press upon, urge, drive, impel; to press hard, weigh down, oppress.* ii. 25, 26.
ūrus, ī, m., *a kind of ox.* vi. 28.
Usipetēs, um, m. pl., a German tribe, driven out of their seats by the Suēbī. They settled near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; vi. 35.

ūsitātus, a, um, adj., *usual, accustomed, ordinary, common, customary.* vii. 22.

usque, adv., *even, quite, as far as;* with **eō,** *to such a degree.* **10.**

ūsus, a, um. See **ūtor.**

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, practice, exercise; skill; advantage, benefit, profit; occasion; necessity, need;* **ūsū venire,** *to happen, occur.* **34.**

ut or **utī,** conj. and adv., *that; so that, in order that; so as to, to; as; though, although; that not* (after verbs of fearing). **ut, 380; utī, 56.**

uter, tra, trum, gen. **utrīus,** adj., *which, which of the two.* **4.**

uterque, traque, trumque, gen. **utrīusque,** adj., *both, each.* **36.**

utī. See **ut.**

ūtilis, e, adj., (**ūtor**), *useful, profitable, advantageous.* iv. 7, vii. 20, 76.

ūtilitās, ātis, f., *usefulness, profit, advantage.* iv. 19, vii. 23.

ūtor, ī, ūsus, dep., *to use, make use of, enjoy; to exercise, practise; to employ; to show; to manage.* **52.**

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.* **5.**

utrum, conj., *whether,* in indirect questions; in double questions **an** or **necne** follows. i. 40, 50, 53.

Uxellodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Cadurcī on an isolated steep rock near the river Oltis (modern *Lot*).

uxor, ōris, f., *a wife.* **9.**

V

Vacalus (or **Vahalis**), **is,** m., the western kill of the Rhēnus, Rhine, *q. v.*, modern name *Waal.* iv. 10.

vacātiō, ōnis, f., (**vacō**), *exemption, respite, immunity, freedom.* vi. 14.

vacō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to be empty, free from, without, vacant, without a possessor.* **4.**

vacuus, a, um, adj., *free from; empty; destitute; vacant.* **5.**

vadum, ī, n., *a ford, a shallow place.* **13.**

vāgina, ae, f., *scabbard, sheath.* v. 44.

vagor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to wander about, roam, ramble.* **9.**

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *to enjoy health; to be powerful, strong; to have interest, weight,* or *influence; to have force.* **13.**

Valērius, ī, m. (1) *C. Flaccus,* propraetor in Gaul in 83 B. C. i. 47. (2) *L. Praecōnius,* legate in Gaul before the time of Caesar. iii. 20 (3) *C. Cabūrus,* a Celt honored with the rights of a Roman citizen i. 47; vii. 65. His sons (4) *C. Procillus.* i. 19, 47, 53; and (5) *C. Donotaurus.* vii. 65.

Valetiacus, ī, m., brother of the Haeduan Cotus. vii. 32.

valētūdō, inis, f., (**valeō**), *good health; ill health, disease.* v. 40, vii. 78.

vallis or **vallēs, is,** f., *a valley.* **9.**

vāllum, ī, n., (**vāllus**), *a rampart set with stakes* or *palisades; intrenchments, earthworks.* **35.**

vāllus, ī, m., *a stake, palisade.* See **vāllum.**

Vangionēs, um, m pl, a German tribe on the left side of the Rhine near the modern Worms. i. 51.

varietās, ātis, f., *variety,* in respect to colors; *variety, diversity.* vi. 27, vii. 23.

varius, a, um, adj., *variegated, changing, changeable; different.* ii. 22, vii. 77.

Vārus, ī, m. See **Atius.**

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to lay waste, ravage, desolate, devastate.* **10.**

vāstus, a, um, adj., *vast, huge, enormous, immense.* iii. 9, 12.

vāticinātiō, ōnis, f., *a foretelling, prophecy, divination.* i. 50.

Vatīnius, ī, m., *T.*, legate of Caesar. viii. 46.

ve, enclit. conj., = **vel,** *or; either.* See **vel.**

vēctīgal, ālis, n., *a tax, impost, duty; revenue.* i. 18, 36, v. 22.
vēctīgālis, e, adj, *tributary.* iii. 8, iv. 3.
vēctōrius, a, um, adj. (**vehō**), *for carrying* or *transportation.* v. 8.
vehementer, adv., *exceedingly, eagerly, impetuously, ardently, vehemently, strongly.* 9.
vehō, ere, vēxī, vēctus, *to bear, carry, convey.* i. 43.
vel, conj., *or, even;* **vel — vel**, *either — or.* 12.
Velānius, ī, m., *Q.*, military tribune. iii. 7.
Veliocassī, ōrum, or **Veliocassēs, ium**, m. pl., a tribe on the right side of the Sēquana (Seine). Capital: **Rotomagus** = modern *Rouen* (Normandie). ii. 4, vii. 75, viii. 7.
Vellaunodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Senonēs between Agedincum and Cenabum. vii. 11, 14.
Vellāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the Cévennes. vii. 75.
vēlōcitās, ātis, f., *fleetness, swiftness, velocity, speed, rapidity.* vi. 28.
vēlōciter, adv., *swiftly, rapidly, quickly, speedily.* v. 35.
vēlōx, ōcis, adj., *quick, swift, fleet, rapid, speedy.* i. 48.
vēlum, ī, n., *a sail.* iii. 13 (twice), 14.
velut, adv., *as, like as, just as.* i. 32.
vēnātiō, ōnis, f., *the chase, hunting.* iv. 1, vi. 21, 28.
vēnātor, ōris, m., *a hunter.* vi. 27.
vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, (**vēnum** + **dō**), *to sell.* ii. 33, iii. 16, iv. 2.
Venellī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the northwest of the modern Normandie. ii 34; iii. 11, 17; vii. 75. (**Cīvitās Aremorica.**) Their chieftain: **Viridovix**, *q. v.*
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Bretagne. Capital: **Venetae** = modern *Vannes.* ii. 34, iii. 7 *ff.*, 11, 16 *ff.*; iv. 21, vii. 75. (**Cīvitās Aremorica.**)
Venetia, ae, f., *the land of the Veneti, q. v.* iii. 9.
Veneticus, a, um, adj., *of the Venetian, Venetian.* iii. 18, iv. 21.
venia, ae, f., *indulgence, favor, forgiveness, pardon, forbearance.* vi. 4, vii. 15.
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come, arrive.* 133.
ventitō, āre, āvī, —, *to resort; to come often.* iv. 3, 32, v. 27.
ventus, ī, m., *the wind.* 11.
vēr, vēris, n., *the spring.* vi. 3.
Veragrī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe near the union of Dranse and Rhone. iii. 1, 2. Town: **Octodūrus.**
Verbigēnus pāgus, m., one of the four Helvetian clans, probably between the Rhine and Jura. i. 27.
verbum, ī, n., *a word, expression, remark; saying.* 4.
Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., an Arvernian, cousin of Vercingetorix. vii. 76, 83, 85, 88.
Vercingetorix, igis, m., son of Celtillus, an Arvernian, chieftain of the Gauls. vii. 4, 8, 9, 12, 14.
vereor, ērī, itus, dep., *to fear.* 25.
vergō, ere, —, —, *to lie; to face; to incline.* 4.
vergobretus, ī, m., the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans. i. 16.
vērisimilis, e, adj, (**vērus** + **similis**), *likely, probable.* See **vērum.**
veritus, a, um. See **vereor.**
vērō, adv., (**vērus**), *indeed, in truth, assuredly.* 24.
versō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**vertō**), *to turn often, twist, change; to agitate, exercise; to employ; to exert; to occupy; to be busy.* v. 44.
versor, ārī, ātus, pass., *to remain, dwell, stay; to be engaged in, busy one's self with; to be associated with; to occupy.* 11.

versus, adv. and prep., (**vertō**), *towards*. **5.**
versus, ūs, m., (**vertō**), *a line, verse*. vi. 14.
Verticō, ōnis, m., a Nervian. v. 45, 49.
Vertiscus, ī, m., chieftain of the Rēmi. viii. 12.
vertō, ere, ī, versus, *to turn, turn round; to alter, change, transform*. **6.**
Verucloetius, ī, m., ambassador of the Helvetians. i. 7.
vērum, ī, n., *the truth*. **4.**
vērus, a, um, adj., *real; true; reasonable; right*. See **vērum**.
verūtum, ī, n., *a javelin, dart*. v. 44 (twice).
Vesontiō, ōnis, m., capital of the Sēquani, modern *Besançon*. i. 38, 39.
vesper, eris and **erī**, m., *evening, the evening star*. **5.**
vester, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., *yours, your; of you, of yours*. **5.**
vestīgium, ī, n., *the print of a footstep; a track, trace; a place, spot; an instant, a moment*; **ē vestīgiō**, *immediately, on the spot*. **4.**
vestiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *to attire, clothe, cover, array*. v. 14, vii. 23, 31.
vestis, is, f., *clothing, garment*. vii. 47.
vestītus, ūs, m., *dress, clothing*. iv. 1, vii. 88.
veterānus, a, um, adj., (**vetus**), *veteran, old*. i. 24.
vetō, āre, uī, itus, *to forbid, prevent, prohibit*. ii. 20, v. 9, vii. 33.
vetus, eris, adj., *old, former, ancient*. **12.**
vēxillum, ī, n., (**vehō**), *a military ensign, standard, banner, flag*. A red cavalry-flag displayed from the general's tent as a signal for action. See illustration, p. 33. ii. 20, vi. 36, 40.
vēxō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to harass, distress, annoy, molest, trouble, agitate*. **4.**
via, ae, f., *a road, way, passage*. **20.**
viātor, ōris, m., *a traveller*. iv. 5.
vicēsimus, a, um, num. adj., *the twentieth*. vi. 21.
vīcī. See **vincō**.
viciēs, num. adj., *twenty times*. v. 13.
vīcīnitās, ātis, f., *neighborhood, vicinity; the neighbors*. vi. 34.
vicis, (gen.), f., *succession, change, alternation*; **in vicem**, *by turns, alternately; mutually*. iv. 1, vii. 85.
victima, ae, f., *a victim, sacrifice*. vi. 16.
victor, ōris, m., *a conqueror*; adj., *victorious*. **9.**
victōria, ae, f., *victory*. **9.**
victus, a, um. See vincō.
vīctus, ūs, m., (**vīvō**), *sustenance, food, provisions; mode of living*. **4.**
vīcus, ī, m., *a village, hamlet*. **18.**
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see, behold, observe, perceive*; **videor, ērī, vīsus**, pass., *to seem, appear; to seem good* or *fit*. **144.**
Vidomarus, ī, m., a Haeduan. vii. 38 *ff.*, 54, 55, 63, 76.
Vienna, ae, f., capital of the Allobroges in Gallia Provincia, modern *Vienne*. vii. 9.
vigilia, ae, f., *a watching, being awake; guard, watch; the watch, sentinels*. A watch among the Romans was equal to one fourth of the night. **19.**
vīgintī, num. adj., *twenty*. i. 31, iv. 38.
vīmen, inis, n., *a twig, osier*. ii. 33, vi. 16, vii. 73.
vinciō, īre, nxī, nctus, *to bind, fasten*. i. 53.
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *to conquer, overcome, subdue, vanquish, prevail, succeed*. **18.**
vinctus, a, um. See **vinciō**.
vinculum, ī, n., (**vinciō**), *a fetter, chain, bond*; **in vincula**, *into prison*. **4.**
vindicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to lay claim to, maintain, assert; to liberate, rescue, free; to revenge, punish, avenge*. iii. 16, vii. 1, 76.

vīnea, ae, f., *a shed,* built like an arbor, under which soldiers assailed the walls of towns. **8.**

vīnum, ī, n., *wine.* ii. 15.

violō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to violate, injure, hurt; to lay waste.* vi. 23, 32.

vir, virī, m., *a man, husband.* **10.**

vīrēs. See **vīs.**

virgō, inis, f., *a maiden, maid, virgin.* v. 14.

virgultum, ī, n., *a copse, bush, shrub.* iii. 18.

Viridovix, igis, m., chieftain of the Venellī. iii. 17, 18.

viritim, adv., *man by man, singly, individually.* vii. 71.

Vīromanduī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe in the modern Vermandois (Picardie). ii. 4, 16, 23.

virtūs, ūtis, f., **(vir),** *manhood, manliness, bravery; firmness, constancy; excellence, worth; virtue.* **70.**

vīs, vīs, f., *power, strength, force, energy, vigor; influence; efficiency; number, multitude;* pl. **vīrēs. 44.**

vīsus, a, um. See **videō** or **videor.**

vīta, ae, f., *life.* **19.**

vītō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to shun, seek to escape, avoid, beware of.* **9.**

vitrum, ī, n., *woad,* a plant used for dyeing blue. v. 14.

vīvō, ere, vīxī, —, *to live on, live.* iv. 1, 10; v. 14.

vīvus, a, um, adj., *living, alive.* **5.**

vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.* **12.**

Vocātēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia about the Garumna. iii 23, 27.

Vocciō, ōnis, m , king in Noricum. i. 53.

vocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call, summon; to name.* **7.**

Vocontiī, ōrum, m. pl , a tribe in Gallia Provincia, between Isara (*Isère*) and Druentia (*Durance*). i. 10.

Volcae, ārum, m pl., a tribe in Gallia Provincia, between the Rhone and Garonne. (1) *Volcae Tectosagēs* with capital, **Tolōsa** (*Toulouse*). (2) *Volcae Arecomici,* with capital, **Nemansus** (*Nismes*). vii. 7, 64. See also **Narbō.**

Volcātius, ī, m., *C. Volcātius Tullus,* one of Caesar's party. vi. 29.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *to be willing; to wish, desire; to intend, purpose; to ordain, appoint; to command.* **66.**

voluntārius, a, um, adj., *willing, voluntary, spontaneous;* **voluntārius, ī,** m., *a volunteer.* v. 56.

voluntās, ātis, f., *will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; favor, affection, good-will; approbation; willingness, consent.* **18.**

voluptās, ātis, f., *enjoyment, pleasure, delight, joy.* i. 53 (twice), v. 12.

Volusēnus, ī, m., *C. Volusēnus Quadrātus,* military tribune and general of Caesar's cavalry. iii. 5; iv. 21, 23; vi. 41; viii. 23, 48.

Vorēnus, ī, m., *L.*, a centurion. v. 44.

vōs. See ego. **7.**

Vosegus, ī, m., *the Vosges,* French *les Vosges,* German, *Wasgenwald.* iv. 10.

voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *to promise solemnly, vow.* vi. 16.

vōx, vōcis, f., *word; voice; saying; speech.* **13.**

Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan,* the god of fire. vi. 21.

vulgō, adv., *commonly, generally; everywhere; here and there.* i. 39, ii. 1, v. 33.

vulgus, ī, n., *the multitude, people, public; the populace; a throng, crowd.* **8.**

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to wound.* **12.**

vulnus, eris, n., *a wound.* **21.**

vultus, ūs, m., *the countenance, looks, features, aspect, mien, expression, visage.* i. 39 (twice).

VOCABULARY TO BOOK VIII.

The numerals indicate all the chapters where each word occurs, and not the number of occurrences as in the previous Vocabulary: e. g. advento occurs in chapters 20 and 26.

A LIST OF WORDS FOUND IN HIRTIUS WHICH ARE NOT CONTAINED IN CAESAR.

A.

absolūtus, a, um, (part. ab-solvō), *set free from, brought to a conclusion, ended.* 15.

ācer, cris, cre, adj., *violent, severe, sharp, fierce.* 5, 28.

admīrātiō, ōnis, f., (admīror), *surprise, astonishment, admiration.* Pref. (twice).

adventō, āre, —, —, (adveniō), *to come nearer; to arrive at; to come to.* 20, 26.

Āfricānus, a, um, adj, *pertaining to Africa; African.* Pref.

aggerātiō, ōnis, f., *a heaping up, a mole, dike.* 9.

Alexandrīnus, a, um, adj., *pertaining to Alexandria; Alexandrian.* Pref.

aquātor, ōris, m., *a water-carrier.* 41.

aquor, ārī, ātus, dep., (aqua), *to bring water.* 41.

ascītus, a, um, (part. ascīscō), *taken, appropriated, received.* 30.

augur, uris, m. or f., *an augur, a diviner, seer.* 50.

B.

brūmālis, e, adj., *pertaining to the winter solstice; wintry.* 4.

C.

calcar, āris, n., *a spur, stimulus, incitement.* 48.

calliditās, ātis, f., *shrewdness, craft, cunning.* 16.

cantus, ūs, m., *sound, tone.* 20.

cautus, a, um, (part. caveō), *careful, wary, safe, cautious.* 23.

cōgitātiō, ōnis, f., *meditation, thought; design, plan.* 10.

cohaereō, ēre, haesī, haesus, *to be united with; to adhere to, cleave to.* Pref.

commendātiō, ōnis, f., *a commendation, recommendation.* 52.

commentārius, iī, m., *a note-book; memorandum; commentary.* Pref. (twice), 4, 15, 30, 38, 48 (twice).

compingō, ere, pēgī, pāctus, *to unite together; to compose, frame.* 5.

comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *to press together, make more dense, compress; to hold back, repress; to suppress.* 23.
concitātor, ōris, m., *he who excites, an exciter.* 21.
cōnflō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to kindle, stir up; to accomplish, produce, effect.* 6.
conlātiō, ōnis, f., *collection; union.* 8.
cōnsōlātiō, ōnis, f., *a consoling, comfort.* 38.
convellō, ere, vellī, vulsus, *to tear, pull, destroy.* 26, 50.
crēbrō, adv., *oftentimes, frequently.* 10, 17, 44, 52.
crīmen, inis, n., *judgment; accusation; reproach.* Pref. (twice).
cūpa, ae, f., *a tub, cask.* 42.

D.

dēcursiō, ōnis, f., *a running down, incursion.* 24.
dēprecātiō, ōnis, f., *prayer for pardon; an imprecation.* Pref.
dēprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *to press down, depress; to suppress.* 9 (twice), 40.
dērīvō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to lead off; to divert.* 40.
dēscēnsus, ūs, m., *descent.* 40 (twice).
diffugiō, ere, fūgī, —, *to fly in different directions; to disperse.* 23, 24, 35.
disceptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to dispute, discuss; to decide.* 55.
discessiō, ōnis, f., *a departure; separation.* 52, 53.
discursus, ūs, m., *a running to and fro.* 29.
dominātiō, ōnis, f., *rule; dominion; lordship.* 52.
ducēnī, ae, a, dist. num., *two hundred each.* 4.

E.

ēlegantia, ae, f., *refinement, grace, elegance.* Pref. (twice).
ēmendātē, adv., *faultlessly, perfectly.* Pref.
ēvītō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to avoid, shun.* 20, 24, 48.
exārēscō, ere, āruī, —, *to dry up, become dry.* 43.
explicō, āre, āvī and uī, ātus, *to unfold, display.* Pref., 4, 14.
exspectātiō, ōnis, f., *an awaiting, expectation.* 9, 40.
exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *to heap up, build.* 41.

F.

fascis, is, m., *a bundle; the rods and axe* carried before the highest magistrates. 15.
feriō, īre, —, —, *to strike; to cut.* 38.
feritās, ātis, f., *wildness, savageness.* 25.
fōns, fontis, m., *a spring, fountain; source.* 41 (five times), 43 (twice).
foris, is, f., *a door;* pl. *two leaves of a door, door.* 9.
frēnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to furnish with a bridle; to bridle.* 15.
frequentia, ae, f., *a multitude, crowd, concourse.* 50.

G.

gradus, ūs, m., *a step, pace.* 9.

H.

hībernō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, *to pass the winter; to spend the winter in quarters.* 46, 48.
hostia, ae, f., *an animal sacrificed, a victim.*

I.

impressiō, ōnis, f., *an impressing; an assault, onset.* 6.
impūnītus, a, um, adj., *unpunished; unrestrained.* 48.
inaedificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to build up, erect.* 5, 9.
indāgō, inis, f., *an inclosing, a surrounding.* 18.
inertia, ae, f., *inactivity, laziness.* Pref.
īnfidēlitās, ātis, f., *faithlessness.* 23.
īnflō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to blow into; to puff up.* 12.
īnserviō, īre, —, ītus, *to be submissive to; to be devoted to.* 8.
īnsolēns, entis, adj., *immoderate; unusual; haughty, arrogant.* 13. **īnsolenter,** 50.
intercīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *to cut to pieces.* 14, 43.
intolerandus, a, um, adj., (**intolerō**), *insupportable, intolerable.* 4.
invādō, ere, vāsī, vāsus, *to go into, enter, assail.* 27.
invocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to call upon, invoke.* 48.

L.

lancea, ae, f., *a spear, lance.* 48.
latitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to lie hid.* 31.
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to gather; to peruse, read.* Pref.
lōrīcula, ae, f., *a small breastwork.* 9 (twice).
lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to purify; to review;* **exercitum lūstrāvit.** 52.

M.

māgnificentia, ae, f., *grandeur, splendor, eminence.* 51.
mētor, ārī, ātus, dep., *to measure; to erect, pitch;* **mētātis** with passive sense. 15.
moderātē, adj, *with moderation.* 12.
mortifer, era, erum, adj., *death-bringing, deadly.* 23.
mūnicipium, iī, n., *a town; a free town.* 50 (twice), 51.
mūtātiō, ōnis, f., *a changing, alteration, change.* 52.
mūtuor, ārī, ātus, *to borrow.*

N.

nīmīrum, adv., *without doubt, surely.* Pref.

O.

obscūrē, adv., *darkly, obscurely.* 54.
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *to besiege, blockade; to beset.* 26, 37 (twice).
operōsē, adv., *with great labor, laboriously.* Pref.
optō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to wish for, desire.* 9, 41.
opulentus, a, um, adj., *rich, wealthy.* 51.

P.

patientia, ae, f., *patience; quality of enduring.* 4.
percellō, ere, culī, culsus, *to beat down; to strike; to destroy.* 19, 29, 48.
perennis, e, adj., *everlasting, perennial.* 43.
perniciōsus, a, um, adj., *ruinous, pernicious.* 11.
pernoctō, āre, āvī, *to pass the night.* 15.
pertināciter, adv., *very firmly, tenaciously.* 13, 22, 41, 43, 48.
petītiō, ōnis, f., *solicitation; candidateship* 50 (twice), 52.
polleō, ēre, —, —, *to be strong; to prevail; to avail.* 22.
postulātiō, ōnis, f., *a demand; request; desire.* 48.
praecīdo, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *to cut off in front; to cut to pieces.* 44.

praefectūra, ae, f., *the office of overseer; prefecture.* 12.
praeripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *to snatch away.* Pref.
profectō, adv., *truly, indeed, certainly.* 21.
prōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *to cast forth, burst forth.* 41.
prōterō, ere, —, trītus, *to tread under foot, crush.* 48.
prōvolvō, ere, volvī, volūtus, *to roll forth, roll away.* 42.

Q.

quadrātus, a, um, *squared; square,* in regular order of battle. 8.
quamquam, conj., *although.* Pref., 42, 52, 55.
quia, conj., *because.* 23.
quondam, adv., *once, at a certain time; heretofore.* 32.

R.

recūsātiō, ōnis, f., *refusal.* Pref.
rūs, rūris n., *the country; lands; fields.* 3.

S.

sacerdōtium, iī, n., *the priesthood.* 50.
salūbritās, ātis, f., *healthfulness, salubrity.* 52.
scandula, ae, f., *a shingle.* 42.
scrīptor, ōris, m., *writer.* Pref. (twice).
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *to sit, remain.* 15.
sēstertius, iī, m., *a sesterce.*
sollicitus, a, um, adj., *disturbed, stirred up.* 34.
spectātus, a, um, (part. **spectō**), *tested; respected; excellent.* 51.
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus, *to spread out; to strew.* 51.
stultus, a, um, adj., *foolish.* 10.
submissus, a, um, (part. **submittō**), *let down; calm; humble.* 31.
submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to remove; to withhold.* 10.
subsidior, ārī, ātus, *to stand in reserve.* 13.
suppressus, a, um, (part. **supprimō**), *held back.* 42.
suspēnsus, a, um, (part. **suspendō**), *raised; wavering, doubtful.* 43.

T.

tamquam, adv., *so as, just as, as it were, like as.* 54.
templum, ī, n., *an open place for observation; a sacred place, a temple.* 51.
tentōrium, iī, n., *a tent.* 5.
testātus, a, um, (part. **testor**), *shown; proved; public.* 42, 44.
togātus, a, um, adj., *wearing a garb of peace.* 24, 52 (twice).
trīclīnium, iī, n., *a table-couch.*
triumphus, ī, m., *triumph.* 51.
turmātim, adv., *by troops.* 18.

V.

vēna, ae, f., *a vein.* 43.
verber eris, n., *a lash; scourging.* 38.
vetustās, ātis, f., *old age.* 8.
vicissim, adv., *in turn; again.* 10.
vigil, ilis, adj., *wakeful, active.* 35.
vīmineus, a, um, adj., *made of osiers, of wicker-work.* 9.
vulgō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to spread among the people; to publish.* 3.
vulnerātiō, ōnis, f., *a wounding.* 47.

